Workshop Manual

Audi A5 2016 ➤
Audi A5 Cabriolet 2017 ➤
Audi A5 Sportback 2017 ➤

General body repairs, interior

Edition 09.2017

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

00 - Technical data
68 - Interior equipment
69 - Passenger protection
70 - Trim, insulation
72 - Seat frames
74 - Seat - padding, covers

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2017 Audi AG, Ingolstadt

Contents

00 - Technical data 1

1 Safety precautions 1
1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system 2
1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test 3
1.3 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components 3
1.4 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components) 5
1.5 Additional safety regulations for airbag control units 5
1.6 Additional safety regulations for side airbags 6
1.7 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags 6
1.8 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) 7
1.9 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version 8
1.10 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version 8
1.11 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident 8
1.12 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident 10
1.13 Accident in which no airbag was triggered 10
1.14 Checking seat belts 11
1.15 Checking belt 11
1.16 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action) 12
1.17 Visual inspection of belt buckle 13
1.18 Functional check of belt buckle 13
1.19 Checking guide fittings and latch plate 13
1.20 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident 13
1.21 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version) 14
1.22 Checking child seat anchors following an accident 14
1.23 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror 14
1.24 Safety precautions for Automatic Rollover Support System 15

2 Repair notes 16
2.1 Contact corrosion 16
2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring 16

68 - Interior equipment 17

1 Storage compartments/covers/trim panels 17
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels 17
1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side) 20
1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim 21
1.4 Exploded view - glove box 22
1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side) 23
1.6 Removing and installing steering column trim (top) 23
1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom) 25
1.8 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism 26
1.9 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism 27
1.10 Removing and installing glove box 27
1.11 Removing and installing glove box lid 30
1.12 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid 31

2 Equipment 32
2.1 Exploded view - sun visors 32
2.2 Exploded view - windbreak 34
2.3 Removing and installing sun visor 35
2.4 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor 36

Reproduction or copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5 Removing and installing grab handle . . . 36
2.6 Servicing windbreak . . . 38
2.7 Removing and installing mounting for windbreak . . . 39
3 Centre console . . . 40
3.1 Exploded view - centre console . . . 40
3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear) . . . 46
3.3 Removing and installing ashtray (rear) . . . 47
3.4 Removing and installing centre console insert . . . 47
3.5 Removing and installing centre console storage compartments (front) . . . 48
3.6 Removing and installing centre console trim . . . 49
3.7 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front) . . . 50
3.8 Removing and installing centre console . . . 50
3.9 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console . . . 51
3.10 Removing and installing cup holders . . . 54
3.11 Removing and installing vent (rear) in centre console . . . 55
3.12 Removing and installing bracket for centre console . . . 55
4 Centre armrest (front) . . . 57
4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front) . . . 57
4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front) . . . 58
4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section) . . . 58
4.4 Removing and installing trim for hinge arm . . . 60
5 Interior mirror . . . 61
5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror . . . 61
5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror . . . 62
5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off . . . 64
5.4 Switching compass display on and off . . . 64
5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone . . . 64
5.6 Calibrating digital compass . . . 65
5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles . . . 65
5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map . . . 66
5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror . . . 71

69 - Passenger protection . . . 73
1 Seat belts . . . 73
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points . . . 73
1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front) . . . 79
1.3 Exploded view - belt feeder motor . . . 83
1.4 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 85
1.5 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 87
1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (front) . . . 88
1.7 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear) . . . 89
1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) . . . 92
1.9 Removing and installing belt feeder motor V604 / V605 . . . 99
1.10 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 100
1.11 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) . . . 108
1.12 Removing and installing belt guide (front) . . . 111
1.13 Removing and installing belt guide fitting (front) . . . 112
1.14 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) . . . 113
1.15 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear) . . . 115
1.16 Removing and installing belt height adjuster . . . 116
1.17 Removing and installing belt buckle (front) . . . 117
1.18 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) . . . 118
2 Child seat anchors . . . 120
2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front) . . . 120

Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplication for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear) . . . 121
2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front) . . . 123
2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear) . . . 123
3 Airbag system . . . 126
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system . . . 126
4 Airbag control unit . . . 130
4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit . . . 130
4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 . . . 130
5 Battery isolation igniter . . . 134
5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter . . . 134
5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter . . . 134
6 Airbag (driver side) . . . 137
6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side) . . . 137
6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters . . . 138
6.3 Renewing connector at airbag . . . 141
7 Airbag (front passenger side) . . . 143
7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side) . . . 143
7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters . . . 144
7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side . . . 147
8 Side airbags . . . 148
8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front) . . . 148
8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear) . . . 150
8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter . . . 150
8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter . . . 157
8.5 Removing and installing wire for side airbag . . . 159
9 Curtain airbags . . . 168
9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag . . . 168
9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter . . . 169
10 Knee airbags . . . 172
10.1 Exploded view - knee airbag . . . 172
10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter . . . 174
11 Crash sensors for airbags . . . 180
11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags . . . 180
11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 . . . 181
11.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 . . . 184
11.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) G256 / G257 . . . 187
12 Seat position sensor . . . 191
12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor . . . 191
12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor . . . 192
13 Belt-fastened recognition system . . . 194
13.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) G128 . . . 194
14 Seat occupied recognition system . . . 195
14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system . . . 195
14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor . . . 196
15 Automatic Rollover Support System . . . 199
15.1 Exploded view - Automatic Rollover Support System . . . 199
15.2 Removing and installing rollover bar . . . 200
15.3 Retracting extended rollover bars . . . 203
16 Pedestrian protection . . . 204
16.1 Overview - pedestrian protection . . . 204
16.2 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection G693 . . . 205
16.3 Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection . . . 208

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

16.4 Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered . . . 210
16.5 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection G598 / G599 . . . 211

70 - Trim, insulation . . . 214

1 Door trim (front) . . . 214
1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front) . . . 214
1.2 Removing and installing door trim (front) . . . 216
1.3 Removing and installing door puller (front) . . . 218
1.4 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 219

2 Door trim (rear) . . . 220
2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear) . . . 220
2.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim in door trim . . . 221
2.3 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 222
2.4 Removing and installing door trim (rear) . . . 223
2.5 Removing and installing door puller (rear) . . . 225

3 Dash panel . . . 227
3.1 Exploded view - dash panel . . . 227
3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side) . . . 229
3.3 Removing and installing cover for MMI screen . . . 230
3.4 Removing and installing trim for dash panel insert . . . 231
3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim . . . 231
3.6 Removing and installing trim for light switch . . . 232
3.7 Removing and installing dash panel . . . 233
3.8 Removing and installing trim for operating and display unit . . . 238
3.9 Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting . . . 238
3.10 Removing and installing dash panel vents . . . 239
3.11 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre) . . . 241
3.12 Removing and installing defroster vent (side) . . . 242

4 Dash panel cross member . . . 244
4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member . . . 244
4.2 Removing and installing dash panel cross member . . . 246
4.3 Removing and installing cross member brace . . . 251

5 Passenger compartment trim panels . . . 252
5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels . . . 252
5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim . . . 256
5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim . . . 259
5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim . . . 261
5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim . . . 263
5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim . . . 265
5.7 Exploded view - trim for windscreen frame . . . 266
5.8 Exploded view - side trim . . . 267
5.9 Exploded view - back panel trim . . . 270
5.10 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering . . . 271
5.11 Exploded view - rear shelf . . . 272
5.12 Removing and installing sill panel trim . . . 273
5.13 Removing and installing A-pillar trim . . . 276
5.14 Removing and installing B-pillar trim . . . 283
5.15 Removing and installing C-pillar trim . . . 288
5.16 Removing and installing D-pillar trim . . . 291
5.17 Removing and installing trim for windscreen frame . . . 293
5.18 Removing and installing side trim . . . 293
5.19 Removing and installing back panel trim . . . 300
5.20 Removing and installing foot rest . . . 301
5.21 Removing and installing floor covering . . . 302
5.22 Removing and installing rear shelf . . . 303

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.23 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim . . . 304
6 Luggage compartment trim panels . . . 307
6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels . . . 307
6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim . . . 311
6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor . . . 316
6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom) . . . 320
6.5 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) . . . 324
6.6 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top) . . . 330
6.7 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim . . . 331
6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor . . . 337
6.9 Removing and installing lock carrier trim . . . 340
6.10 Removing and installing fastening ring . . . 341
6.11 Removing and installing bag hook . . . 342
6.12 Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor (rear) . . . 342
6.13 Removing and installing tail light cover . . . 344
6.14 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well . . . 344
7 Roof trim panels . . . 345
7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner . . . 345
7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner . . . 346
7.3 Attaching roof reinforcement to body . . . 352
8 Convertible roof compartment . . . 355
8.1 Overview of fitting locations - convertible roof compartment . . . 355
8.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment tray . . . 357
8.3 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment trim . . . 358
8.4 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment tray . . . 359
8.5 Removing and installing mounting bracket for convertible roof compartment tray . . . 360
8.6 Removing and installing trim for convertible roof compartment tray . . . 361
8.7 Removing and installing left motor for convertible roof box V433 . . . 362
8.8 Removing and installing side trim for convertible roof compartment . . . 363
8.9 Removing and installing trim (centre) for convertible roof compartment . . . 365

72 - Seat frames . . . 367
1 Overview - seat versions . . . 367
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions . . . 367
1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand . . . 370
2 Front seats . . . 373
2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components . . . 373
2.2 Exploded view - front seat . . . 380
2.3 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system . . . 382
2.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest . . . 384
2.5 Exploded view - head restraint . . . 389
2.6 Exploded view - seat pan . . . 392
2.7 Removing and installing front seat . . . 399
2.8 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter . . . 404
2.9 Connecting and disconnecting modular wiring . . . 407
2.10 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment unit . . . 409
2.11 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit . . . 412
2.12 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit . . . 415
2.13 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit . . . 416
2.14 Removing and installing front seat backrest . . . 422
2.15 Removing and installing backrest fan . . . 431
2.16 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 432
2.17 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 436
2.18 Dismantling and assembling seat pan . . . 438
2.19 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit E470 / E471 . . . 443

Audi AG does not guarantee that the contents of this document are complete, correct or in whole is not published unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.20 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E663 / E664 . . . 444
2.21 Removing and installing massage function button E670 / E671 . . . 445
2.22 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism . . . 445
2.23 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism . . . 446
2.24 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 . . . 455
2.25 Removing and installing control unit for seat functions . . . 457
2.26 Removing and installing seat cushion fan . . . 458
2.27 Removing and installing slider . . . 459
3 Rear seats . . . 460
3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats . . . 460
3.2 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide . . . 464
3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest . . . 466
3.4 Exploded view - locking mechanism . . . 470
3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest . . . 472
3.6 Exploded view - backrest remote release mechanism . . . 473
3.7 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats . . . 473
3.8 Removing and installing tray . . . 475
3.9 Removing and installing head restraint . . . 475
3.10 Removing and installing head restraint guide . . . 476
3.11 Removing and installing rear seat backrest . . . 480
3.12 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism . . . 484
3.13 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest . . . 486
3.14 Removing and installing lock cylinder . . . 488
3.15 Removing and installing outer bearing sleeve . . . 489
3.16 Removing and installing inner pivot pin . . . 490
3.17 Removing and installing trim for rear seat backrest (centre) . . . 490
3.18 Removing and installing padding cover for rear seat backrest (centre) . . . 491
3.19 Removing and installing trim for rear seat backrest locking mechanism . . . 492
3.20 Removing and installing centre bracket . . . 493
3.21 Removing and installing centre armrest . . . 493
3.22 Removing and installing backrest remote release mechanism . . . 495
4 Front seat pneumatic system . . . 499
4.1 Connection diagram - pneumatic system . . . 499
4.2 Exploded view - pneumatic system . . . 500
4.3 Checking pneumatic system . . . 501
4.4 Severing and connecting pneumatic lines . . . 507
4.5 Servicing pneumatic lines . . . 508
4.6 Removing and installing air cushion for lumbar support . . . 508
4.7 Removing and installing air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster . . . 510
4.8 Removing and installing valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment V378 / V379 . . . 511
4.9 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment pump V152 / V153 . . . 513

74 - Seat - padding, covers . . . 514
1 Covers and padding on front seats . . . 514
1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding . . . 514
1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding . . . 518
1.3 Exploded view - seat heating elements . . . 520
1.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding . . . 522
1.5 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding . . . 529
1.6 Separating seat pan cover and padding . . . 534
1.7 Separating backrest cover and padding . . . 535
1.8 Removing and installing seat heating elements . . . 536
1.9 Removing and installing backrest heating element . . . 538
2 Covers and padding on rear seats . . . 539
2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding . . . 539

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part of in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Exploded view - seat heating elements 544
2.3 Removing and installing cover and padding 545
2.4 Detaching cover from padding 550
2.5 Removing and installing side padding 552
2.6 Removing and installing seat heating elements 553
2.7 Removing and installing backrest heating element 554

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Safety precautions

(ARL005465; Edition 09.2017)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system”, page 2

⇒ “1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test”, page 3

⇒ “1.3 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components”, page 3

⇒ “1.4 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)”, page 5

⇒ “1.5 Additional safety regulations for airbag control units”, page 5

⇒ “1.6 Additional safety regulations for side airbags”, page 6

⇒ “1.7 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags”, page 6

⇒ “1.8 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)”, page 7

⇒ “1.9 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version”, page 8

⇒ “1.10 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version”, page 8

⇒ “1.11 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident”, page 8

⇒ “1.12 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident”, page 10

⇒ “1.13 Accident in which no airbag was triggered”, page 10

⇒ “1.14 Checking seat belts”, page 11

⇒ “1.15 Checking belt”, page 11

⇒ “1.16 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)”, page 12

⇒ “1.17 Visual inspection of belt buckle”, page 13

⇒ “1.18 Functional check of belt buckle”, page 13

⇒ “1.19 Checking guide fittings and latch plate”, page 13

⇒ “1.20 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident”, page 13

⇒ “1.21 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)”, page 14

⇒ “1.22 Checking child seat anchors following an accident”, page 14

⇒ “1.23 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror”, page 14

⇒ “1.24 Safety precautions for Automatic Rollover Support System”, page 15

Audi Service Training. Any reproduction or copy of this publication, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system

Risk of injury - engine may start unexpectedly

The engine can start unexpectedly if the vehicle's start/stop system is activated. A message in the instrument cluster indicates whether the start/stop system is activated.

– To deactivate the start/stop system, switch off the ignition.

1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test

Risk of injury if test equipment is not secured

If an accident occurs and the front passenger's airbag is triggered, test equipment which is not secured adequately may be catapulted through the vehicle with potentially serious consequences.

– Secure test equipment on the rear seat.

Or:

– Have a second mechanic operate test equipment on the rear seat.

1.3 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components

Note

Pyrotechnic components are:

- Airbag units
- Belt tensioners
- Belt force limiters (depending on equipment version)
- Battery isolation elements (depending on equipment version)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

General notes

- Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- There are no specified intervals for renewing airbag units.
- Never perform tests with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- Only check pyrotechnic components when they are installed in the vehicle and always use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems which have been approved by the manufacturer.
- When working on the airbag system (pyrotechnic components, the airbag control unit - J234- , wiring), always disconnect the battery earth strap with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Subsequently cover negative terminal.
- After disconnecting the battery, you must wait for 10 seconds.
- The battery must be connected with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Make sure there is no one in the vehicle. Exception: Vehicles in which the battery is in the passenger compartment.
- If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.

- Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching earthed metal components such as the door striker plate.
- Always wash your hands after handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system which have been triggered.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- Pyrotechnic components which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.
- Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately after removing them from their packaging.
- If the work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component should again be placed in its packaging.
- The pyrotechnic component must never be left unattended.
- When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, there should be no-one in the vehicle other than the person performing the work.
- Pyrotechnic components must never be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar.
- Always renew airbag unit if fabric is contaminated by oil, grease, paint, solvent or similar.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures higher than 100 °C even for brief periods of time.

Special notes for driver's and passenger's airbags

- Following removal, driver's and passenger's airbag units must be stored with the cushioned side facing upwards.

Always keep to the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

1 - Remove old airbag unit and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

2 - Take new airbag unit out of packaging and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in packaging.

4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

Special notes for belt tensioners

- When removing and installing belt tensioners, proceed very carefully. If belt tensioner units are not handled correctly, there is a high danger and injury risk.
- Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must always be renewed.
- Never point the open end of a belt tensioner at another person.
- When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical components (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be secured properly. Should there not be enough space to connect the belt tensioner unit, the belt must be retracted completely before connecting the tensioner unit. In this case, there is no increased safety risk if you observe the safety precautions, i.e. most importantly the mechanic must disconnect the

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction, duplication or translation, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written authorization of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

battery and discharge static electricity before connecting the belt tensioner unit.

- Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. These components must be handled in the same way as non-ignited components.

1.4 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)

- Storage must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.
- Transportation must be in accordance with the national and international guidelines which regulate the details of the packaging, marking, labelling and accompanying documents.
- Non-ignited pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in their original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. Please contact your importer if you require further information.

The reproduction, distribution and utilization of this document as well as the communication of its contents to others without express authorization is prohibited. Offenders will be held liable for the payment of damages. All rights reserved in the event of the grant of a patent, utility model or design. The reproduction, distribution and utilization of this document as well as the communication of its contents to others without express authorization is prohibited, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Only pyrotechnic components that have been triggered completely may be disposed of with commercial refuse.

WARNING

- *This does not apply to belt tensioners which are Wankel-powered. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).*
- *Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).*

1.5 Additional safety regulations for airbag control units

WARNING

- *The "Basic setting, inertial sensors" must always be performed after removing and installing the airbag control unit - J234- .*
- *If you have replaced the old airbag control unit - J234- with a new one, the basic setting is performed as part of initial operation with the program "15 - Replace airbag control unit".*
- *If you have removed and then re-installed the same airbag control unit - J234- perform the "Basic setting, inertial sensors" as follows:*

– Connect vehicle diagnostic tester .

– Switch on ignition.

– Select and start `Diagnosis` mode.

– Select `Test plan` tab.

– Choose Select own test and select following options one after the other:

- Body
- General body repairs
- 01 - Self-diagnosis compatible systems
- 15 - Airbag - J234
- 15 - Airbag, functions
- 15 - Basic setting
- 15 - Basic setting, inertial sensors

– Start selected program and follow instructions on display of vehicle diagnostic tester.

1.6 Additional safety regulations for side airbags

- We recommend using genuine seat covers (same as original equipment).
- It is NOT permissible to use seat covers or protective covers which have not been approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags.
- The backrest foam fill must not be cut away in the area of the side airbag.
- When installing, make sure seam for side airbag is straight.
- All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- We recommend using only genuine upholstery clips (same as original equipment).
- When installing, all new upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- For safety reasons, the cover should always be renewed if it is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the area of the side airbag, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- Never repair backrest cover in area of side airbag (due to special thread and precisely defined seam).
- Always renew backrest padding after side airbags have been triggered.
- All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- If side airbag units are renewed, remove sticker with airbag number from new side airbag unit and stick it over old sticker on seat pan.
- Never pierce the seat cover fabric with upholstery needles or other sharp objects in the vicinity of the airbag, seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128- and the seat occupied sensor mat.

1.7 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags

- Before carrying out any installation work always visually inspect trim for damage.
- Trim repairs (A-pillar trim (top), B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unless authorized by AUDI AG, AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- When installing, make sure that trim panels are fitted securely.
- When carrying out repairs behind the curtain airbag, always remove the complete unit.
- When removing and installing curtain airbag units, proceed very carefully to prevent possible damage.
- After removal, store old curtain airbag units in their transport containers or on a clean, level surface (on a blanket).
- After performing body repairs in area of curtain airbag, check body for welding spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing with opposite side.
- It is important that you hold the gas generator at all times when handling it (during transportation, removing and installing etc.) until it has been bolted on.
- Never twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp curtain airbag units.
- Folding may be possible, provided you are careful not to cause damage (in particular to protective cover).

1.8 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)

The crash sensors for side airbags are very sensitive to pressure changes and must therefore be handled with great care. Please note the following:

- Always observe correct installation position: ONLY install in correct fitting location in door.
- Protect crash sensor from jolts and knocks. Crash sensors which have been dropped must NOT be used. Remove crash sensor to perform body repairs at door.
- The crash sensor is adapted to the air volume inside the door: If the door is deformed, causing the air volume in the door to be reduced, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.
- Make sure the crash sensor is not badly soiled: Do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against filings or drilling swarf (e.g. on service installation of door loudspeakers). Do not use cavity sealant or oil sprays near crash sensor.
- Protect against heat and cold: Protect crash sensor against heat, e.g. when painting or carrying out other body work. Crash sensors should never be exposed to temperatures of less than –40 °C (e.g. in non-air-conditioned aircraft cargo holds).
- The crash sensor must be protected against moisture, both during storage and when installing.

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor may not function correctly. Please note the following:

- Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.
- The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. Renew retaining clips if necessary.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.9 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version

- Following any repair work on the front passenger seat during which the seat and/or backrest cover are/is disengaged, the basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- The mat for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- The mat must be renewed if it is damaged (service kit).
- The pressure hose for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- Make sure that the components of the seat occupied recognition system (service kit) do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and cannot be damaged by sharp objects.
- Make sure that the mat, the fleece and all covers are not creased when they are installed.
- Make sure that the seat padding and seat cover are in the correct installation position.
- Renew all staples/clips and make sure they are correctly positioned on the seat.
- The system's basic setting is only possible at temperatures between 0°C and + 40°C if airbag units 8.R and 9.* are installed, and only between 5°C and 35°C if airbag unit 10.* is installed.
- Make sure there are no objects lying on the seat before or while you are performing the basic setting.
- The use of loose seat covers - such as cushions or similar - impairs the function of the seat occupied recognition system and thus the function of the airbag system.

1.10 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version

- The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must be performed whenever the airbag and/or front passenger's belt tensioner has/have been triggered ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- If the seat rail and/or seat pan has/have to be renewed after a crash due to deformation, the seat occupied sensor must be renewed using the “seat occupied recognition service kit”. The “basic setting” for the seat occupied recognition control unit must then be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

1.11 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester

Audi
Copyright: Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Airbag control unit must be renewed:

- If message “Control unit defective” appears after event memory is interrogated
- If housing is damaged
- In the event of a tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

Always renew the following:

- All triggered airbag units

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Dash panel
- Supports for front passenger's airbag unit which have become deformed (must not be bent back into shape)
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

If driver's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Return ring with slip ring
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If side airbag(s) has/have been triggered, also renew:

- Pressure sensors on the side on which the airbag was triggered
- Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered
- Cover
- Padding
- Folding rear seat backrest: side padding (if fitted)
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

Additionally:

- All automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered
- All automatic belt retractors with belt force limiters (depending on equipment version) which have been triggered
- Belt buckles for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened
- Belt height adjusters (manual and electrical) for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened

– If you suspect that belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) has/have been triggered, connect a vehicle diagnostic tester .

– In “15 - Airbag” of the »Guided Fault Finding« function, check whether there is an entry recording a crash in the airbag control unit.

– Check whether at the same time the fault “Resistance too high” is entered for belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s). Belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) which have been trig-

gered must fulfil both conditions. Condition: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed.

Note

- *The fault "Resistance too high" can also be entered if there is an open circuit. In this case, there should usually be no crash entry.*
- *Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. In this case, observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*
- *Also observe the notes on checking seat belts ⇒ page 11 .*

For personal use only. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
– In addition, the following must also be renewed if necessary (visual check): all damaged components
– After renewing airbag units or the control unit, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the appropriate Sales Centre or to the importer for registration.

1.12 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident

It is essential to always renew all damaged mounting components - it is not permissible to »reshape« or rework damaged components.

The following components must be checked after an airbag has been triggered.

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered:

- Dash panel cross member; it must be possible to install front passenger's airbag unit and supports so that they are free of stress. Otherwise cross member must also be renewed.
- Check glove box for damage. Renew glove box if it is damaged.

If driver's airbag has been triggered:

- Steering wheel: Remove steering wheel and place it on a level surface (resting on rim). The full area of the rim must lie flat. If it does not, the steering wheel has to be renewed.
- Check steering wheel for smoke marks. Renew steering wheel if such marks are found.

1.13 Accident in which no airbag was triggered

- Pyrotechnic components do not have to be renewed if airbag warning lamp - K75- does not indicate a fault. The seat belts must be checked separately.

1.14 Checking seat belts

WARNING

A systematic check of the seat belt system must be carried out after every accident. If any damage is identified (see section on points to check), the customer must be informed that one or more of the seat belts have to be renewed.

Points to check:

- Checking belt ⇒ page 11
- Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action) ⇒ page 12
- Visual inspection of belt buckle ⇒ page 13
- Functional check of belt buckle ⇒ page 13
- Checking guide fittings and latch plate ⇒ page 13
- Checking securing components and anchorage points ⇒ page 13
- Checking child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific version ⇒ page 14

Caution

If customers decide not to have damaged seat belts renewed, this must be noted accordingly in the Service Schedule.

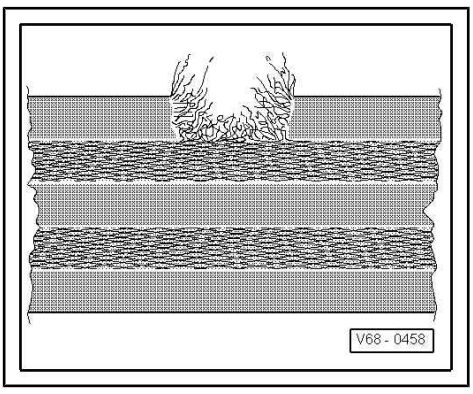
1.15 Checking belt

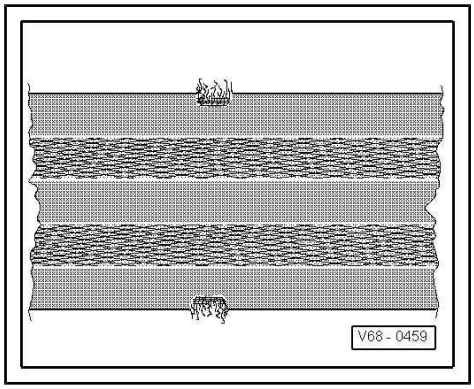
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

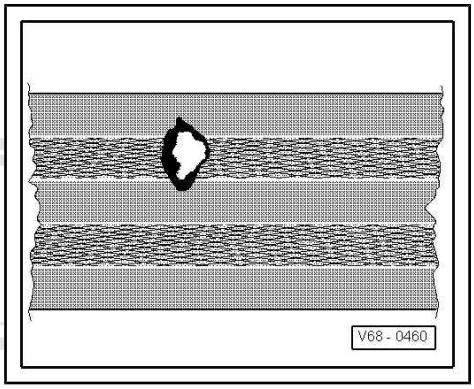
Procedure

– Pull belt as far as it will go out of automatic belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.

– Inspect belt for dirt and, if necessary, wash it with mild soap solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .







- If the following type of damage (shown in illustrations 1 and 2) is identified on a vehicle following an accident you must renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.
- If damage as shown in illustrations 1, 2 or 3 is identified on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to only renew the damaged belt.
- 1 – Belt is cut, torn or chafed
- 2 – Frayed fabric at edge of belt
- 3 – Burn marks caused by cigarettes or similar

1.16 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

◆ The first locking function is triggered by pulling the belt quickly out of the automatic belt retractor.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

First check

– Pull belt out of automatic belt retractor in a sharp quick movement.

- No locking effect - renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If you encounter difficulties when pulling belt out or retracting it, first check whether position of automatic belt retractor has changed.
- The second locking function is triggered if vehicle motion changes (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Second check

WARNING

For safety reasons, test drive must be performed on a road with no traffic to avoid putting other road users at risk.

– Fasten seat belt.

– Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake firmly (emergency braking).

- If braking does not activate seat belt locking mechanism, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.17 Visual inspection of belt buckle

– Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.

• If you identify any damage, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.18 Functional check of belt buckle

Checking belt buckle

– Push latch plate into belt buckle until you hear it engage. Pull belt firmly to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.

• Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate does not engage properly in belt buckle in one or more of the tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

Checking release function

– Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle. Latch plate must be automatically ejected from belt buckle when belt is slack.

• Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate is not ejected in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

WARNING

Under no circumstances apply lubricant to belt buckle to eliminate noises or to stop buttons sticking.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.19 Checking guide fittings and latch plate

When a seat belt has been under strain in an accident the plastic-covered guides will show fine parallel scoring. (By contrast, a guide fitting which is worn because of frequent use will have a smoothly worn surface, but no scoring).

– Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in the plastic.

• If you identify any scoring and/or damage, renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.

1.20 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident

♦ Latch plate deformed (strained)

♦ Height adjustment not functioning

♦ Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) deformed or thread damaged

• If you identify any damage on these parts, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

• If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

• Renew anchorage points.

Note

In the event of damage not resulting from an accident (for example wear) only the corresponding damaged part must be renewed.

1.21 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)

To check this function fit the complete belt assembly (including side panel trim).

Activating locking function of retractor mechanism:

- Pull out belt as far as it will go.

Correct function

- The belt should retract with an audible clicking sound.
- Once you stop the belt retracting any further, it should no longer be possible to pull the belt out.

Deactivating

- Allow the belt to retract as far as the last approx. 100 mm.
- The locking function of the retractor mechanism should be deactivated at the latest by the time the belt has been retracted as far as the last 100 mm. The belt then functions as "normal" again.

If child seat restraint function of seat belt is not operating properly, seat belt must be renewed.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.22 Checking child seat anchors following an accident

Points to check:

- After an accident, child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation.
- Child seat anchors welded or bolted to body or seats/backrests must not be repaired or straightened.
- Child seat anchors bolted to the body or seats/backrests must be renewed if they are damaged or deformed.
- Bolts for securing child seat anchors must be renewed if retainer is damaged.

1.23 Safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

WARNING

Electrolyte is a potential health hazard.

- *The interior mirror glass consists of several layers and contains an electrolyte which gives the mirror its properties. Beware of liquid electrolyte escaping from a broken mirror.*
- *Liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- *Should liquid electrolyte come into contact with the eyes or skin, rinse it out/off immediately with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, consult a doctor immediately.*

Caution

If liquid electrolyte escapes from a broken mirror glass it will damage all plastic surfaces with which it comes into contact. Make sure you clean away any leaked electrolyte immediately using clean water and a sponge.

1.24 Safety precautions for Automatic Roll-over Support System

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Always disconnect the power supply before working on the Automatic Rollover Support System.
- There must not be anyone in the vicinity of the rollover bars (safety distance approx. 1 m) when connecting the battery.
- Always remove the rollover bars when performing body repairs in the area of the rollover bars.
- After performing body repairs in the area of a rollover bar, check the body for weld spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing it to the opposite side.
- The rollover bars must always be installed immediately after removing them from the transportation container (new part).
- The rollover bars must never be left unattended.
- Rollover bars must not be dismantled or repaired. Always use new parts.
- Rollover bars which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.
- Do not carry out any repair work on the lid of the convertible roof compartment in the area of the rollover bar cover or on the cover itself.
- The Automatic Rollover Support System must be replaced with a new part if it has been damaged in an accident.

2 Repair notes

⇒ “2.1 Contact corrosion”, page 16

⇒ “2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring”, page 16

2.1 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners are used (e.g. bolts, nuts, washers, etc.).

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Please note:

- We recommend using only genuine replacement parts: these have been fully tested and are compatible with aluminium.
- We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

2.2 Routing and attaching lines and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic lines or electrical wires. This ensures re-installation at the original location.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

68 – Interior equipment

1 Storage compartments/covers/trim panels

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels”, page 17

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 20

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 21

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 22

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 23

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)”, page 23

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)”, page 25

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism”, page 26

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism”, page 27

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing glove box”, page 27

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing glove box lid”, page 30

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid”, page 31

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels

⇒ “1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 17

⇒ “1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels, A5 Cabriolet”, page 19

1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels, A5 Coupé/Sportback

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

The illustration shows the A5 Sportback as an example.

1 - Centre console

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 40

2 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 57

3 - Grab handle

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 32

4 - Steering column trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 21

5 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 20

6 - Cross member

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 244

7 - Dash panel

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 227

8 - Interior mirror

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 61

9 - Sun visor

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 32

10 - Glove box

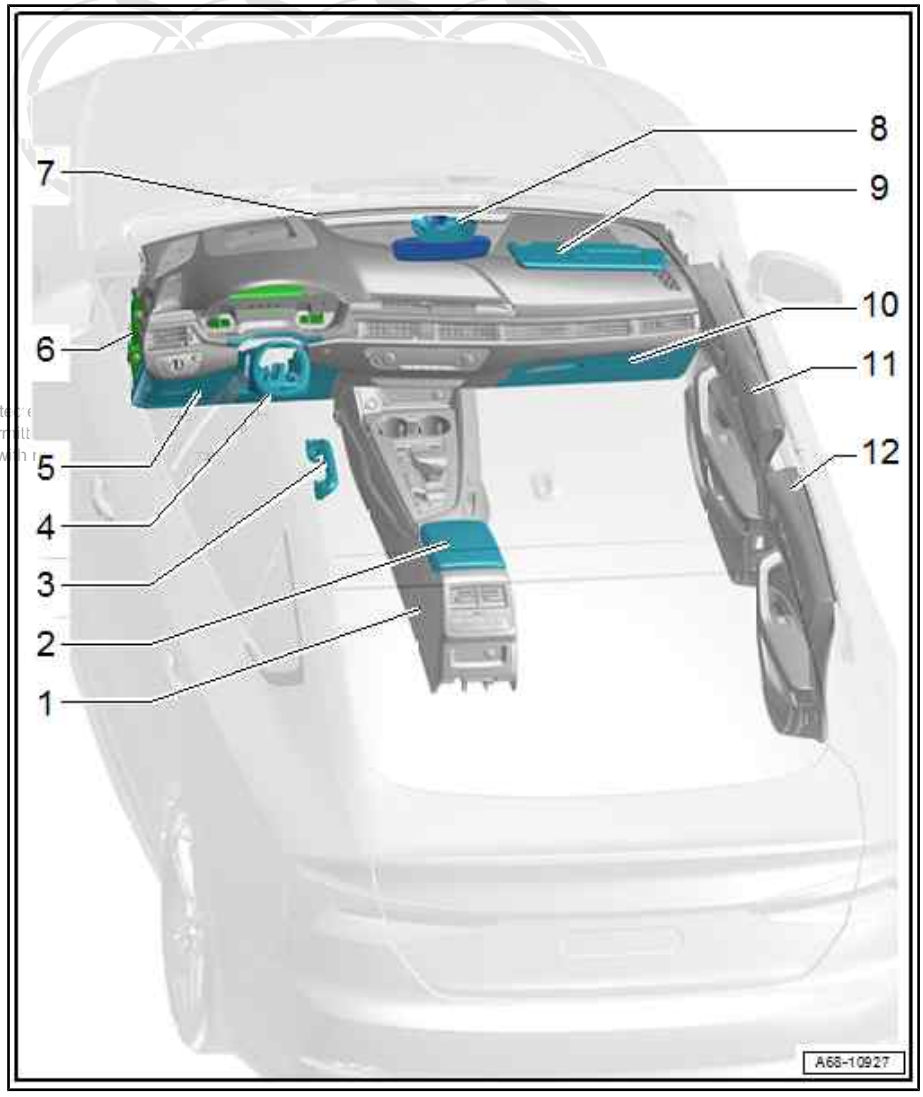
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 22

11 - Door trim (front)

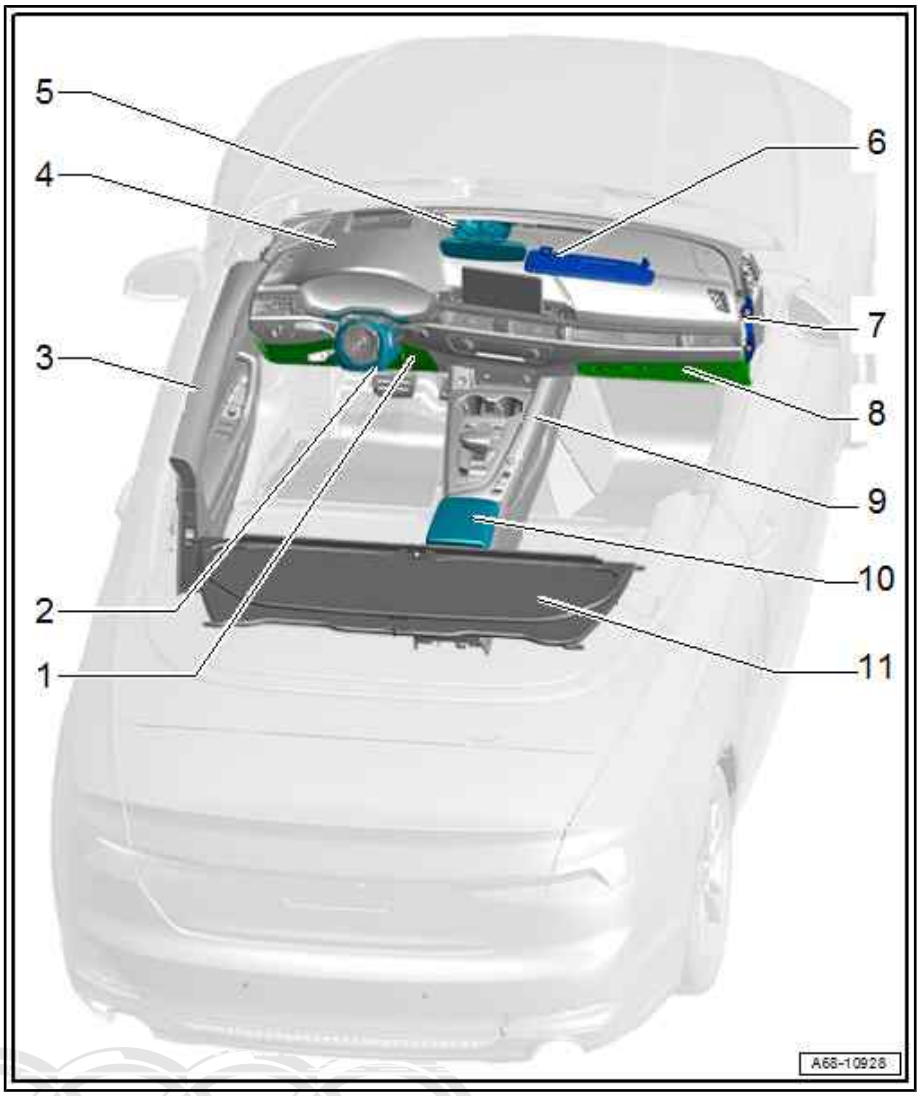
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 214

12 - Door trim (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 220



1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Dash panel cover (driver side)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 20

2 - Steering column trim
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 21

3 - Door trim
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 214

4 - Dash panel
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 227

5 - Interior mirror
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 61

6 - Sun visor
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 33

7 - Cross member
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 244

8 - Glove box
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 22

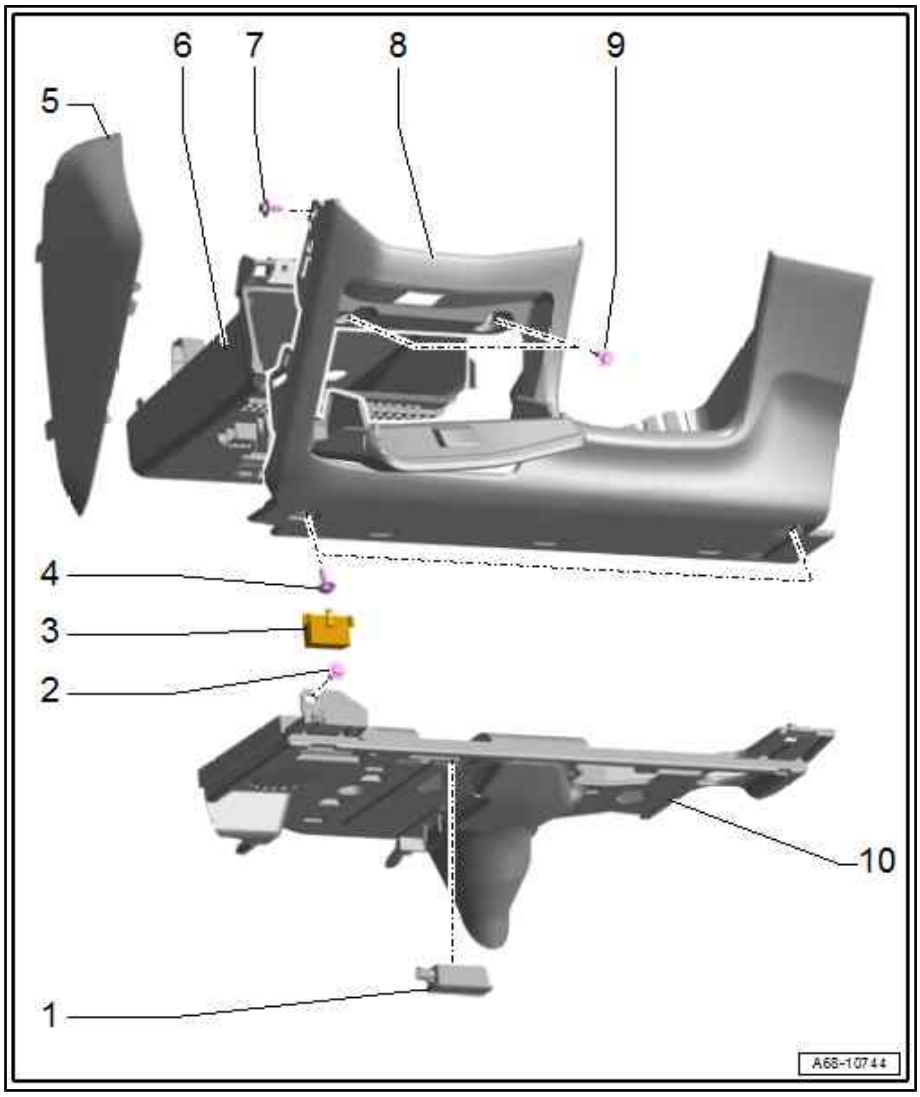
9 - Centre console
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 40

10 - Centre armrest (front)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 57

11 - Windbreak
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 34

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)



1 - Front left footwell light - K268-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

3 - Diagnostic connection - U31-

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Cover (side)

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 229

6 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 23

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

8 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 23

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm
- ❑ Depending on equipment version

10 - Cover (bottom), driver side

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 23

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

2 - Steering column trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25

3 - Steering column trim (top)

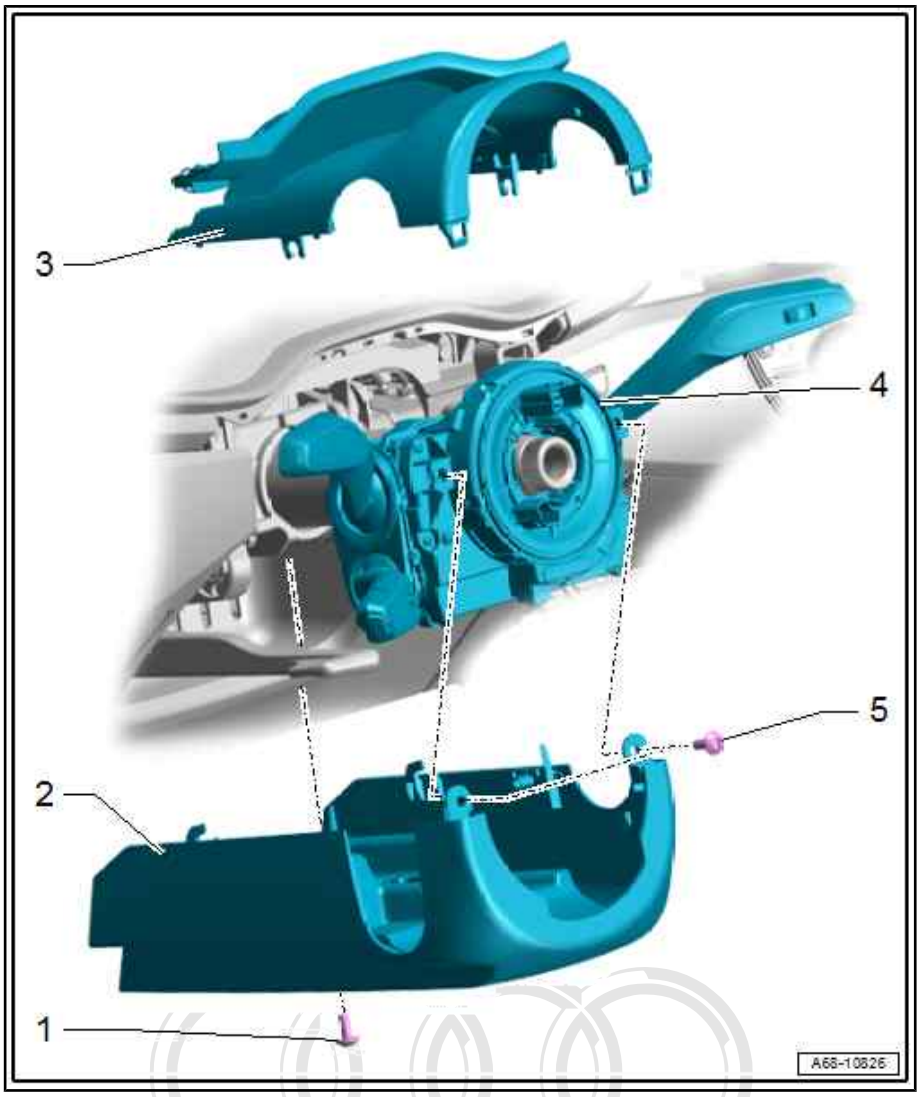
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 23
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

4 - Steering column switch module

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

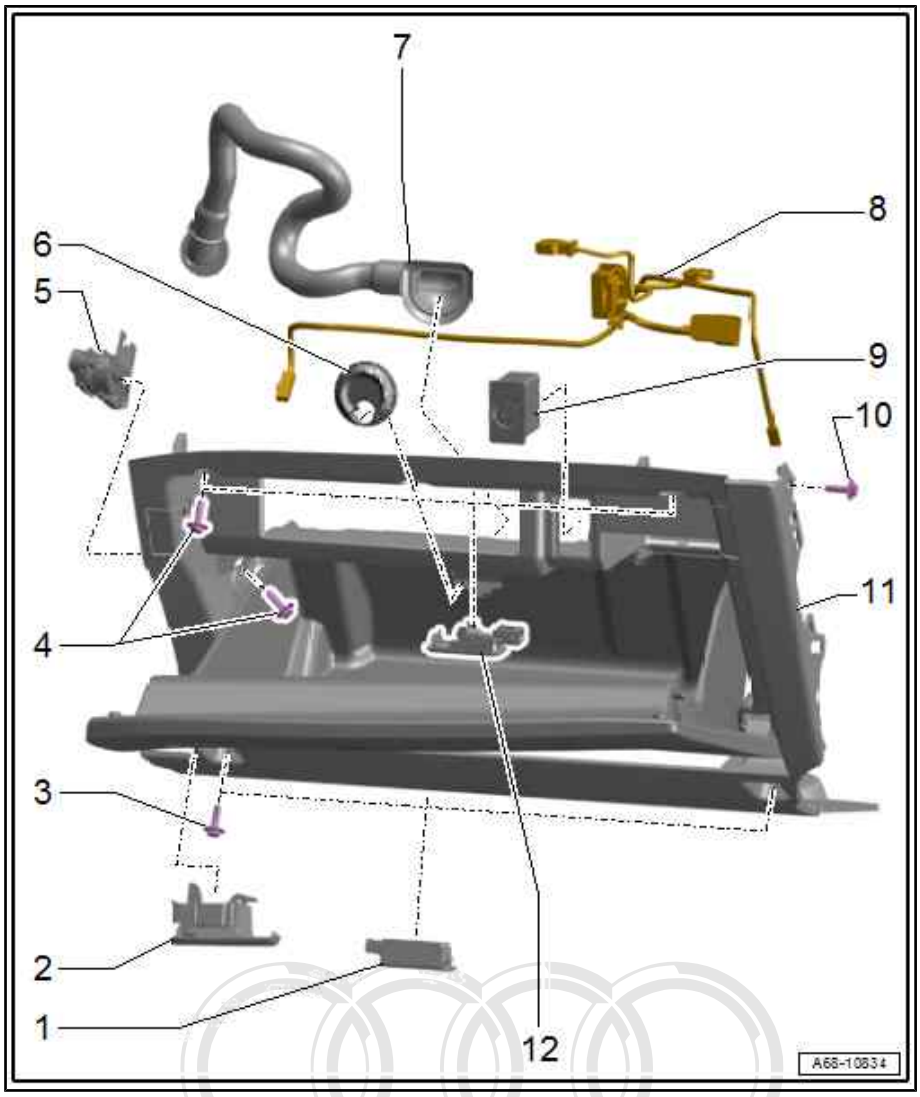
5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Exploded view - glove box



1 - Front right footwell light - K269-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel

2 - Glove box opening mechanism

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 26
- ❑ Press into glove box lid until it engages audibly
- ❑ Removing and installing lock cylinder ⇒ page 27

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

4 - Bolts

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Cushioning element

- ❑ For glove box lid
- ❑ With glove compartment light switch - E26-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31

6 - Vent for glove box cooling

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Dummy cover on vehicles without glove box cooling

7 - Connection for glove box cooling

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

8 - Wiring harness

- ❑ Clip into glove box

9 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

> **WARNING**
> *Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently. Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Rest-of-world vehicles/equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 147
- ❑ Press into installation opening until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

11 - Glove box

- ❑ A5 Cabriolet: with glove compartment locking motor - V224-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 27

12 - Glove box light - W6-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel

1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)

Removing

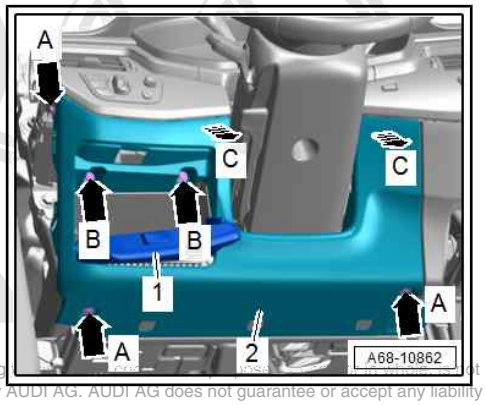
– Remove side dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 229 .

– Open storage compartment cover -1- and remove bolts -arrows B-.

– Remove bolts -arrows A-.

– Unfasten dash panel cover (driver side) -2- from dash panel by hand -arrows C-.

– Detach dash panel cover (driver side).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

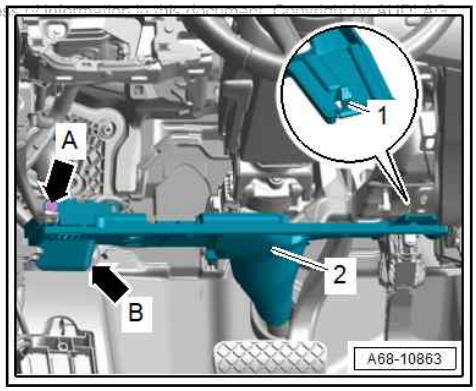
– Remove bolt -arrow A-.

– Using a screwdriver, release catch -1- and pull dash panel cover (bottom, driver side) -2- towards rear out of mounting -arrow B-.

– Disengage diagnostic connection from dash panel cover.

– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connectors for footwell light, parking aid warning buzzer and emergency call loudspeaker.

– Remove storage compartment, if necessary.



Installing

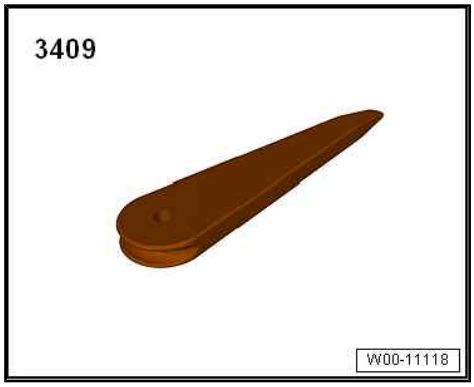
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - dash panel cover (driver side)”, page 20

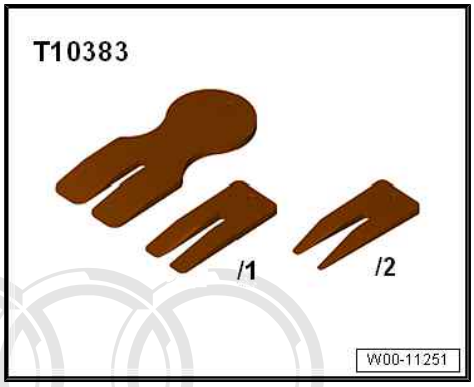
1.6 Removing and installing steering column trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

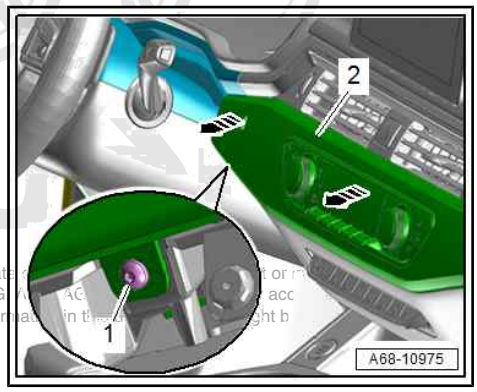
– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 23 .

– Remove trim for light switch ⇒ page 232 .

– Remove bolt/fastener -1-.

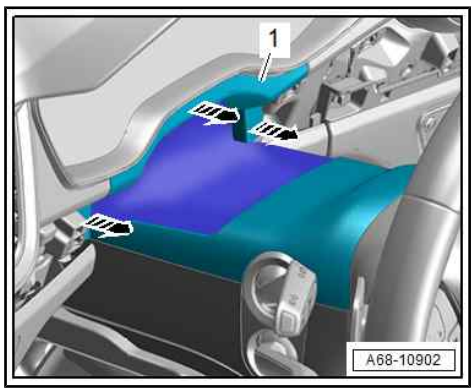
– Unclip trim -2- together with air conditioner operating and display unit in vicinity of trim cover -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of

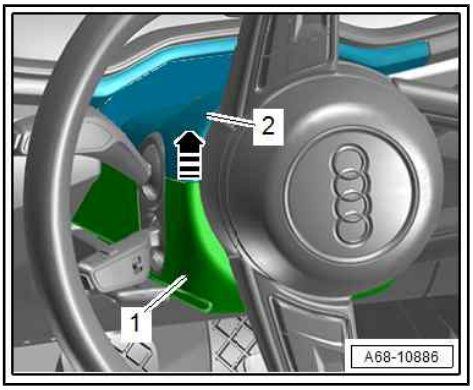


– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Unclip trim cover -1- for steering column trim (top) from dash panel vent -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .



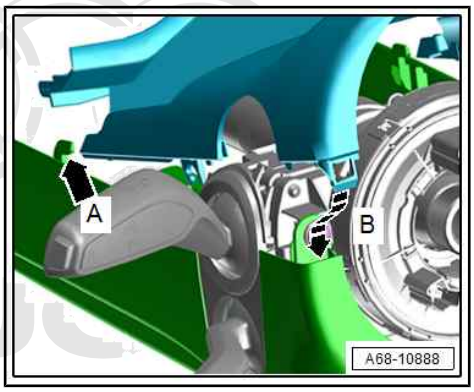
– Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
– Using a small flat-bladed screwdriver, carefully prise steering column trim (top) -2- off steering column trim (bottom) -1- -arrow-.
– Turn steering wheel back through 180° and repeat procedure on opposite side.
– Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).
– Disengage steering column trim (top) from steering column trim (bottom) and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– First engage front of steering column trim (top) in lugs -arrow A- on steering column trim (bottom).
– Clip retaining tabs on steering column trim (top) into steering column trim (bottom) -arrow B-.
– Make sure steering column trim sections engage correctly with each other.



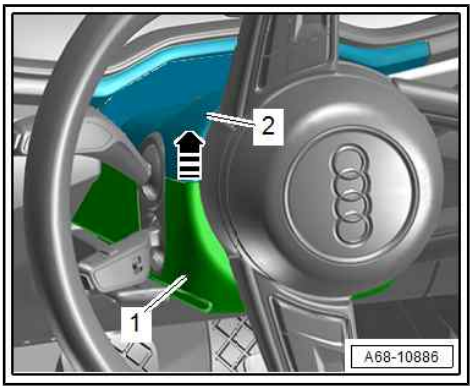
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim", page 21

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

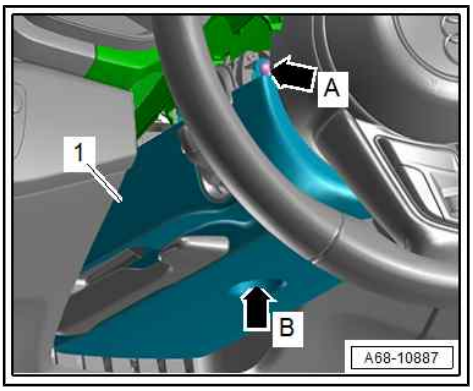
1.7 Removing and installing steering column trim (bottom)

Removing

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
– Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
– Using a small flat-bladed screwdriver, carefully prise steering column trim (top) -2- off steering column trim (bottom) -1- -arrow-.
– Turn steering wheel back through 180° and repeat procedure on opposite side.
– Disengage steering column trim (top) from steering column trim (bottom) and move it upwards and to one side.



– Remove accessible bolt -arrow A- for steering column trim (bottom).
– Turn steering wheel back through 180° and unscrew bolt on opposite side.
– Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).
– Remove bolt -arrow B- and take off steering column trim (bottom) -1-.
– Disengage cable retainer from steering column trim.



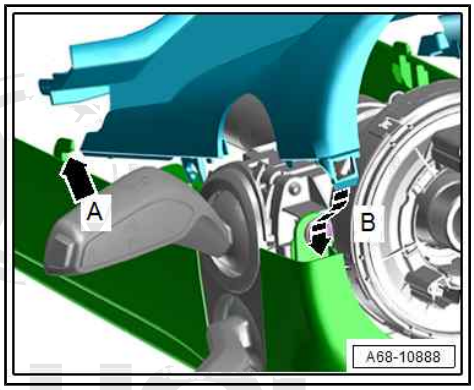
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– First engage front of steering column trim (top) in lugs -arrow A- on steering column trim (bottom).

– Clip retaining tabs on steering column trim (top) into steering column trim (bottom) -arrow B-.

– Make sure steering column trim sections engage correctly with each other.



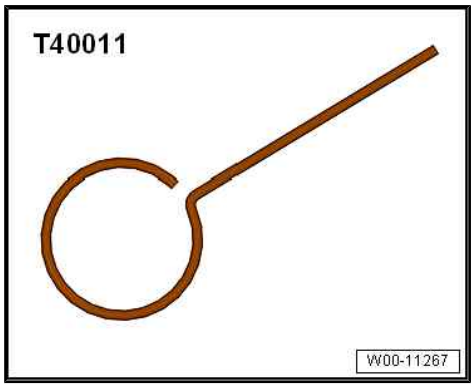
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - steering column trim”, page 21

1.8 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Locking pin - T40011-

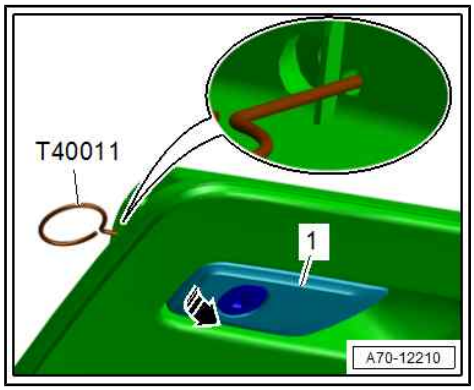


♦ Medium hard scraper (semi-round) from scraper set - VAS 6845- (not illustrated)

Removing

– Insert locking pin - T40011- through opening in side of glove box lid and release retaining hook for glove box opening mechanism.

– At the same time, unclip glove box opening mechanism -1- from glove box lid with medium hard scraper (semi-round) -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 22

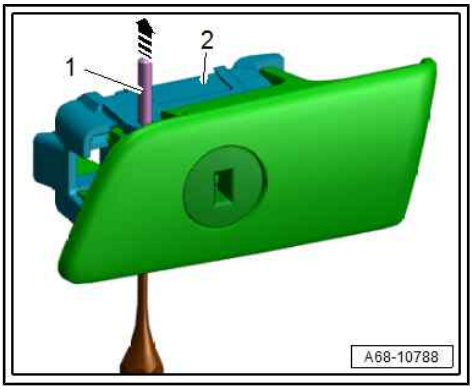
1.9 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove box opening mechanism

Removing

– Remove glove box opening mechanism ⇒ page 26 .

– Drive shaft -1- out of mounting hole in direction of -arrow- using a punch.

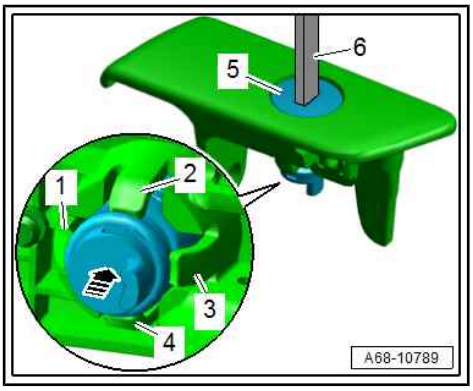
– Detach cover -2-.



Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to lock cylinder.

- *Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted; this will ensure that tumblers and springs do not fall out.*



– Insert key -6- into lock cylinder.

– Carefully release fasteners -1 ... 4- one after another using a small screwdriver, and at the same time press out lock cylinder -5- -arrow-.

Installing

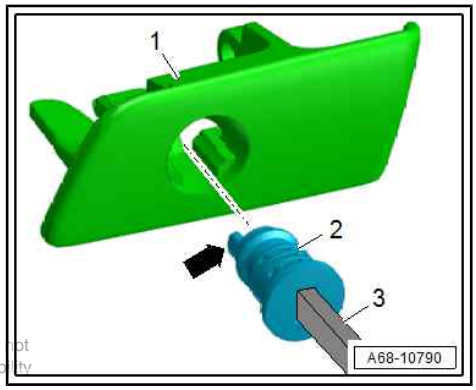
– Insert key -3- into new lock cylinder -2-.

– Pull protective cap off new lock cylinder.

– Insert lock cylinder into glove box opening mechanism -1- until it engages (pay attention to correct installation position of lug).

• Lug -arrow- on lock cylinder should face towards left.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.10 Removing and installing glove box

Removing (on some country-specific versions and equipment versions):

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Continued for all vehicles:

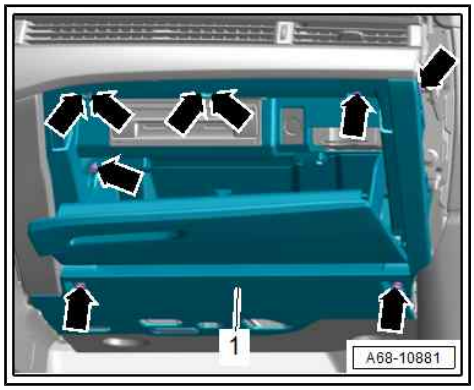
– Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side) ⇒ page 229 .

– Remove footwell light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel .

– Open glove box lid and unscrew bolts -arrows-.

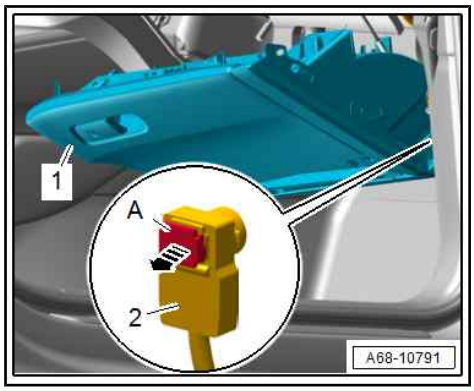
– Detach glove box -1-, carefully pull it out slightly and unplug electrical connector.

– Depending on equipment version: Remove connection for glove box cooling.



NAR vehicles:

– Detach glove box -1- and carefully pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector.



WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unless authorized, Audi AG does not guarantee the accuracy, completeness or timeliness of the information contained in this electronic document or any consequences arising from it. Audi AG does not accept any liability in relation to licensed third-party websites accessed via this electronic document.

– To do so, release connector locking element -A- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -2-.

Installing (on some country-specific versions and equipment versions)

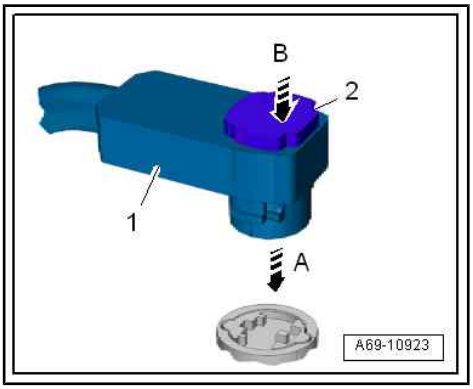
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Attach electrical connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.



Caution

Risk of damage to surface of knee airbag due to mechanical stress.

- *After completing the repairs, perform a visual check to make sure that the surface of the knee airbag is not damaged.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Continued for all vehicles:

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction, duplication or publication, even in part, in whole, is not permitted without the prior written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 22

1.11 Removing and installing glove box lid

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Punch
- Drill
- Drill bit, ∅ 10 mm
- Safety goggles

Removing

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .

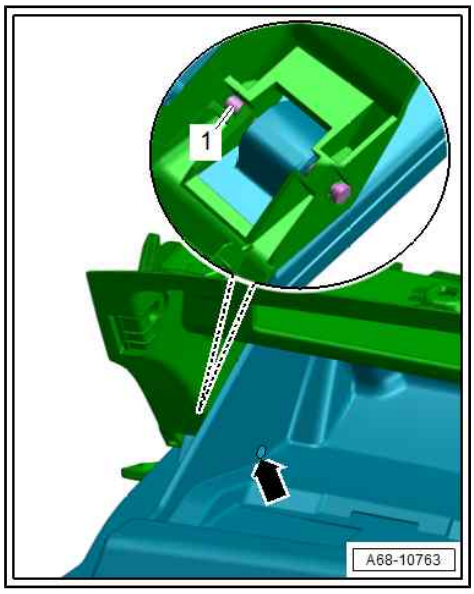
– Remove cushioning element for glove box lid ⇒ page 31 .

– A5 Cabriolet: Unplug electrical connector for glove compartment locking motor - V224- .

– Set down glove box on a soft surface.

– Open glove box lid and drill a hole in it from inside -arrow- at level of hinge pins -1- using a ∅ 10 mm bit, as shown in illustration.

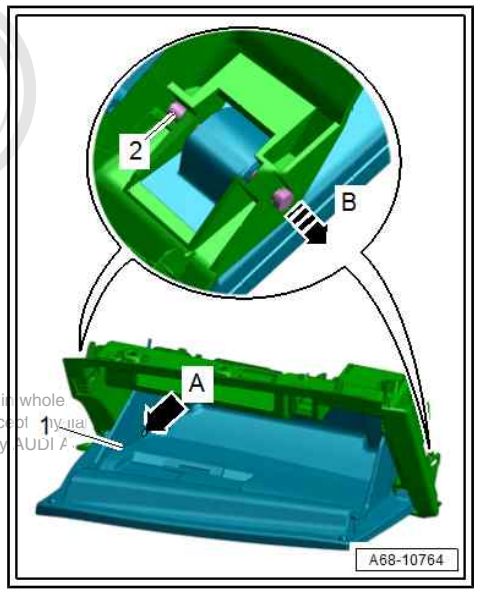
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.



– Using a punch, knock out hinge pins -2- in direction of -arrow B- through hole -arrow A- in glove box lid.

– Repeat procedure on hinge pin on opposite side.

– Detach lid -1- from glove box.



Installing

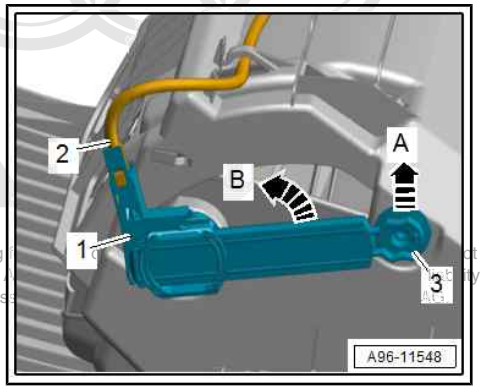
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 22

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.12 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid

Removing



– Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Press actuating arm -3- out of locking mechanism -arrow A-.
– Release switch -1- in anti-clockwise direction -arrow B- and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying
permitted unless authorised by
with respect to the correctnes

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert switch and press actuating arm in until it engages audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - glove box”, page 22

2 Equipment

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - sun visors”, page 32

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - windbreak”, page 34

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing sun visor”, page 35

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor”, page 36

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing grab handle”, page 36

⇒ “2.6 Servicing windbreak”, page 38

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing mounting for windbreak”, page 39

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - sun visors

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - sun visors, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 32

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - sun visors, A5 Cabriolet”, page 33

2.1.1 Exploded view - sun visors, A5 Coupé/Sportback

1 - Sun visor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 35
- ❑ Engage bracket for sun visor in body opening

2 - Expanding cap

- ❑ Clipped into sun visor
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

3 - Grab handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

4 - Expanding caps

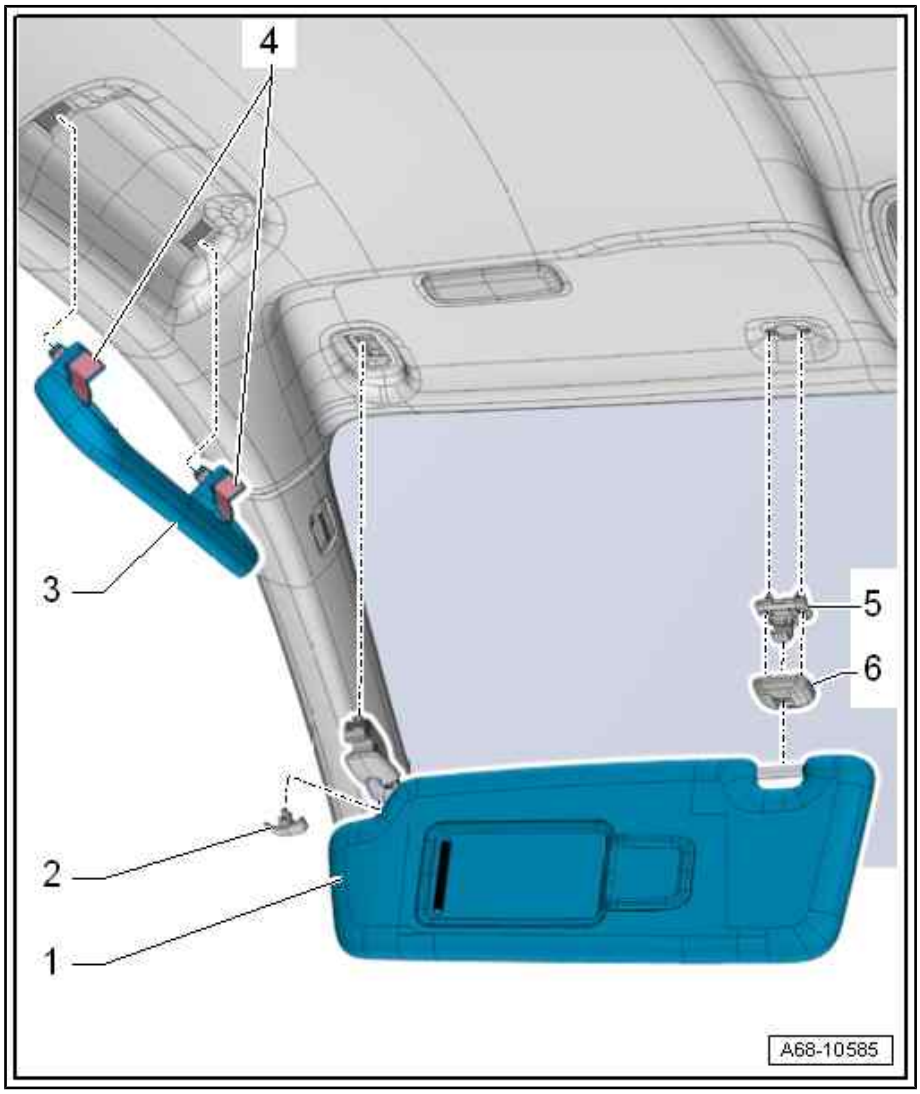
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

5 - Centre bracket

- ❑ For sun visor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36
- ❑ Take care not to damage fasteners when inserting them

6 - Expanding cap

- ❑ Clipped into centre bracket for sun visor



2.1.2 Exploded view - sun visors, A5 Cabriolet

1 - Cap

- ❑ Clipped into sun visor
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

3 - Centre bracket

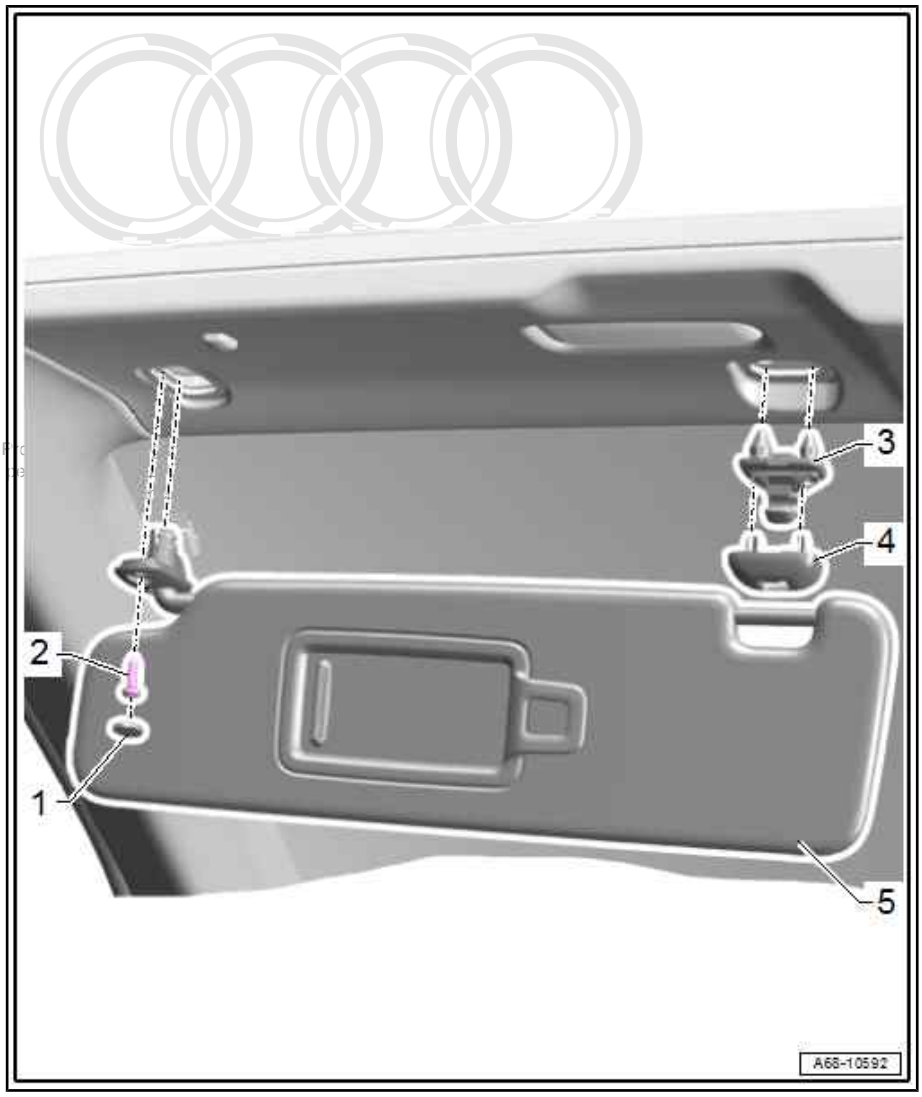
- ❑ For sun visor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36
- ❑ Take care not to damage fasteners when inserting them

4 - Expanding cap

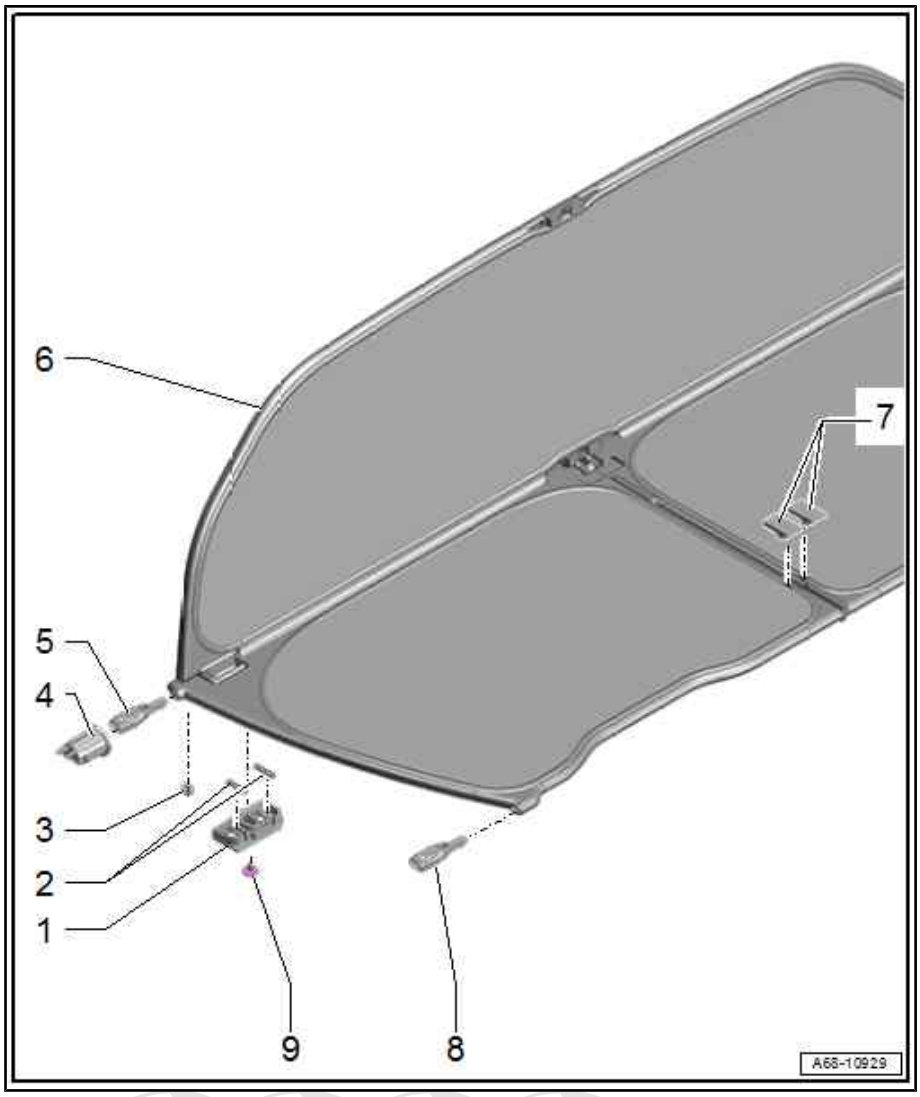
- ❑ Clipped into centre bracket for sun visor

5 - Sun visor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 36
- ❑ Engage bracket for sun visor in body opening



2.2 Exploded view - windbreak



1 - Locking element
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Included in repair kit

2 - Spring
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Included in repair kit

3 - Clip
- ❑ Included in repair kit
- ❑ Unclip using a screwdriver
- ❑ Clip into windbreak

4 - Mounting for windbreak
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 39
- ❑ Clip into side trim

5 - Bearing (front)
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Included in repair kit
- ❑ Clip into windbreak

6 - Windbreak
- ❑ Performing repair work ⇒ page 38

7 - Stop buffer
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Included in repair kit
- ❑ Unclip using a screwdriver
- ❑ Clip into windbreak

8 - Bearing (rear)
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Included in repair kit
- ❑ Clip into windbreak

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Included in repair kit
- ❑ 0.9 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Removing and installing sun visor

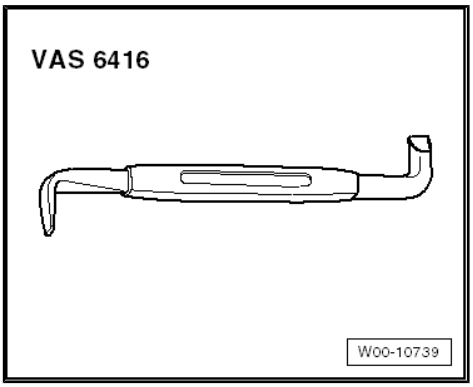
⇒ “2.3.1 Removing and installing sun visor - A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 35

⇒ “2.3.2 Removing and installing sun visor - A5 Cabriolet”, page 36

2.3.1 Removing and installing sun visor - A5 Coupé/Sportback

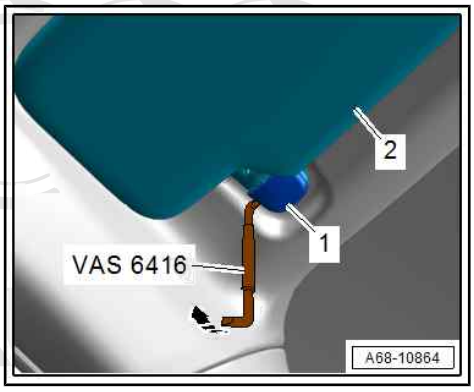
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Angled screwdriver - VAS 6416-



Removing

– Unclip expanding cap -1- for bracket for sun visor -arrow-. To do so, slide angled screwdriver - VAS 6416- only approx. 1 mm under cap.



Note

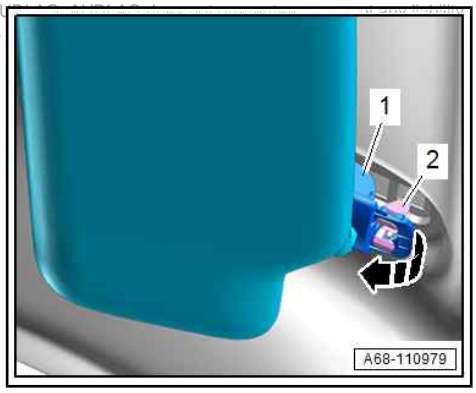
Inserting angled screwdriver - VAS 6416- further would position it beneath sun visor. The expanding cap can then not be prised off.

– Disengage sun visor -2- from centre bracket.

– Unclip sun visor bracket -1- with retaining clip -2- downwards -arrow- from body opening and remove.

– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector and detach sun visor.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness



Installing

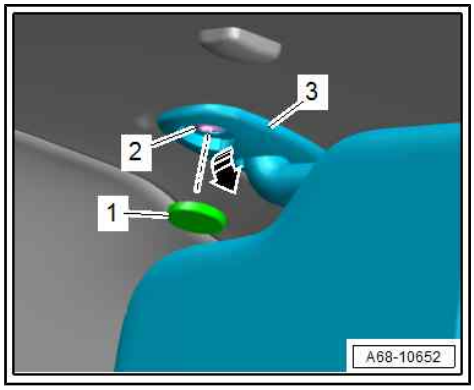
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - sun visors, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 32

2.3.2 Removing and installing sun visor - A5 Cabriolet

Removing



– Disengage sun visor from centre bracket.
– Using screwdriver, unclip cap -1- and unscrew bolt -2- underneath cap.
– Remove sun visor bracket -3- downwards -arrow- from body opening.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector and detach sun visor.

Installing

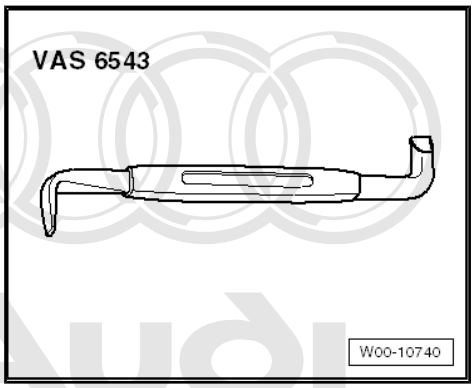
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1.2 Exploded view - sun visors, A5 Cabriolet", page 33

2.4 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor

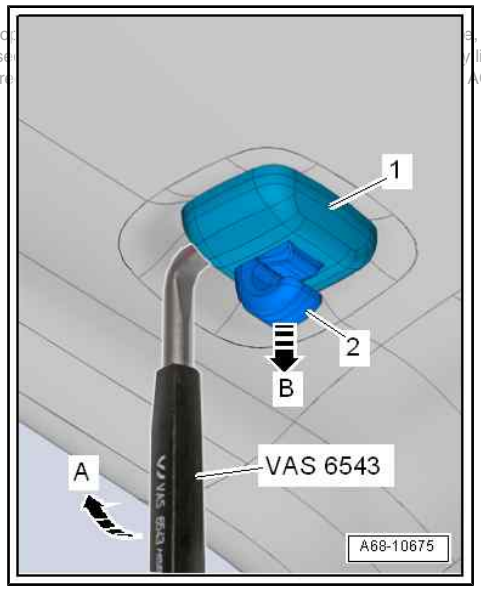
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Protected by copyright. Co e, is not permitted unless authorise liability with respect to the corre AG.

Removing



– Disengage sun visor from centre bracket for sun visor and fold to the side.
– Unclip cover -1- for centre bracket for sun visor -arrow A-. To do so, slide angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- only approx. 1 mm under cap.

Note

Inserting angled screwdriver - VAS 6543- further would position it beneath centre bracket for sun visor. Cover can then not be prised off.

– Pull out centre bracket for sun visor -2- -arrow B-.

Installing

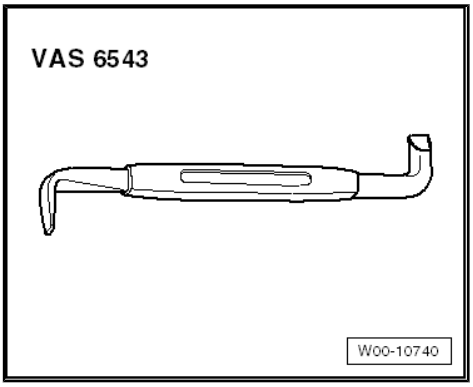
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - sun visors", page 32

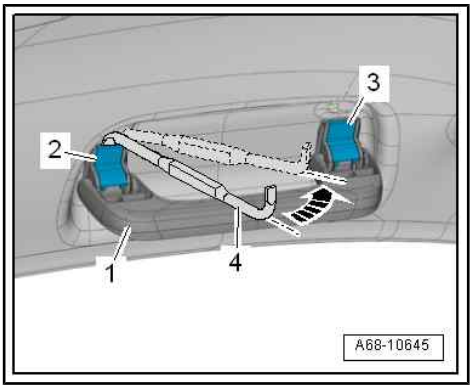
2.5 Removing and installing grab handle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Removing



Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to grab handle if silicone cushioning element and spring fall out.

♦ ***Unclip expanding caps -2 and 3- only up to detent; do not pull them out fully.***

– Insert angled screwdriver -4- in gap behind expanding cap -2-.

– Swivel angled screwdriver -arrow- until expanding cap engages audibly in detent.

– Repeat procedure on second expanding cap -3-.

– Pull grab handle -1- out of cut-out in body.

– Leave expanding caps in detent position in grab handle.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert grab handle in cut-out in body.

• There must not be a gap between the handle and the roof trim.

– Press in expanding caps.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - sun visors, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 32

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6 Servicing windbreak

⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing locking element”, page 38

⇒ “2.6.2 Removing and installing bearing”, page 38

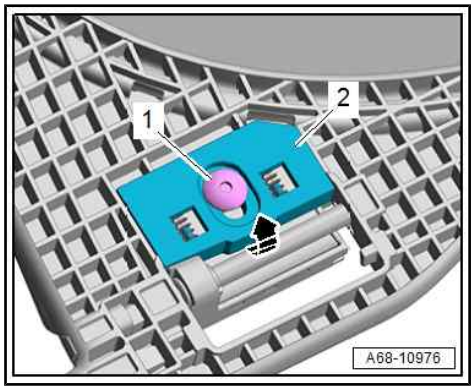
2.6.1 Removing and installing locking element

Removing

– Set down windbreak on a clean surface.

– Remove bolt -1-.

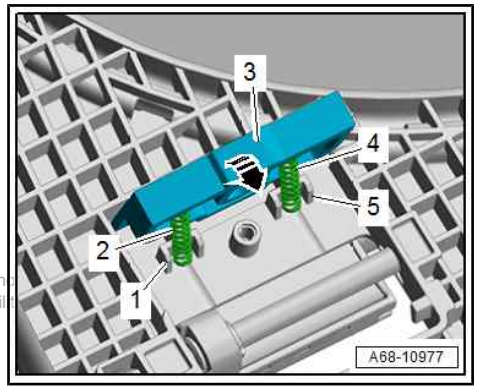
– Carefully open locking element -2- upwards -arrow- and remove together with springs.



Installing

– Install springs -2, 4- in locking element -3- and insert springs in mountings -1, 5-.

– Press locking element towards rear against spring pressure and at the same time pivot it downwards into installation position -arrow-.



The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is n
Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liabil
Only applies to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - windbreak”, page 34

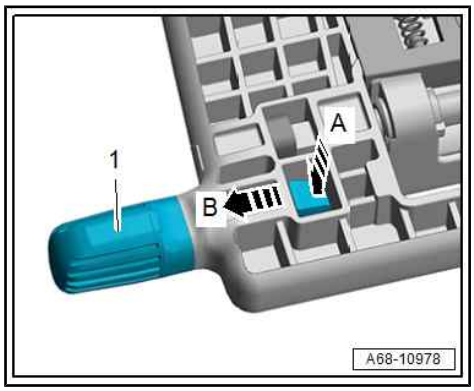
2.6.2 Removing and installing bearing

Removing

– Set down windbreak on a clean surface.

– Press retaining tab down firmly with a screwdriver -arrow A- and at the same time press bearing -1- out of mounting -arrow B-.

– Detach and remove bearing.



Installing

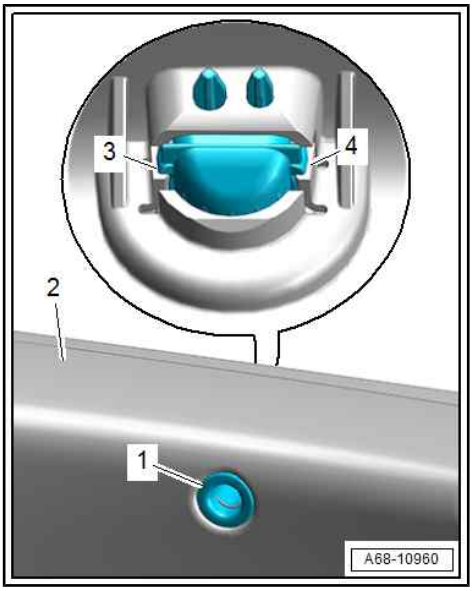
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - windbreak”, page 34

2.7 Removing and installing mounting for windbreak

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 295 .
– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 114 .
– Thread out belt and belt end fitting.
– Remove belt feeder motor ⇒ page 99 .
– Release fasteners -3, 4- at rear of side trim using a screwdriver.
– At the same time, press mounting -1- for windbreak out of side trim -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - windbreak", page 34

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Centre console

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 40

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)”, page 46

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing ashtray (rear)”, page 47

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing centre console insert”, page 47

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing centre console storage compartments (front)”, page 48

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing centre console trim”, page 49

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front)”, page 50

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing centre console”, page 50

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console”, page 51

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing cup holders”, page 54

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing vent (rear) in centre console”, page 55

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing bracket for centre console”, page 55

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1 Exploded view - centre console

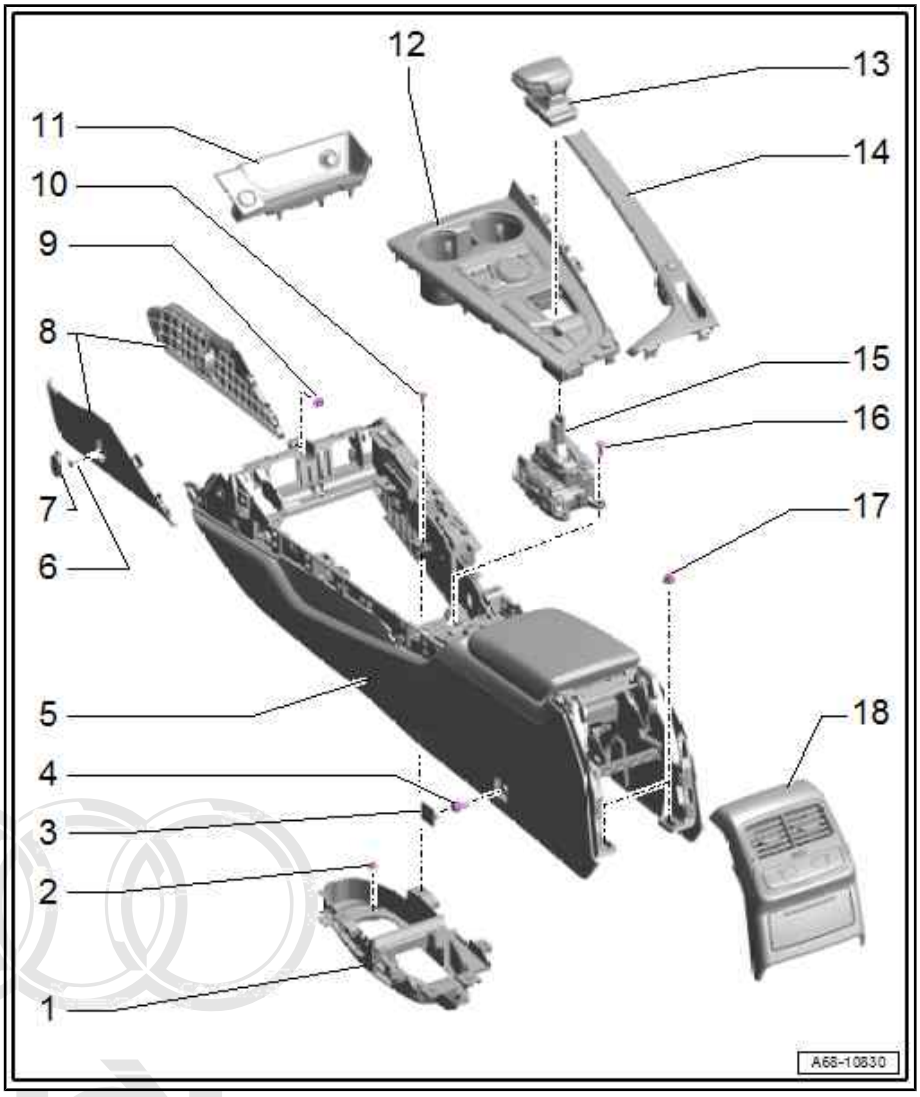
Centre console ⇒ page 40

Centre console insert, A5 Coupé/Sportback ⇒ page 42

Centre console insert, A5 Cabriolet ⇒ page 43

Storage compartment for centre console ⇒ page 45

Centre console



1 - Bracket for centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 55

2 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Cap
- ❑ Press into centre console

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 20 Nm

5 - Centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

7 - Cap
- ❑ Press into centre console trim

8 - Centre console trim
- ❑ Front footwell
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50

9 - Nut
- ❑ 3 Nm

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

11 - Storage compartment (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 48
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Centre console insert
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

13 - Selector lever handle
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Exploded view - selector mechanism

14 - Trim panel for centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

15 - Shift mechanism
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Exploded view - selector mechanism

16 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Exploded view - selector mechanism

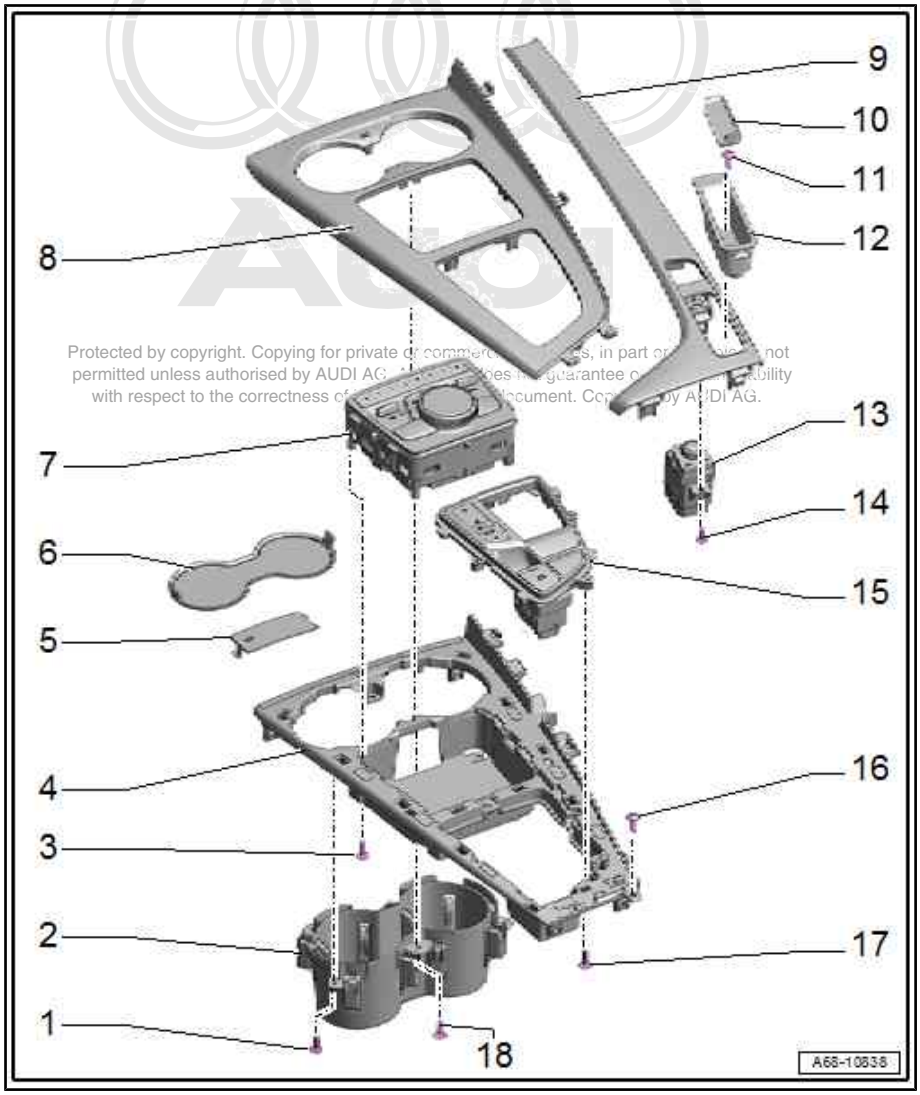
17 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

18 - Trim (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 46
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

Centre console insert, A5 Coupé/Sportback



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

2 - Cup holder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 54

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

4 - Centre console insert

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Cover for manual release mechanism

- ❑ Engage in cup holder and press on until it engages audibly

6 - Lining for cup holder

7 - Multimedia system operating unit - E380-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

8 - Trim panel for centre console insert

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 53
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

9 - Trim panel for centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

10 - Storage compartment lining

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

12 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Engage in trim panel and press on until it engages audibly

13 - Driver side volume regulator - E67-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

15 - Selected range display - Y5-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in centre console

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

17 - Bolt

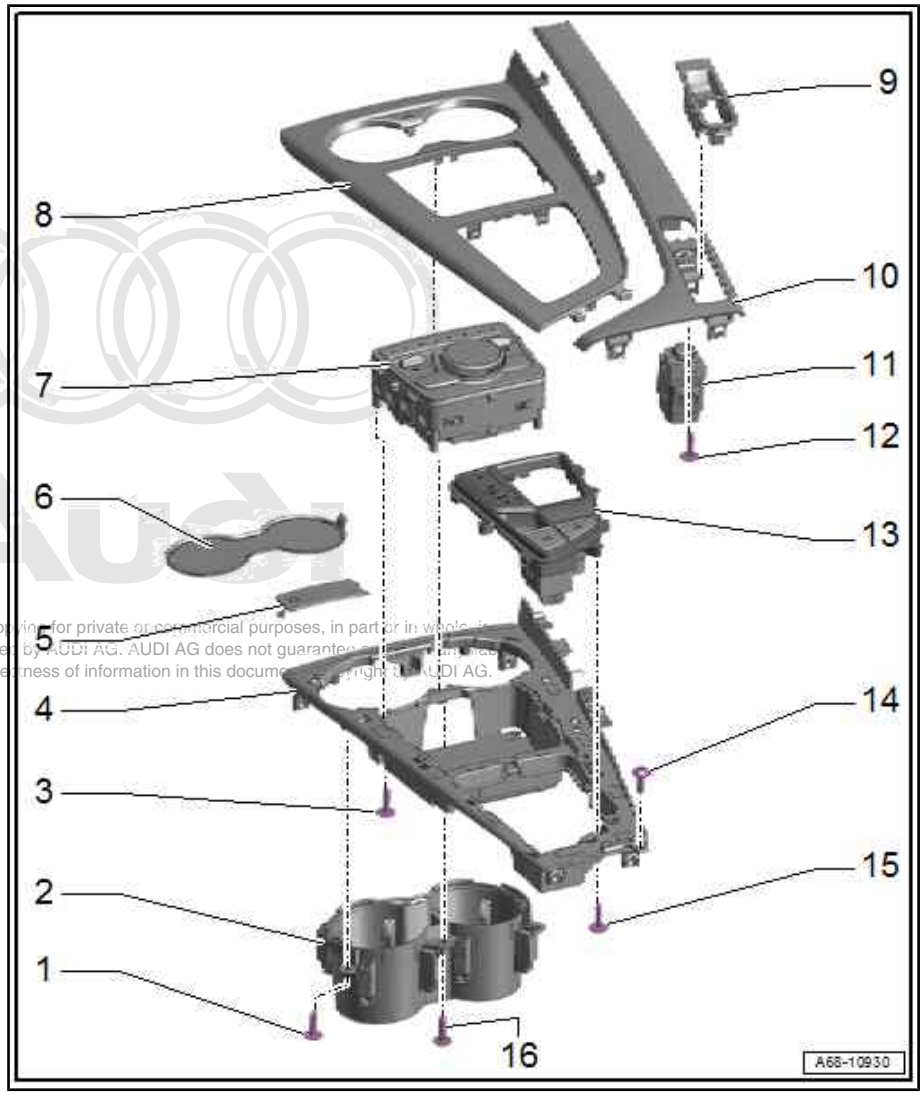
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in centre console

18 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

Centre console insert, A5 Cabriolet

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

2 - Cup holder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 54

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

4 - Centre console insert

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Cover for manual release mechanism

- ❑ Engage in cup holder and press on until it engages audibly

6 - Lining for cup holder

7 - Multimedia system operating unit - E380-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

8 - Trim panel for centre console insert

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 53
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

9 - Mounting

- ❑ For convertible roof actuation button - E137-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.9.1 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console”, page 51
- ❑ Engage in trim panel and press on until it engages audibly

10 - Trim panel for centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

11 - Driver side volume regulator - E67-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - Selected range display - Y5-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in centre console

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

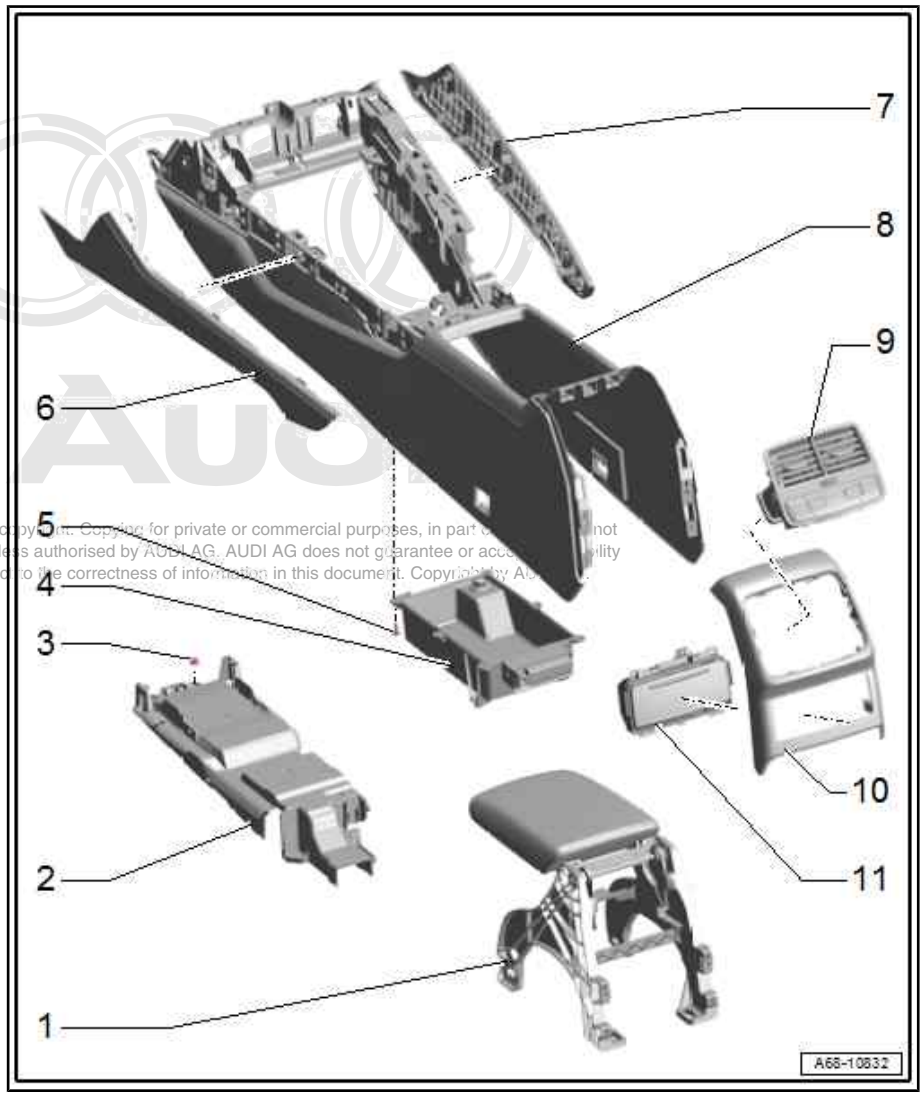
15 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in centre console

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

Centre console storage compartment



1 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58

2 - Cover for control unit

- ❑ On centre tunnel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 ”, page 130

3 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

4 - Storage compartment for multimedia devices

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

6 - Centre console trim (driver side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

7 - Centre console trim (passenger side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Vent (rear)/storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 55
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Insert in installation position and press in as far as stop

10 - Trim (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 46
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

11 - Ashtray (rear)/storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3.2 Removing and installing centre console trim (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part s not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee ability with respect to the correctness of information in this document AUDI AG.



Removing

– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.

– Unclip trim -1- from centre console -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- or by hand.

– Detach trim from centre console towards rear.

– Unplug electrical connectors.

Installing

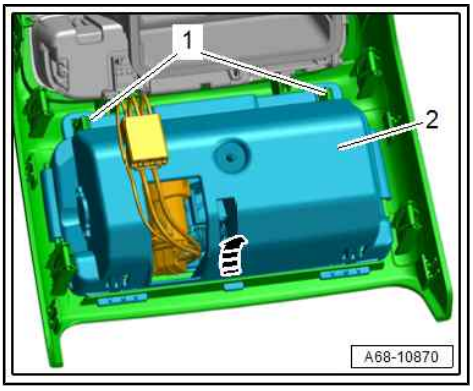
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 40



3.3 Removing and installing ashtray (rear)

Removing



– Remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ page 46 .
– Release ashtray -2- at fasteners -1-.
– Disengage ashtray upwards from trim -arrow- and remove.

Installing

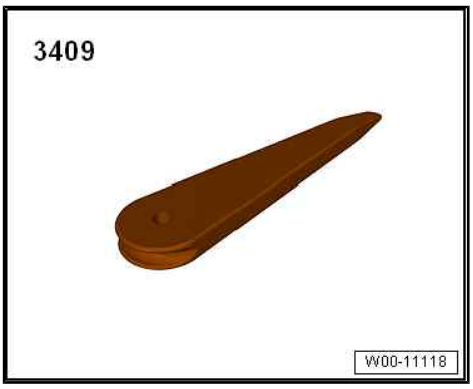
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 40

3.4 Removing and installing centre console insert

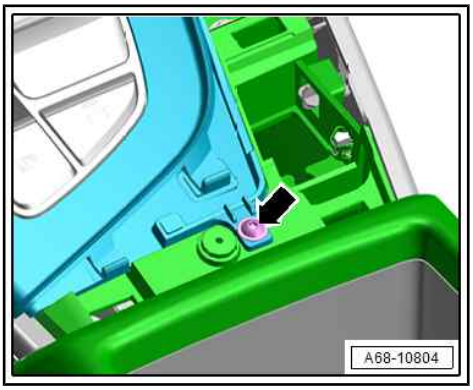
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



– Remove trim panel for centre console ⇒ page 51 .
– Remove bolt -arrow-.



– Equipment version with gear lever: Carefully prise out gear lever boot -1- at side -arrows- with your hand or removal wedge - 3409- and fold upwards.
– Equipment version with selector lever: Remove selector lever handle ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector lever handle .

– Starting at rear, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip insert for centre console upwards -arrow-.
– Release all other retaining catches for centre console insert.
– Carefully turn over insert -1- for centre console, unplug electrical connectors and remove insert.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 40

3.5 Removing and installing centre console storage compartments (front)

⇒ “3.5.1 Removing and installing storage compartment (front)”, page 48

⇒ “3.5.2 Removing and installing storage compartment (rear)”, page 49

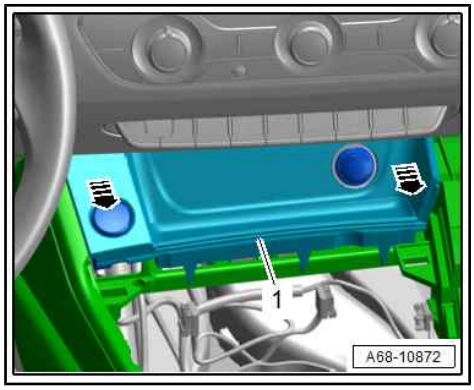
⇒ “3.5.3 Removing and installing storage compartment for multi-media devices”, page 49

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.5.1 Removing and installing storage compartment (front)

Removing

– Remove centre console insert ⇒ page 47 .
– Pull storage compartment -1- off centre console towards rear -arrows-.
– Unplug electrical connectors.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 40

3.5.2 Removing and installing storage compartment (rear)

Removing

– Pull storage compartment -1- off centre console towards rear by hand -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 40

3.5.3 Removing and installing storage compartment for multimedia devices

Removing

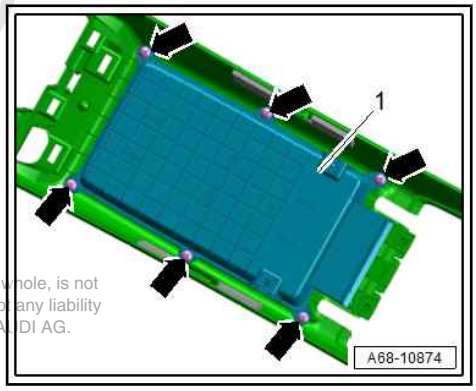
– Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 58 .

– Set down centre console on a soft surface.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Remove storage compartment -1-.

– Remove multimedia devices ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

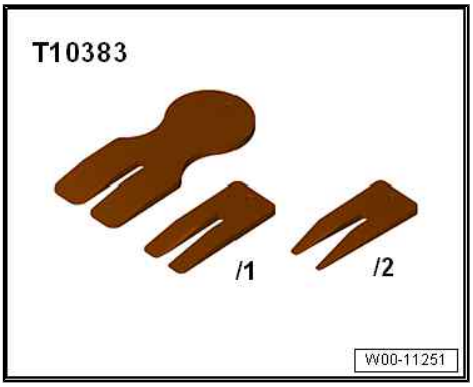
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 40

3.6 Removing and installing centre console trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



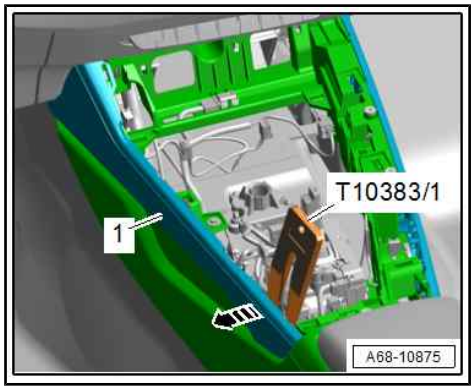
Removing

– Centre console trim (passenger side): Remove trim panel for centre console ⇒ page 51 .

– Centre console trim (driver side): Remove storage compartment (front) in centre console ⇒ page 48 .

– Starting at rear, use wedge - T10383/1- to unclip centre console trim -1- from centre console -arrow-.

– Release and detach all other retaining catches for centre console trim and remove trim.



Installing

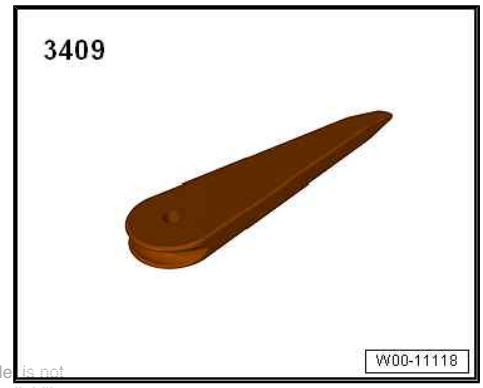
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 40

3.7 Removing and installing centre console footwell trim (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

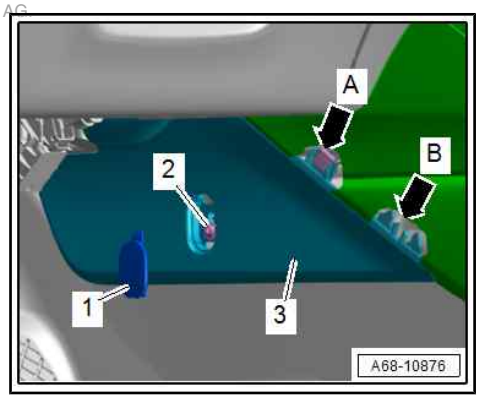
Removing

– Move front seat as far towards rear as it will go.

– Use a small screwdriver to unclip cap -1-.

– Unscrew bolt -2- underneath cap.

– Pull trim -3- downwards out of clip -arrow A- and disengage fasteners -arrow B- from centre console using removal wedge - 3409- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 40

3.8 Removing and installing centre console

Removing

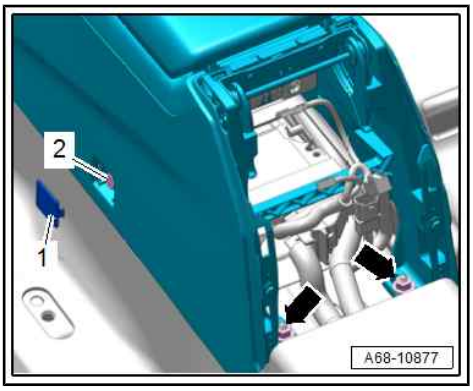
– Remove centre console footwell trim (front) ⇒ page 50 .

– Remove storage compartment (front) in centre console ⇒ page 48 .

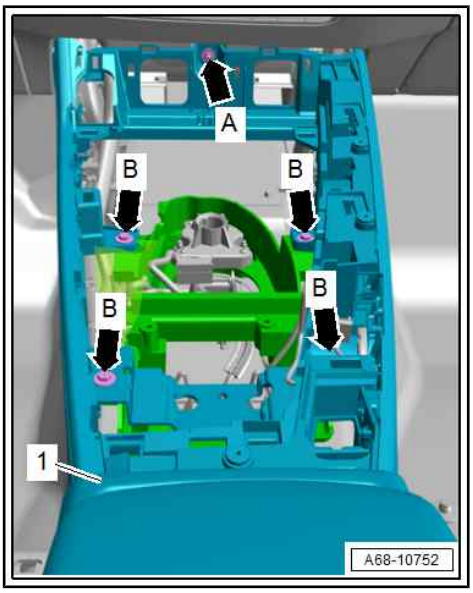
– Equipment version with selector lever: Remove selector mechanism ⇒ Gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector mechanism , or ⇒ Gearbox;

Rep. gr. 37 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector mechanism .

– Remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ page 46 .
– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
– Use a small screwdriver to unclip cap -1-.
– Unscrew bolt -2- underneath cap.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.
– Remove nuts -arrows-.
– Depending on equipment version: Lift up centre armrest and remove intermediate piece between air duct and vent (rear) in centre console.
– Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring clear.



– Unscrew nut -arrow A-.
– Remove bolts -arrows B-.
– Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring clear.
– Lift centre console -1- slightly at rear, pull towards rear and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 40

3.9 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console

⇒ “3.9.1 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console”, page 51

⇒ “3.9.2 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console insert”, page 53

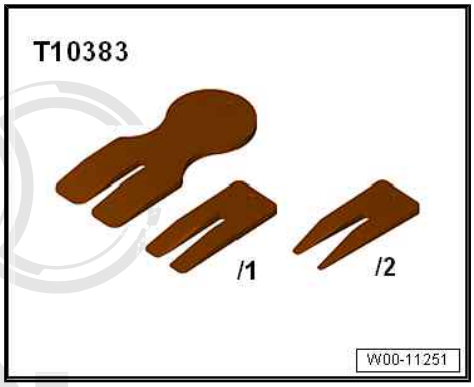
⇒ “3.9.3 Removing and installing trim frame for centre console insert”, page 54

3.9.1 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

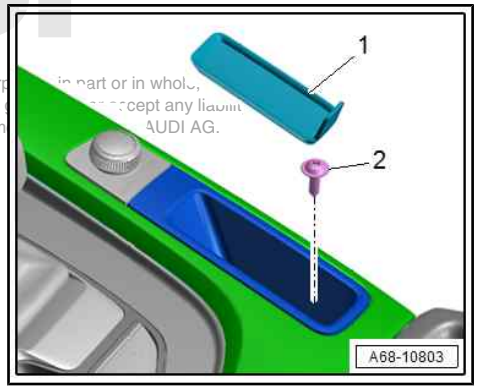
♦ Wedges - T10383-



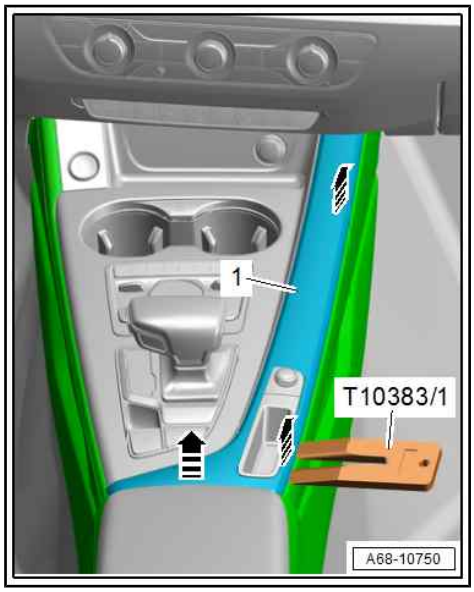
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp... in part or in whole, ...ccept any liabilit...
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not ... AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum...

Removing

– A5 Coupé/Sportback: Remove storage compartment lining -1- and unscrew bolt -2- located underneath it.



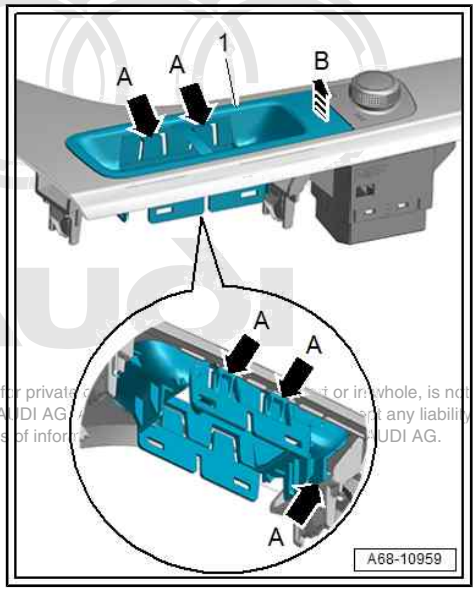
– Starting at rear, use wedge - T10383/1- to unclip trim panel -1- for centre console upwards from centre console -arrows-.
– Release all other retaining catches for trim panel for centre console.
– Pull trim panel for centre console towards rear, unplug electrical connectors and remove trim panel.



Removing mounting for convertible roof actuation button - A5 Cabriolet

– Remove convertible roof actuation button - E137- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in centre console .

– Release fasteners -arrows A- with a screwdriver and press mounting (front) -1- out of trim panel -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

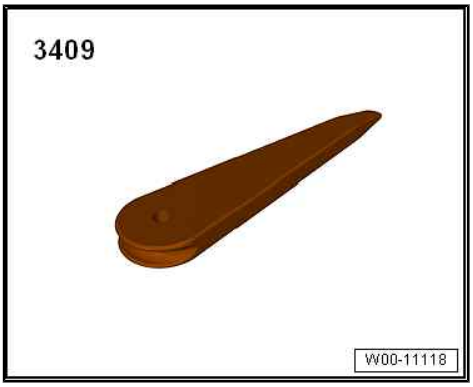
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 40

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.9.2 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console insert

Special tools and workshop equipment required

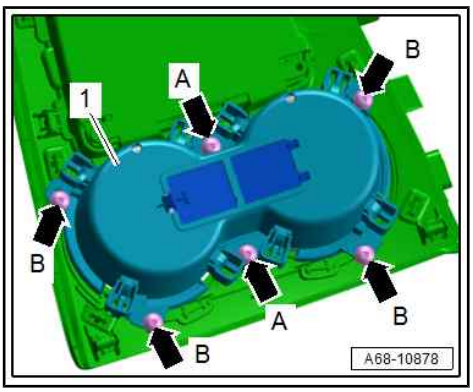
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



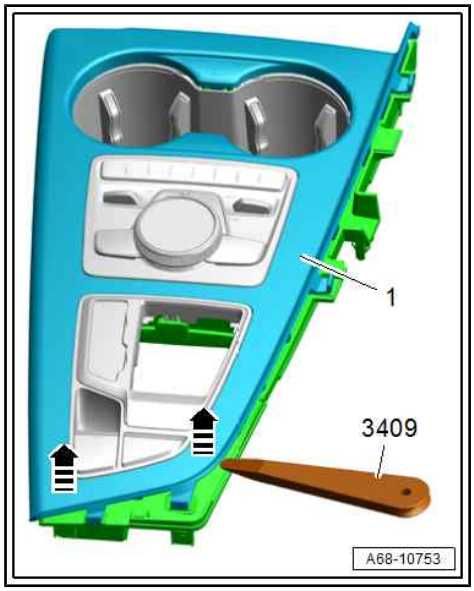
Removing

– Remove insert for centre console ⇒ page 47 and set it down on a soft surface.

– Remove bolts -arrows A-.



– Starting at rear, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip trim panel -1- from centre console insert -arrows-.
– Carefully release all other retaining catches for trim panel and remove trim panel.



Installing

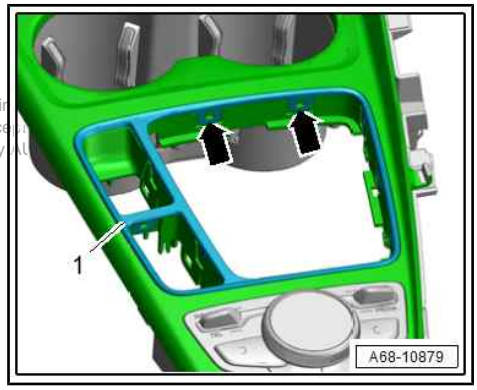
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 40

3.9.3 Removing and installing trim frame for centre console insert

Removing

– Remove centre console insert ⇒ page 47 .
– Remove electromechanical parking brake button ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing electromechanical parking brake button - E538- / auto-hold button - E540- .
– Remove multimedia system button module - E817- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .
– Carefully release fasteners -arrows- using a small screwdriver and at the same time press out trim frame -1-.
– Release remaining fasteners and remove trim frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

Installing

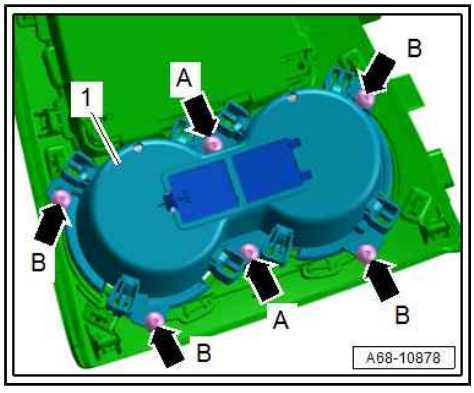
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 40

3.10 Removing and installing cup holders

Removing

– Remove insert for centre console ⇒ page 47 and set it down on a soft surface.
– Remove bolts -arrows A, B-.
– Remove cup holders -1-.



Installing

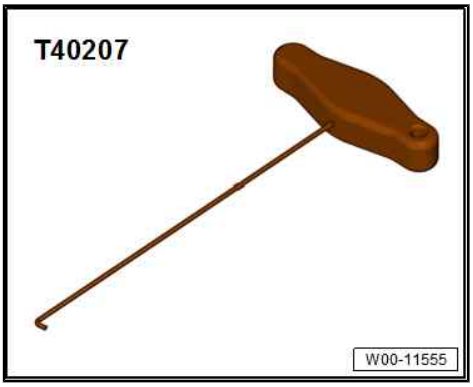
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - centre console”, page 40

3.11 Removing and installing vent (rear) in centre console

Special tools and workshop equipment required

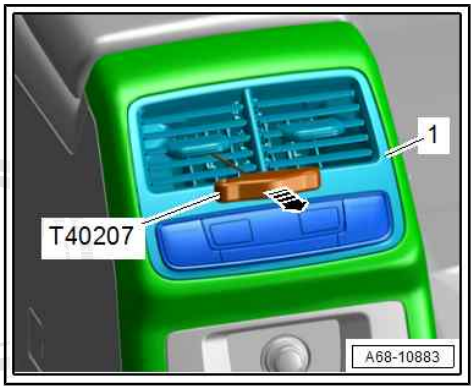
- Hook - T40207-



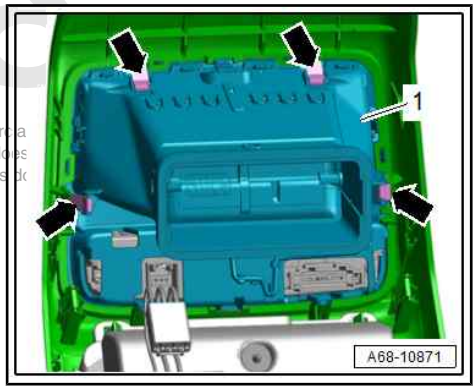
Removing

Note

A hole is provided on both sides of the vent for engaging the hook -T40207- .



- Carefully insert hook - T40207- between louvres and engage at side of vent.
- Working alternately on each side, carefully pull vent -1- out of opening -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connector.
- If it is not possible to attach hook, remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ page 46 .
- Release vent -1- at clips -arrows- and at the same time press out of trim.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Installing

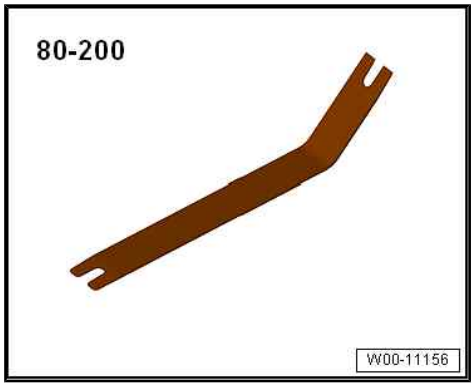
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 40

3.12 Removing and installing bracket for centre console

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



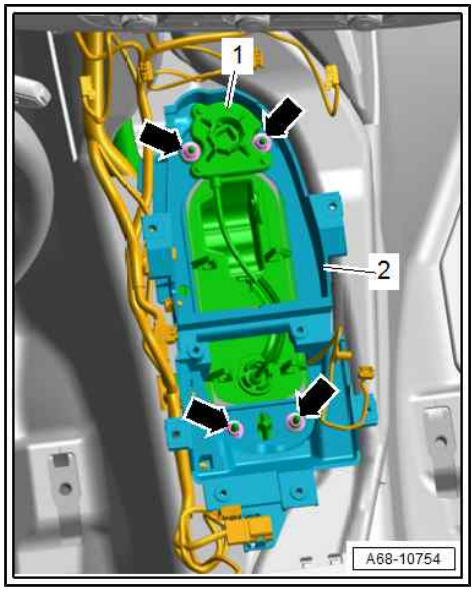
Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 50 .
– Unclip electrical wiring at bracket and move clear.
– Remove nuts -arrows-.
– Detach manual release for parking lock -1-.
– Remove bracket -2- for centre console.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - centre console", page 40



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Centre armrest (front)

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 57

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)”, page 58

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)”, page 58

⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing trim for hinge arm”, page 60

4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)

1 - Support bracket for centre armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58

2 - Cover (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)”, page 58
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

4 - Trim (front) for hinge arm

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 60
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Trim (rear) for hinge arm

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 60
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Centre armrest (top section)

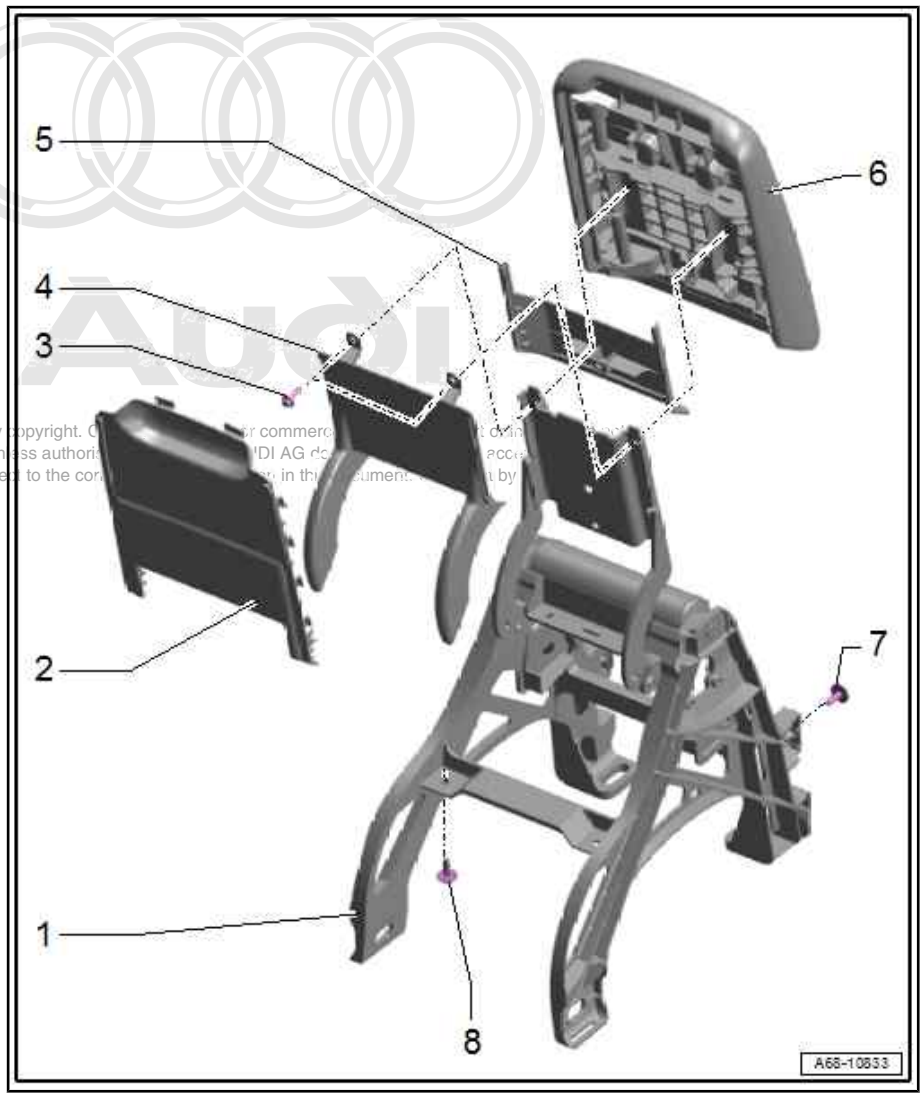
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm



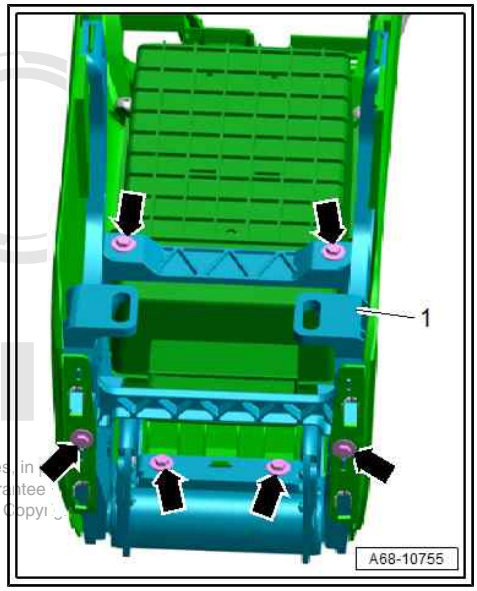
Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, distribution, display or transmission is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)

Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 50 and set it down on a soft surface.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- for centre armrest -1-.

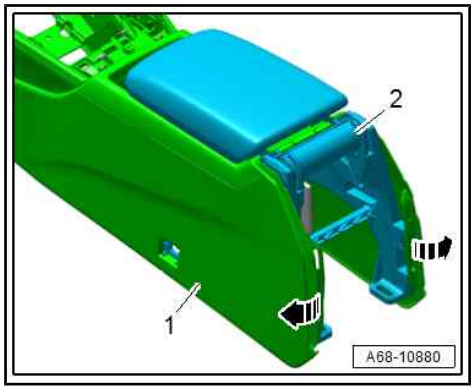


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr

– Open centre armrest.

– Disengage centre console at side of centre armrest.

– Press centre console -1- outwards at sides (rear) -arrows- and off centre armrest, and remove centre armrest -2-.



Installing

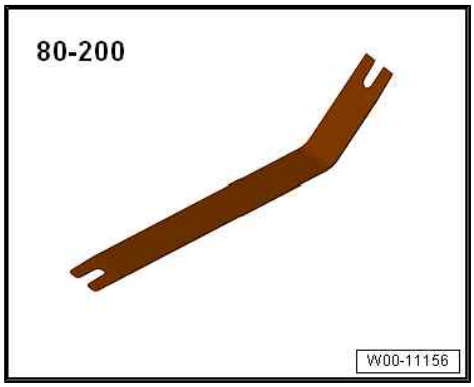
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)", page 57

4.3 Removing and installing centre armrest (top section)

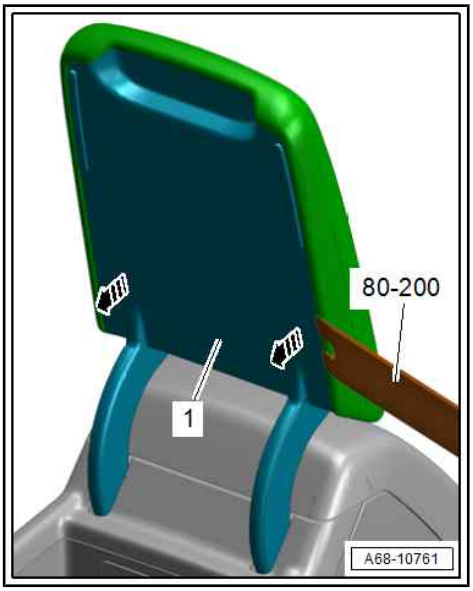
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



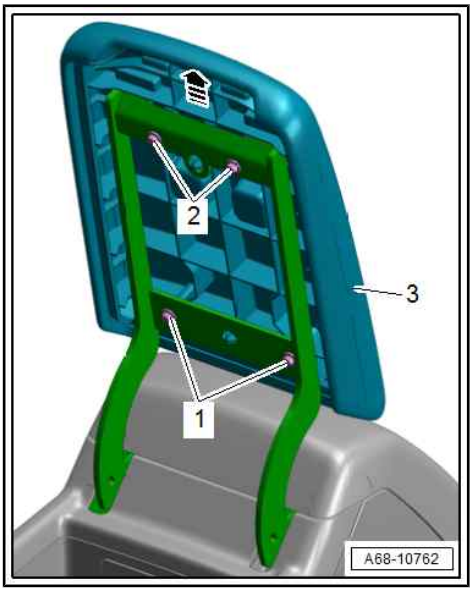
Removing: Version 1

– Open centre armrest.
– Starting at rear, unclip cover -1- from centre armrest using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows-.
– Unclip cover completely and detach.



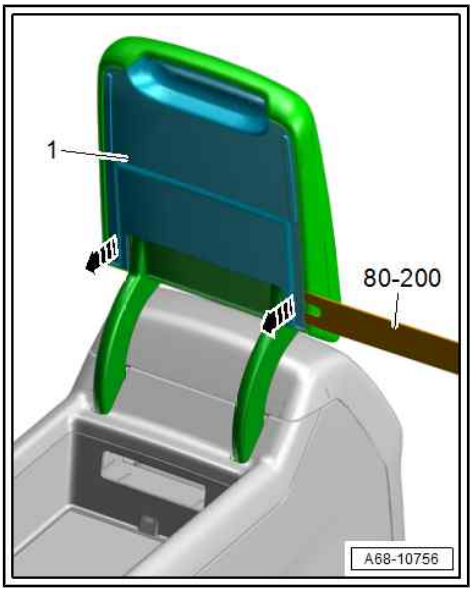
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -1, 2-.
– Disengage centre armrest (top section) -3- -arrow- and remove.



Removing: Version 2

– Open centre armrest.
– Starting at rear, unclip cover -1- from centre armrest using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows-.
– Unclip cover completely and detach.

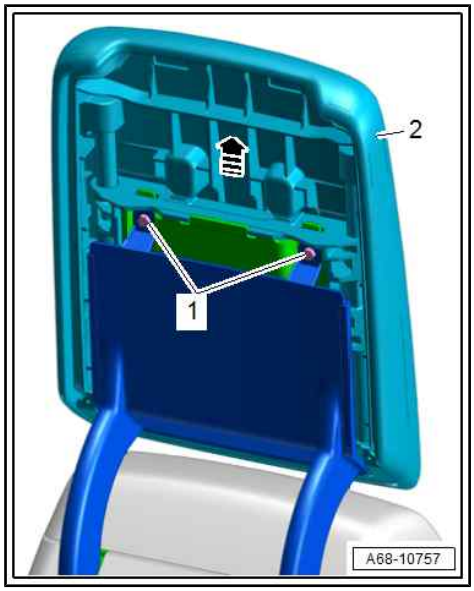


– Remove bolts -1-.
– Disengage centre armrest (top section) -2- -arrow- and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

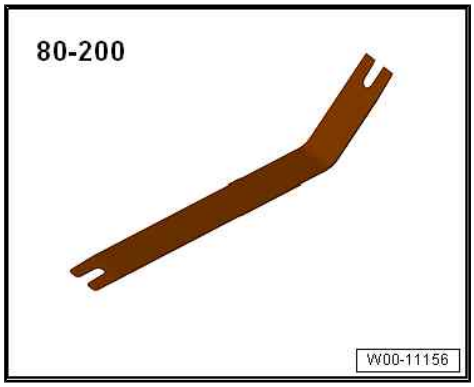
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 57



4.4 Removing and installing trim for hinge arm

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

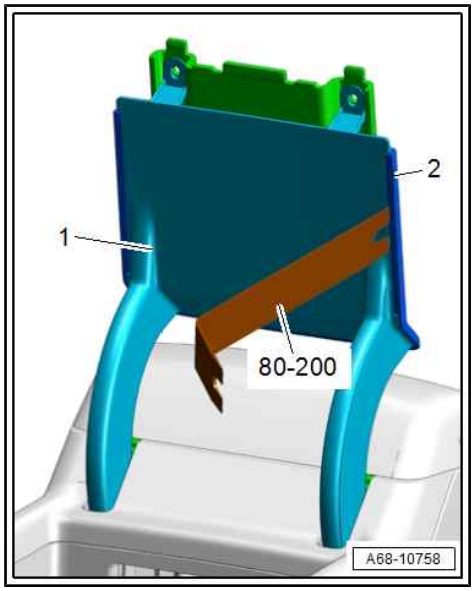
– Remove centre armrest (top section) ⇒ page 58 .
– Unclip trim (rear) -2- from trim (front) -1- at sides using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Separate trim pieces for hinge arm from each other, disengage at support bracket for centre armrest and remove.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - centre armrest (front)”, page 57



5 Interior mirror

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror”, page 61

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror”, page 62

⇒ “5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off”, page 64

⇒ “5.4 Switching compass display on and off”, page 64

⇒ “5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone”, page 64

⇒ “5.6 Calibrating digital compass”, page 65

⇒ “5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles”, page 65

⇒ “5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map”, page 66

⇒ “5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror”, page 71

5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror

1 - Cover (front)
- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Renew after removing interior mirror

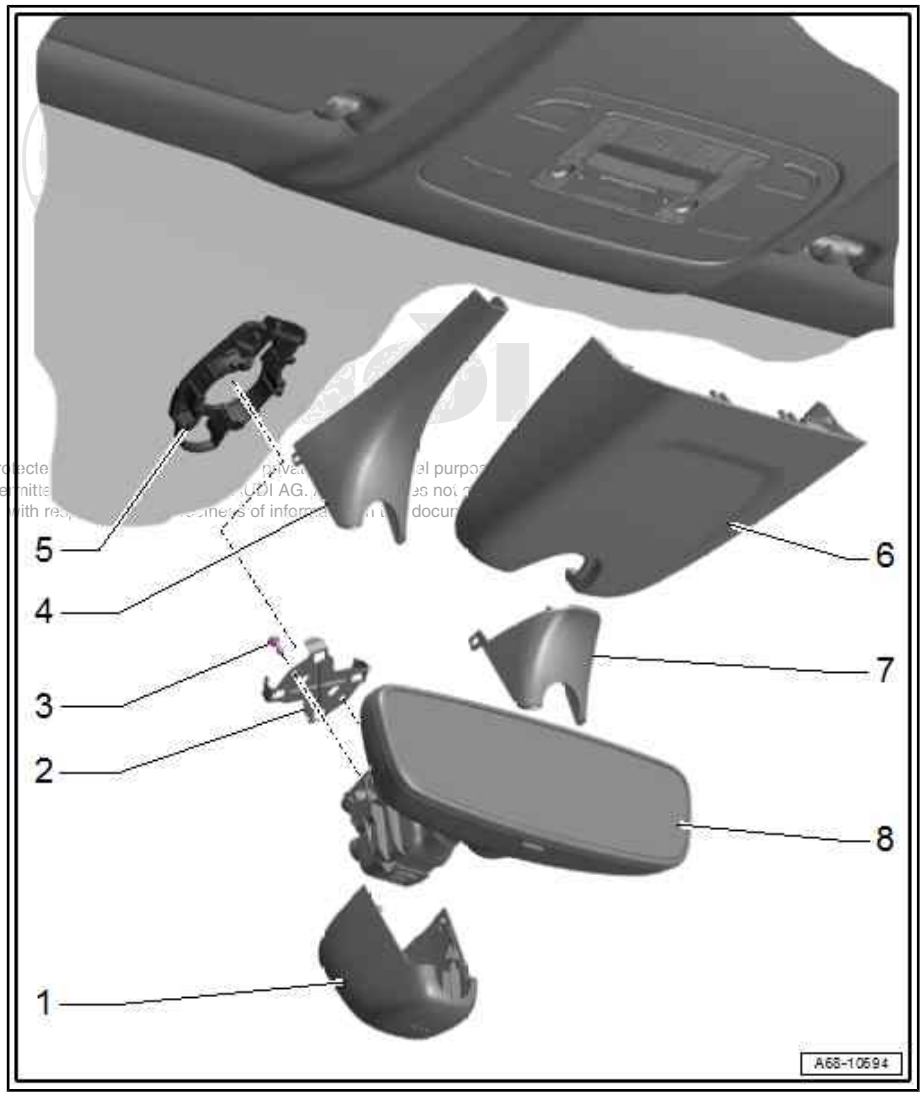
3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

4 - Cover (rear)
- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ For interior mirror without optional equipment
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Retaining plate
- ❑ For interior mirror
- ❑ Bonded to windscreen

6 - Boot
- ❑ For sensors control unit
- ❑ For interior mirror with optional equipment
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

7 - Cover (rear)
- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ For interior mirror with optional equipment
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly



8 - Interior mirror

- ❑ With integrated main beam assist control unit (depending on equipment version) -J844-
- ❑ Main beam assist control unit - J844- cannot be renewed individually. Renew interior mirror if defective
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 62
- ❑ Position at 20° angle to installation position and turn clockwise as far as stop
- ❑ Renew retaining clip after removing

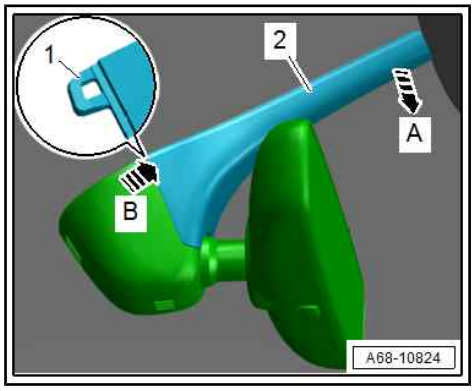
5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Medium hard clip release lever from scraper set - VAS 6845-

Removing

> **WARNING**
>
> *Electrolyte is a potential health hazard.*
>
> ♦ *Note safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror ⇒ page 14*

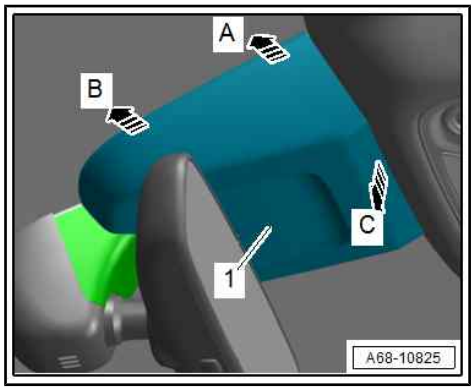


– Swivel interior mirror down as far as possible (approx. 25°).

– Pull cover -2- downwards at rear -arrow A-, and at the same time release fasteners -1- by pressing firmly on cover -arrow B-.

– Disengage cover at mirror base and detach.

A5 Coupé/Sportback, interior mirror with optional equipment:

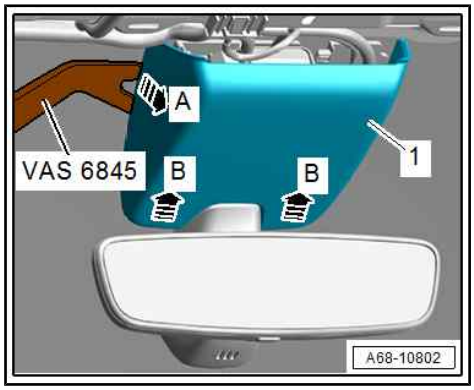


– Unclip cover -1- -arrows A, B, C- using medium hard clip release lever; to do so, carefully insert clip release lever between windscreen and cover.

– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

– Disengage cover -1- at front and pull out towards rear.

A5 Cabriolet, interior mirror with optional equipment:



– Remove trim for windscreen frame ⇒ page 293 .

– Unclip cover -1- -arrow A- using medium hard clip release lever; to do so, carefully insert clip release lever between windscreen and cover.

– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

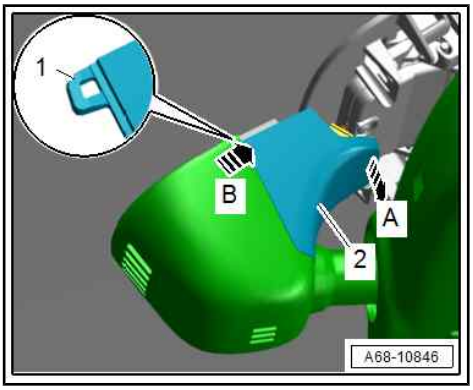
– Carefully pull cover downwards and at the same time pull it towards rear off retaining plate for sensors control unit -arrows B-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Cover (rear), interior mirror with optional equipment:

– Pull cover -2- downwards at rear -arrow A-, and at the same time release fasteners -1- by pressing firmly on cover -arrow B-.

– Disengage cover at mirror base and detach.



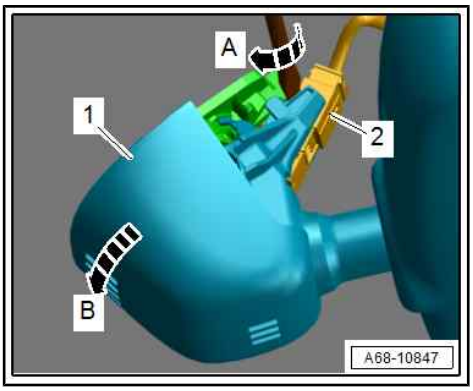
All mirror versions (continued):

– Insert screwdriver between retainer and mirror base.

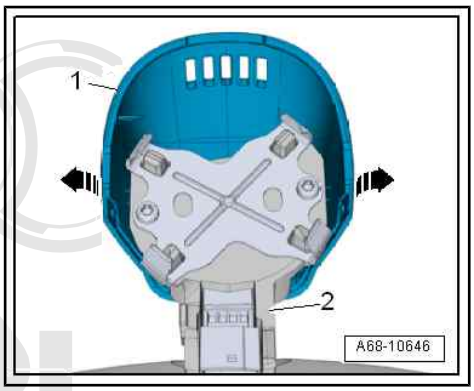
– Carefully rotate screwdriver about its own axis -arrow A- until retaining tab is disengaged from retainer.

– At the same time turn mirror base -1- as far as it will go in anti-clockwise direction -arrow B-.

– Detach interior mirror from retainer and unplug electrical connector -2-.



– Carefully disengage retaining tabs -arrows- and pull cover -1- at front downwards out of guide elements on interior mirror base -2-.



Installing

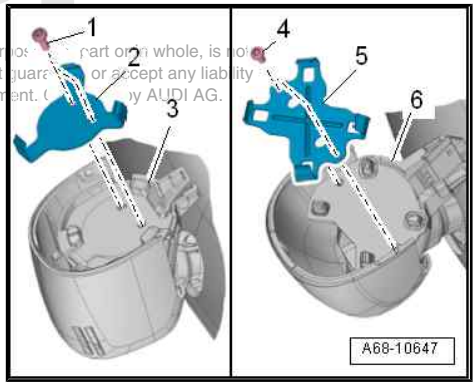
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

– Renew retaining clip -2- or -5- after removing interior mirror; for allocation see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

– Fit interior mirror at 20° angle to installation position.

– Turn interior mirror clockwise as far as it will go.

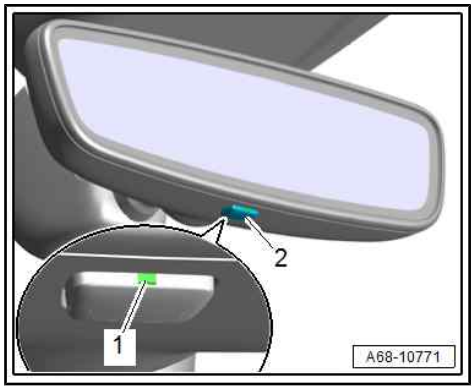


Note

If renewing the interior mirror and the integrated main beam assist control unit - J844- , select the function "Replace control unit" of the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.1 Exploded view - interior mirror", page 61

5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off



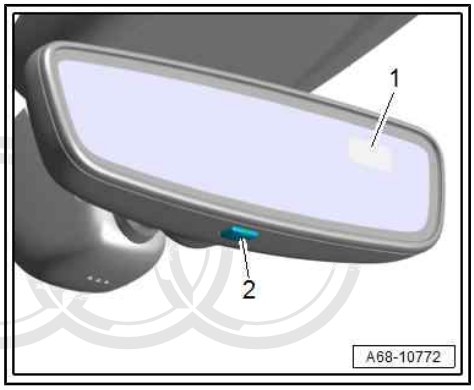
– Press button -2- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.

  Automatic anti-dazzle function “On”: Indicator lamp -1- lights up.

  Automatic anti-dazzle function “Off”: Indicator lamp -1- goes out.

- The automatic anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.
- If you deactivate the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror this will also deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the exterior mirrors.
- When in anti-dazzle mode, the mirror will become lighter as soon as the interior light is switched on or reverse gear is engaged.
- The automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror can only function correctly if the rear sun blind is retracted.

5.4 Switching compass display on and off



– Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display -1- will be switched “on” or “off”.

  Compass display “on” - direction is indicated.

  Compass display “off” - direction is not indicated.

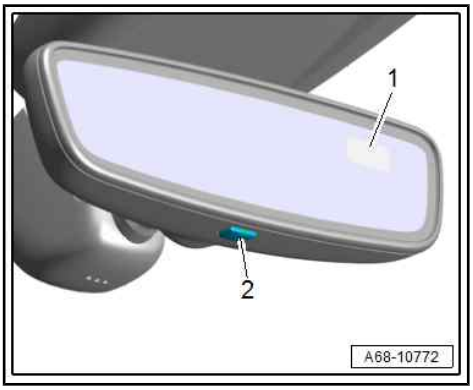
5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone

It is necessary to set the magnetic deflection zone if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.
- You have reached a distance more than two zones away from the pre-set reference zone after travelling long distances; you should then set a different magnetic deflection zone.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Setting magnetic deflection zone:



– Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows “Z” and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.
– Press the button repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.
– Select applicable deflection zone from the world map:

♦ Europe ⇒ page 66
♦ North America ⇒ page 66
♦ South America ⇒ page 67
♦ Asia ⇒ page 68
♦ Africa ⇒ page 69
♦ Australia ⇒ page 70

After a few seconds the compass display will switch from the magnetic deflection zone to the current direction/point of the compass.

– Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 64 after setting the magnetic deflection zone.

5.6 Calibrating digital compass

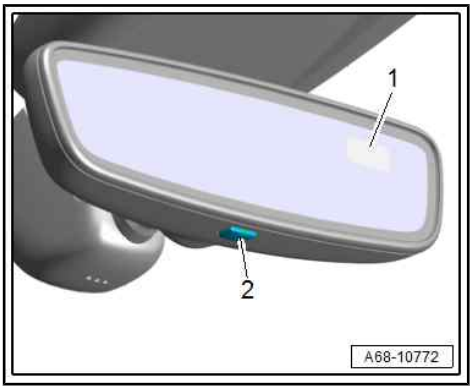
It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:

- The directions the digital compass shows are inaccurate.
- The compass display shows a “C” instead of a point of the compass, or if the display remains blank.
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.

In exceptional circumstances, the digital compass may also have to be calibrated, for example if:

- The vehicle battery is reconnected after it has been disconnected for a long period.
- A new audio system or audio system components has/have been fitted.

Calibrating digital compass:



– Switch on ignition.
- Compass display -1- should show “C”.
– If display does not show “C”, press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter “C” appears in compass display.
– Drive the vehicle in a circle two or three times at a speed of approx. 10 km/h (5 mph) until a direction is indicated on the compass display.
– After completing the calibration, re-activate the automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror ⇒ page 64.

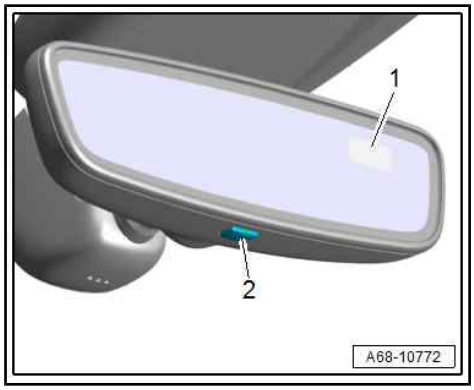
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. Administered by Audi Digital Services. Use of this PDF file constitutes acceptance of these terms. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles

It is necessary to adjust the mirror to right-hand or left-hand drive if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror - Y7- is installed.

– Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows “L” (for left-hand drive vehicles) or “A” (for right-hand drive vehicles).
– Press the button again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.
– After a short while, the display will automatically show “C” (for calibration). The digital compass must now be calibrated ⇒ page 65 .
– Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 64 after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.



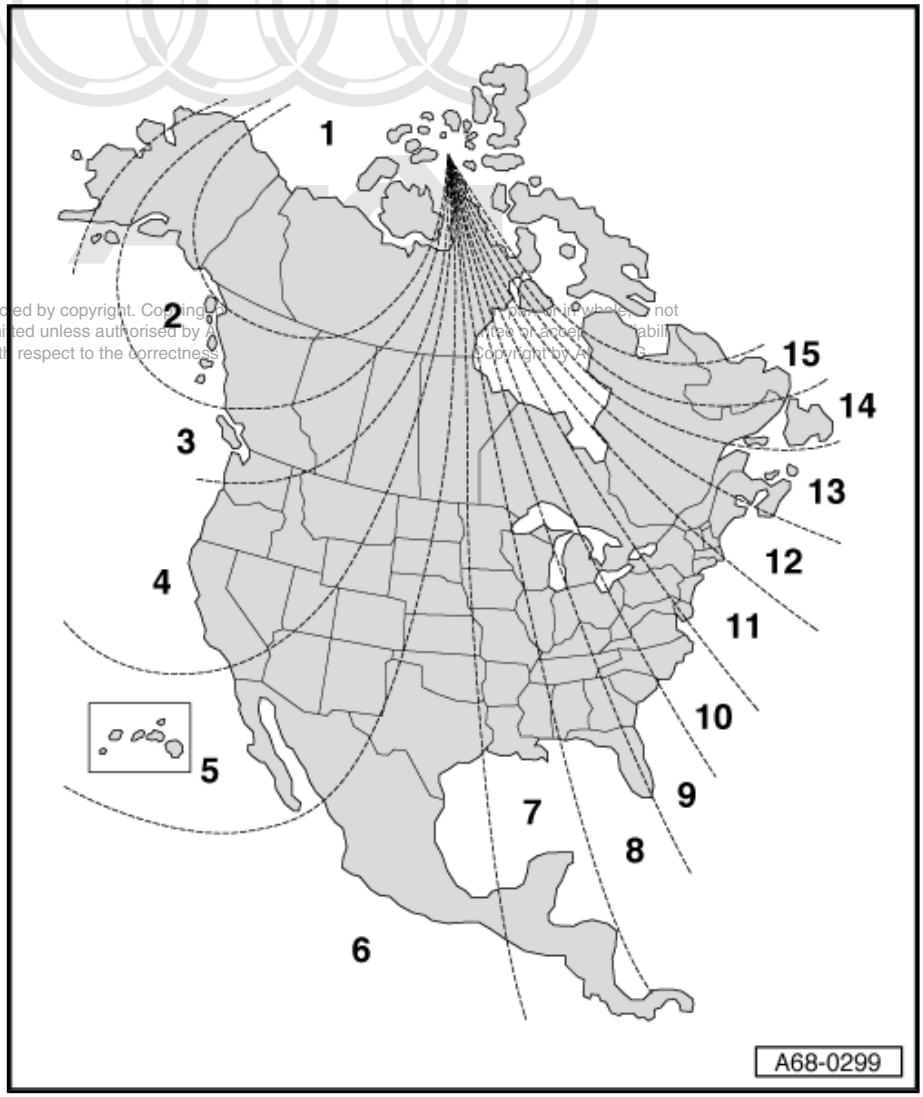
5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map

Europe

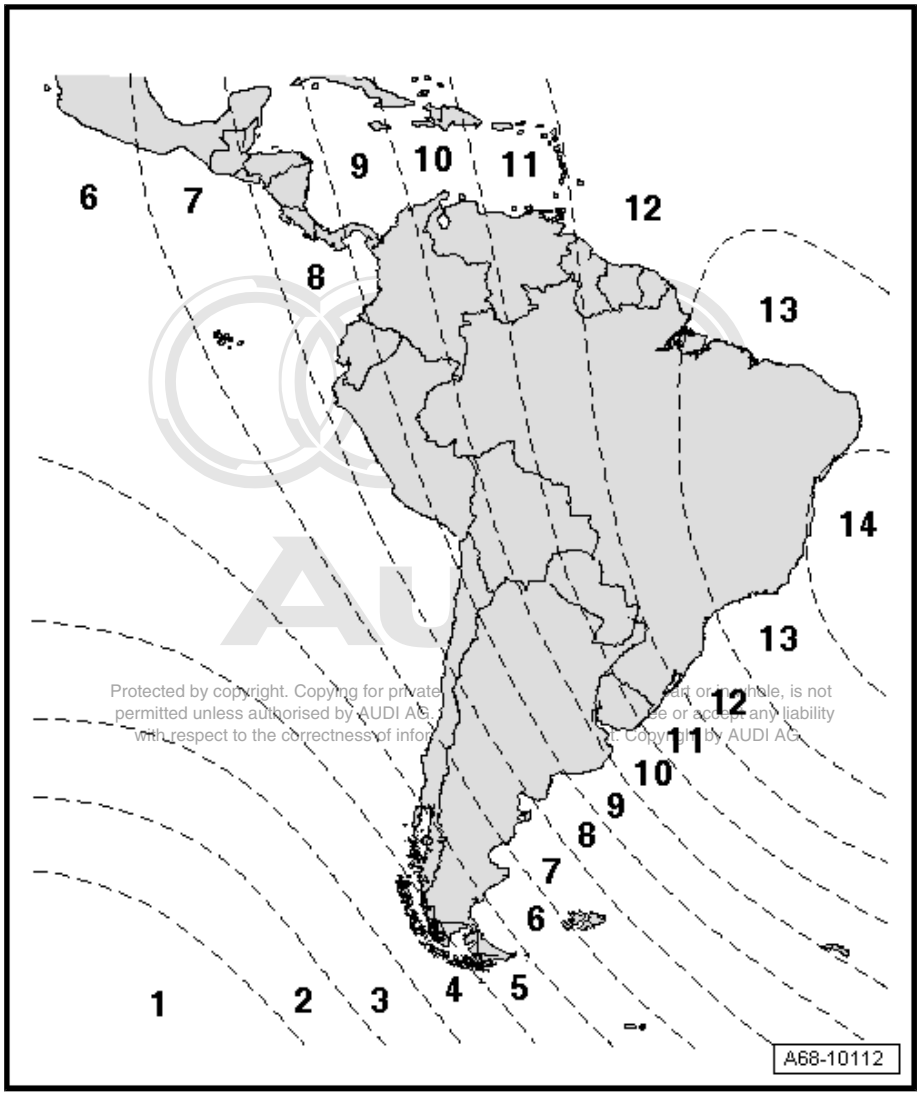


North America

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

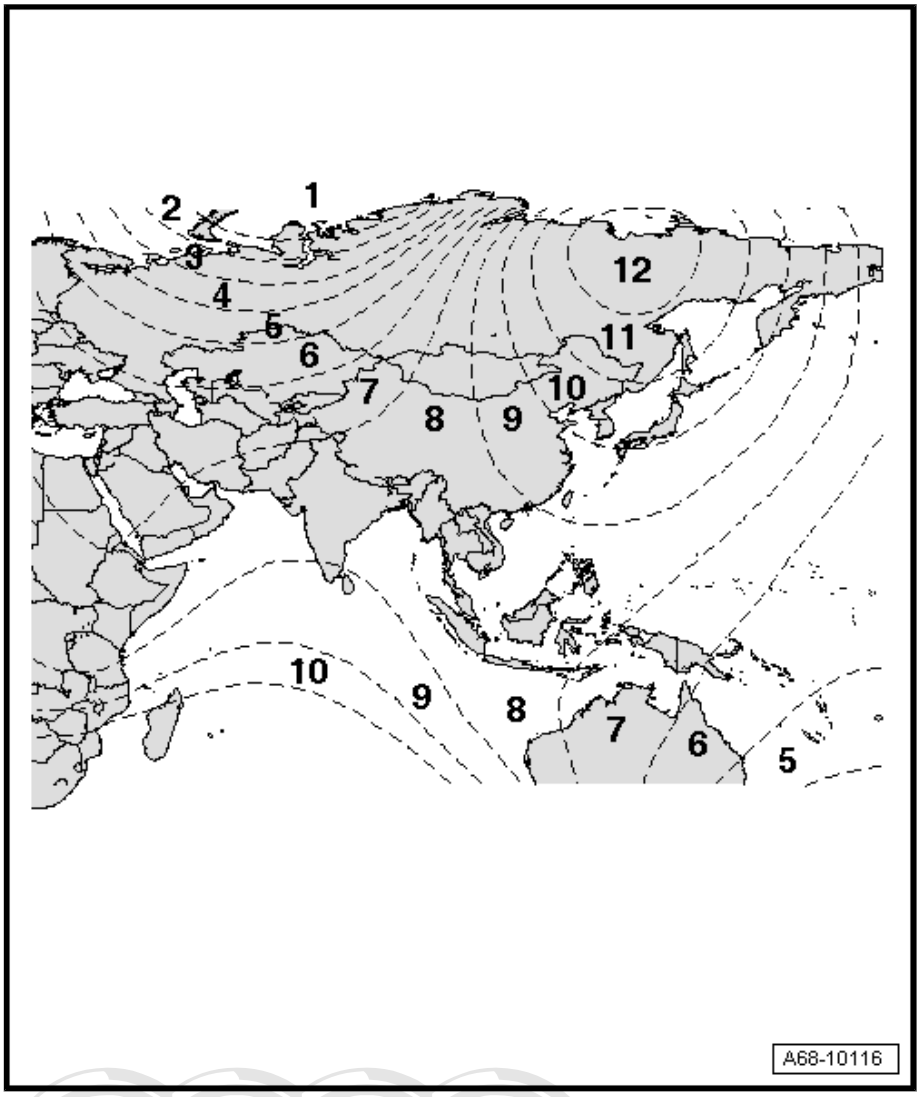


South America



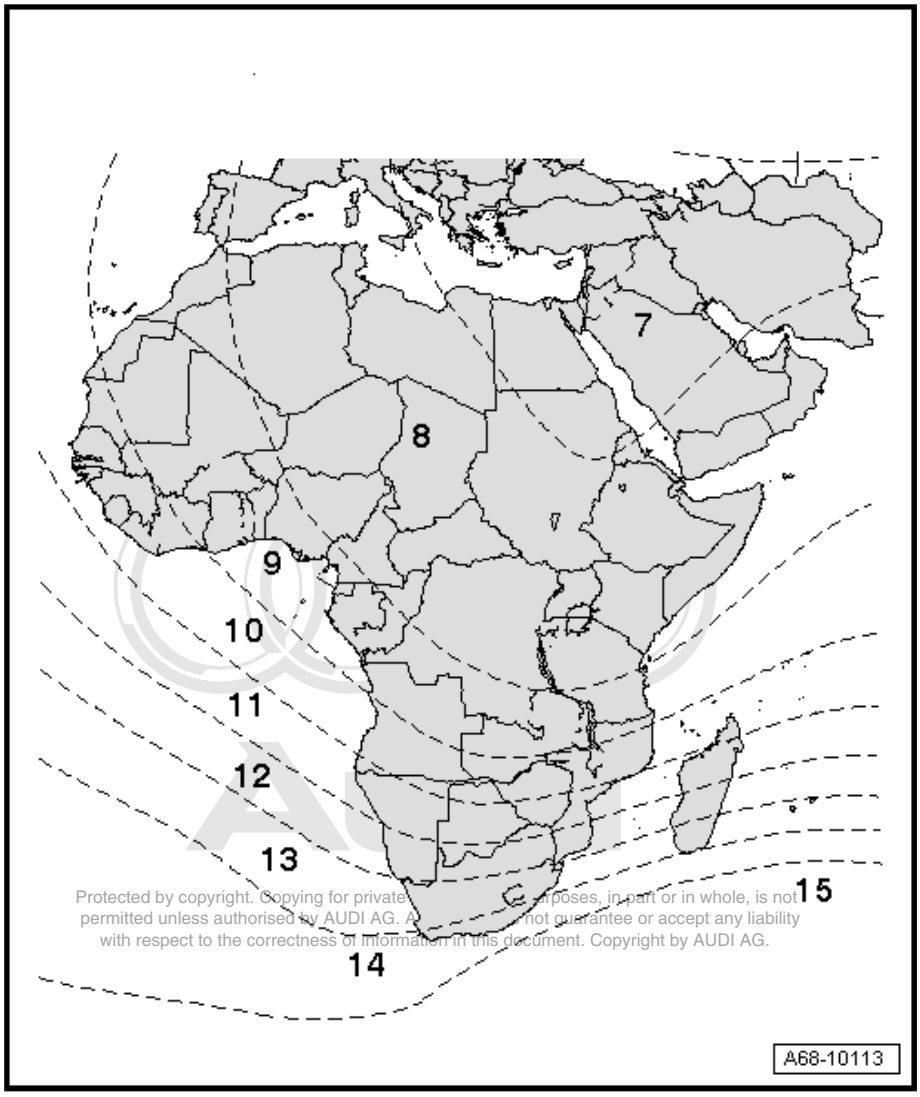
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Asia



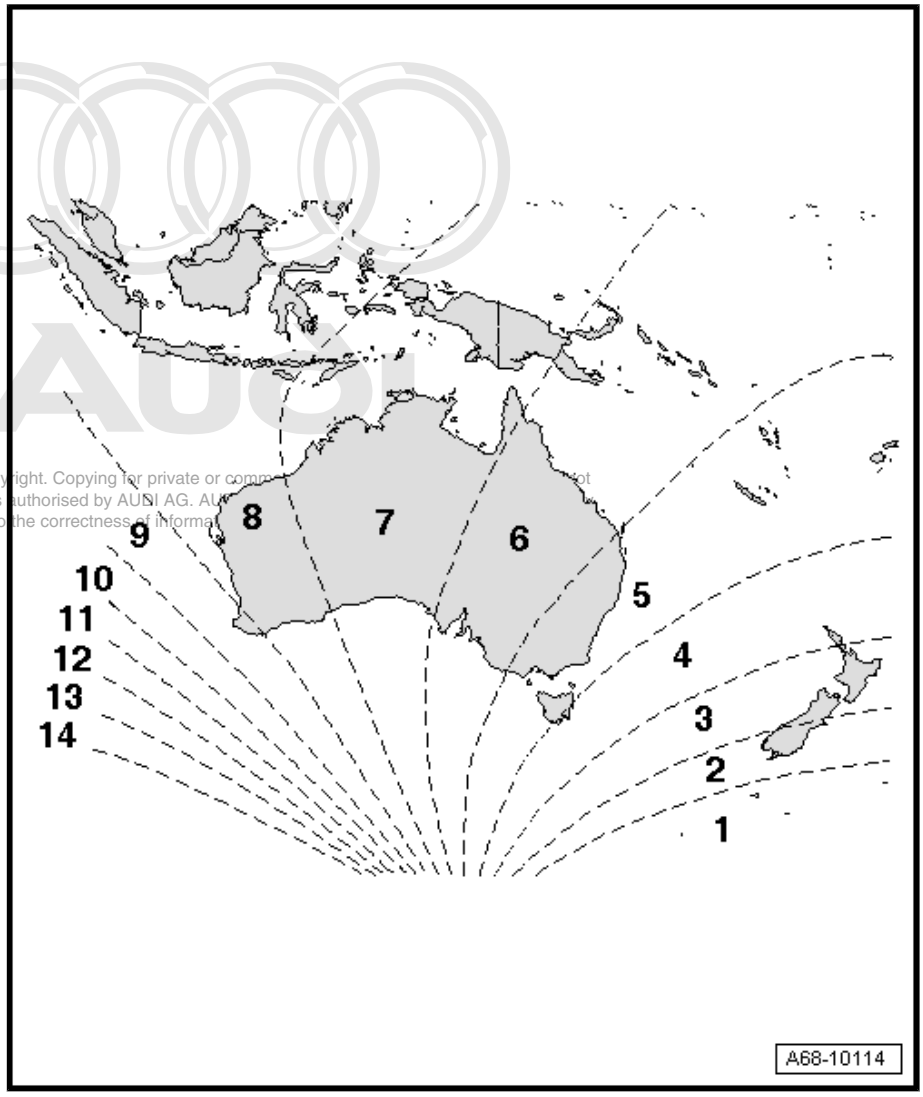
Africa

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Australia



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

The test can only be carried out if the following conditions are met:

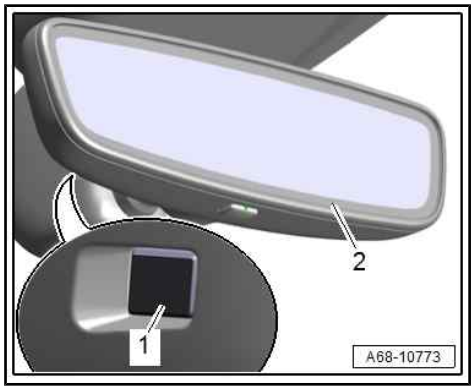
- Interior mirror is fitted.
- Ignition is switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on, indicator lamp must be lit.

Test sequence

– Cover photosensor -1- on housing side.

– Aim a light source, e.g. a torch, at photosensor -2- (in mirror) on mirror side.

• Interior mirror should darken quickly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

69 – Passenger protection

1 Seat belts

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points”, page 73

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 79

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - belt feeder motor”, page 83

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 85

⇒ “1.5 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 87

⇒ “1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)”, page 88

⇒ “1.7 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)”, page 89

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)”, page 92

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing belt feeder motor V604 / V605 ”, page 99

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 100

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)”, page 108

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing belt guide (front)”, page 111

⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing belt guide fitting (front)”, page 112

⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)”, page 113

⇒ “1.15 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)”, page 115

⇒ “1.16 Removing and installing belt height adjuster”, page 116

⇒ “1.17 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)”, page 117

⇒ “1.18 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)”, page 118

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

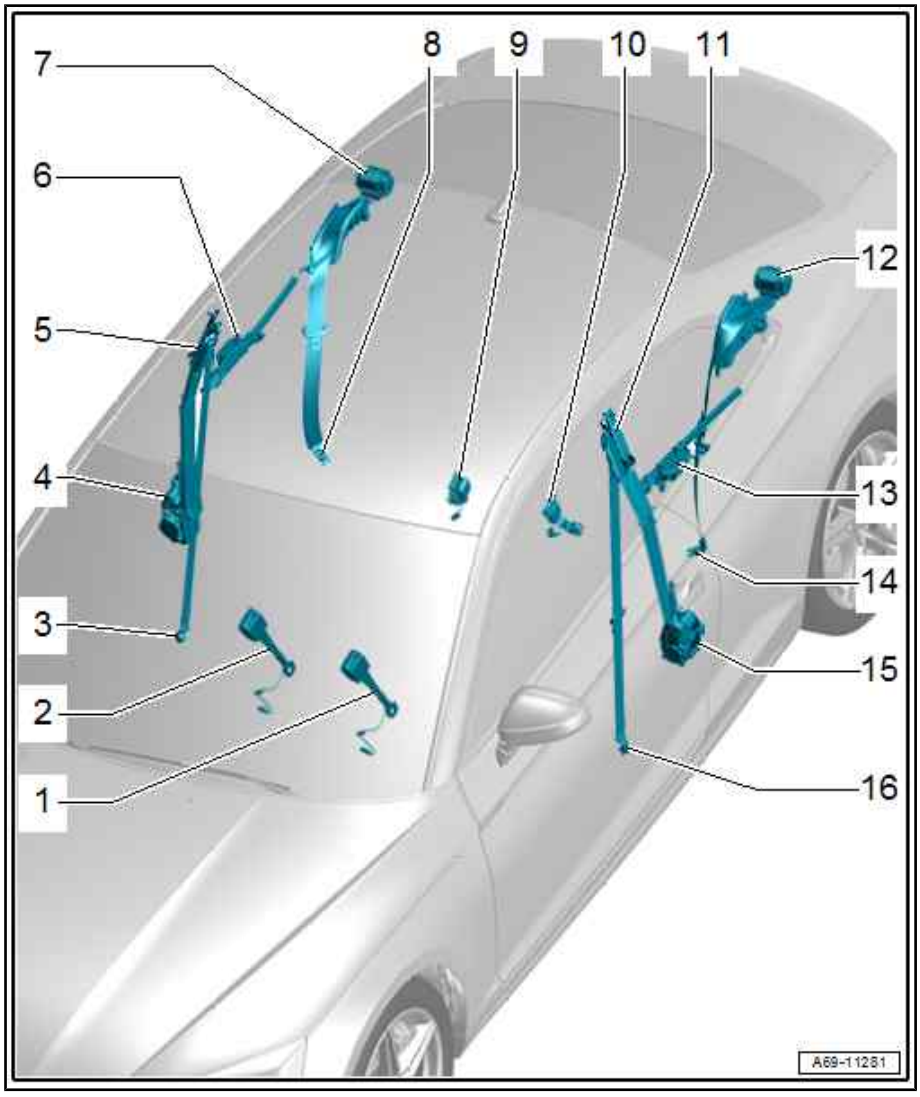
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points

⇒ “1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points, A5 Coupé”, page 73

⇒ “1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points, A5 Sportback”, page 75

⇒ “1.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points, A5 Cabriolet”, page 77

1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points, A5 Coupé



1 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ With driver side belt switch - E24-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 88

2 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ With front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 88

3 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 79

4 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ❑ With:

- ♦ Front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ♦ Front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ♦ Equipment version with electric belt tensioning: control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 79

5 - Belt height adjuster/belt guide fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 79

6 - Front passenger side belt feeder motor - V605-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 83

7 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ With rear belt tensioner igniter on passenger side - N197-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 85

8 - Belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 85

9 - Belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ With rear belt switch, passenger side - E259-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 89

10 - Belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ With rear belt switch, driver side - E258-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 89

11 - Belt height adjuster/belt guide fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 79

12 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ With rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 85

13 - Driver side belt feeder motor - V604-

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 83

14 - Belt end fitting (rear)

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 85

15 - Automatic belt retractor

❑ For three-point seat belt (front)

❑ With:

- ♦ Driver side belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ♦ Driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ♦ Equipment version with electric belt tensioning: control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 79

16 - Belt end fitting (front)

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 79

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points, A5 Sportback

1 - Belt buckle (front)

❑ With driver side belt switch - E24-

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 88

2 - Belt buckle (front)

❑ With front passenger side belt switch - E25-

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 88

3 - Belt end fitting (front)

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 80

4 - Automatic belt retractor

❑ For three-point seat belt (front)

❑ With:

- ♦ Front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ♦ Front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ♦ Equipment version with electric belt tensioning: control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-

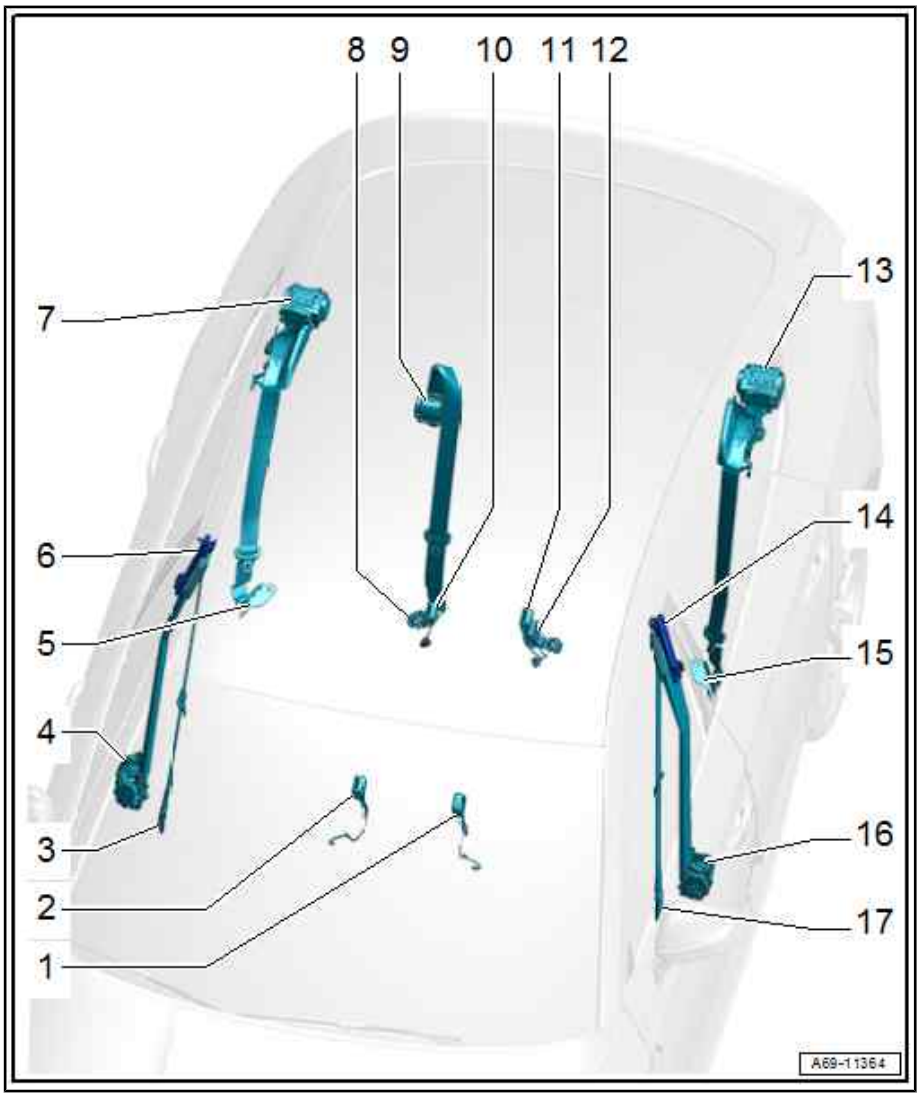
❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 80

5 - Belt end fitting (rear)

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 85

6 - Belt height adjuster/belt guide fitting (front)

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 80



7 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For outer three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ With rear belt tensioner igniter on passenger side - N197-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 85

8 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 87

9 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For centre three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 87

10 - Belt buckle (rear right)

- ❑ With rear belt switch, passenger side - E259-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 90

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Centre belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ With rear centre belt switch - E609-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 90

12 - Belt buckle (rear left)

- ❑ With rear belt switch, driver side - E258-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 90

13 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For outer three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ With rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 85

14 - Belt height adjuster/belt guide fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 80

15 - Belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 85

16 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ❑ With:

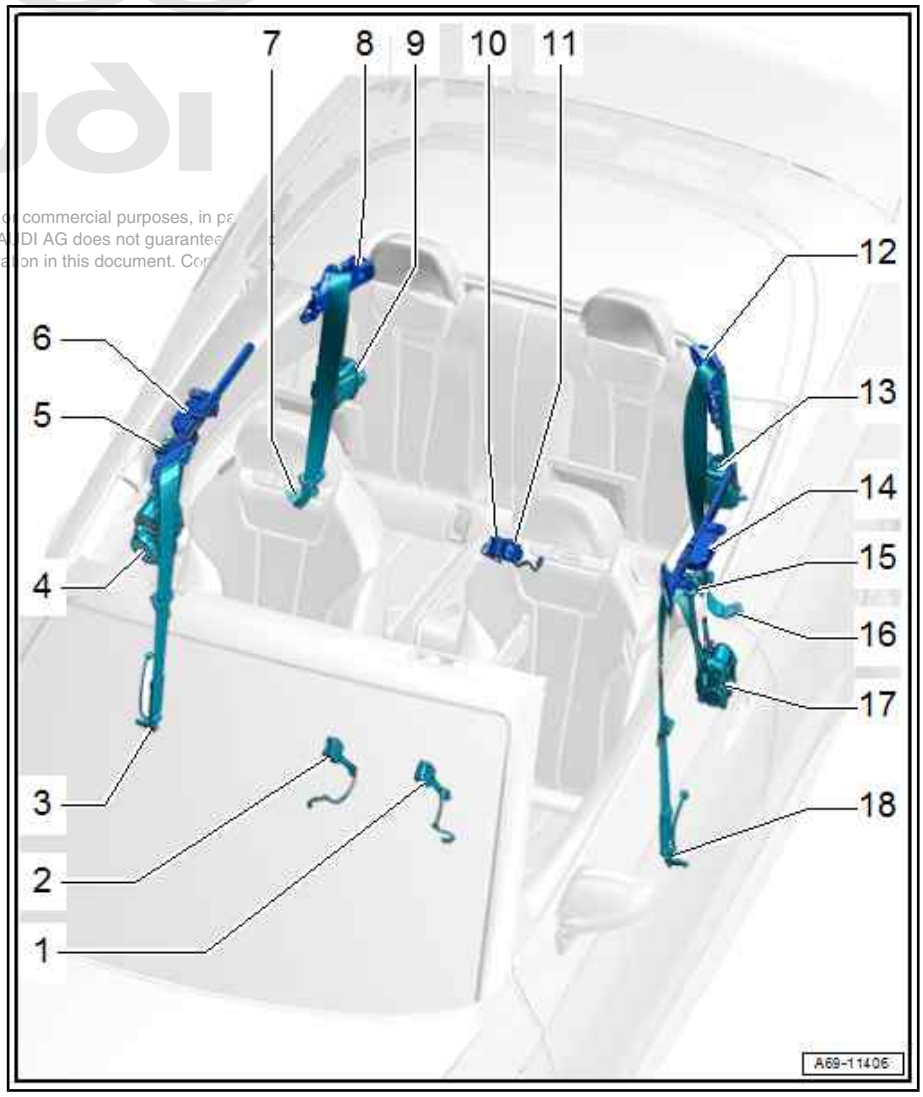
- ♦ Driver side belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ♦ Driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ♦ Equipment version with electric belt tensioning: control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 80

17 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 80

1.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ With driver side belt switch - E24-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 88

2 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ With front passenger side belt switch - E25-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 88

3 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 81

4 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ❑ With:

- ♦ Front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 - N154-
- ♦ Front passenger side belt force limiter - G552-
- ♦ Equipment version with electric belt tensioning: control unit for front right belt tensioner - J855-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 81

5 - Belt guide fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 81

6 - Front passenger side belt feeder motor - V605-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 84

7 - Belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 86

8 - Belt guide (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 86

9 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ With rear belt tensioner igniter on passenger side - N197-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 86

10 - Belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ With rear belt switch, passenger side - E259-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 91

11 - Belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ With rear belt switch, driver side - E258-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 91

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Belt guide (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 86

13 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ With rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side - N196-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 86

14 - Driver side belt feeder motor - V604-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 84

15 - Belt guide fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 81

16 - Belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 86

17 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ❑ With:

- ♦ Driver side belt tensioner igniter 1 - N153-
- ♦ Driver side belt force limiter - G551-
- ♦ Equipment version with electric belt tensioning: control unit for front left belt tensioner - J854-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 81

18 - Belt end fitting (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 81

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

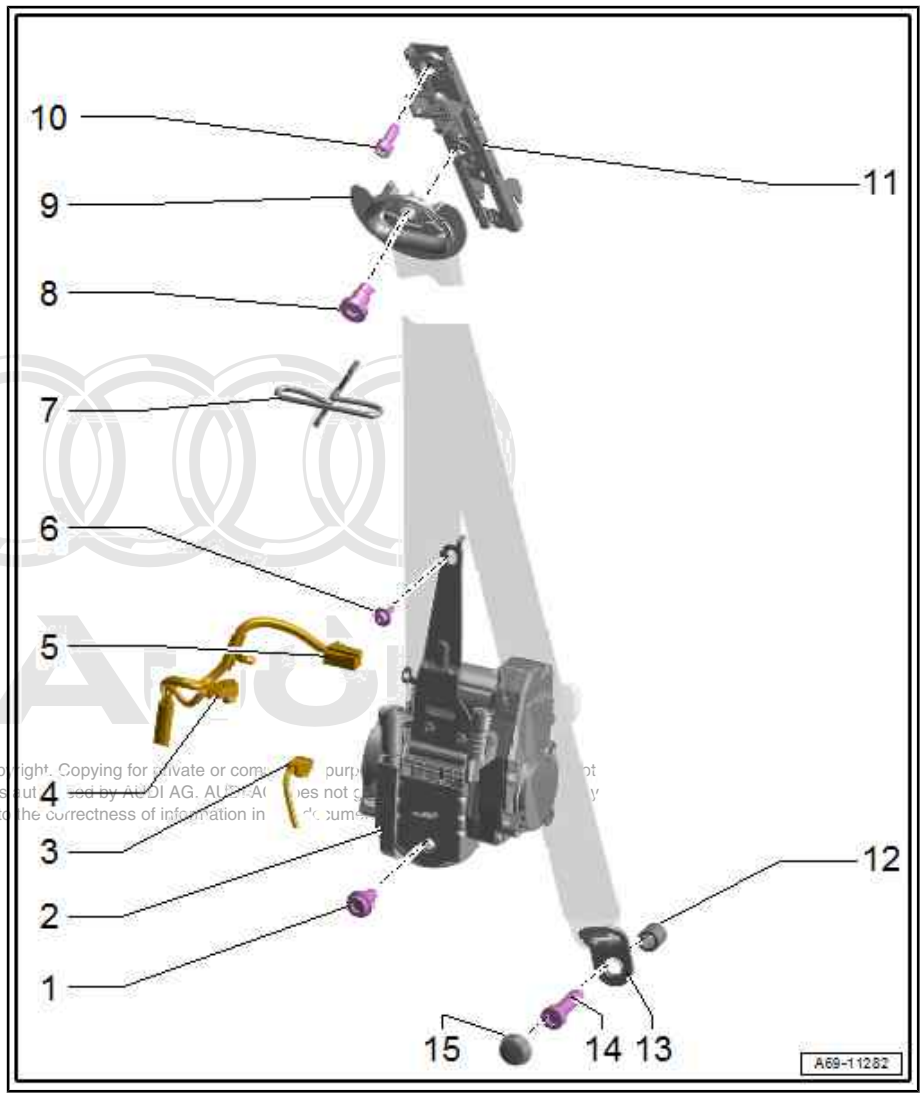
1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)

⇒ "1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A5 Coupé", page 79

⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A5 Sportback", page 80

⇒ "1.2.3 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A5 Cabriolet", page 81

1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A5 Coupé



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

2 - Automatic belt retractor with electric belt tensioning

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92
- ❑ Control unit for front belt tensioner -J854- / -J855- must be adapted after renewing automatic belt retractor ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester

3 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For belt force limiter

4 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For belt tensioner igniter 1

5 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Control unit for front belt tensioner

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

7 - Belt guide (front)

- ❑ Lay belt in belt guide (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 111

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

9 - Belt guide fitting

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 27 Nm

11 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Renew belt height adjuster if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 116

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

12 - Stop sleeve

13 - Belt end fitting

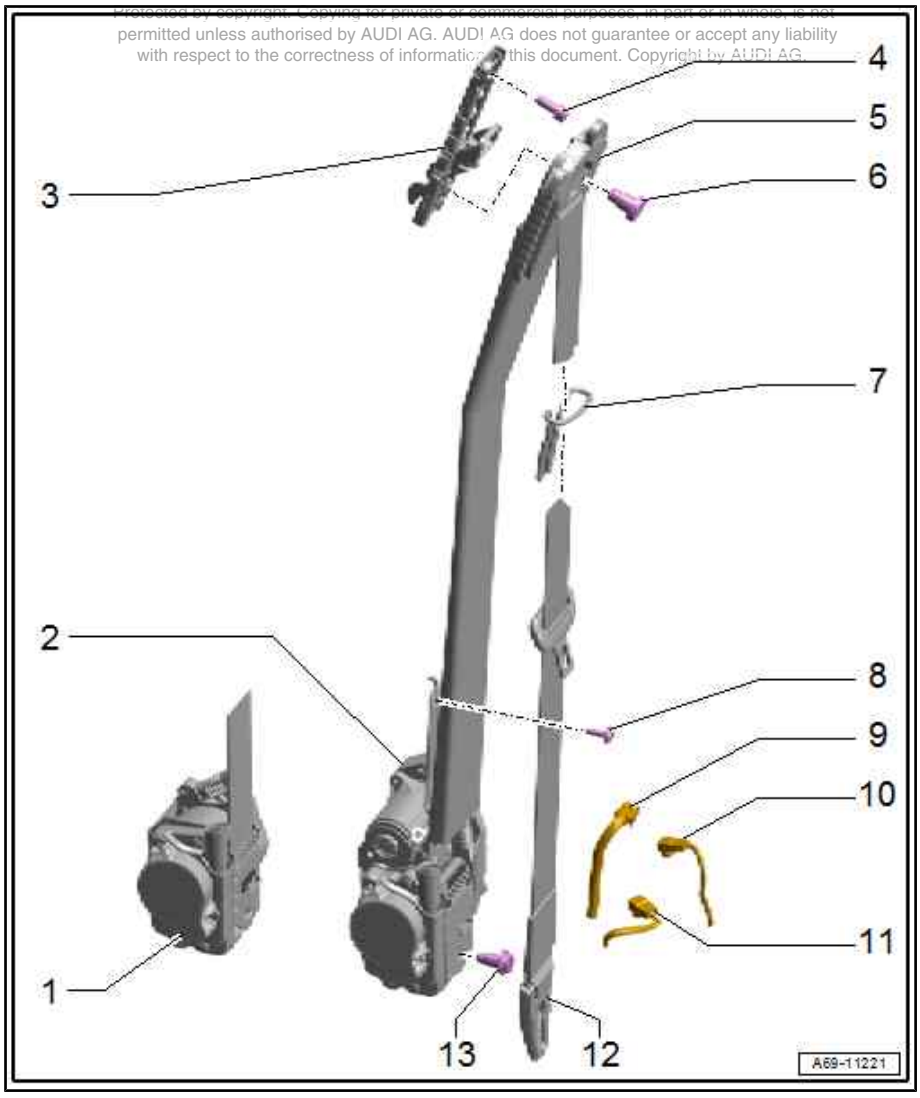
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 113

14 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

15 - Cap

1.2.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A5 Sportback



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Automatic belt retractor without electric belt tensioning

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

2 - Automatic belt retractor with electric belt tensioning

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92
- ❑ Control unit for front belt tensioner -J854- / -J855- must be adapted after renewing automatic belt retractor ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester

3 - Belt height adjuster

- ❑ Renew belt height adjuster if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 116

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 27 Nm

5 - Belt guide fitting

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

7 - Belt guide (front)

- ❑ Lay belt in belt guide (front)
- ❑ Do not trap or damage belt
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 111

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

9 - Electrical connector

- ❑ Control unit for front belt tensioner

10 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For belt force limiter

11 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For belt tensioner igniter 1

12 - Belt end fitting

- ❑ Engage at stud and pull upwards until retaining tab on spring engages audibly
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 113

13 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

1.2.3 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A5 Cabriolet

1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

2 - Automatic belt retractor with electric belt tensioning

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 95
- ❑ Control unit for front belt tensioner -J854- / -J855- must be adapted after renewing automatic belt retractor ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester

3 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For belt force limiter

4 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For belt tensioner igniter 1

5 - Electrical connector

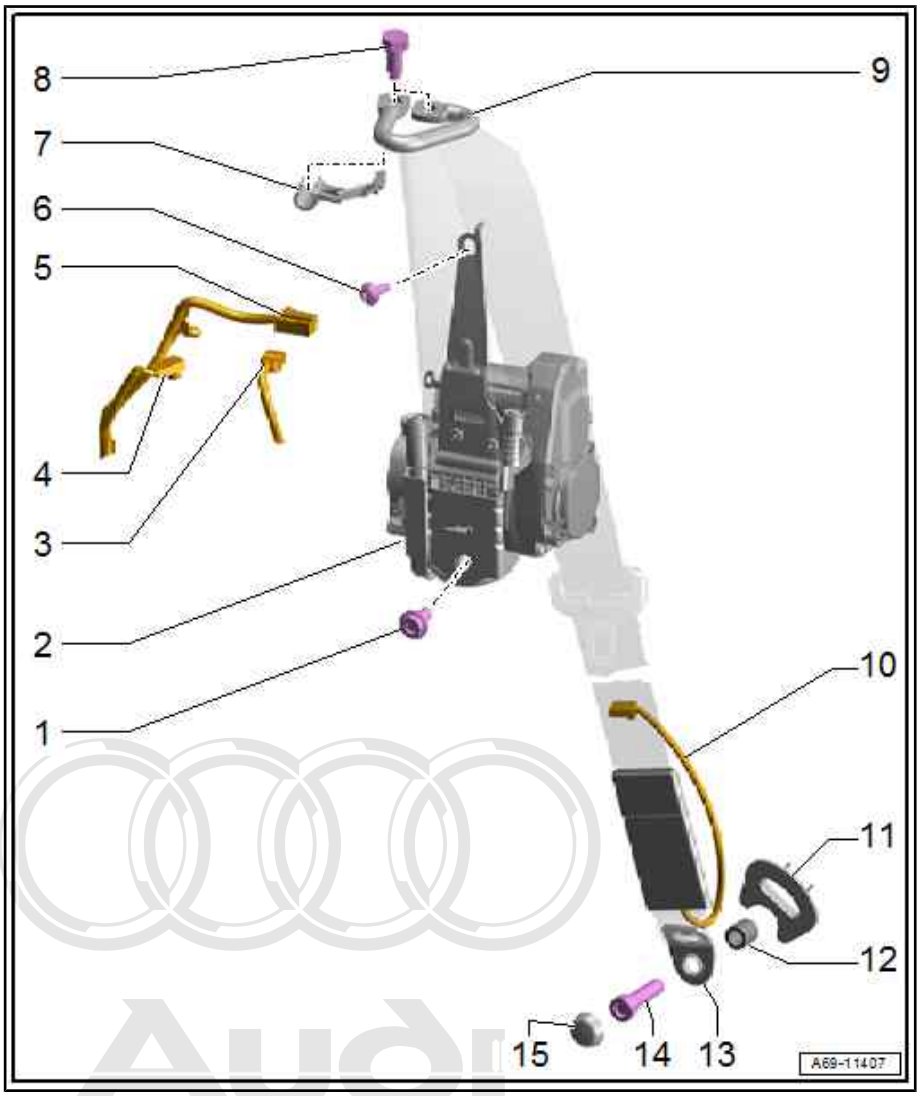
- ❑ Control unit for front belt tensioner

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

7 - Belt guide (front)

- ❑ Clip into belt guide fitting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 111



8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Belt guide fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 112

10 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For seat belt microphone

11 - Cap

- ❑ For seat belt microphone wire

12 - Stop sleeve

13 - Belt end fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 114

14 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

15 - Cap

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Exploded view - belt feeder motor

⇒ “1.3.1 Exploded view - belt feeder motor, A5 Coupé”, page 83

⇒ “1.3.2 Exploded view - belt feeder motor, A5 Cabriolet”, page 84

1.3.1 Exploded view - belt feeder motor, A5 Coupé

1 - Rack

- ❑ Only available together with -item 2-

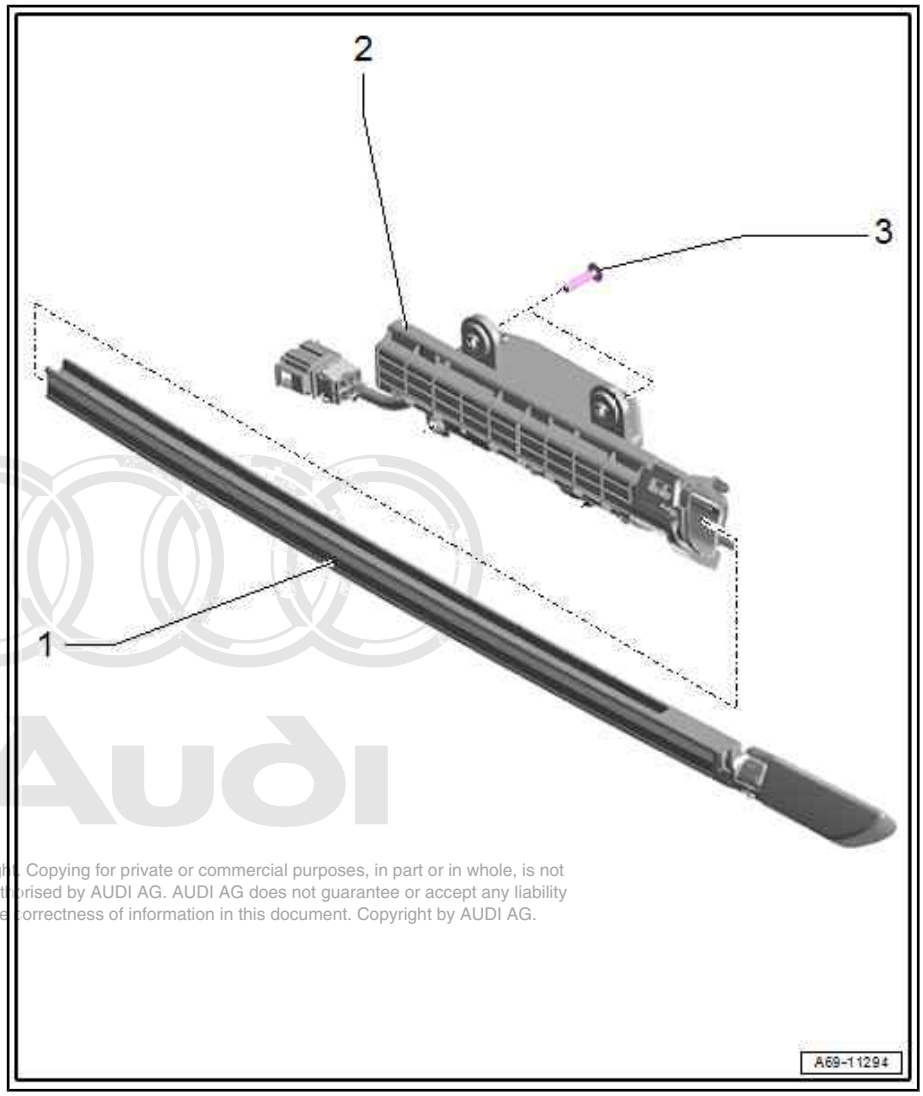
2 - Belt feeder

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Driver side belt feeder motor - V604-
- ♦ Front passenger side belt feeder motor - V605-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3.2 Exploded view - belt feeder motor, A5 Cabriolet

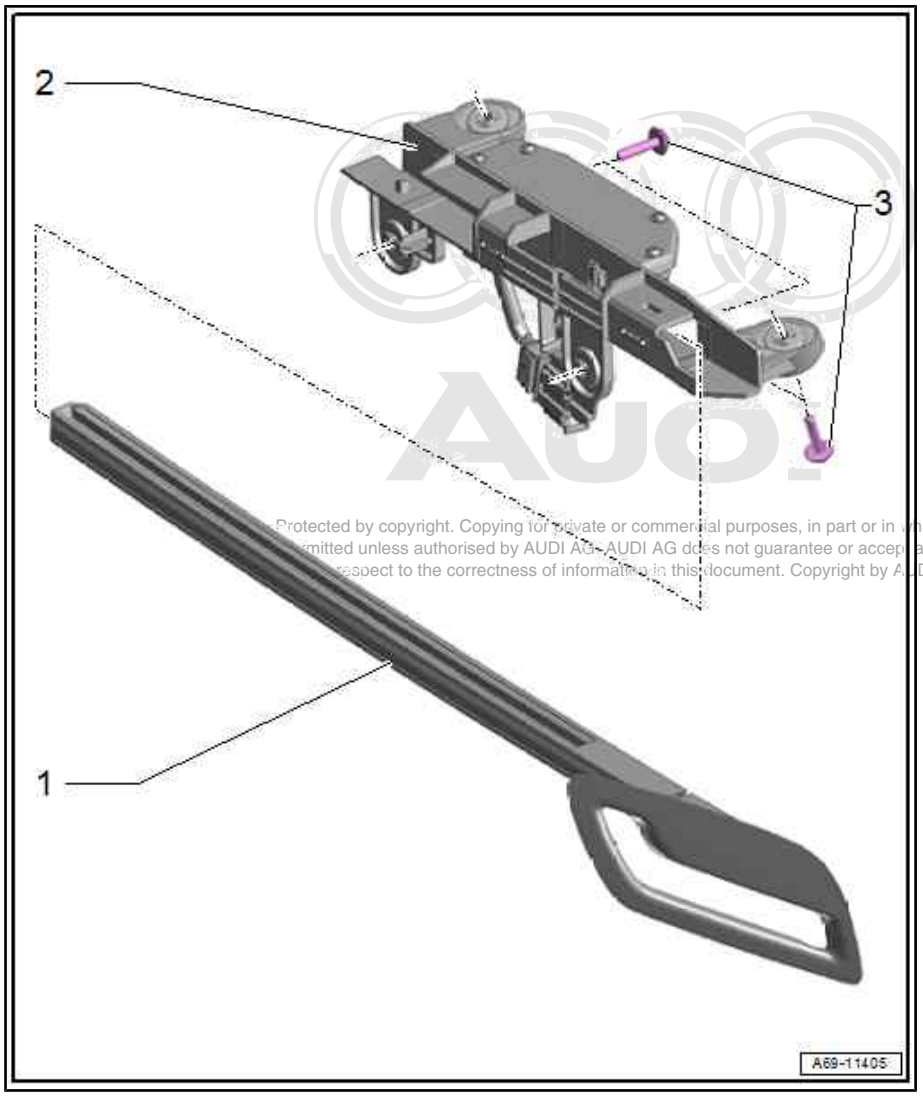
1 - Rack

2 - Belt feeder

- ❑ With:
- ◆ Driver side belt feeder motor - V604-
- ◆ Front passenger side belt feeder motor - V605-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

3 - Bolts

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm



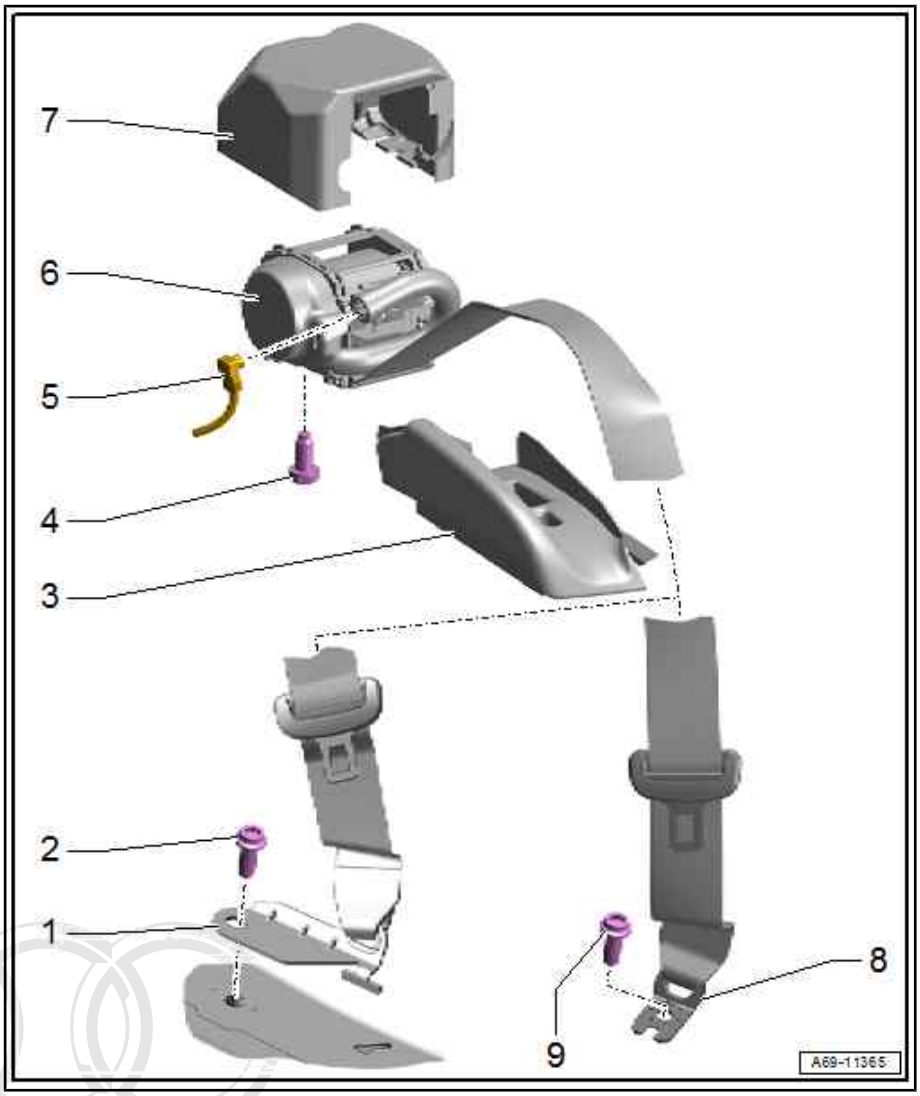
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear)

⇒ "1.4.1 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Coupé/Sportback", page 85

⇒ "1.4.2 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Cabriolet", page 86

1.4.1 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Coupé/Sportback



1 - Belt end fitting
- ❑ A5 Sportback
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 115

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

3 - Belt guide
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 108
- ❑ Insert with bolt heads in guide elements at bracket and pull forwards until retaining hook engages

4 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

5 - Electrical connector

6 - Automatic belt retractor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 100

7 - Noise insulation
- ❑ For automatic belt retractor

8 - Belt end fitting
- ❑ A5 Coupé
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 113

9 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.2 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Cabriolet

1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

2 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 104

3 - Electrical connector

4 - Belt guide

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 110

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Bolt

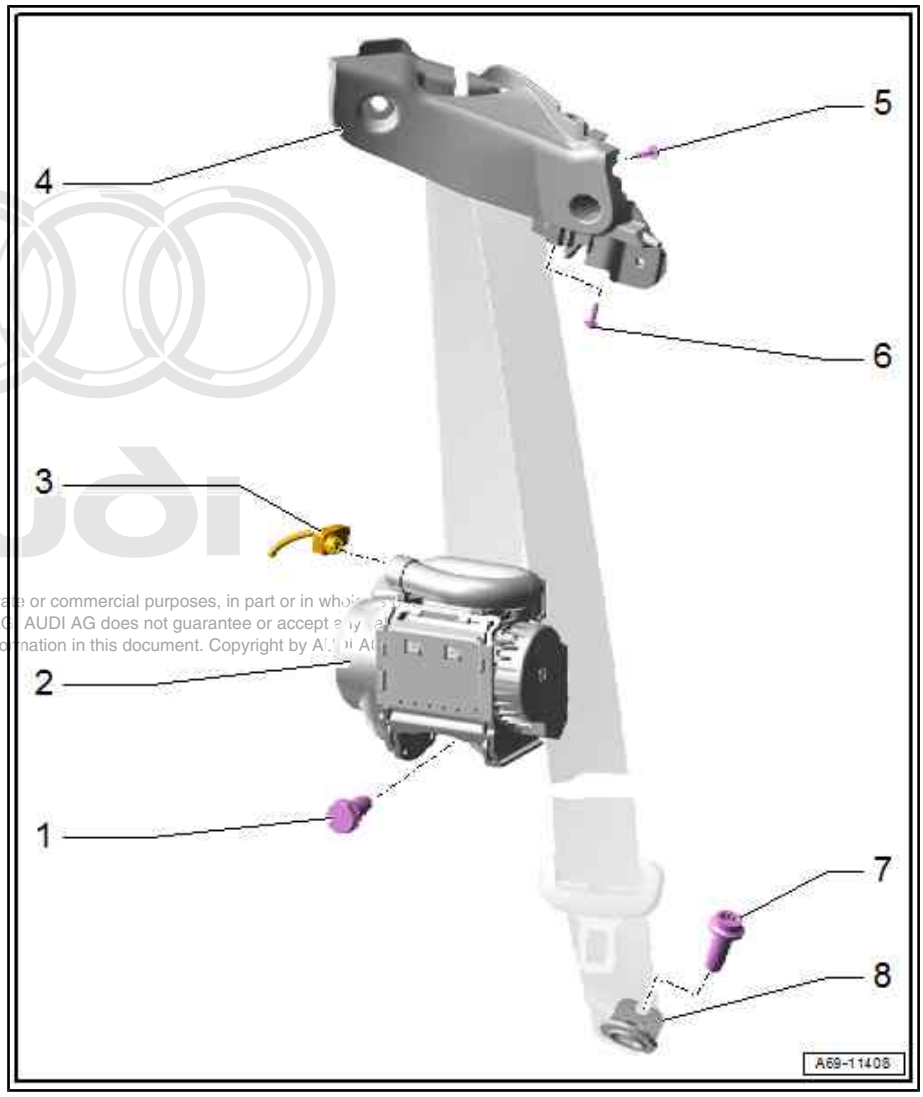
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

8 - Belt end fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 116



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)

1 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118

2 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

3 - Centre automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 108

4 - Belt guide

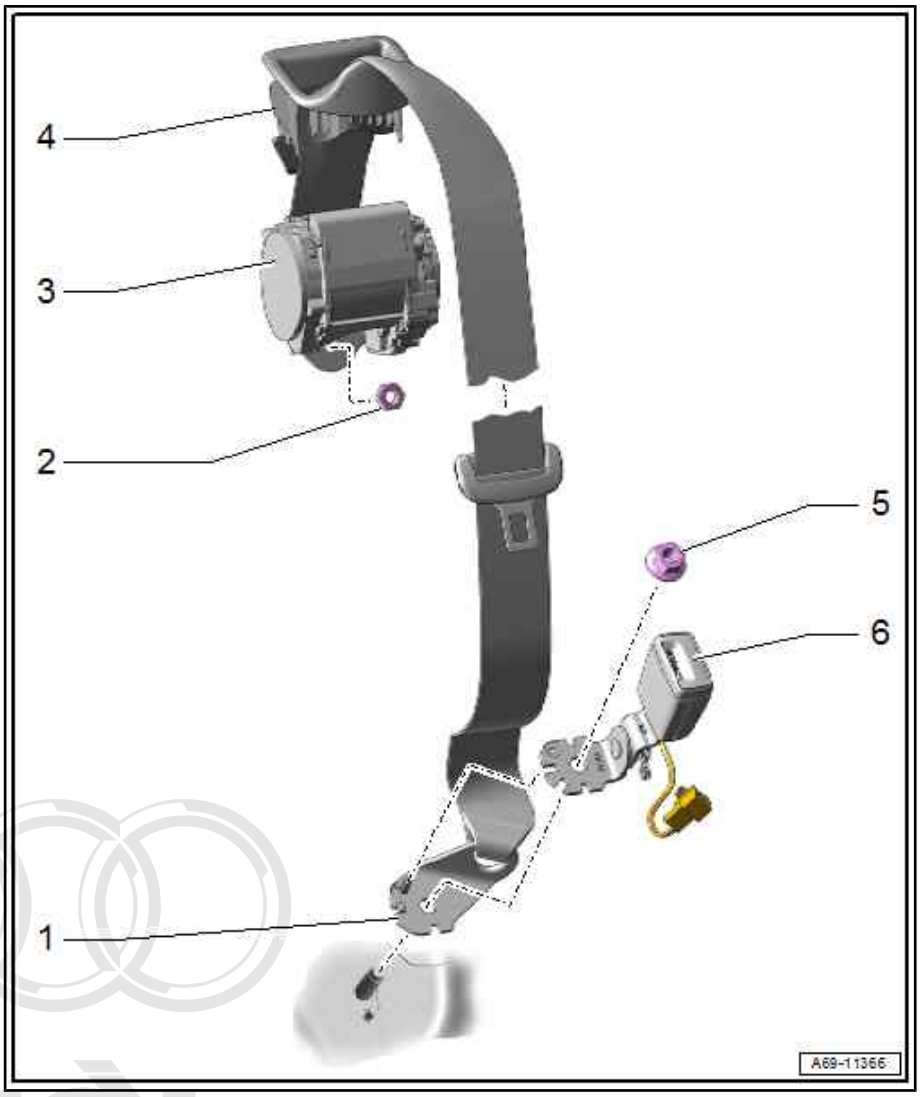
- ❑ Renew entire belt guide if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 110
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 4 (page 90)

6 - Belt buckle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)

1 - Front seat

2 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 117
- ❑ Renew belt buckle if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened

3 - Electrical connector

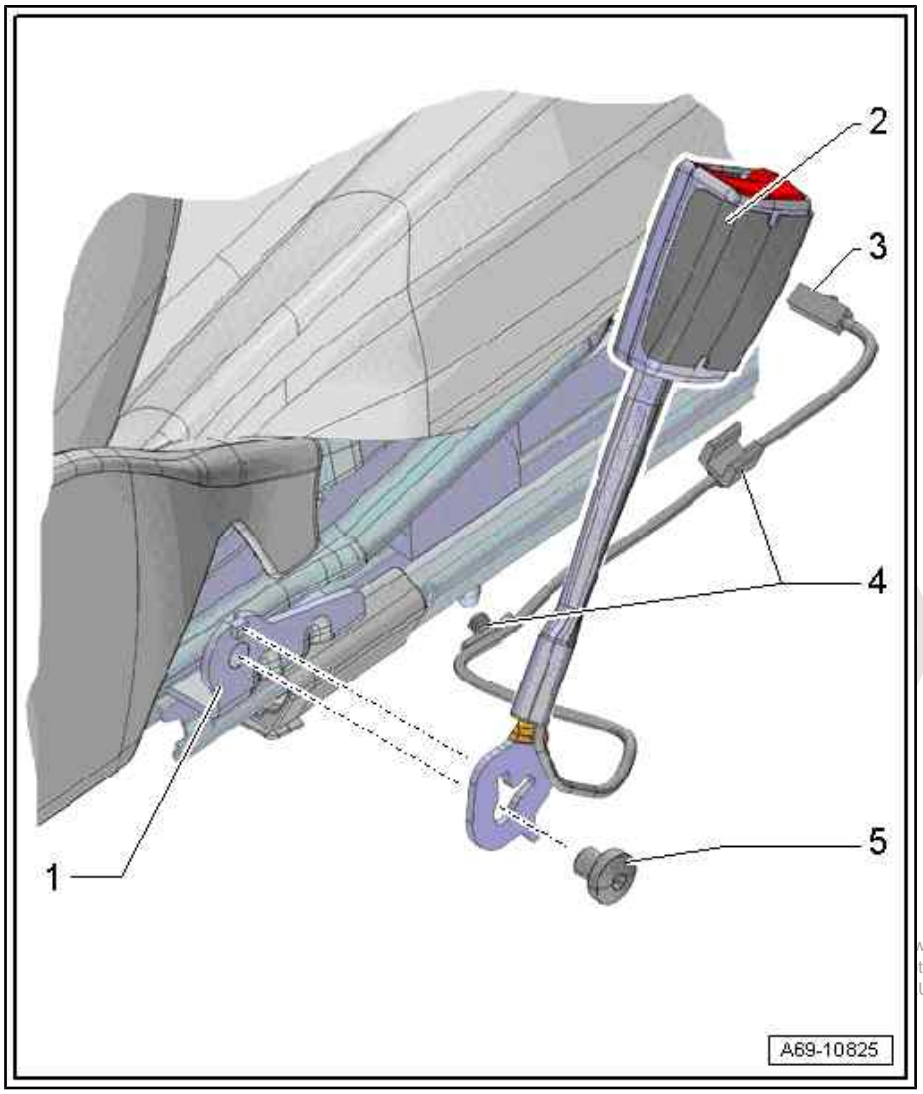
- ❑ For belt switch

4 - Cable retainer

- ❑ Clip into seat pan

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 33 Nm



whole, is not
t any liability
UDI AG.

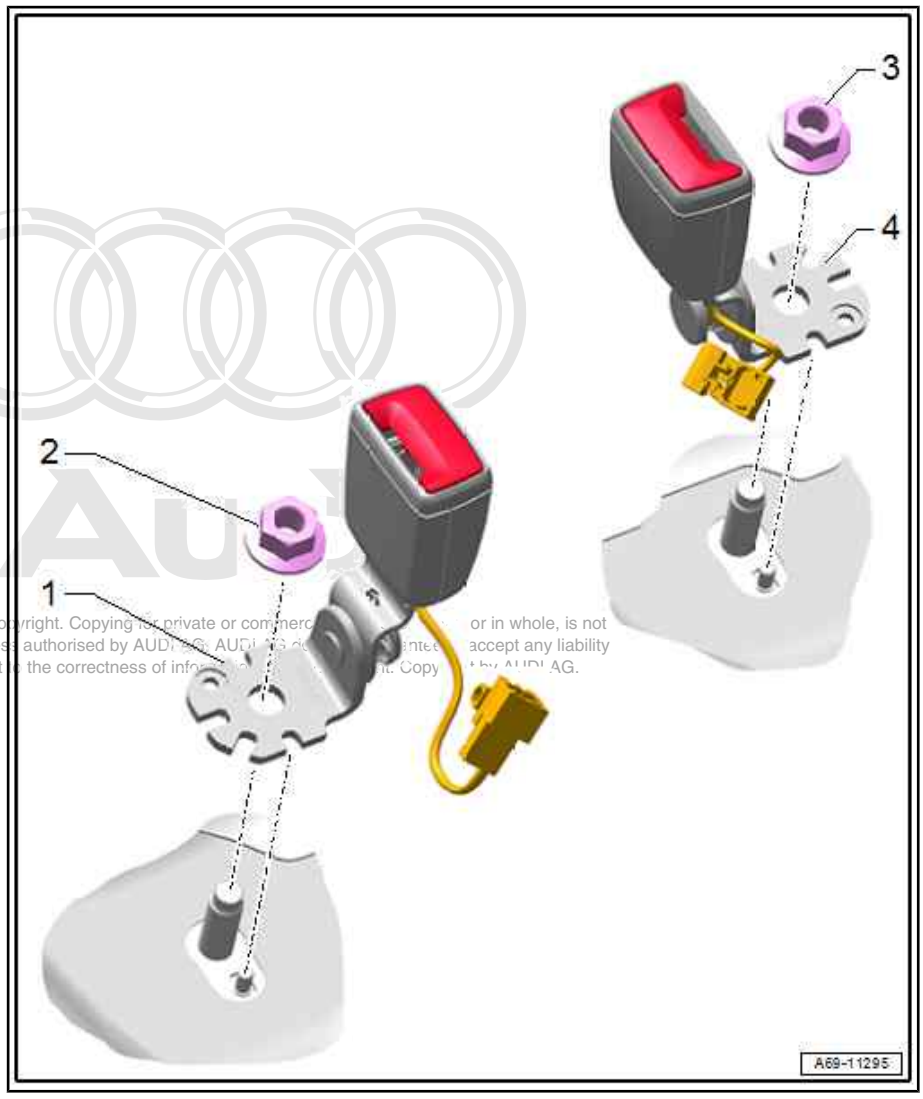
1.7 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear)

⇒ “1.7.1 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), seat bench with 2 seats”, page 89

⇒ “1.7.2 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), seat bench with 3 seats”, page 90

⇒ “1.7.3 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), A5 Cabriolet”, page 91

1.7.1 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), seat bench with 2 seats



1 - Belt buckle (right-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locking pin on floor panel must be located in recess on buckle attachment surface

2 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

3 - Nut

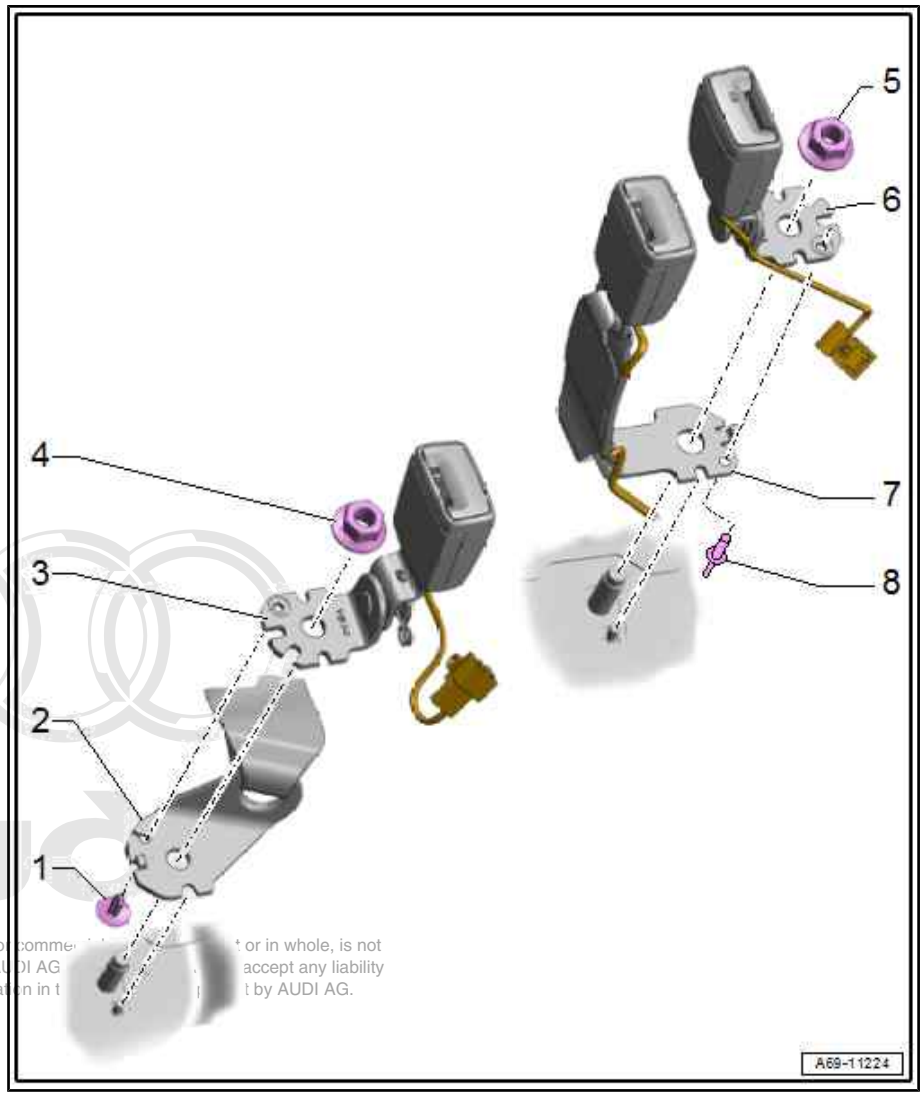
- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

4 - Belt buckle (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locking pin on floor panel must be located in recess on buckle attachment surface

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7.2 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), seat bench with 3 seats



1 - Clip

2 - Centre belt end fitting (rear)

3 - Belt buckle (right-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locking pin on floor panel must be located in recess on buckle attachment surface

4 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

5 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 45 Nm

6 - Belt buckle (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locking pin on floor panel must be located in recess on buckle attachment surface

7 - Belt buckle (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 118
- ❑ Always renew if belt tensioner has been triggered while belt was fastened
- ❑ Align with direction of travel when bolting on
- ❑ Locking pin on floor panel must be located in recess on buckle attachment surface

8 - Pop rivet

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.7.3 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), A5 Cabriolet

1 - Belt buckle (right-side)

- ❑ With rear belt switch, passenger side - E259-
- ❑ With/without belt switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 119
- ❑ Renew belt buckle if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened

3 - Cover

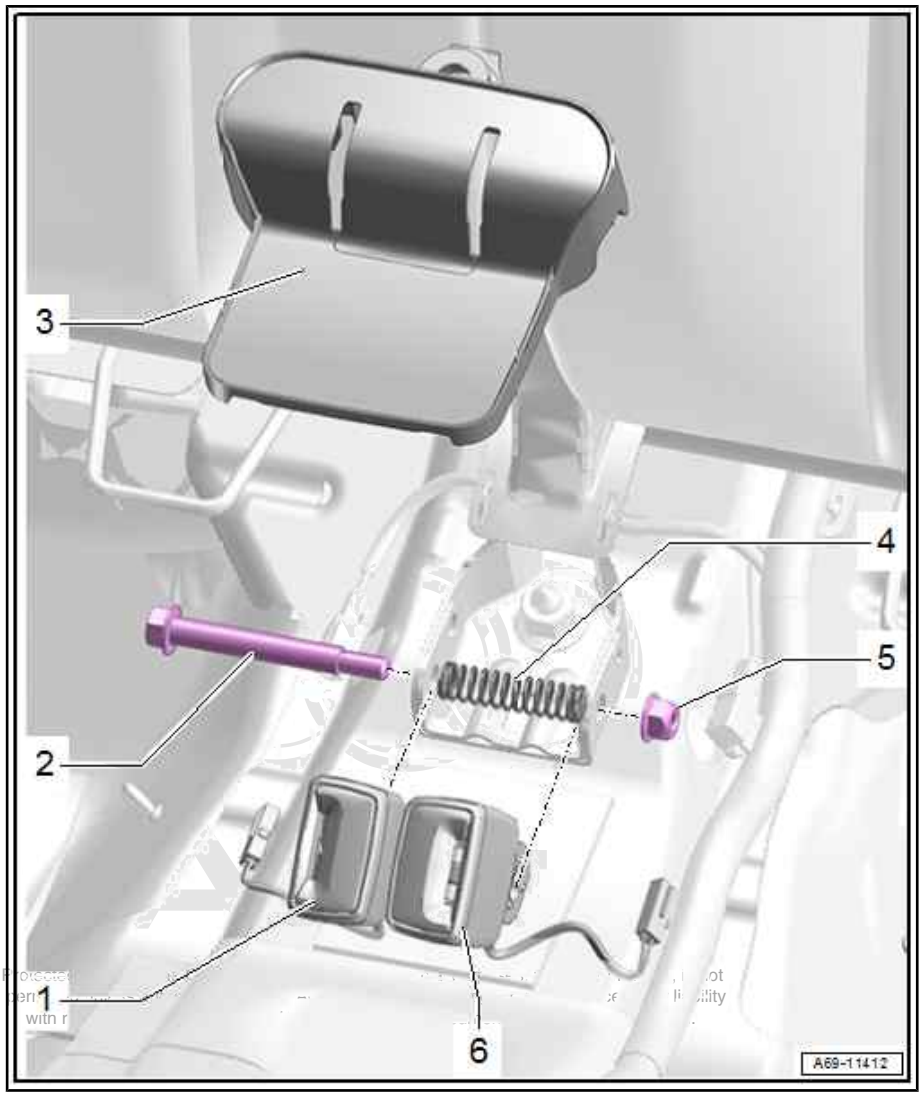
4 - Spring

5 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- ❑ 40 Nm

6 - Belt buckle (left-side)

- ❑ With rear belt switch, driver side - E258-
- ❑ With/without belt switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 119
- ❑ Renew belt buckle if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened



1.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)

⇒ "1.8.1 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) - A5 Coupé/Sportback", page 92

⇒ "1.8.2 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) - A5 Cabriolet", page 95

1.8.1 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) - A5 Coupé/Sportback

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

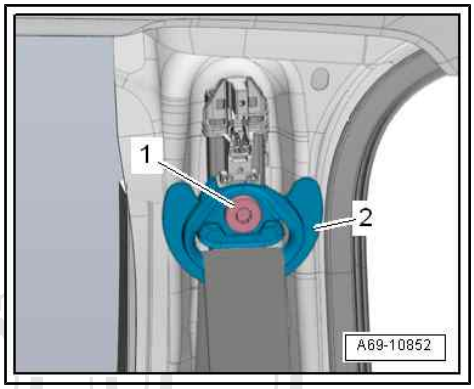
– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 113 .

– Remove B-pillar trim and guide out belt ⇒ page 283 .

– Remove belt guide (front) ⇒ page 111 .

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Detach belt guide fitting -2- with belt.



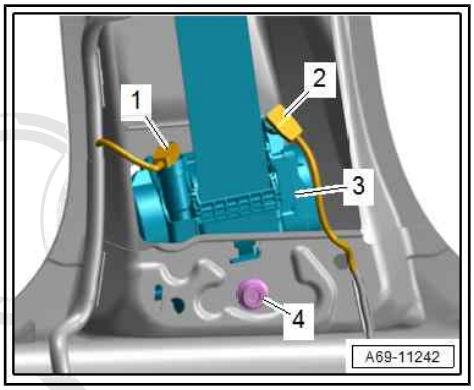
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Version 1:

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2- for belt tensioner igniter and belt force limiter; to do so, pull out connector locking element.

– Remove bolt -4- and take automatic belt retractor -3- out of mounting.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

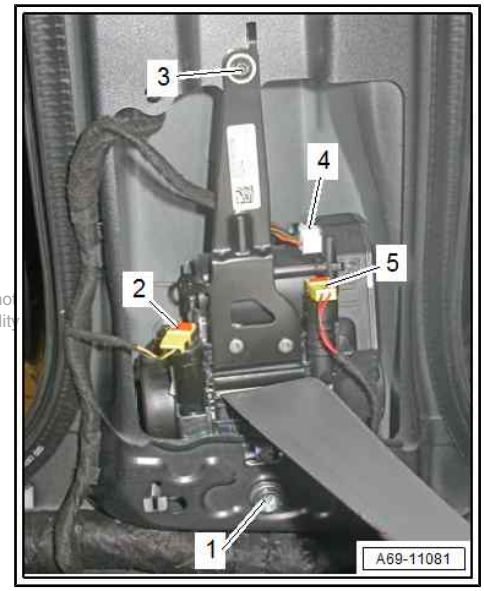
Version 2:

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Unplug electrical connectors -2 and 5- for belt tensioner igniter and belt force limiter; to do so, pull out connector locking element.
– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connector -4- for control unit for belt tensioner.
– Remove bolts -1 and 3- and take automatic belt retractor out of mounting.

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

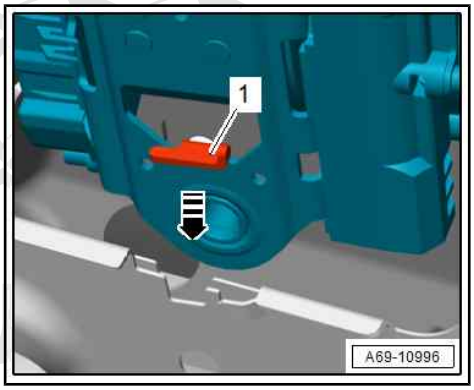
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Depending on equipment version, the control unit -J854- / -J855- may need to be adapted after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

– Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -arrow- and tighten bolt.



WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)", page 79

1.8.2 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) - A5 Cabriolet

Removing

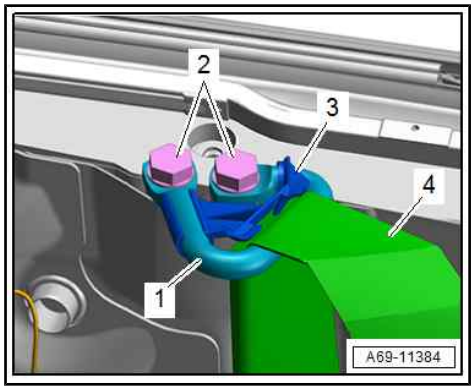
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 114 .
– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .
– Remove side trim ⇒ page 295 .

– Unclip belt guide -3- from belt guide fitting -1- and fold it out upwards and to one side.
– Thread out belt -4- with belt end fitting through belt guide fitting.

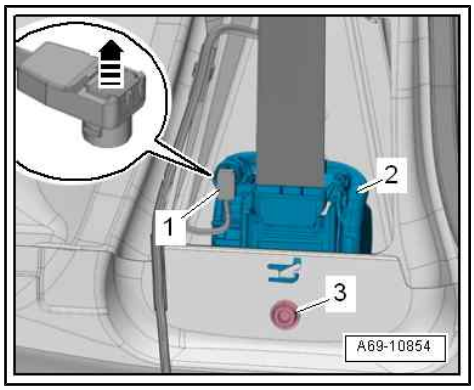


Equipment version without electric belt tensioning:

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***



– Release connector locking element with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector for belt tensioner igniter 1 -item 1-.
– Remove bolt -3- and take automatic belt retractor -2- out of mounting.

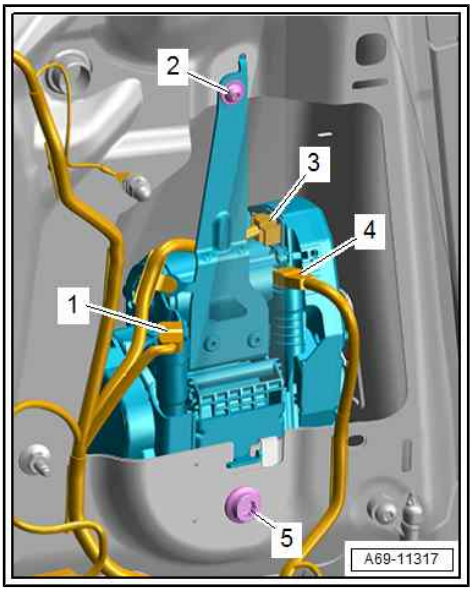
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Equipment version with electric belt tensioning:

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 4- for belt tensioner igniter and belt force limiter; to do so, pull out connector locking element.
– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connector -3- for control unit for belt tensioner.
– Move electrical wiring clear.
– Remove bolts -2 and 5- and take automatic belt retractor out of mounting.

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

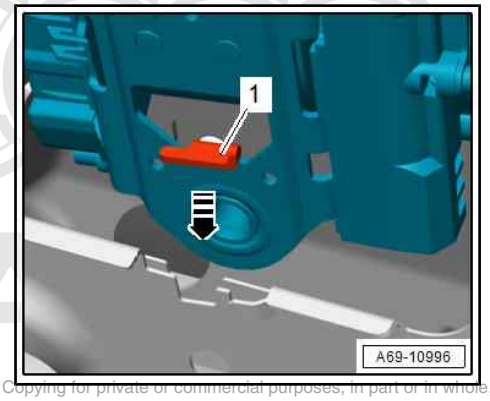
– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Depending on equipment version, the control unit -J854- / -J855- may need to be adapted after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Copyright AUDI AG. Duplication for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -arrow- and tighten bolt.



WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “1.2.3 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A5 Cabriolet”, page 81

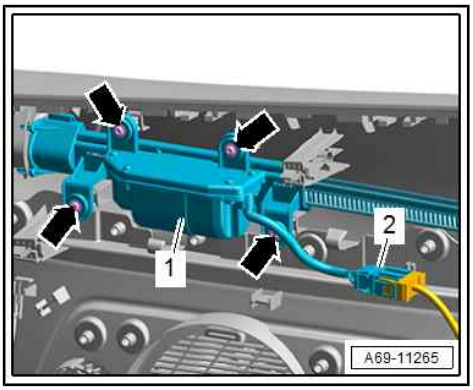
1.9 Removing and installing belt feeder motor -V604- / -V605-

⇒ “1.9.1 Removing and installing belt feeder motor - A5 Coupé”, page 99

⇒ “1.9.2 Removing and installing belt feeder motor - A5 Cabriolet”, page 99

1.9.1 Removing and installing belt feeder motor - A5 Coupé

Removing



– Remove side trim ⇒ page 293 .
– Remove insulating mat in vicinity of belt feeder.
– Unplug electrical connector -2- and move it clear.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach belt feeder motor -1- from side trim.

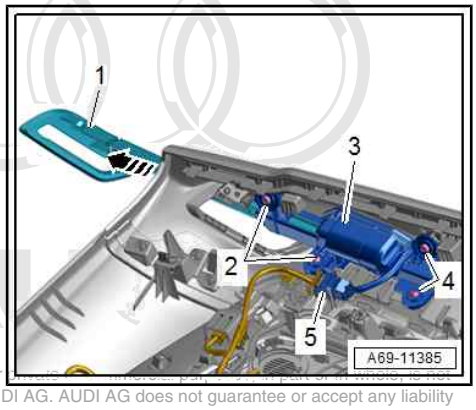
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.3.1 Exploded view - belt feeder motor, A5 Coupé”, page 83

1.9.2 Removing and installing belt feeder motor - A5 Cabriolet

Removing



– Remove side trim ⇒ page 295 .
– Remove insulating mat in vicinity of belt feeder.
– Pull rack -1- off belt feeder motor -3- -arrow- and detach.
– Unplug electrical connector -5- and move it clear.
– Remove bolts -2, 4-.
– Detach belt feeder motor from side trim.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.3.2 Exploded view - belt feeder motor, A5 Cabriolet”, page 84

1.10 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)

⇒ "1.10.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - A5 Coupé", page 100

⇒ "1.10.2 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - A5 Sportback", page 102

⇒ "1.10.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) - A5 Cabriolet", page 104

⇒ "1.10.4 Removing and installing centre three-point seat belt (rear)", page 108

1.10.1 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - A5 Coupé

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 115 .

– Remove rear shelf ⇒ page 303 .

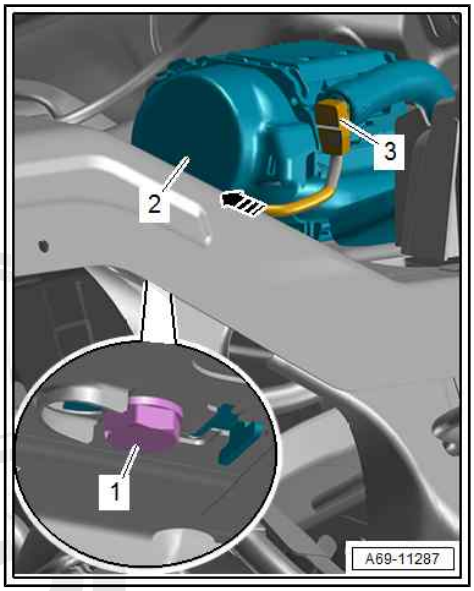
– Detach noise insulation for automatic belt retractor.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Release connector locking element with a small screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Loosen bolt -1- approx. 7 turns.

– Slide three-point seat belt -2- towards rear -arrow-, disengage it from mounting and remove.

Installing

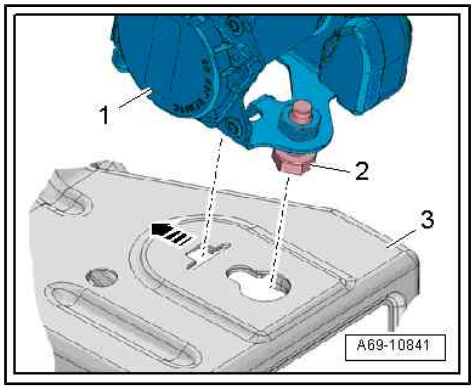
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.
– Press three-point seat belt -1- forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.



WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.4.1 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Coupé/Sportback", page 85

1.10.2 Removing and installing outer three-point seat belt (rear) - A5 Sportback

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

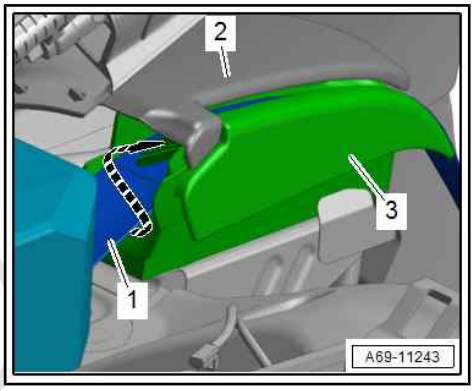
– Remove outer belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 115 .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 333 .

– Left side of vehicle: Remove relay and fuse carrier in luggage compartment if necessary ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .

– Take belt -1- out of belt guide (rear) -3-.

– To do so, lift C-pillar trim -2- slightly and guide belt over rib on belt guide -arrow- and through gap between trim and belt guide.

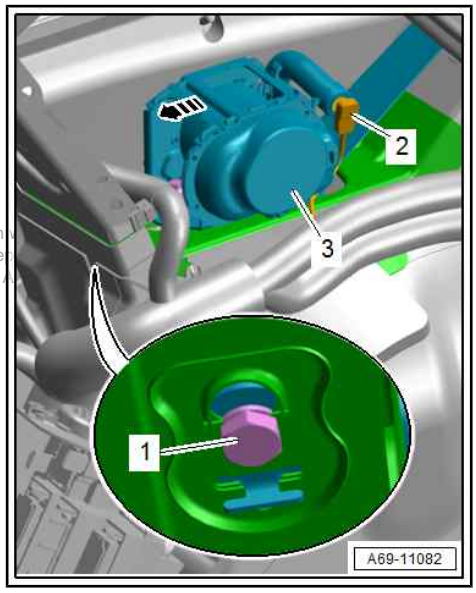


WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A



– Release connector locking element with a small screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Remove noise insulation and loosen bolt -1- approx. 7 turns.

– Slide three-point seat belt -3- towards rear -arrow-, disengage it from mounting and remove.

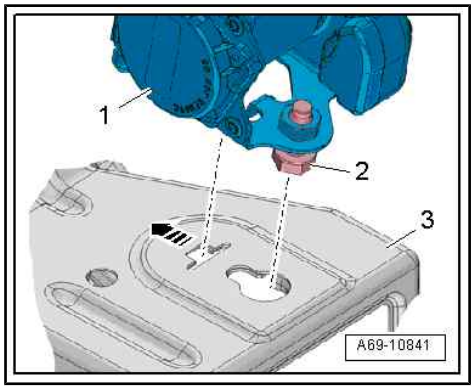
Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element and bolt -2- in mounting -3-.
– Press three-point seat belt -1- forwards as far as stop -arrow- and at the same time tighten bolt.



Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

The reproduction, distribution and utilization of this document, in part or in whole, is not permitted without written authorization from AUDI AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4.1 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 85

1.10.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Protector - VAS 871 001- (not illustrated)

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

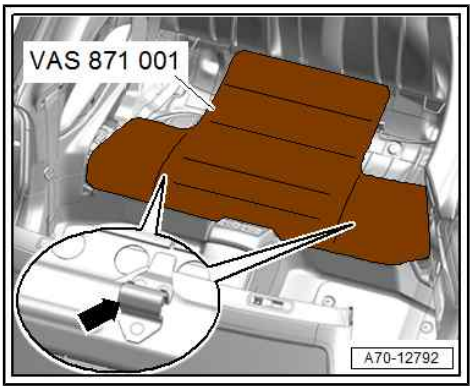
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

Caution

Risk of damage to rear seat backrests.

- *To avoid damaging the cover and padding, the front mountings -arrow- for seat bench must be covered using the protector - VAS 871 001- .*



– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Move convertible roof into service position ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 61 ; Convertible roof; Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid .

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 553 .

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 295 .

– Remove belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 116 .

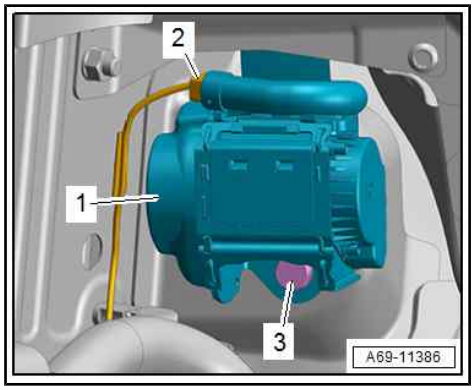
– Loosen luggage compartment side trim in area of seat belt and push to one side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Release connector locking element with a small screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Remove bolt -3-.

– Lift three-point seat belt -1- out of mounting.

– Carefully thread out belt with belt end fitting and remove three-point seat belt.

Installing

WARNING

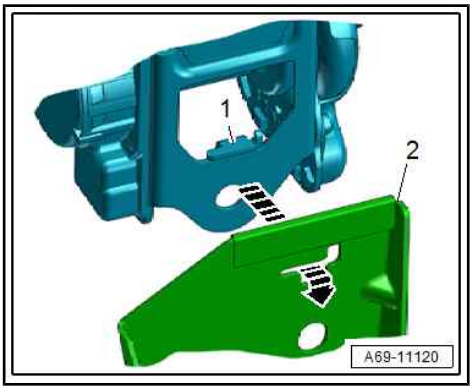
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

– Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.



WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

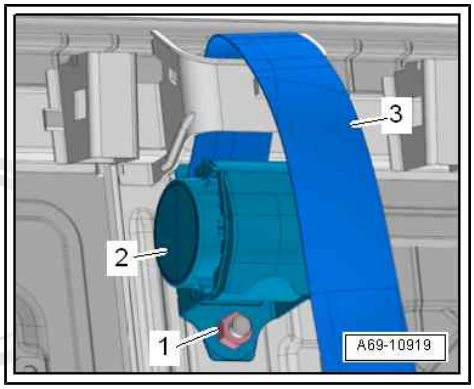
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "1.4.2 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Cabriolet", page 86

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.10.4 Removing and installing centre three-point seat belt (rear)



Removing

– Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 118 .

– Remove rear seat backrest (right-side) ⇒ page 480 .

– Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ page 548 .

– Unscrew nut -1-.

– Disengage three-point seat belt -2- and detach.

– Thread out belt -3-.

Installing

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element in mounting and tighten nut.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “1.5 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 87

1.11 Removing and installing belt guide (rear)

⇒ “1.11.1 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - A5 Coupé”, page 108

⇒ “1.11.2 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - A5 Sportback”, page 109

⇒ “1.11.3 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) - A5 Cabriolet”, page 110

⇒ “1.11.4 Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear)”, page 110

1.11.1 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - A5 Coupé

Removing

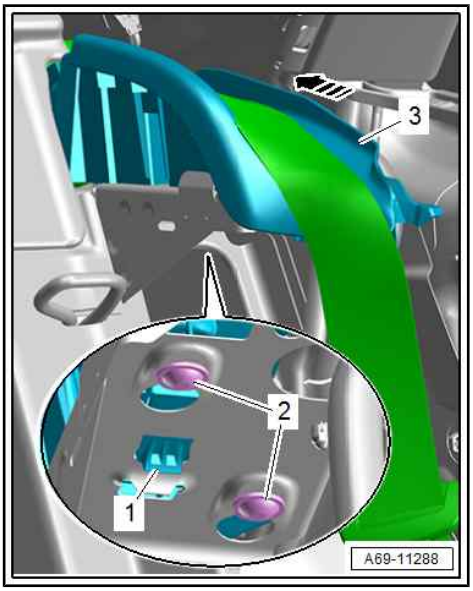
– Remove side trim ⇒ page 293 .

– Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ page 288 .

Caution

Risk of malfunctions.

- *When removing and installing belt guide -3-, never turn bolts -2-. They have been set by the manufacturer.*
- *Renew entire belt guide if damaged.*



– Press retaining hooks -1- on belt guide upwards and hold.
– Slide belt guide -3- to rear -arrow- until bolt heads -2- can be disengaged from bracket at body.
– Disengage belt guide from bracket and take it out towards front.
– Right side of vehicle (depending on equipment version): Unplug electrical connector for parking aid warning buzzer.

Installing

– Position belt guide on bracket and with bolt heads -2- in guide elements at bracket.
– Pull belt guide forwards until retaining hook engages audibly.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4.1 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 85

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.11.2 Removing and installing outer belt guide (rear) - A5 Sportback

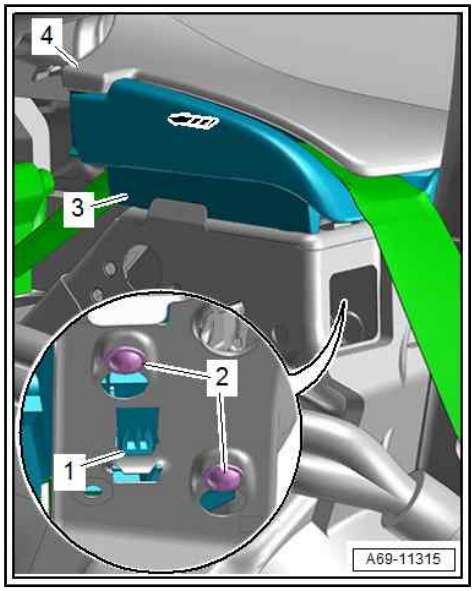
Removing

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 333 .
– Remove bracket for D-pillar trim ⇒ page 291 .

Caution

Risk of malfunctions.

- *When removing and installing belt guide -3-, never turn bolts -2-. They have been set by the manufacturer.*
- *Renew entire belt guide if damaged.*



- Using a long screwdriver, press retaining hook -1- on belt guide upwards and hold.
- Lift C-pillar trim -4- slightly and slide belt guide towards rear -arrow- until bolt heads -2- can be disengaged from bracket on body.
- Lift C-pillar trim slightly and take belt guide -3- out sideways towards interior of vehicle.
- If fitted, disconnect wiring for emergency call module aerial -R263- .
- Right side of vehicle (depending on equipment version): Unplug electrical connector for parking aid warning buzzer.
- Thread out belt and detach belt guide.

Installing

- Position belt guide on bracket and with bolt heads -2- in guide elements at bracket.
- Pull belt guide forwards until retaining hook engages audibly.
- Make sure that belt guide engages properly in C-pillar trim.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

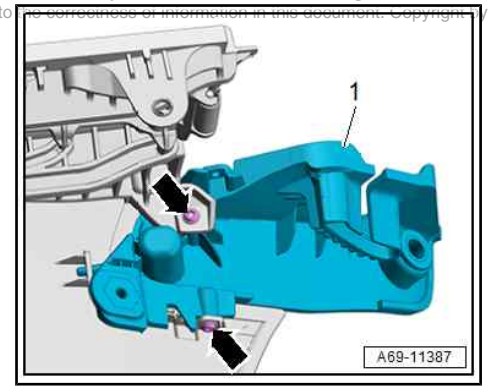
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4.1 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 85

1.11.3 Removing and installing belt guide (rear) - A5 Cabriolet

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Remove side trim ⇒ page 295 .
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- at rear of side trim.
- Disengage belt guide -1- at side trim and remove.



Installing

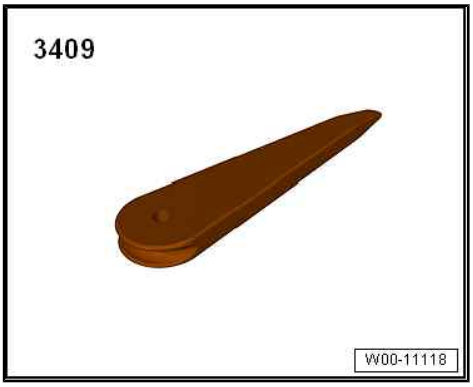
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4.2 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Cabriolet”, page 86

1.11.4 Removing and installing centre belt guide (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



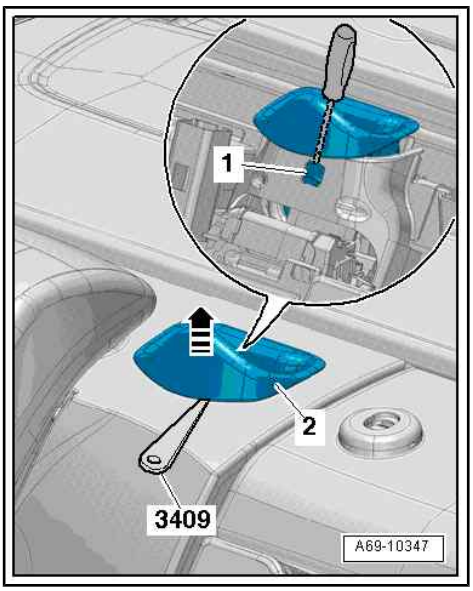
Removing

– Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 118 .

– Insert screwdriver into opening in belt guide (from top) and release retaining tab -1-.

– At the same time, unclip belt guide -2- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow-.

– Thread out belt end fitting and detach belt guide.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "1.5 Exploded view - centre three-point seat belt (rear)", page 87

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright © AUDI AG.

1.12 Removing and installing belt guide (front)

Removing

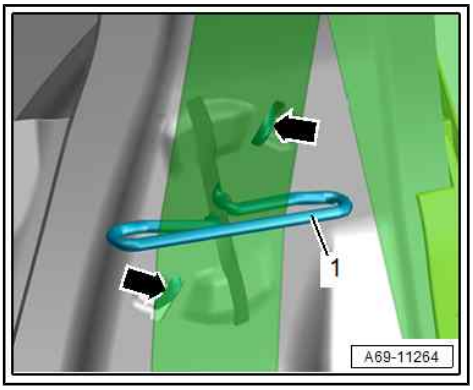
– Remove B-pillar trim (top) and move it to one side together with belt ⇒ page 283 .

A5 Coupé:

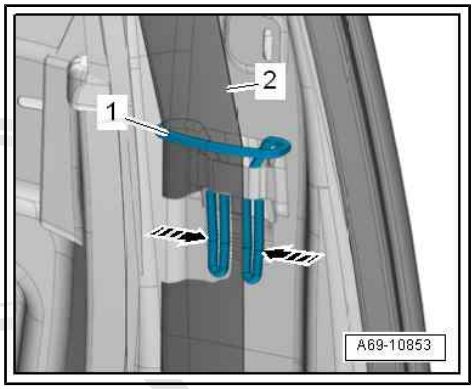
– Hold side trim and belt to one side.

– Release fasteners -arrows- one by one with a screwdriver and at the same time rotate belt guide -1- anti-clockwise.

– Thread out belt and detach belt guide.

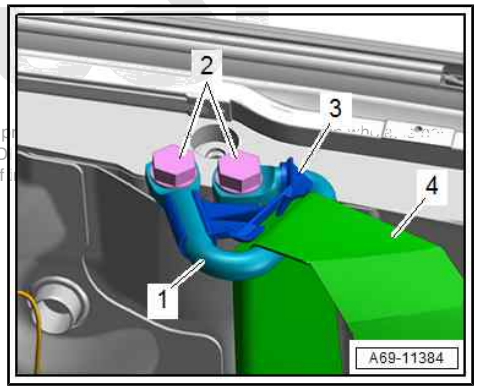


A5 Sportback:



- Remove bracket for B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ “5.14.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) - A5 Sportback”, page 285 .
- Remove B-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ page 287 .
- Hold belt -2- to side, press retainers together -arrows- and pull out belt guide -1- upwards.
- Thread out belt and detach belt guide.

A5 Cabriolet:



- Remove side trim ⇒ page 295 .
- Unclip and detach belt guide -3- from belt guide fitting -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for p
permitted unless authorised by AUD
with respect to the correctness of

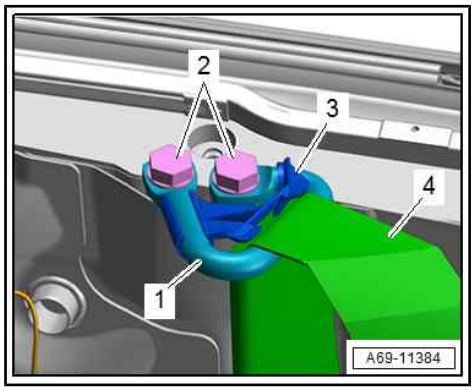
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 79

1.13 Removing and installing belt guide fitting (front)

Removing



- Remove side trim ⇒ page 295 .
- Unclip and detach belt guide -3- from belt guide fitting -1-.
- Remove bolts -2-.
- Disengage belt -4- and remove belt guide fitting.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2.3 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A5 Cabriolet”, page 81

1.14 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front)

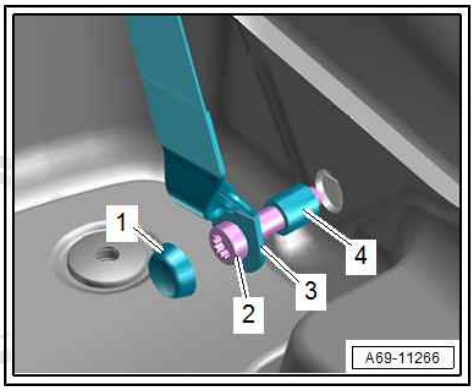
⇒ “1.14.1 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - A5 Coupé”, page 113

⇒ “1.14.2 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - A5 Sportback”, page 113

⇒ “1.14.3 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - A5 Cabriolet”, page 114

1.14.1 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - A5 Coupé

Removing



– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
– Prise off cap -1- with a screwdriver.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Remove bolt with belt end fitting -3- and stop sleeve -4-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

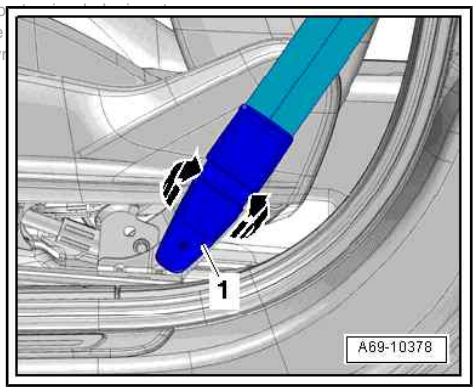
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “1.2.1 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A5 Coupé”, page 79

1.14.2 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - A5 Sportback

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr

Removing

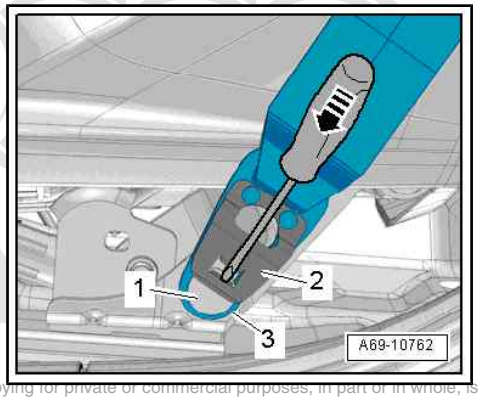


– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
– Unclip cover -1- at belt end fitting -arrows- and slide it upwards.

Caution

Risk of damage to spring -2- if it is not removed correctly.

- *To ensure that the spring is not deformed, only move it to the extent required to release the retaining tab on the spring.*
- *The three-point seat belt must be renewed if the spring is bent.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert small screwdriver into opening on spring -arrow- and release retaining tab on spring -2-.
– Slide belt end fitting -3- downwards and disengage at stud -1-.

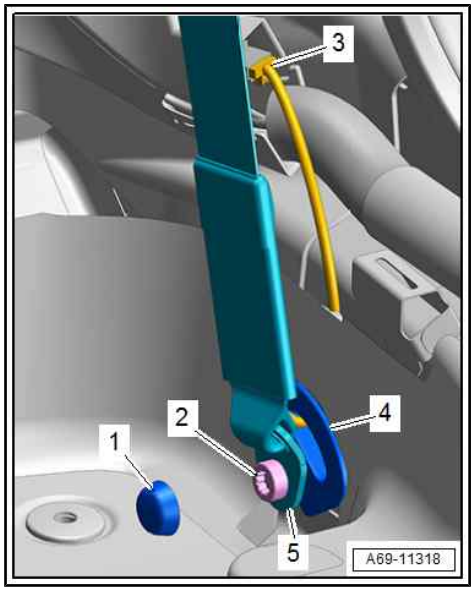
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A5 Sportback", page 80

1.14.3 Removing and installing belt end fitting (front) - A5 Cabriolet

Removing



– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 275 .
– Release connector locking element and unplug electrical connector -3- for seat belt microphone.
– Prise off cap -1- with a screwdriver.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Remove bolt with belt end fitting -5- and stop sleeve.
– Disengage cap -4- for electrical wire and thread out wire.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2.3 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front), A5 Cabriolet", page 81

1.15 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear)

⇒ “1.15.1 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear) - A5 Coupé”, page 115

⇒ “1.15.2 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear) - A5 Sportback”, page 115

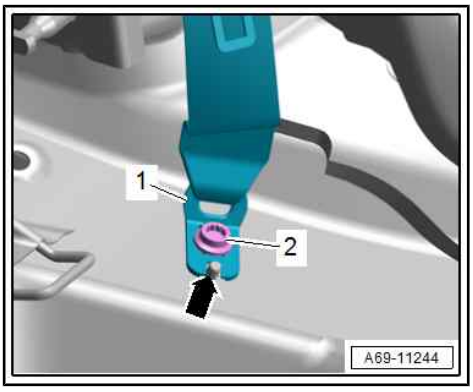
⇒ “1.15.3 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear) - A5 Cabriolet”, page 116

1.15.1 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear) - A5 Coupé

Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

– Remove bolt -2- from belt end fitting -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Threaded pin -arrow- on floor panel must be located in recess of belt end fitting.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4.1 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 85

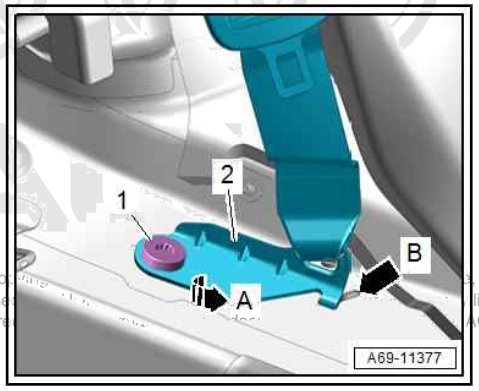
1.15.2 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear) - A5 Sportback

Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

– Remove bolt -1- from belt end fitting.

– Turn belt end fitting -2- in direction of -arrow A- and take it out of mounting -arrow B-.



Installing

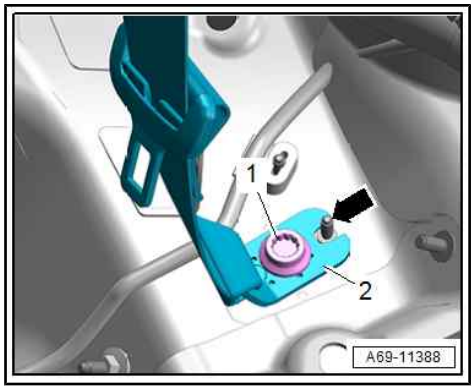
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fit belt end fitting -2- in mounting -arrow B-, turn to installation position and tighten with bolt -1-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4.1 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 85

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee the correctness or completeness of this document and accepts no liability for damages.

1.15.3 Removing and installing outer belt end fitting (rear) - A5 Cabriolet



Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 295 .

– Driver side: Remove subwoofer (if fitted) ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Remove bolt -1- from belt end fitting -2-.

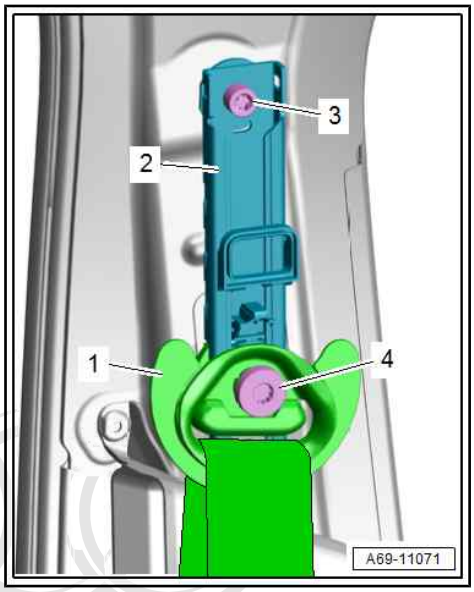
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Threaded pin -arrow- on floor panel must be located in recess of belt end fitting.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.4.2 Exploded view - outer three-point seat belt (rear), A5 Cabriolet”, page 86

1.16 Removing and installing belt height adjuster



Removing

– Move slide for belt height adjuster to lowest possible position.

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 283 and move it to one side together with belt.

– Remove bolt -4-.

– Detach belt guide fitting -1- with belt.

– Remove bolt -3-.

– Lift belt height adjuster -2- off B-pillar.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

Note

- *When supplied as replacement parts, belt height adjusters are always supplied with belt height adjustment slide and set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*
- *If belt height adjusters are removed and re-fitted, they must be set to bottom detent position (assembly position).*
- *Do not operate belt height adjustment button when fitting B-pillar trim.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– First insert B-pillar trim upwards into mounting at roof.

• Retaining pin -1- on sliding element of B-pillar trim must engage in mounting -2- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.

– Belt height adjuster as replacement part: After fitting B-pillar trim, press slide firmly upwards.

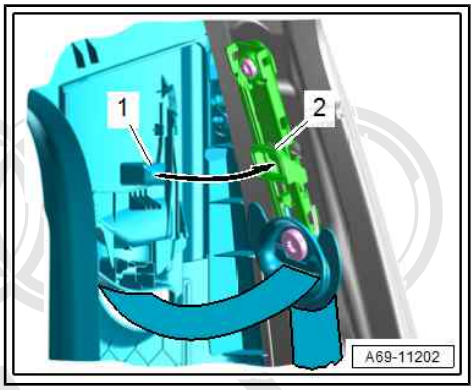
• This will release belt height adjuster from assembly position.

– The following functions must be tested successfully:

• Belt height adjuster must engage audibly in each of the possible positions (including top position).

• Belt height adjustment button must always automatically return to top position whenever it has been operated.

• After tightening bolt, belt guide fitting must settle automatically in vertical position or in fastening direction.



If any of the listed functions is not OK, check installation of belt height adjuster and renew adjuster if necessary.

Audi AG. All rights reserved. Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - three-point seat belt (front)”, page 79

1.17 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)

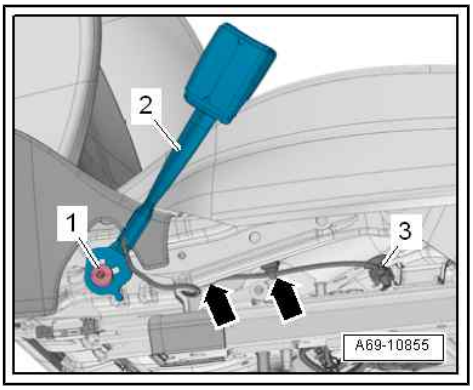
Removing

– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

– Unbolt front seat and tilt it towards front with electrical wiring connected ⇒ page 399 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3- and move wiring clear -arrows-.

– Remove bolt -1- and detach belt buckle -2-.

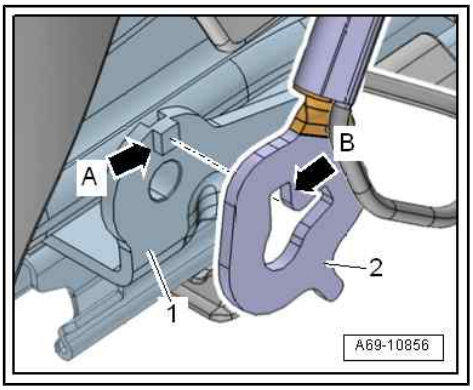


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Position belt buckle -2- so that recess -arrow B- coincides with lug -arrow A- on seat pan -1-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.6 Exploded view - belt buckle (front)”, page 88 , ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - front seat”, page 380



1.18 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)

⇒ “1.18.1 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) - rear seat with 2 seats”, page 118

⇒ “1.18.2 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) - rear seat with 3 seats”, page 118

⇒ “1.18.3 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) - A5 Cabriolet”, page 119

1.18.1 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) - rear seat with 2 seats

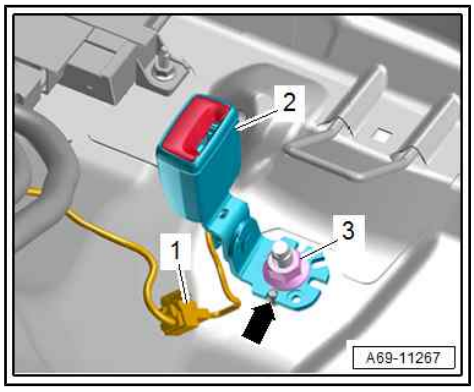
Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

– If fitted, move clear and unplug electrical connector -1- for belt switch.

– Unscrew nut -3-.

– Remove belt buckle -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Locking pin -arrow- on floor panel must be located in recess of belt buckle.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.7.1 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), seat bench with 2 seats”, page 89

1.18.2 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) - rear seat with 3 seats

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Drill

♦ Safety goggles

Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

Belt buckle (right-side) with centre belt end fitting (rear):

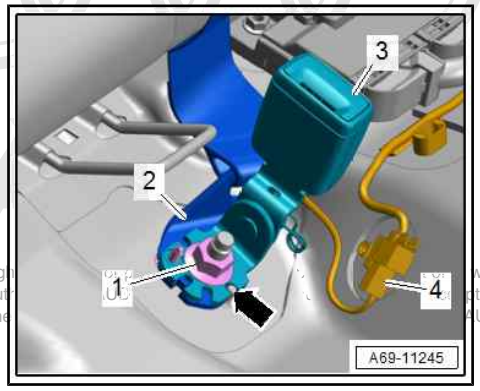
– If fitted, move clear and unplug electrical connector -4- for belt switch.

– Unscrew nut -1-.

– Detach belt end fitting -2- together with belt buckle -3-.

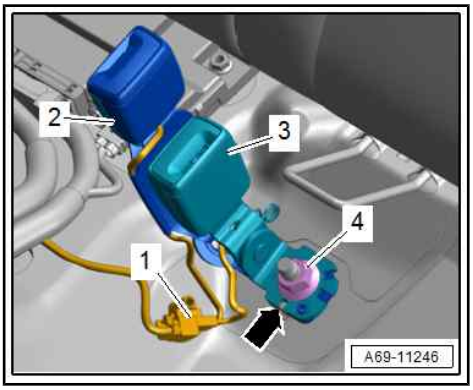
– Detach clip and remove belt buckle.

♦ -Arrow- Locking pin on floor panel



Protected by copyrig whole, is not
permitted unless aut t any liability
with respect to the UDI AG.

Belt buckles (centre and left-side):



– If fitted, move clear and unplug electrical connector -1- for belt switch.

– Unscrew nut -4-.

– Remove belt buckles -2, 3-.

♦ -Arrow- Locking pin on floor panel

Separating belt buckles from each other:

– Move electrical wiring for belt switch clear.

> **WARNING**
>
> *Risk of eye injuries.*
>
> ♦ *Put on safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivet.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Locking pin -arrow- on floor panel must be located in recess of belt buckle.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.7.2 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), seat bench with 3 seats", page 90

1.18.3 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) - A5 Cabriolet

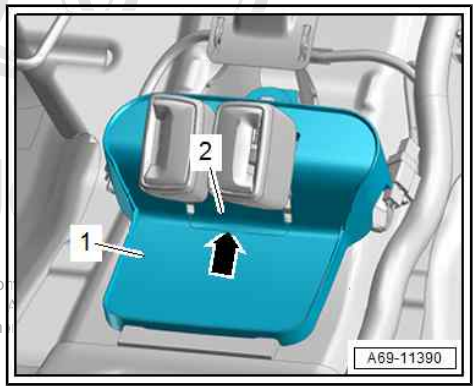
Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

– Unfasten tab -2- on cover for belt buckle at fastener -arrow-.

– Slide tab through underneath belt buckles and upwards.

– Disengage cover -1- for belt buckle and detach it upwards over belt buckles.

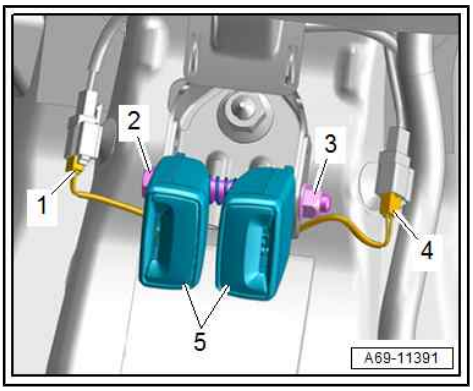


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI
with respect to the correctness of information

– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors -1, 4- for belt switch.

– Unscrew nut -3- and remove bolt -2-.

– Remove belt buckles -5-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.7.3 Exploded view - belt buckle (rear), A5 Cabriolet", page 91

2 Child seat anchors

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)”, page 120

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)”, page 121

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)”, page 123

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)”, page 123

2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)

1 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ Front passenger seat only
- ❑ Bolted to seat pan
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 14
- ❑ Renew child seat anchor if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

2 - Front passenger seat

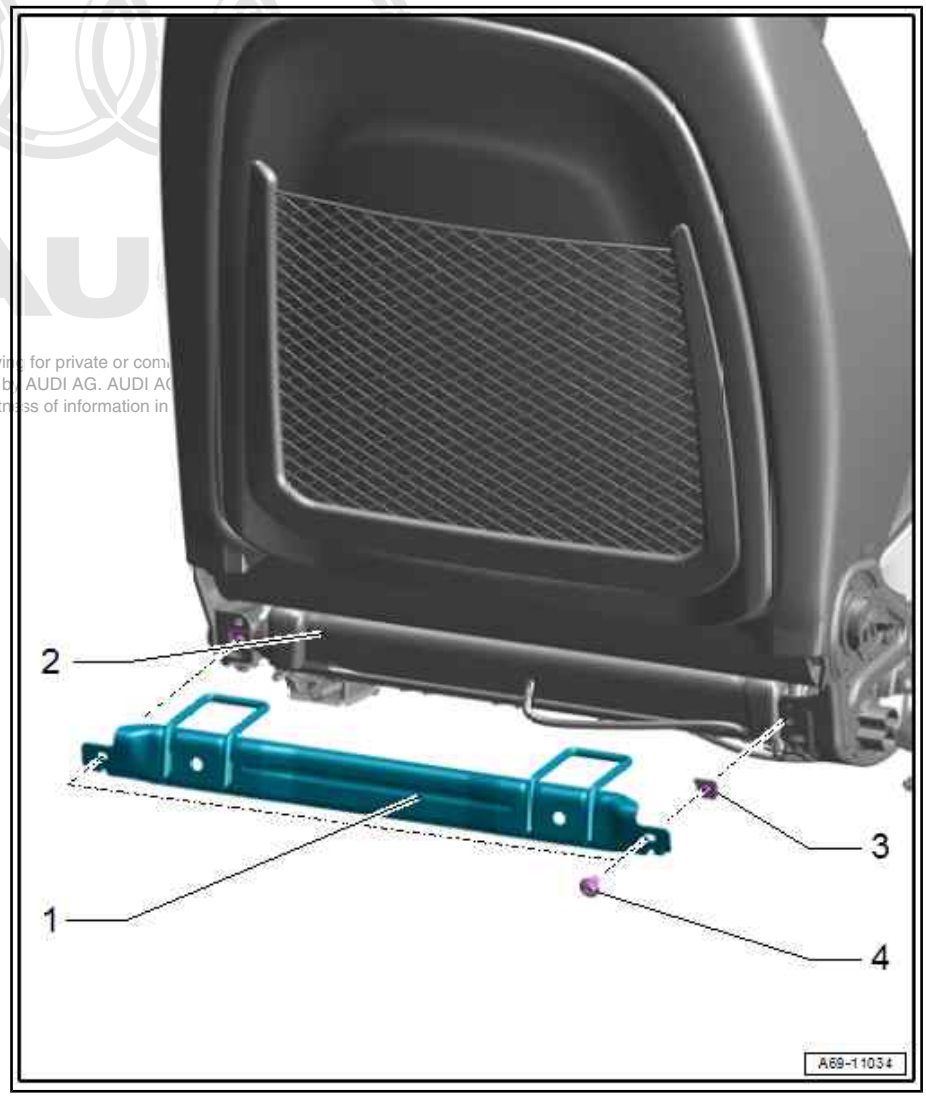
3 - Speed nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Inserted in seat pan
- ❑ Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in

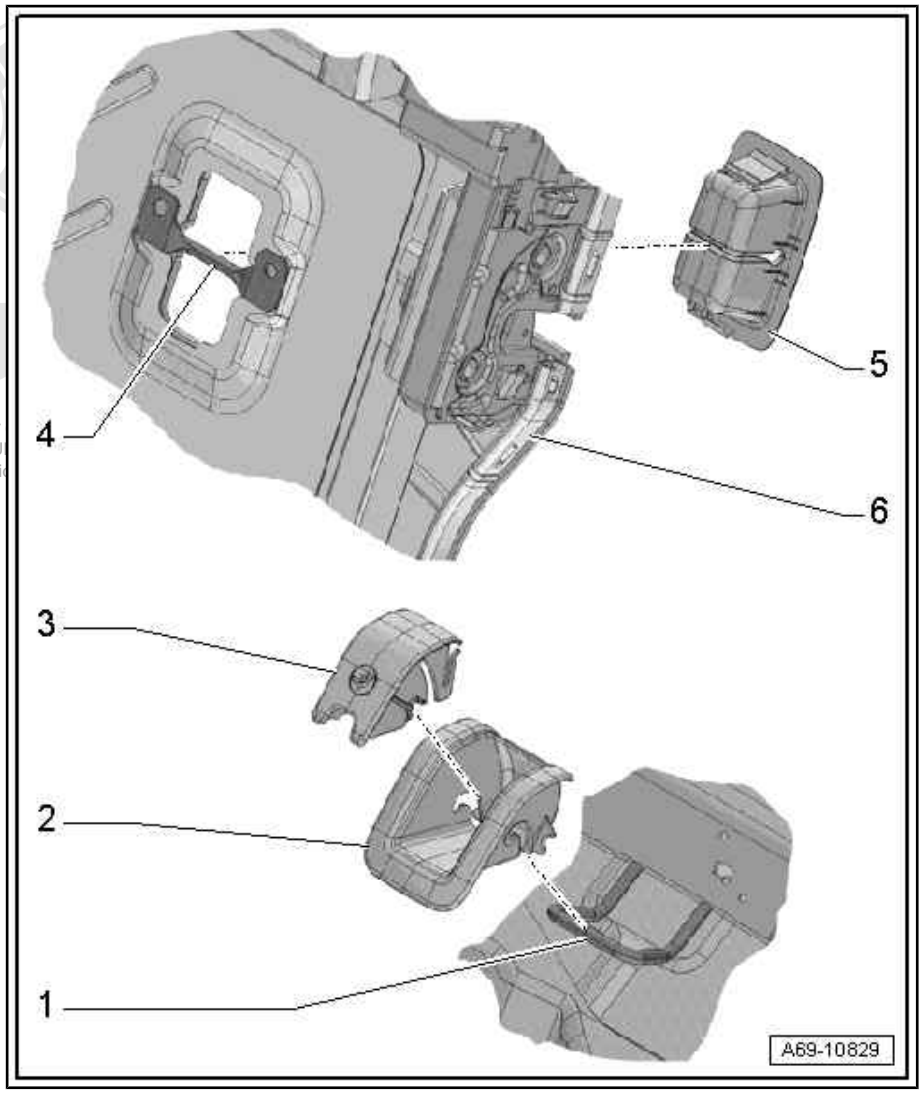


2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)

⇒ "2.2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), A5 Coupé/ Sportback", page 121

⇒ "2.2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), A5 Cabriolet", page 122

2.2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), A5 Coupé/Sportback



1 - Child seat anchor (bottom)

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Welded to vehicle floor

2 - Guide

- ❑ For child seat anchor (bottom)
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Must be seated firmly on anchor

3 - Cover

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU
with respect to the correctness of informati

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Must be seated firmly on anchor

4 - Child seat anchor (top)

- ❑ A5 Sportback only
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Welded to outer back-rest frame

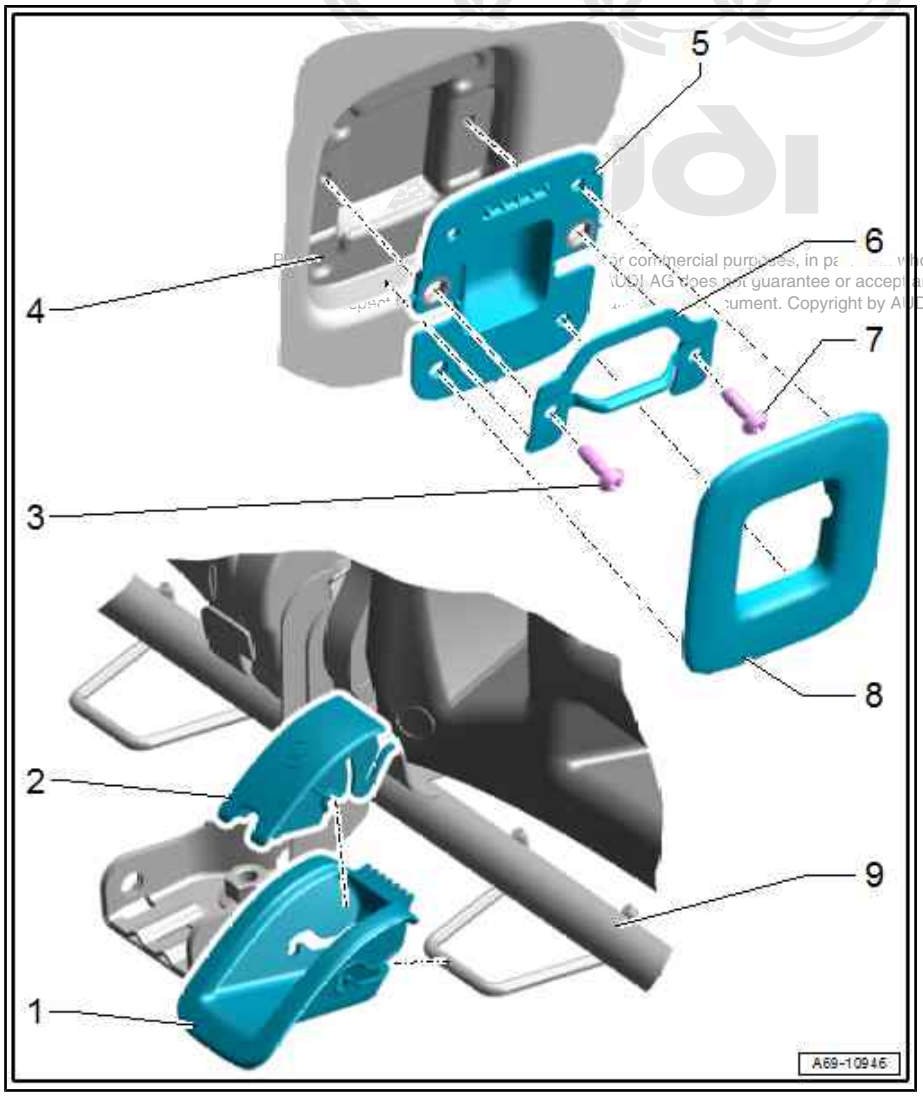
5 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ A5 Sportback only
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124
- ❑ Engage in anchor and press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Can only be pressed onto rear seat backrest in one position

6 - Rear seat backrest

- ❑ A5 Sportback only

2.2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), A5 Cabriolet



1 - Guide

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Must be seated firmly on anchor

2 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Must be seated firmly on anchor

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 6.5 Nm

4 - Rear seat backrest

5 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124
- ❑ Can only be installed in one position

6 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 6.5 Nm

8 - Cover

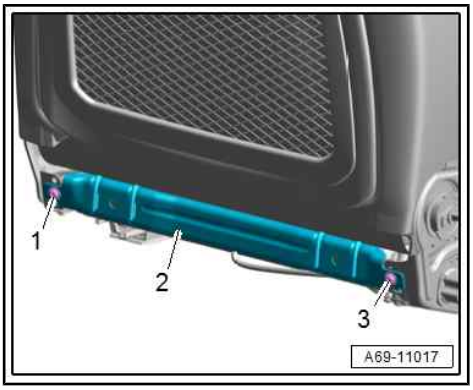
- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124
- ❑ Renew cover if damaged
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Can only be installed in one position

9 - Backrest frame

- ❑ Child seat anchor welded to backrest frame

...or commercial purposes, in pa... whole, is not ...DI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability ...cument. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Removing and installing child seat anchor (front)



Removing

– Remove front passenger seat ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 441 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .
– Disengage covers for backrest fitting and unscrew bolts -1, 3-.
– Detach child seat anchor -2- from front seat towards rear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (front)”, page 120

2.4 Removing and installing child seat anchor (rear)

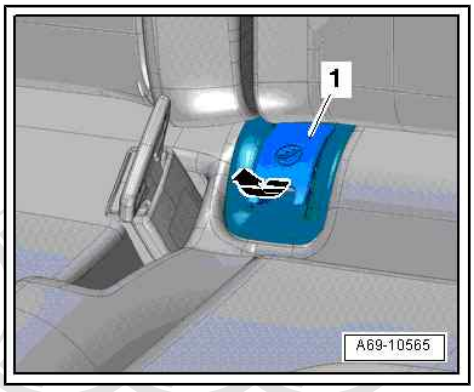
⇒ “2.4.1 Removing and installing guide for child seat anchor (bottom)”, page 123

⇒ “2.4.2 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor (top), rear seat backrest - A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 124

⇒ “2.4.3 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor (top), rear seat backrest - A5 Cabriolet”, page 124

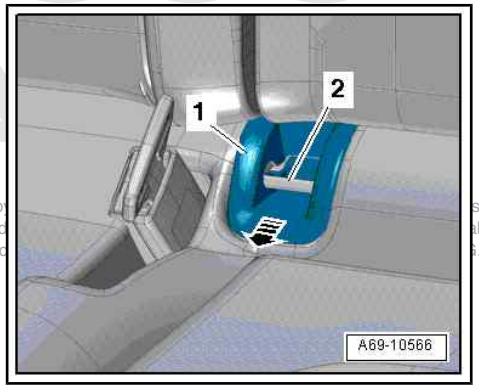
⇒ “2.4.4 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor (top) - rear shelf”, page 125

2.4.1 Removing and installing guide for child seat anchor (bottom)



Removing

– Unclip cover -1- for child seat anchor from anchor -arrow- and detach.



– Press guide -1- for child seat anchor downwards into recess and disengage from anchor -2-.
– Take guide for child seat anchor out towards front -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

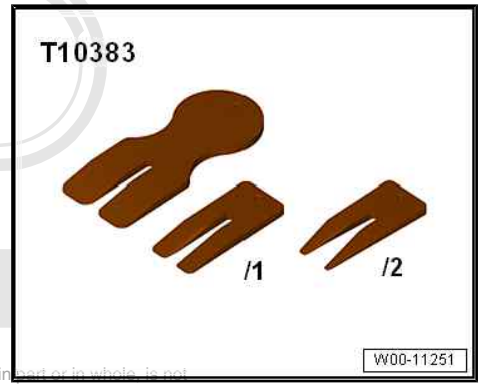
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear)”, page 121

Protected by copyright. Copy... authorised ... with respect to the correct... s not ...ability ...

2.4.2 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor (top), rear seat backrest - A5 Coupé/Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



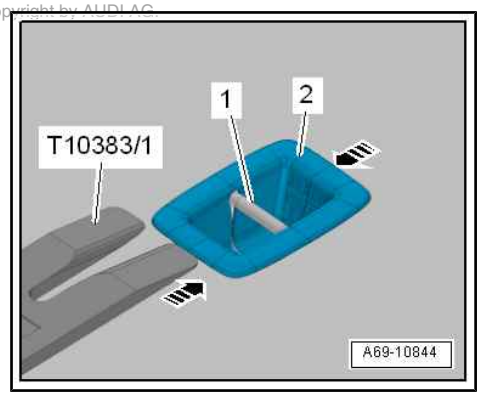
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Release retaining tabs using wedge -T10383/1- -arrows- and prise cover -2- upwards off rear seat backrest.

– Carefully pull cover off child seat anchor -1- and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

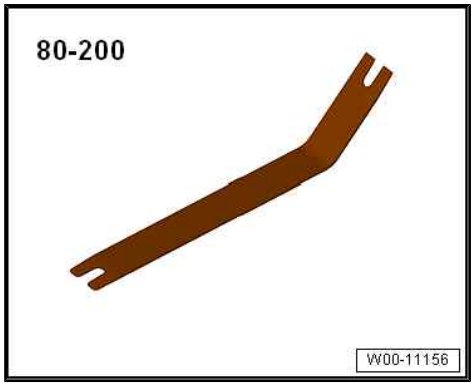
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.2.1 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), A5 Coupé/ Sportback", page 121

2.4.3 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor (top), rear seat backrest - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



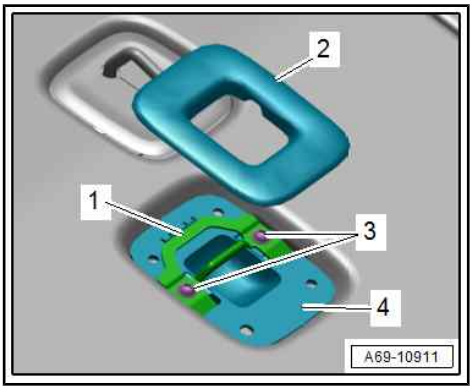
Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Unclip cover -2- for child seat anchor at corners using removal wedge - 80-200- .

– Remove bolts -3-.

– Detach anchor -1- with cover -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

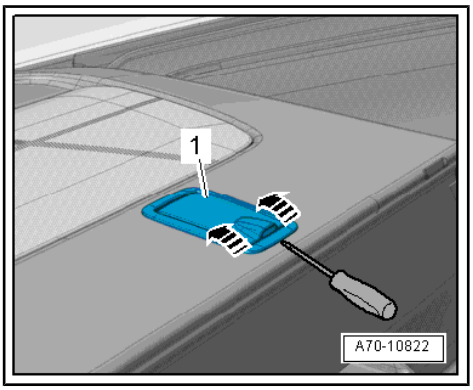
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.2.2 Exploded view - child seat anchors (rear), A5 Cabriolet”, page 122

2.4.4 Removing and installing cover for child seat anchor (top) - rear shelf

Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Use screwdriver to unclip cover -1- for child seat anchor -arrows- and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.11 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 272

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Airbag system

⇒ “3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system”, page 126

3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system

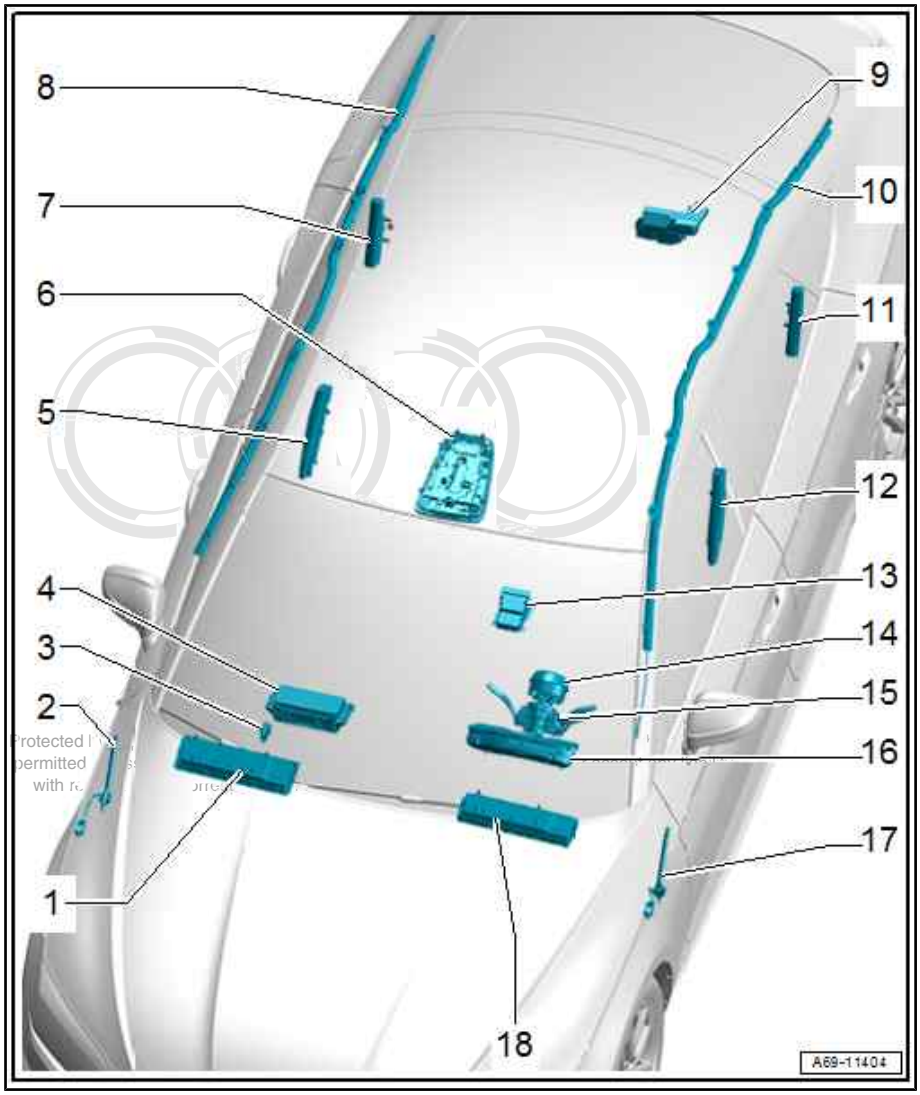
⇒ “3.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 126

⇒ “3.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, A5 Cabriolet”, page 128

3.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, A5 Coupé/Sportback

Note

The illustration shows the A5 Sportback as an example.



1 - Knee airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-
- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 173

2 - Trigger 2 for pedestrian protection - G599-

- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 204

3 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

- ❑ Rest-of-world vehicles/ equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 147

4 - Airbag (passenger side)

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-
- ♦ Airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-
- ♦ Igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-
  - ❑ Equipment version/rest-of-world version: can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 143

5 - Side airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 148

6 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

- ❑ Integrated in front roof module - WX3- ; cannot be renewed separately if defective
- ❑ Renewing front roof module - WX3- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front)

7 - Side airbag, rear (passenger side)

- ❑ With rear side airbag igniter on passenger side - N202-
- ❑ A5 Sportback only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 150

8 - Curtain airbag (passenger side)

- ❑ With front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 168

9 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- ❑ A5 g-tron: battery in engine compartment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 134

10 - Curtain airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 168

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Side airbag, rear (driver side)

- ❑ With rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ❑ A5 Sportback only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 150

12 - Side airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 148

13 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 130

14 - Airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Driver side airbag igniter - N95-
- ♦ Igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag - N490-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 137

15 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- ❑ With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

16 - Airbag warning lamp - K75-

- ❑ Integrated in dash panel insert; cannot be renewed separately if defective
- ❑ Renewing dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

17 - Trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-

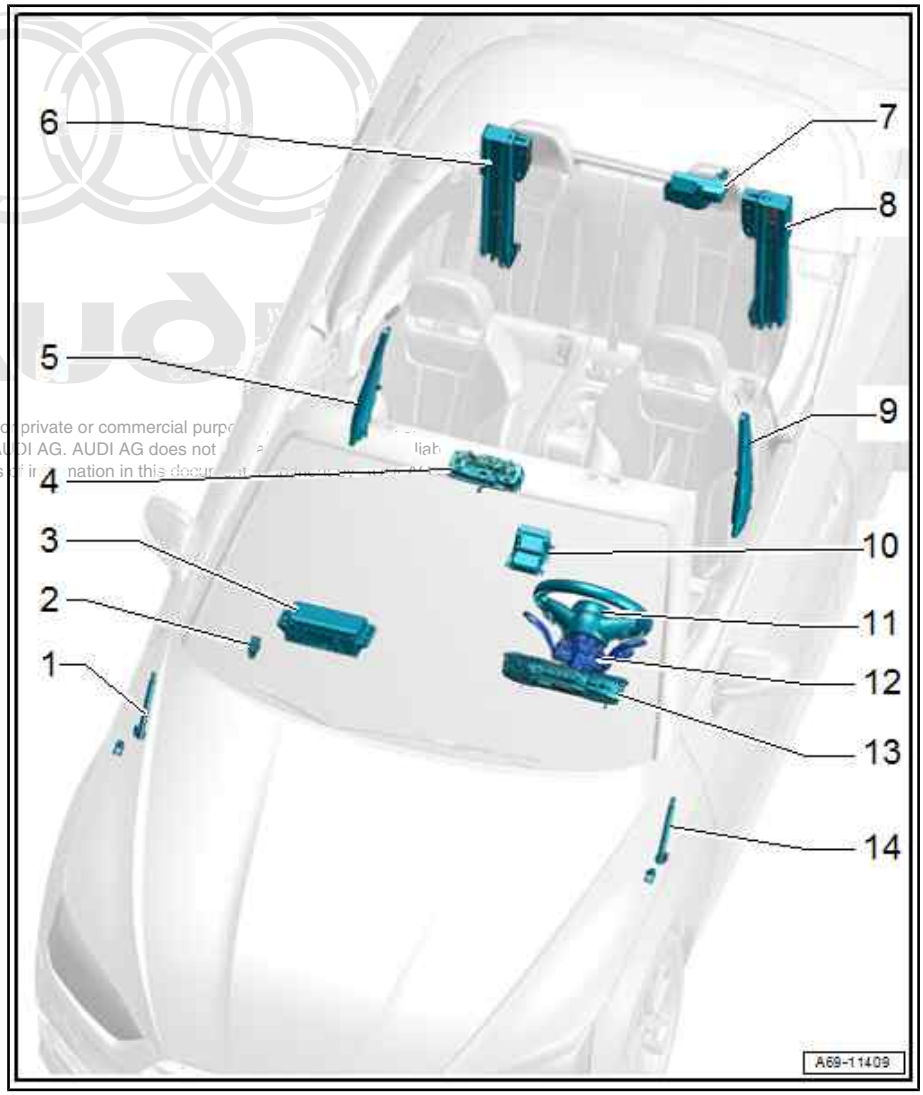
- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 204

18 - Knee airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-

- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 172

3.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Trigger 2 for pedestrian protection - G599-

- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 204

2 - Key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 147

3 - Airbag (passenger side)

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-
- ♦ Airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-
- ♦ Igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-
  - ❑ Depending on equipment version: Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224-
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 143

4 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side - K145-

- ❑ Integrated in front roof module - WX3- ; cannot be renewed separately if defective
- ❑ Renewing front roof module - WX3- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front)

5 - Side airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 148

6 - Rollover bar (right-side)

- ❑ With trigger for passenger side rollover bar - N647-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 199

7 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 134

8 - Rollover bar (left-side)

- ❑ With trigger for driver side rollover bar - N646-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 199

protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not ... liab... nation in this docu...

9 - Side airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 148

10 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 130

11 - Airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Driver side airbag igniter - N95-
- ♦ Igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag - N490-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 137

12 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- ❑ With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring - F138-
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

Protection of privacy and use for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - Airbag warning lamp - K75-

- ❑ Integrated in dash panel insert; cannot be renewed separately if defective
- ❑ Renewing dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert

14 - Trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-

- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 204

4 Airbag control unit

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit”, page 130

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 ”, page 130

4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit

1 - Centre tunnel

2 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit
- ❑ 9 Nm

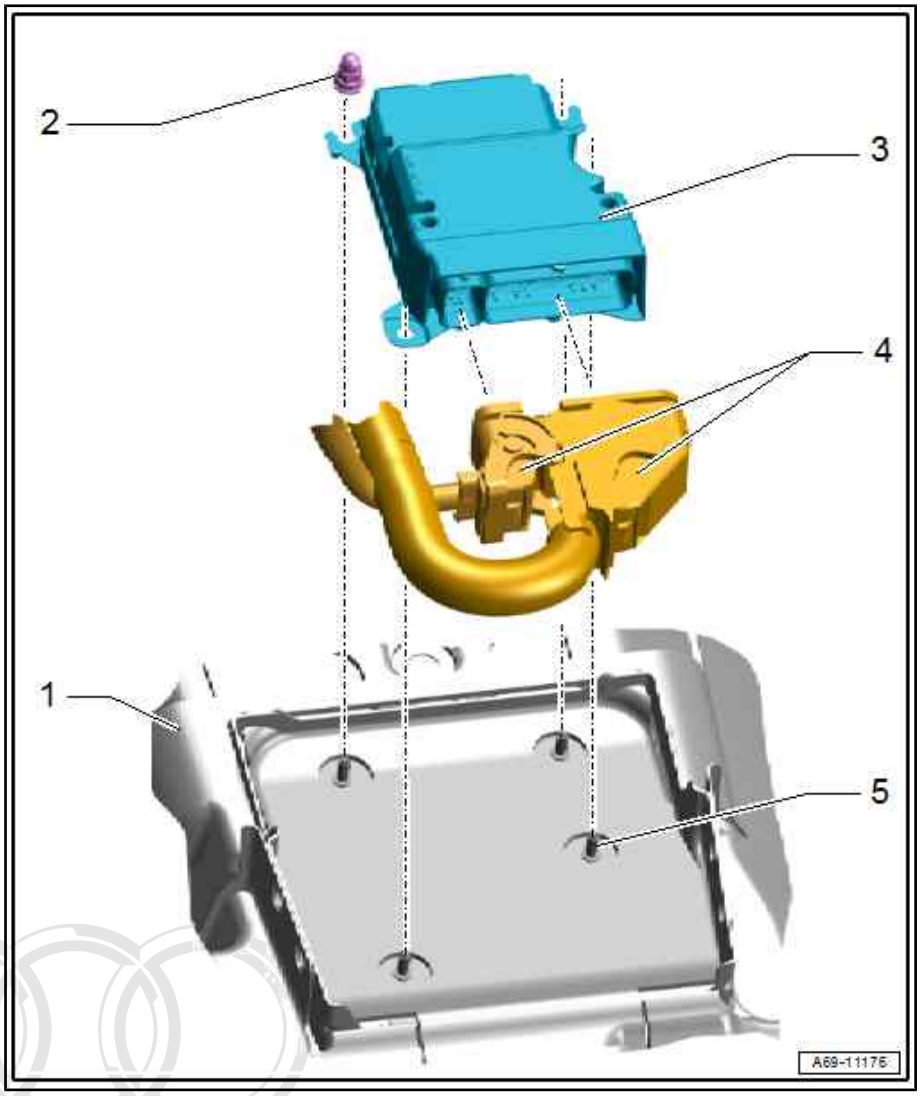
3 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 130
- ❑ Earth connection for airbag control unit is provided by securing housing to body

4 - Electrical connectors

5 - Stud

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit



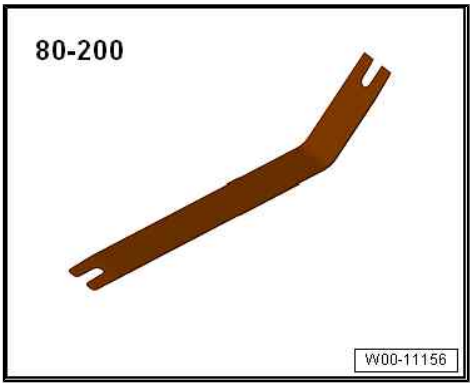
4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit - J234-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Scissors

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 50 .

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove interior aerial 1 for entry and start authorisation -R138- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Overview of fitting locations - keyless entry system .

– Depending on equipment version: Remove air duct (rear) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .

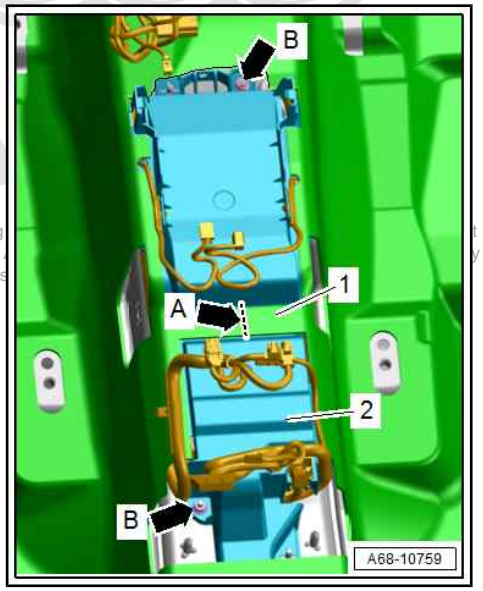
– Cut through connecting piece -1- of floor covering using a pair of scissors at point indicated in illustration -arrow A-.

– Unscrew nuts -arrows B-.

– Unclip cover -2- for control unit from studs.

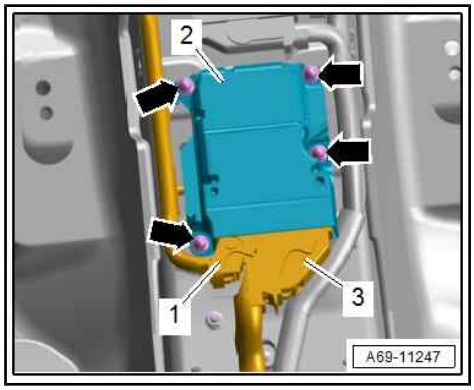
– Unclip electrical wiring harness from cover using removal lever - 80-200- and move wiring harness clear.

– Pull cover for control unit out from under floor covering and remove.



Protected by copyright. Copying
with respect to the correctnes

– Remove nuts -arrows-.



WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Take airbag control unit -2- off studs.

– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 3-; to do so, release catch and open retaining clip at connector.

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

WARNING

Risk of malfunctions.

- *The guided function "Basic setting, inertial sensors" must always be performed after removing and installing the airbag control unit - J234- .*
- *If you have replaced the old airbag control unit - J234- with a new one, the basic setting is performed as part of initial operation with the program "15 - Replace airbag control unit".*
- *If you have removed and then re-installed the same airbag control unit - J234- perform the "Basic setting, inertial sensors" as follows:*

– Connect vehicle diagnostic tester .
– Switch on ignition.
– Select and start Diagnosis mode.
– Select Test plan tab.
– Choose Select own test and select following options one after the other:

- Body
- General body repairs
- 01 - Self-diagnosis compatible systems
- 15 - Airbag - J234
- 15 - Airbag, functions
- 15 - Basic setting
- 15 - Basic setting, inertial sensors

– Start selected program and follow instructions on display of vehicle diagnostic tester.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - airbag control unit", page 130 ; ⇒ , page 45

5 Battery isolation igniter

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter”, page 134

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter”, page 134

5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter

1 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For battery isolation igniter - N253-

2 - Nuts

- ❑ 18 Nm

3 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter”, page 134

4 - Main fuse holder on battery

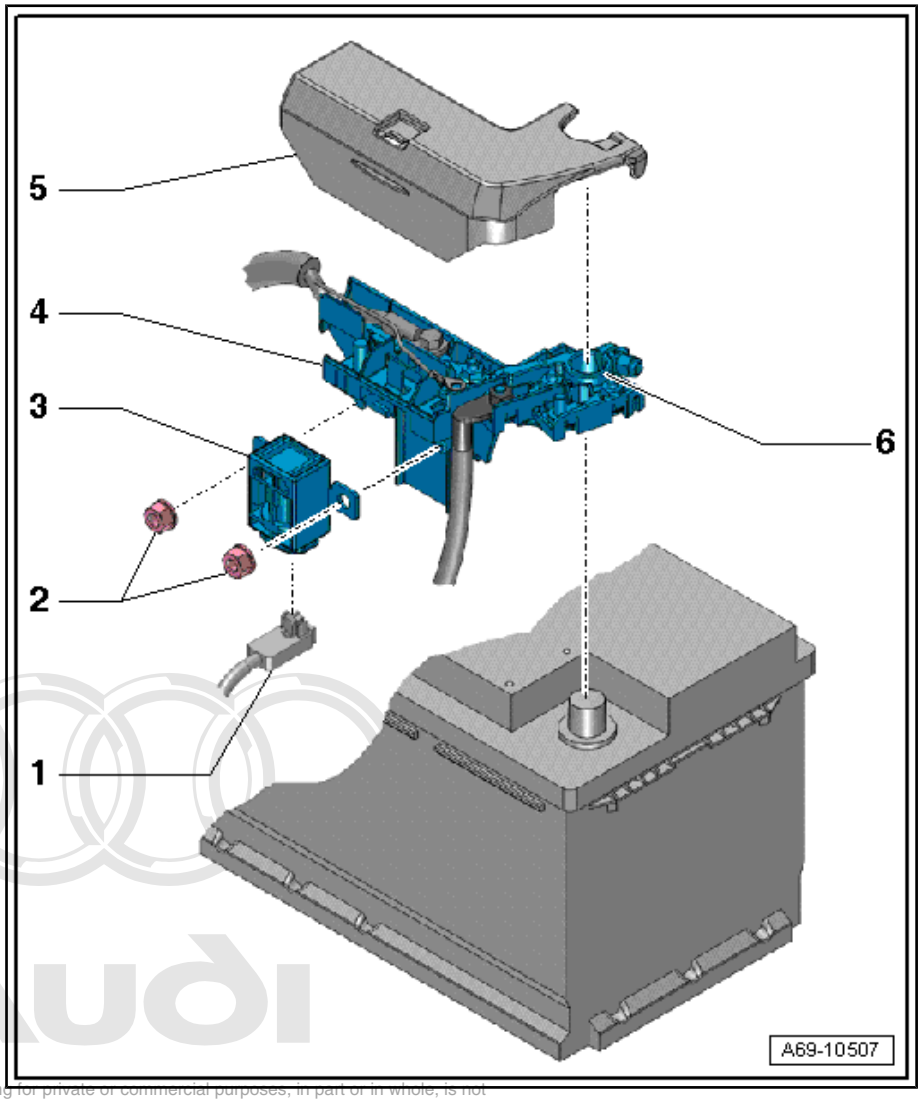
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes

5 - Cover

- ❑ For main fuse holder

6 - Positive terminal

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Exploded view - battery



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Vehicle diagnostic tester

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

Note

- *If airbag warning lamp - K75- is illuminated after an accident, check whether crash data have been stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester. If this is the case, check whether the fault »Resistance too high« is stored in the event memory for the battery isolation igniter - N253- . If this fault is stored in the memory, the battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed.*
- *Each time the airbag is triggered, the battery isolation igniter - N253- electrically isolates the circuit. Battery isolation igniter - N253- must be renewed after triggering.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

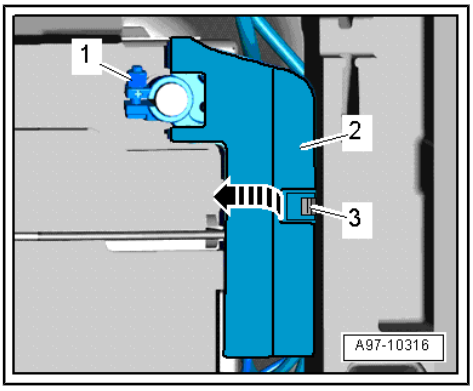
– Switch on ignition.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Loosen nut -1- and detach battery clamp of positive cable with fuse holder A - SA- from battery terminal.

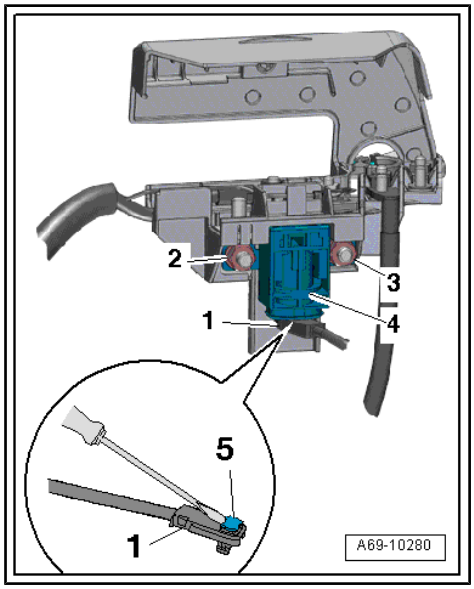
– Pull fuse holder A - SA- out upwards.

– Release retaining spring -3- and open up flap -2- over fuse holder A - SA- -arrow-.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Remove nuts -2 and 3-.
– Detach battery isolation igniter -4-.
– Release connector locking element -5- with a small screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -1-.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Copyright by AUDI AG. ... whole, is not ... accept any liability ... information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– As a final step, interrogate event memory of airbag control unit -J234- and deal with any entries ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.1 Exploded view - battery isolation igniter", page 134

6 Airbag (driver side)

⇒ "6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)", page 137

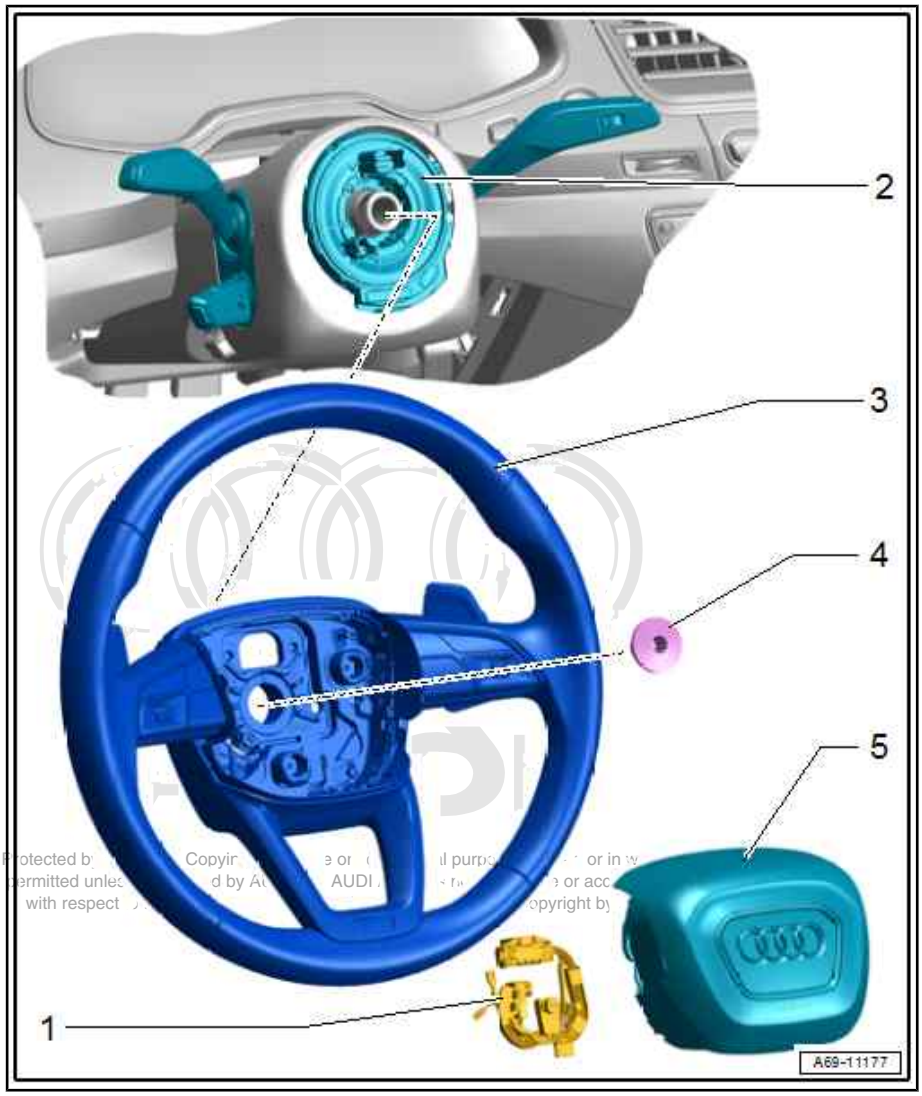
⇒ "6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters", page 138

⇒ "6.3 Renewing connector at airbag", page 141

6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)

Note

The illustration shows the rectangular airbag unit as an example.



1 - Electrical wiring harness

- ❑ For driver side airbag igniter - N95- and igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag - N490-
- ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 141

2 - Steering column electronics control unit - J527-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Exploded view - steering column switch module

3 - Steering wheel

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Exploded view - steering wheel

5 - Airbag (driver side)

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Driver side airbag igniter - N95-
- ♦ Igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag - N490-

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently. Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

- ❑ To release, use Torx screwdriver T25 (length approx. 100 mm)

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 138

6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters

Note

The procedure for the rectangular airbag unit is described as an example.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torx screwdriver T25, approx. 100 mm (commercially available)

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Turn steering wheel 130° clockwise from straight-ahead position so that opening in back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (approx. 12 o'clock position).

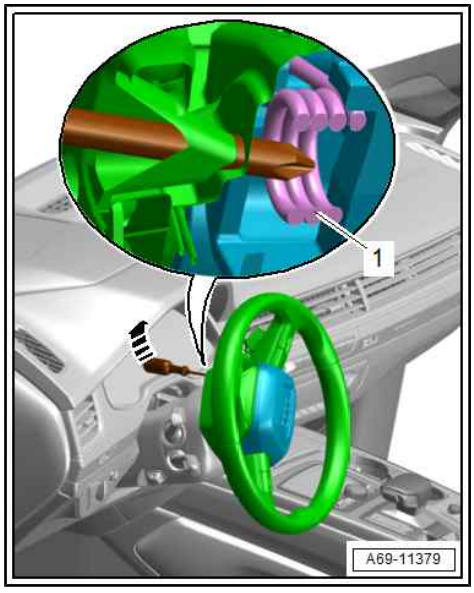
Caution

Risk of damage to electrical wiring.

- *Do not use a flat-bladed screwdriver.*

– Insert a cross-head screwdriver or Torx screwdriver T25 (approx. 100 mm long) as far as it will go into opening; this will perforate a thin layer of foam inside the steering wheel.

– Pull Torx screwdriver firmly upwards -arrow- to release retaining clip -1- for airbag.

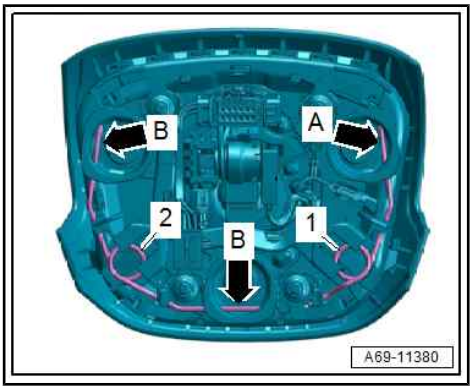


– Press down retaining clip -1- to release catch -arrow A- on steering wheel.

Caution

Risk of damage to airbag unit

- *Do not use any force when attempting to remove the airbag unit. If the airbag unit cannot be released, press it back into the steering wheel and repeat the procedure.*



– Turn steering wheel back through 260° and repeat procedure; make sure that airbag does not engage again on side that has already been released.

– Press down retaining clip -2- and release remaining catches -arrows B- on steering wheel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).

WARNING

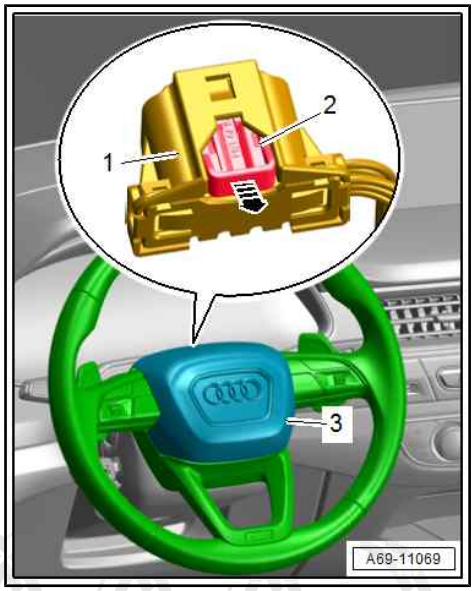
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Pull airbag -3- slightly away from steering wheel.

– Pull out connector locking element -2- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for steering wheel buttons.



WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.*

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

– Connect electrical plug for coil connector to airbag coupling at return ring with slip ring.

– To secure electrical connector in position, press it into recesses in steering wheel.

– Position airbag (driver side) in steering wheel and press on until it engages audibly.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

– As a final step, interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)”, page 137

6.3 Renewing connector at airbag

Note

The procedure for the rectangular airbag unit is described as an example.

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

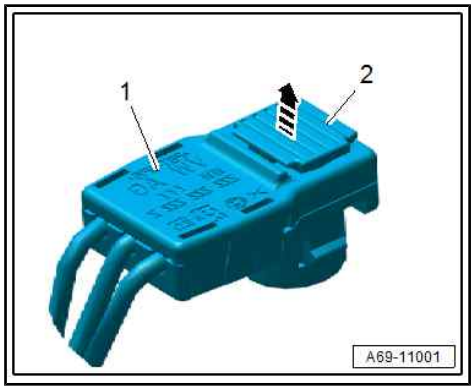
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components* *⇒ page 3* *.*

– Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 138 .

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *The mechanic must remain in the vehicle for the duration of the procedure to avoid electrostatic charge.*



– Release locking element -2- for connector -1- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.

– Unplug electrical connectors -2- at igniters -N95- and -N490- .

– Release retaining tab and unplug electrical connectors -3 and 4-.

– Disengage electrical wiring harness -1- at retainers and detach.



Installing

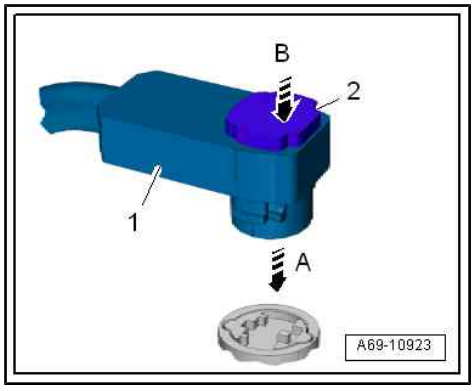
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *The mechanic must remain in the vehicle for the duration of the procedure to avoid electrostatic charge.*

– Attach electrical connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "6.1 Exploded view - airbag (driver side)", page 137

Copyright AUDI AG. All rights reserved. Reproduction, even in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

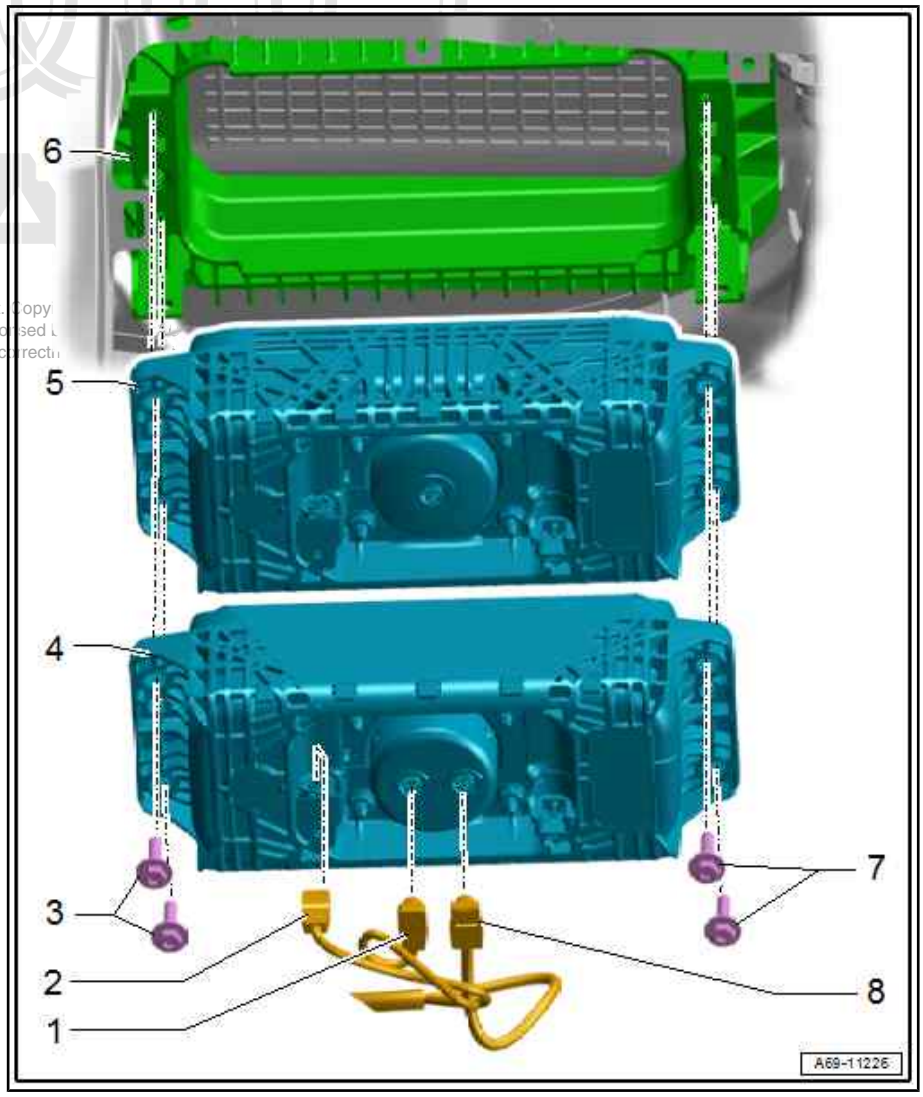
7 Airbag (front passenger side)

⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)", page 143

⇒ "7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters", page 144

⇒ "7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side", page 147

7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)



1 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-

2 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-

3 - Bolts

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copy
with respect to the correct

4 - Airbag (front passenger side), two-stage

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-
- ♦ Airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side - N132-
- ♦ Igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently. Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 144

5 - Airbag (front passenger side), one-stage

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-
- ♦ Igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag - N491-

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.
Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 144

6 - Dash panel

- ❑ Renew dash panel after an airbag has been triggered ⇒ page 233

7 - Bolts

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 8 Nm

8 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

7.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with igniters

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .

– Remove mounting for control unit 1 for information electronics - J794- and let it hang down with electrical wiring attached ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .

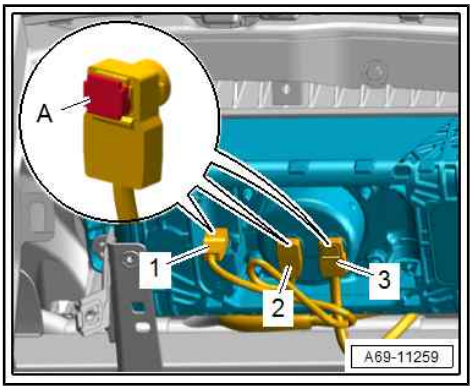
– Depending on equipment version: Remove dash panel vent (passenger side) ⇒ page 240 .

– Depending on equipment version: Remove air duct for dash panel vent (right-side) and for wide air outlet ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

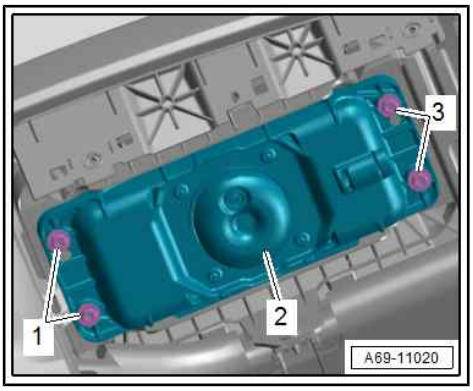
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Release connector locking element -A- with a small screwdriver.
– Unplug electrical connectors -1, 3- at igniters -N491- , -N131- and, if fitted, unplug connector -2- for -N132- .

Note

Secure airbag to prevent it from falling.



– Remove bolts -1, 3-.
– Take out airbag -2- downwards.

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.*

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

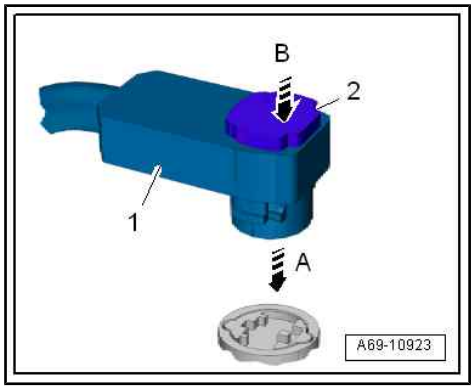
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.



Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - airbag (front passenger side)”, page 143 ,
⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 227

7.3 Removing and installing key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

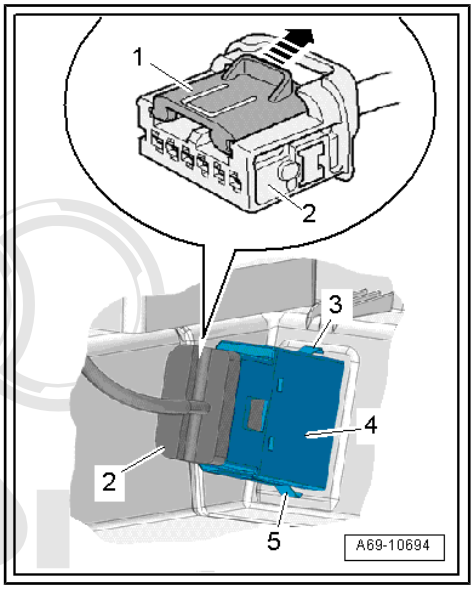
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .

– Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector is disengaged.

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Release retaining springs -3 and 5- and press key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- -item 4- out of housing for key-operated switch.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

– Make sure that key operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side - E224- engages audibly in housing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.4 Exploded view - glove box", page 22

8 Side airbags

⇒ “8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)”, page 148

⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)”, page 150

⇒ “8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter”, page 150

⇒ “8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter”, page 157

⇒ “8.5 Removing and installing wire for side airbag”, page 159

8.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front)

⇒ “8.1.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front), standard/sports seat”, page 148

⇒ “8.1.2 Exploded view - side airbag (front), super sports seat”, page 149

8.1.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front), standard/sports seat

1 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ With:

- ◆ Side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ◆ Side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

> **WARNING**
> *Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently. Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

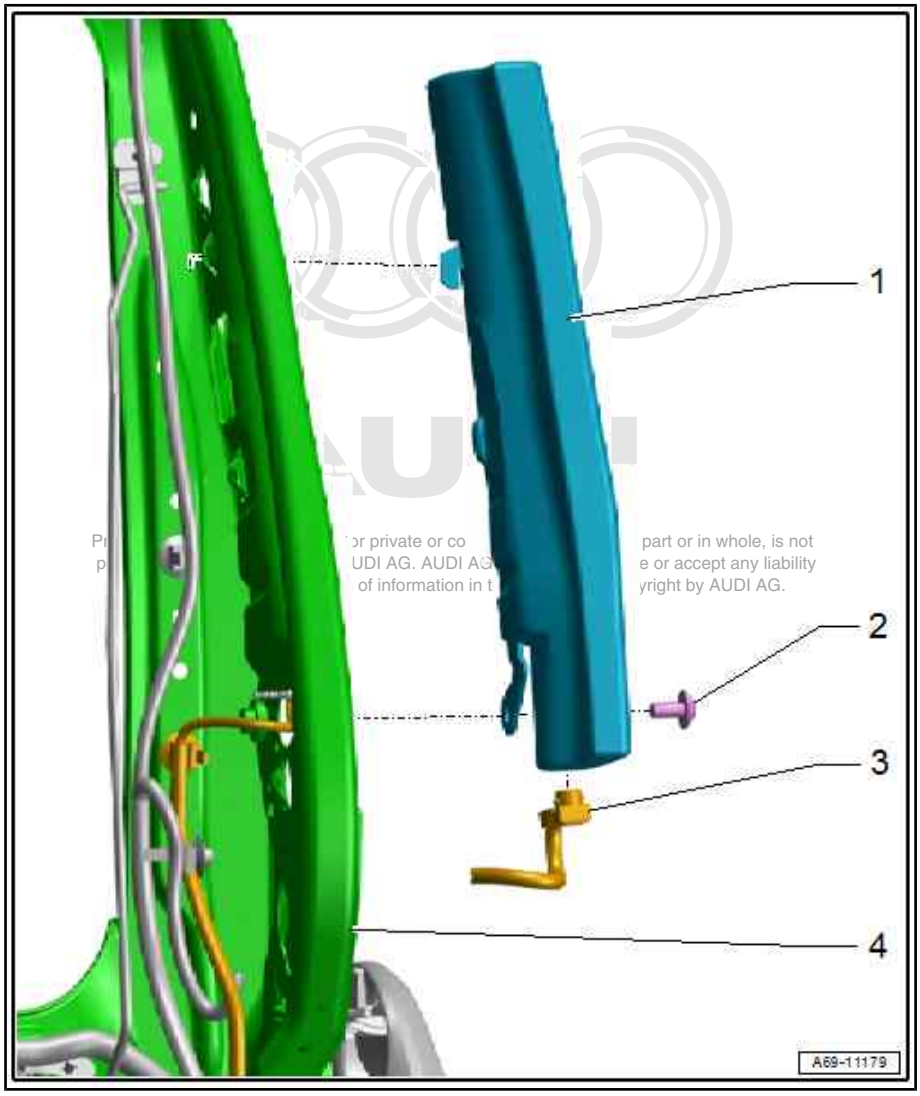
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 150

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 10 Nm

3 - Electrical wire

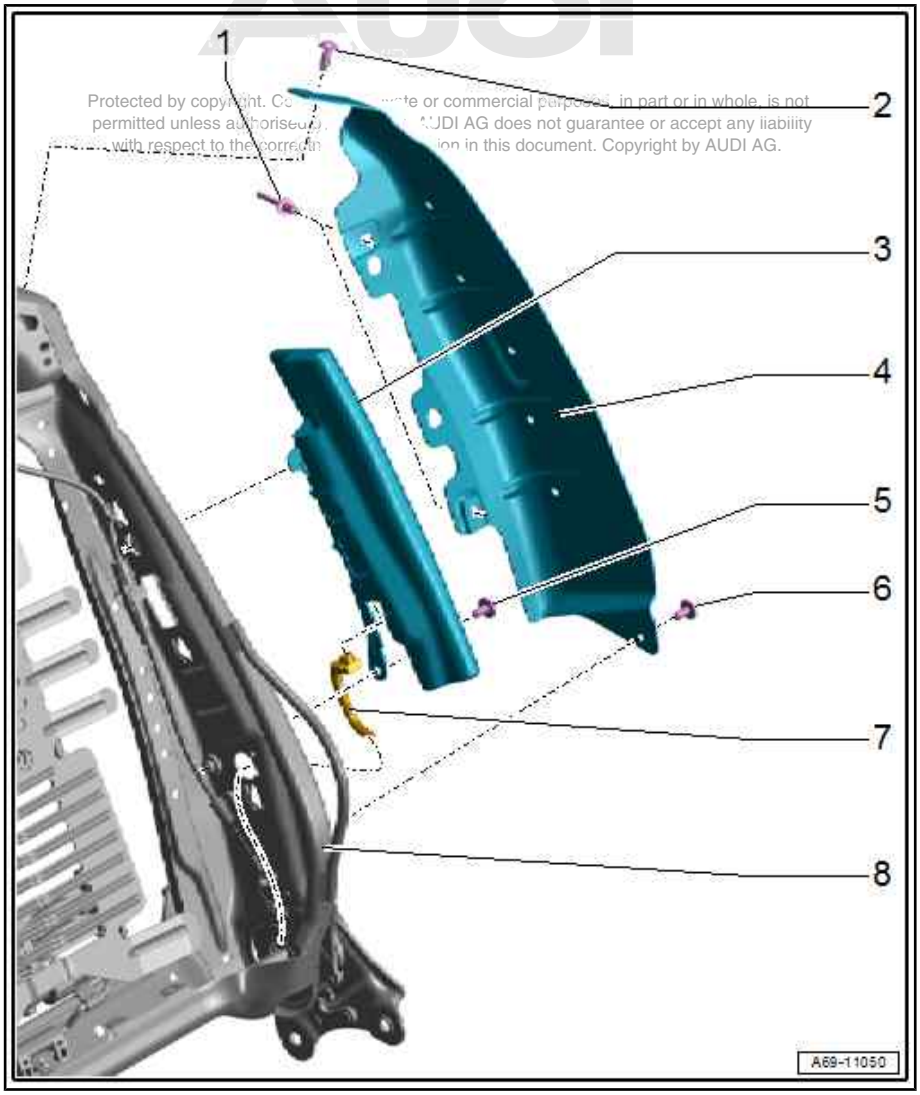
- ❑ Routed all the way through from side airbag igniter on driver side - N199- / side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200- to connector point
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 159



Pr ...or private or co ... part or in whole, is not
p ... UDI AG. AUDI AG ... e or accept any liability
... of information in t ... yright by AUDI AG.

4 - Outer backrest frame

8.1.2 Exploded view - side airbag (front), super sports seat



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Rivet

- ❑ 2x

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 13 (page 383)

3 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ♦ Side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-

> **WARNING**
> *Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently. Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 154

4 - Guide plate for side airbag

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 154

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

7 - Electrical wire

- ❑ Continuous from side airbag igniter to connector point
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 163

8 - Outer backrest frame

8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)

1 - Side padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 157

2 - Side airbag (rear)

- ❑ With:

- ♦ Rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ♦ Rear side airbag igniter on passenger side - N202-

> **WARNING**
> *Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently. Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 157

3 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For:

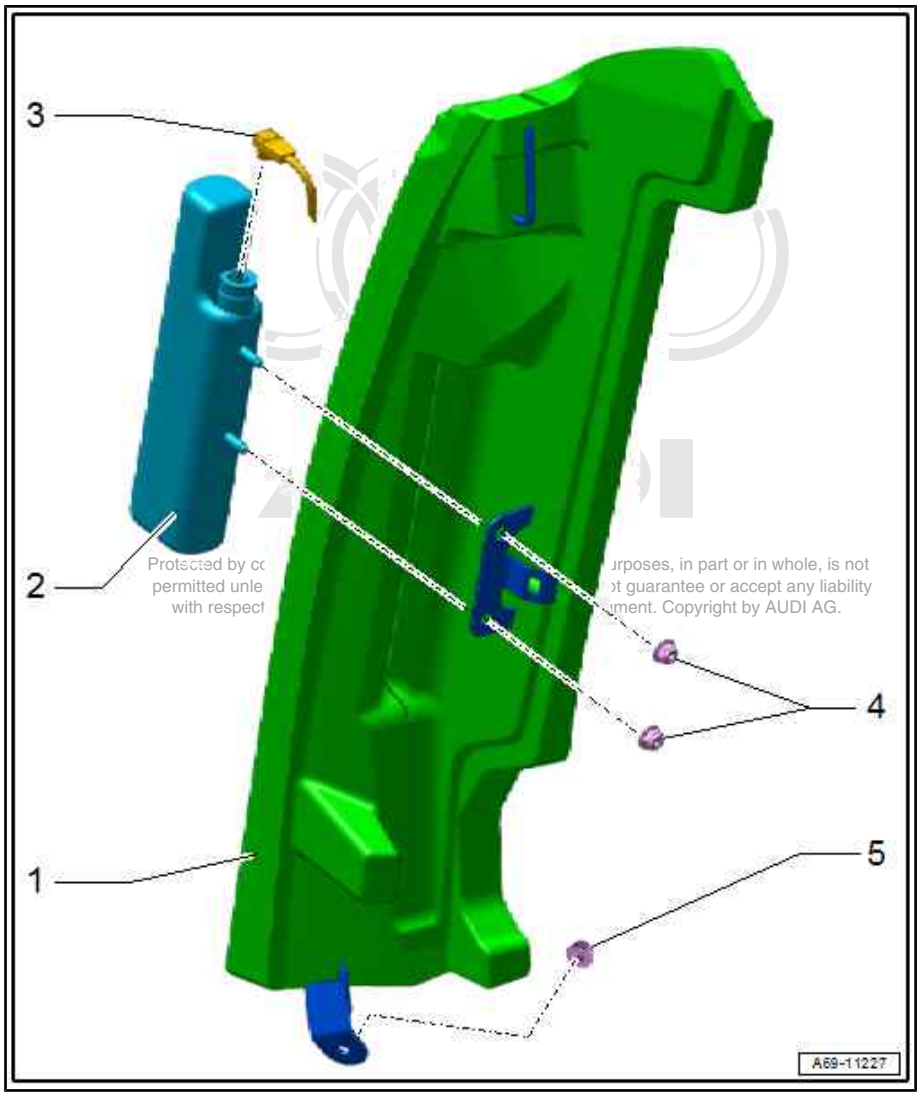
- ♦ Rear side airbag igniter on driver side - N201-
- ♦ Rear side airbag igniter on passenger side - N202-

4 - Nuts

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 6 Nm

5 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 466



Protected by cc
permitted unle
with respect
urposes, in part or in whole, is not
ot guarantee or accept any liability
ment. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.3 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter

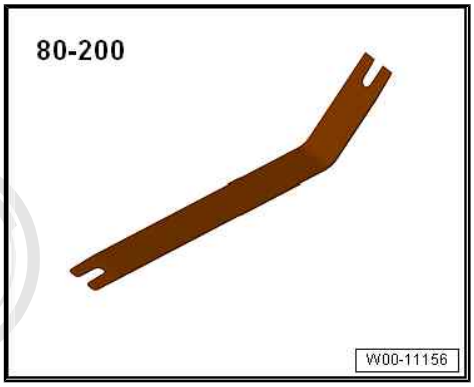
⇒ "8.3.1 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter - standard/sports seat", page 150

⇒ "8.3.2 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter - super sports seat", page 154

8.3.1 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter - standard/ sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

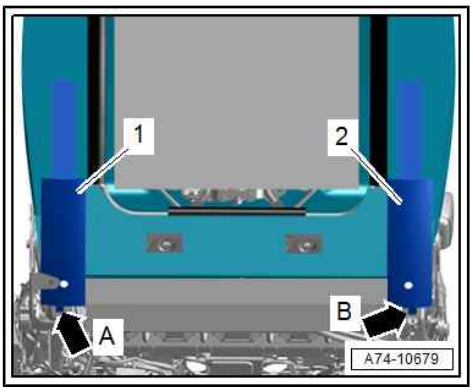
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

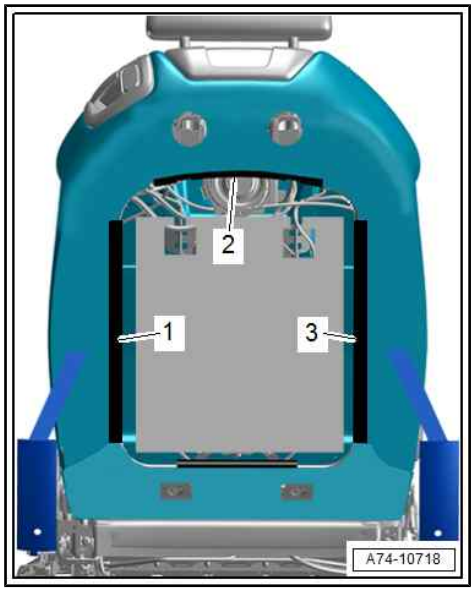
- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .***
- ***Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .***

Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplication for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

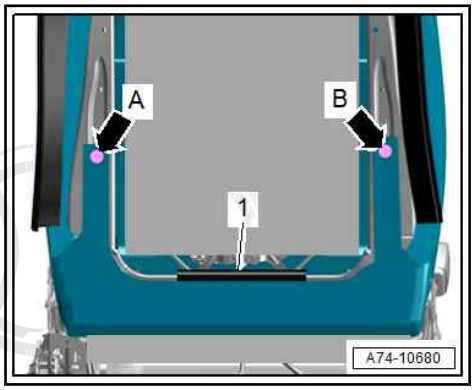
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 423 .
– Move front seat as far forwards as possible and fold backrest forwards.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Disengage seat cover and padding (sill side) at backrest and move clear.
– To do so, disengage cover -1- for backrest fitting (sill side) at outer backrest frame -arrow A-.



– Disengage piping -1- on sill side of outer backrest frame.
– Disengage piping -2- at top centre of outer backrest frame.



– Remove clip -arrow A- (sill side) at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Disengage piping -1- at bottom centre of outer backrest frame.



– Remove padding (sill side) from backrest in area of side airbag.

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

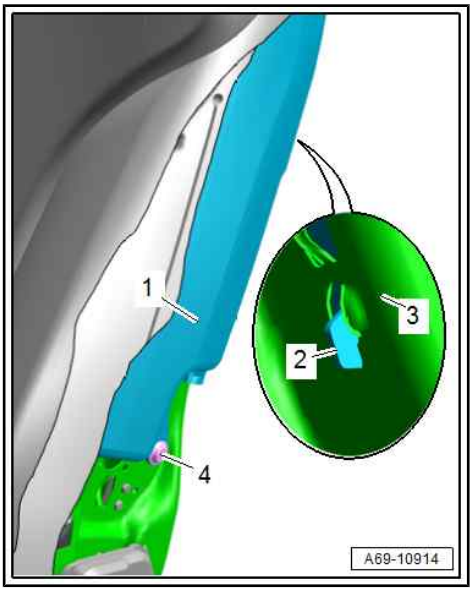
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co... is authorised by AUDI AG. AUD... with respect to the correctness of information...

– Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- at igniter for side airbag.



– In area of side airbag, carefully pull backrest cover and padding forwards as far as possible.
– Remove bolt -4-.
– Disengage side airbag -1- with hook -2- from outer backrest frame -3-.
– Remove side airbag downwards from pouch (stitched into cover).



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Copyright by AUDI AG. This document is not to be reproduced, modified or published in any way. Compensation claims are excluded. Any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

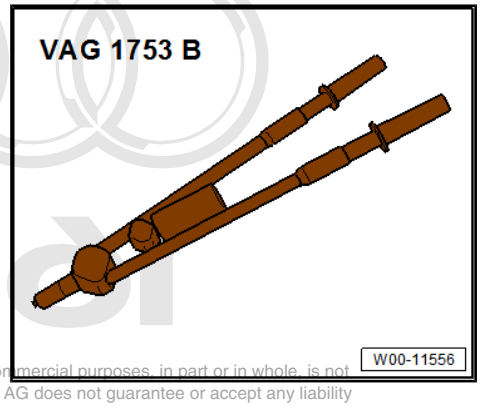
If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "8.1.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front), standard/sports seat", page 148

8.3.2 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter - super sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Electric drill
- Safety goggles

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– Move front seat as far forwards as possible and fold backrest forwards.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove backrest cover panel and side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 425 .

WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- ***Put on safety goggles.***

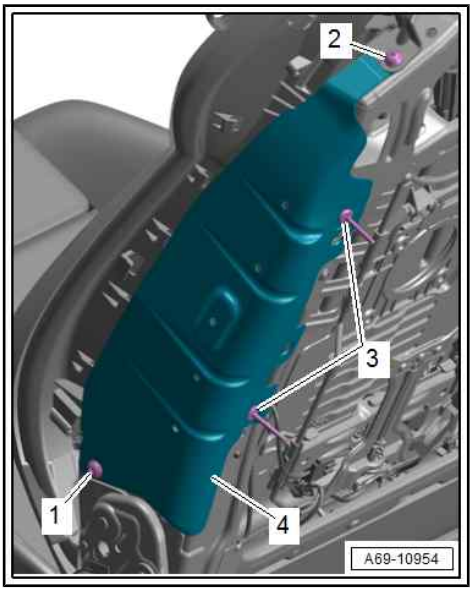
– Drill out rivets -3-.

– Remove bolts -1, 2-.

Note

When unscrewing bolt -1-, the threaded plate on the inside of the outer backrest frame may become loose and fall out.

– Detach guide plate -4- for airbag.



WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.

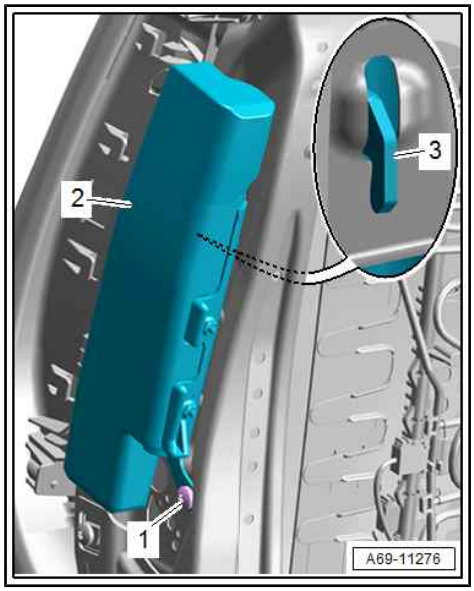
– Unplug electrical connector -1- at igniter for side airbag.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Disengage side airbag -2- with hook -3- from outer backrest frame and detach.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "8.1.2 Exploded view - side airbag (front), super sports seat", page 149

8.4 Removing and installing side airbag (rear) with airbag igniter

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*



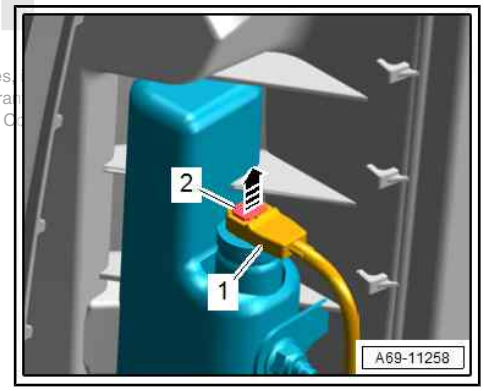
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .
– Unscrew nut -1-.
– Hold belt to one side and pull side padding -2- off studs.
– Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Carefully pull side padding downwards -arrow-, swivel forwards slightly and disengage from mounting.

WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant... information in this document. C...

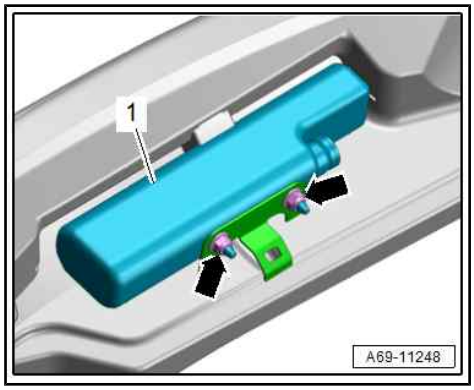
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- at igniter for side airbag.

– Set down side padding on a soft surface.
– Remove nuts -arrows-.
– Take rear side airbag -1- out of mounting.
– Remove side airbag downwards from pouch (stitched into cover).



WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.***

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "8.2 Exploded view - side airbag (rear)", page 150 , ⇒ "3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 466

8.5 Removing and installing wire for side airbag

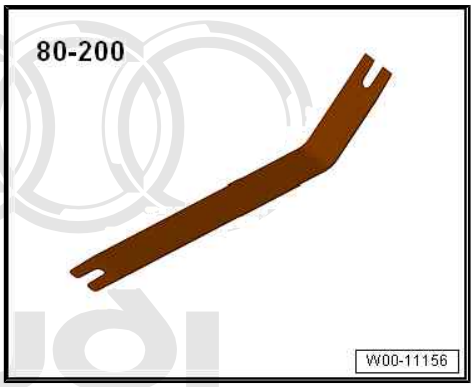
⇒ "8.5.1 Removing and installing wire for side airbag - standard/sports seat", page 159

⇒ "8.5.2 Removing and installing wire for side airbag - super sports seat", page 163

8.5.1 Removing and installing wire for side airbag - standard/sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

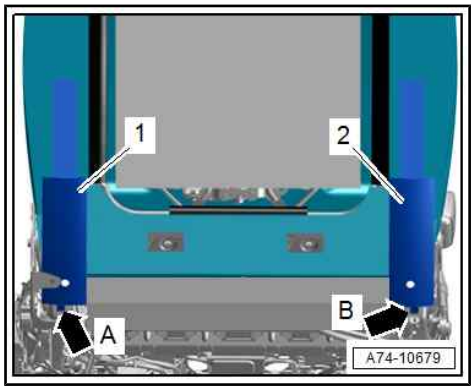
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

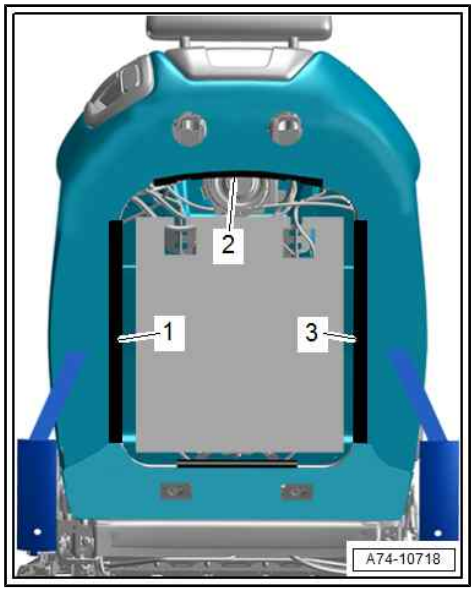
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 423 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .
– Disengage seat cover and padding (sill side) at backrest and move clear.
– To do so, disengage cover -1- for backrest fitting (sill side) at outer backrest frame -arrow A-.

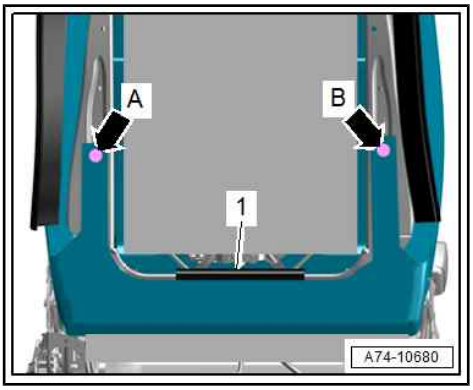


– Disengage piping -1- on sill side of outer backrest frame.



– Remove clip -arrow A- (sill side) at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Disengage piping -1- at bottom centre of outer backrest frame.



– Remove padding (sill side) from backrest in area of side airbag.

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***



– Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at igniter for side airbag.

– Unclip wire for side airbag at outer backrest frame and move clear.

– Carefully pull wire for side airbag out of outer backrest frame.

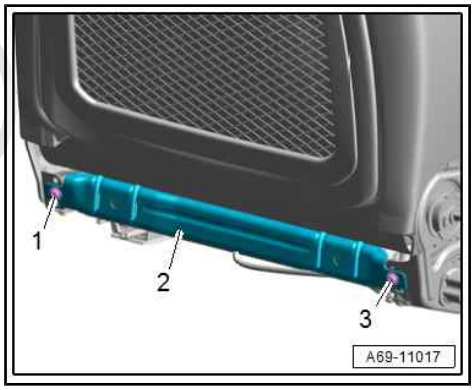
– Disconnect modular wiring ⇒ page 407 .

– Open up corrugated tube, take out wire for side airbag together with electrical connector and move clear at seat pan.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If necessary, unscrew bolts -1, 3- and detach cross-piece/child seat anchor -2- from front seat.

– To do so, remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 441 .



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

The reproduction, distribution and utilization of this document, in part or in whole, is not permitted without written authorization from AUDI AG. We reserve the right to take legal action in case of misuse or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

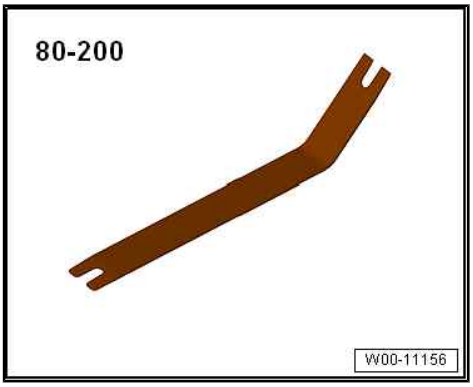
If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "8.1.1 Exploded view - side airbag (front), standard/sports seat", page 148

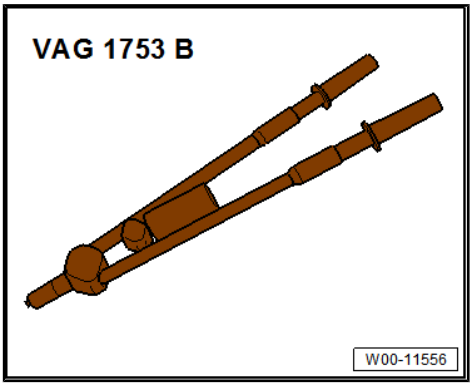
8.5.2 Removing and installing wire for side airbag - super sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Electric drill
- Safety goggles

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 6 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

– Remove backrest cover panel and side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 425 .

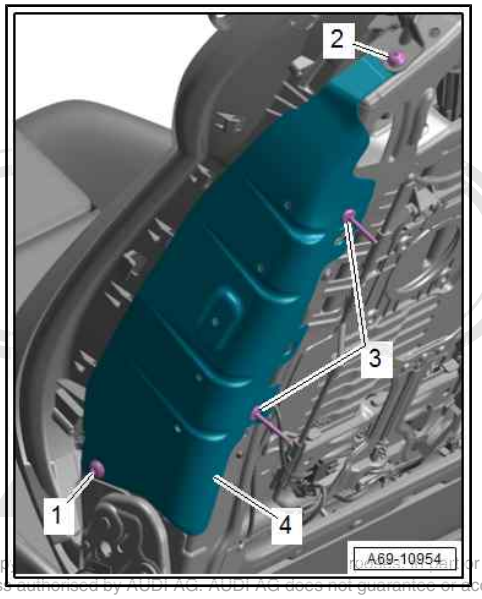
WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivets -3-.

– Remove bolts -1, 2-.



Note

When unscrewing bolt -1-, the threaded plate on the inside of the outer backrest frame may become loose and fall out.

– Detach guide plate -4- for airbag.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove clip (sill side) -left arrow- at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Disengage piping -1- at bottom of outer backrest frame.

– Disengage piping (sill side) -2- at bracket on outer backrest frame.



WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

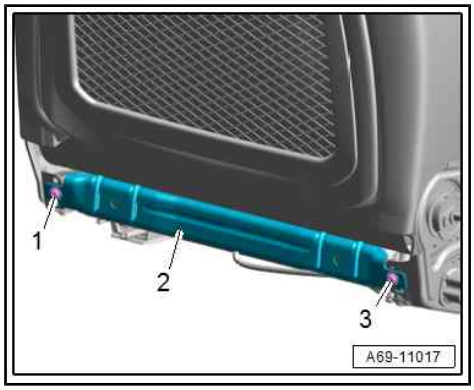


– Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- at igniter for side airbag.
– Unclip wire for side airbag at outer backrest frame and move clear.
– Carefully pull wire for side airbag out of outer backrest frame.
– Disconnect modular wiring ⇒ page 407 .
– Open up corrugated tube, take out wire for side airbag together with electrical connector and move clear at seat pan.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If necessary, unscrew bolts -1, 3- and detach cross-piece/child seat anchor -2- from front seat.

– To do so, remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 441 .



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “8.1.2 Exploded view - side airbag (front), super sports seat”, page 149

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 Curtain airbags

⇒ “9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag”, page 168

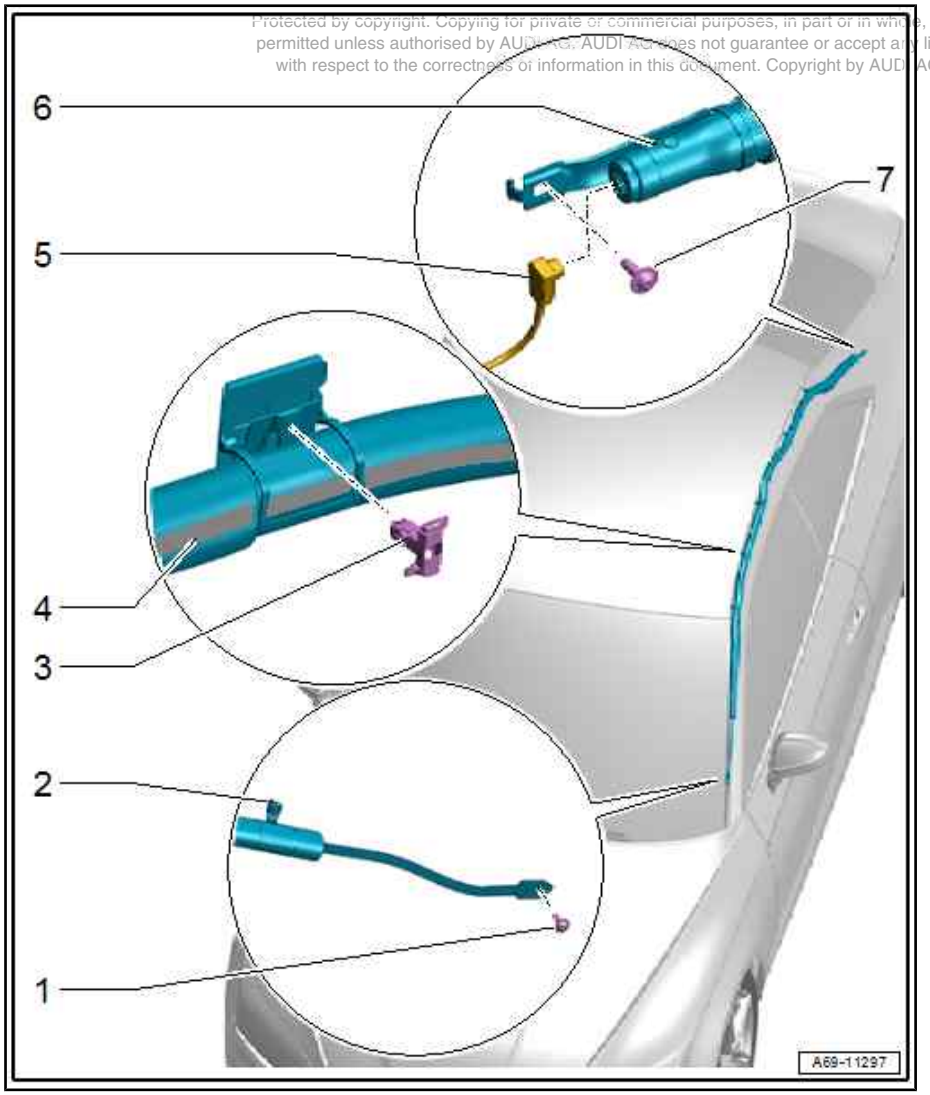
⇒ “9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter”, page 169

9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag

Note

The illustration shows the A5 Coupé as an example.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm

2 - Clip

- ❑ 2x

3 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Only available together with -item 6-
- ❑ Remove with adjusting pliers - VAS 211 001-

4 - Coloured line

- ❑ Designed to prevent twisting
- ❑ Must be visible all along airbag after installation

5 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For:

- ◆ Driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ◆ Front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

6 - Curtain airbag

- ❑ With:

- ◆ Driver side curtain airbag igniter - N251-
- ◆ Front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently. Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 169

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing

❑ 5 Nm

9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Adjusting pliers - VAS 211 001- (not illustrated)

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

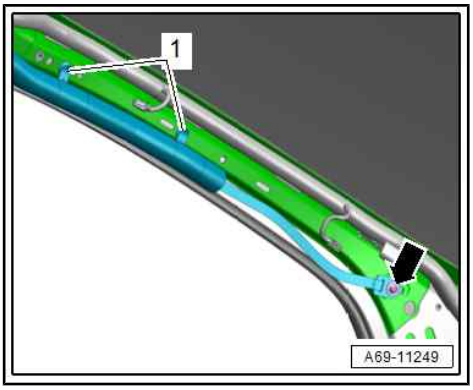
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 346 and lay it down on seats; headliner does not have to be removed.

– A5 Sportback: Remove bracket for D-pillar trim ⇒ page 291 .

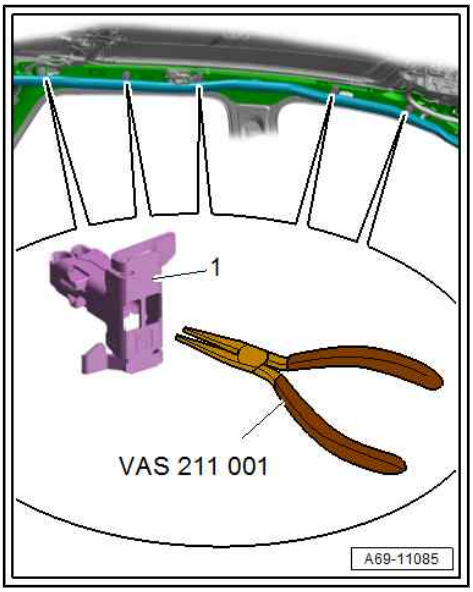
– Unscrew bolt -arrow- for tether for curtain airbag from A-pillar.

– Remove clips -1- from A-pillar.



– Unclip retaining clips for curtain airbag from body using adjusting pliers - VAS 211 001- .

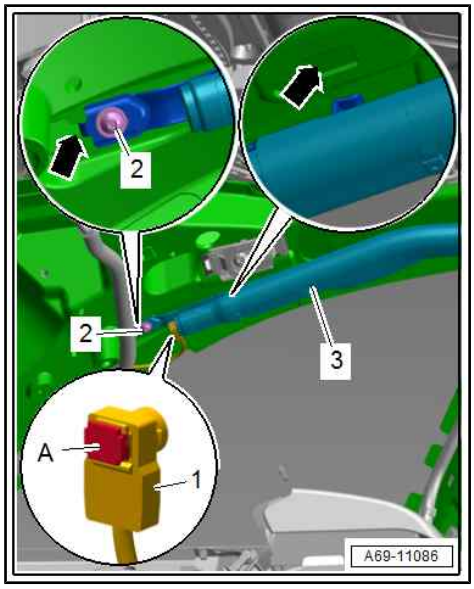
– To do so, insert tips of pliers in openings, compress catches of retaining clips -1- for curtain airbag and pull out retaining clips.



WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Release connector locking element -A- with a small screwdriver.
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Slide curtain airbag -3- out of mountings on body towards rear -arrows- and remove.

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Always observe correct sequence for installing curtain airbag.*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

– Check that coloured line is visible over entire length to make sure that curtain airbag is not twisted.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "9.1 Exploded view - curtain airbag", page 168

10 Knee airbags

⇒ “10.1 Exploded view - knee airbag”, page 172

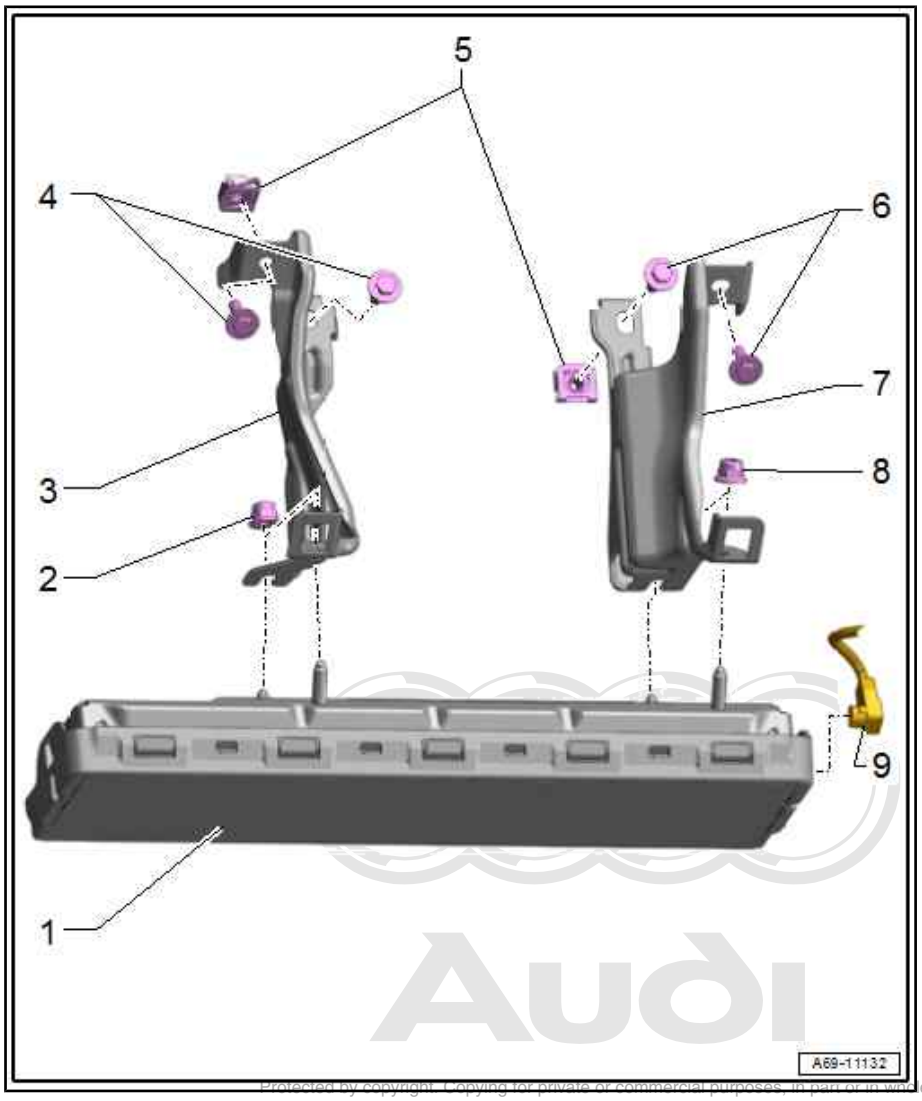
⇒ “10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter”, page 174

10.1 Exploded view - knee airbag

⇒ “10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag (driver side)”, page 172

⇒ “10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag (front passenger side)”, page 173

10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag (driver side)



1 - Driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 174

> **WARNING**
> *Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently. Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

> **Caution**
> *Risk of damage to surface of knee airbag due to mechanical stress. After completing the repairs, perform a visual check to make sure that the surface of the knee airbag is not damaged, especially in the vicinity of the perforation.*

2 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 6 Nm

3 - Bracket

- ❑ For knee airbag

4 - Bolts

- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Speed nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert into mounting points on dash panel cross member

6 - Bolts

- ❑ 3 Nm

7 - Bracket

- ❑ For knee airbag

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 6 Nm

9 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For driver side knee airbag igniter - N295-

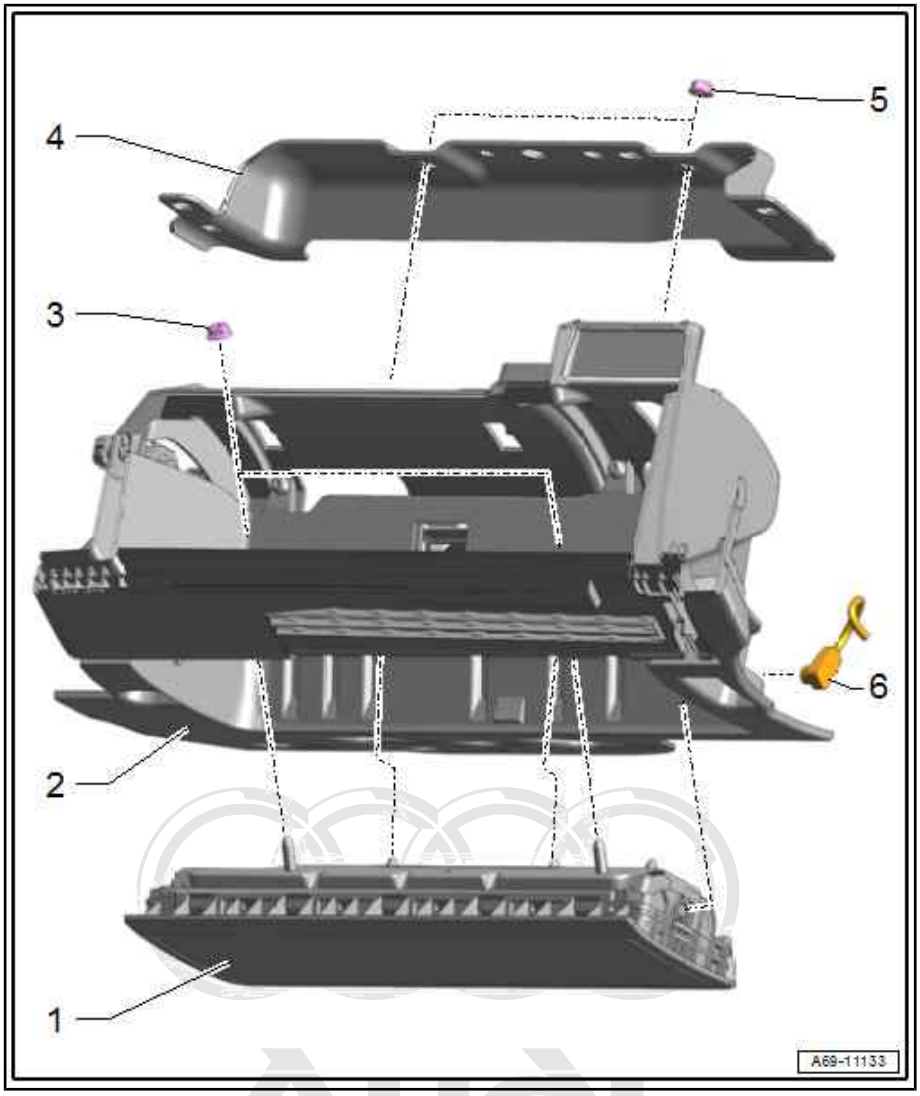
10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag (front passenger side)

1 - Front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 177

> **WARNING**
> *Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently. Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

> **Caution**
> *Risk of damage to surface of knee airbag due to mechanical stress. After completing the repairs, perform a visual check to make sure that the surface of the knee airbag is not damaged.*



2 - Glove box

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 27

3 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 6 Nm

4 - Bracket

- ❑ For knee airbag

5 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 6 Nm

6 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For front passenger side knee airbag igniter - N296-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter

⇒ "10.2.1 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (driver side)", page 174

⇒ "10.2.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (front passenger side)", page 177

10.2.1 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (driver side)

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

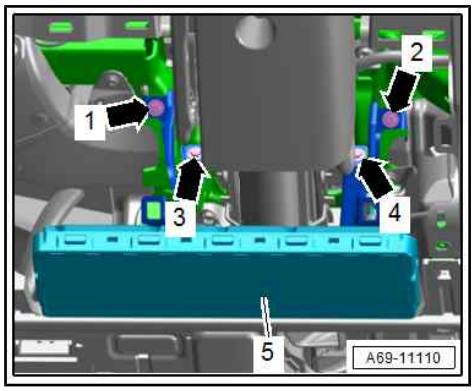
– Move steering wheel upwards and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 23 .

– Remove bolts -arrows 1 … 4-.

– Detach knee airbag with brackets and carefully pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector.



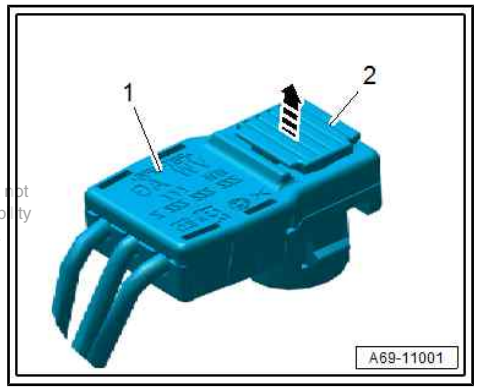
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Audi
Copyright AUDI AG. All rights reserved. The reproduction, distribution and utilization of this document as well as the communication of its contents to others without express authorization is prohibited. Offenders will be held liable for the payment of damages. All rights reserved in the event of the grant of a patent, utility model or design. The information contained in this document is subject to change. AUDI AG does not accept any liability for the correctness or completeness of the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.

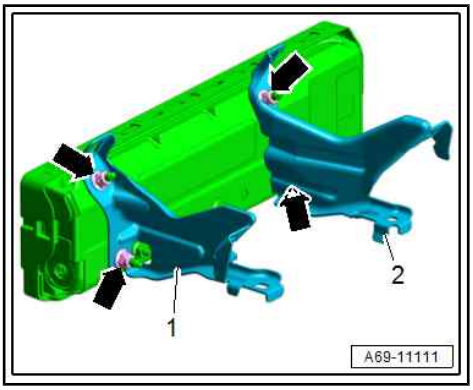


Removing brackets:

– Set knee airbag down on a soft surface with impact cushion facing upwards.

– Remove nuts -arrows-.

– Detach brackets -1, 2-.



WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.*

Installing

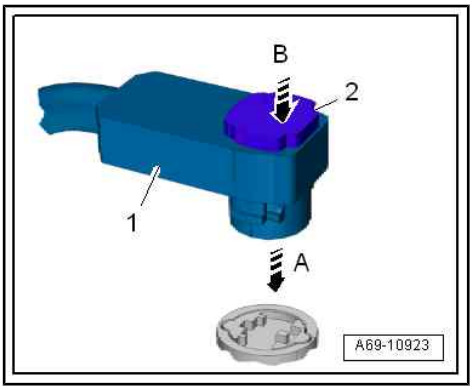
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

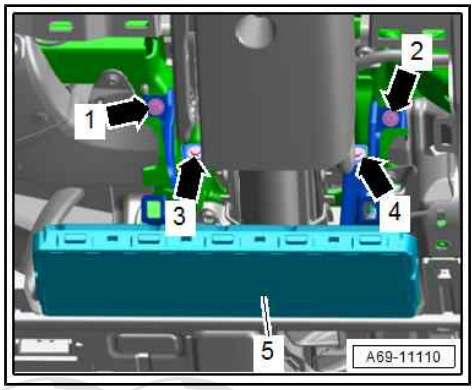
– Attach electrical connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.

– Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter and locks it at the same time.



Audi
Printed in [illegible] part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tighten bolts in sequence -arrows 1 ... 4-.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

Caution

Risk of damage to surface of knee airbag due to mechanical stress.

- ***After completing the repairs, perform a visual check to make sure that the surface of the knee airbag is not damaged.***

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “10.1.1 Exploded view - knee airbag (driver side)”, page 172

10.2.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (front passenger side)

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

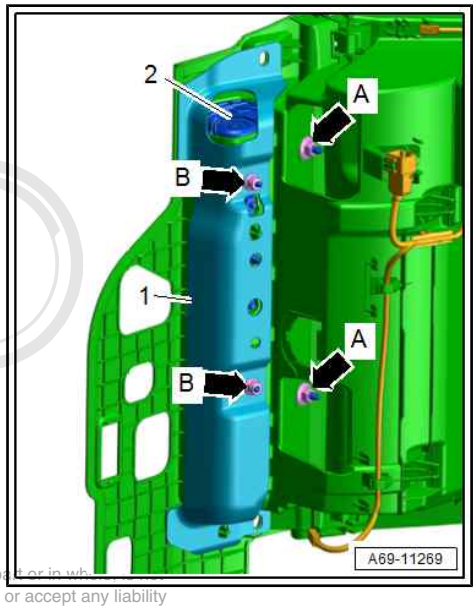
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 5 .*

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .

– Open glove box lid.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Set glove box down on a suitable surface; make sure that impact cushion of airbag is not facing downwards.
– Remove nuts -arrows A, B-.
– Detach bracket -1-.
– Unclip knee airbag -2- from glove box.



WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.***

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction, duplication or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

– Install glove box ⇒ page 27 .

Caution

Risk of damage to surface of knee airbag due to mechanical stress.

- ***After completing the repairs, perform a visual check to make sure that the surface of the knee airbag is not damaged.***

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "10.1.2 Exploded view - knee airbag (front passenger side)", page 173

Copyright by AUDI AG. Duplicating for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 Crash sensors for airbags

⇒ “11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags”, page 180

⇒ “11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283 ”, page 181

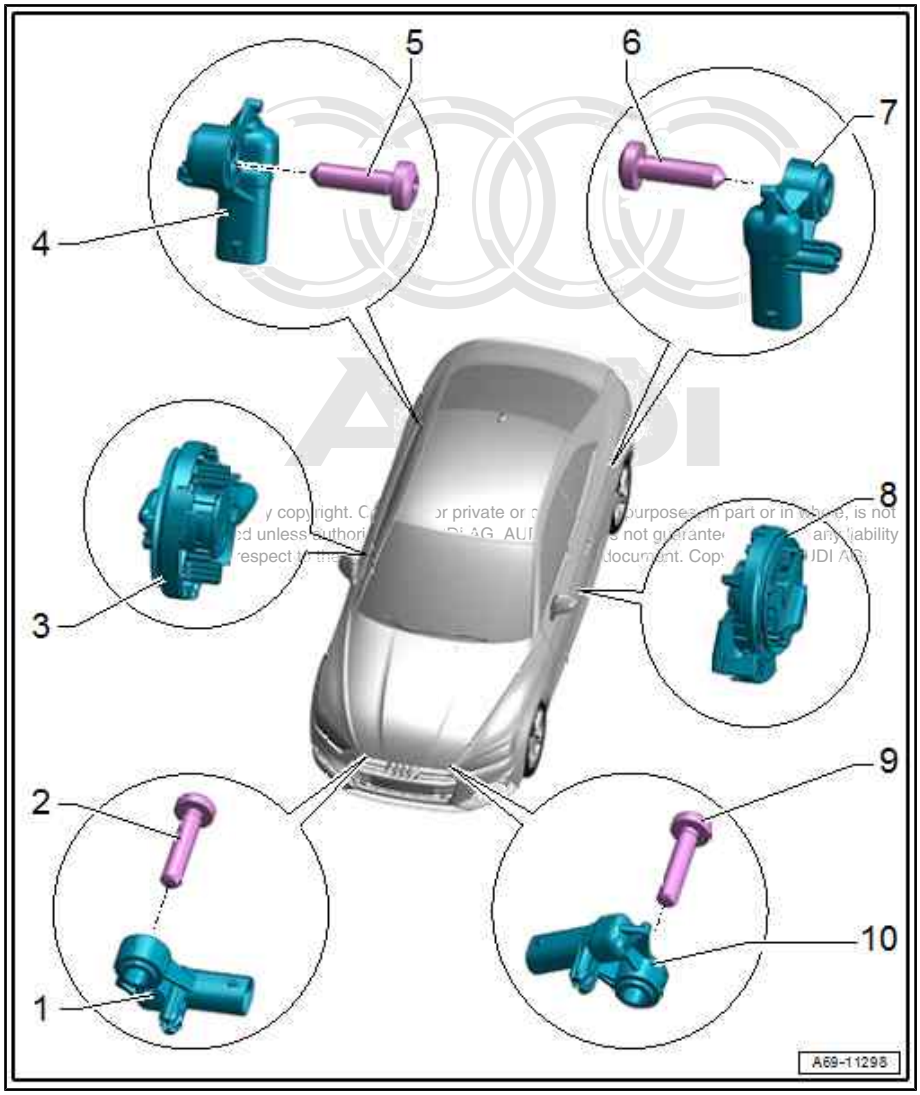
⇒ “11.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179 / G180 ”, page 184

⇒ “11.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) G256 / G257 ”, page 187

11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags

Note

The illustration shows the A5 Coupé as an example.



1 - Front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side - G284-

- ❑ Fitting location: on right side of lock carrier
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 181

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side - G180-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door
- ❑ Safety requirements ⇒ page 7
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 184
- ❑ Make sure seal is properly seated; renew crash sensor if seal is damaged or deformed
- ❑ Retaining tabs must engage audibly

4 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on passenger side - G257-

- ❑ Fitting location
- ♦ A5 Coupé/Cabriolet: behind side trim
- ♦ A5 Sportback: behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 187

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

7 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256-

- ❑ Fitting location
- ♦ A5 Coupé/Cabriolet: behind side trim
- ♦ A5 Sportback: behind sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 187

8 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G179-

- ❑ Fitting location: in door
- ❑ Safety requirements ⇒ page 7
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 184
- ❑ Make sure seal is properly seated; renew crash sensor if seal is damaged or deformed
- ❑ Retaining tabs must engage audibly

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

10 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

- ❑ Fitting location: on left side of lock carrier
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 181

11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283-

Note

The front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side - G284- is removed and installed in the same way.

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ♦ ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***

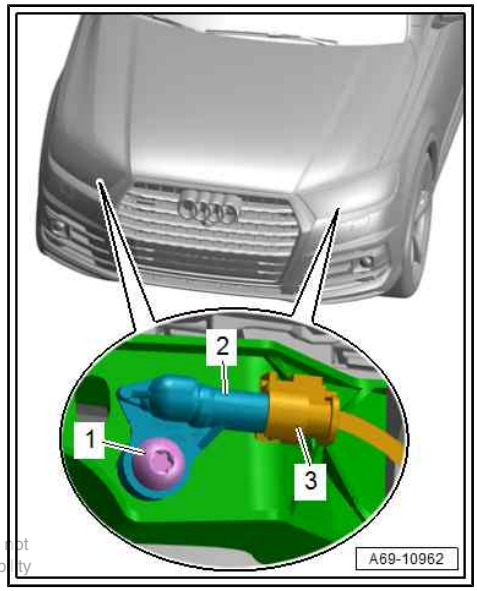
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Front airbag crash sensor for driver side - G283- , A5 g-tron: Remove battery in engine compartment ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Removing and installing battery .

– Front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side - G284- : Remove air cleaner housing ⇒ Rep. gr. 23 ; Air cleaner; Removing and installing air cleaner housing or ⇒ Rep. gr. 24 ; Air cleaner; Removing and installing air cleaner housing .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolt -1- and detach crash sensor -2- for front airbag from lock carrier.



WARNING

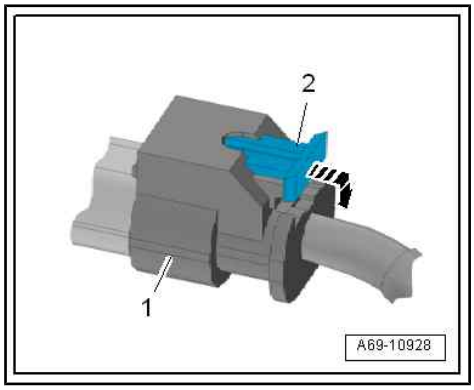
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

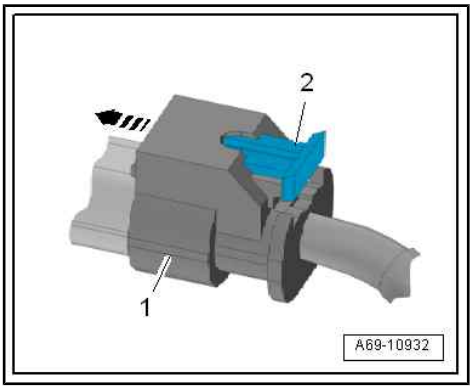


Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.

– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 180

11.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor -G179- / -G180-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

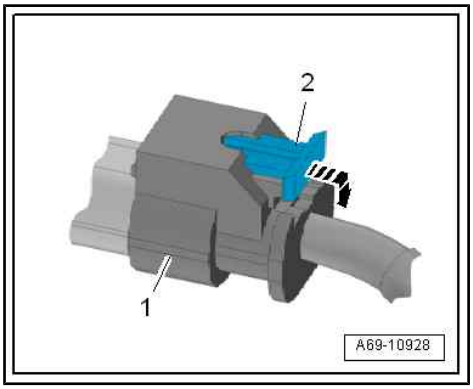
– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ page 216 .

WARNING

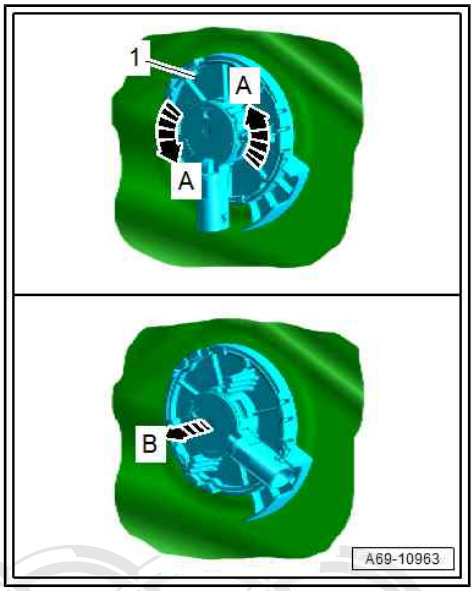
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.



– Release catch; to do so, turn crash sensor -1- approx. 45° in anti-clockwise direction -arrows A-.
– Disengage crash sensor for side airbag -arrow B- from door and detach.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of malfunctions.

- ***Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.***

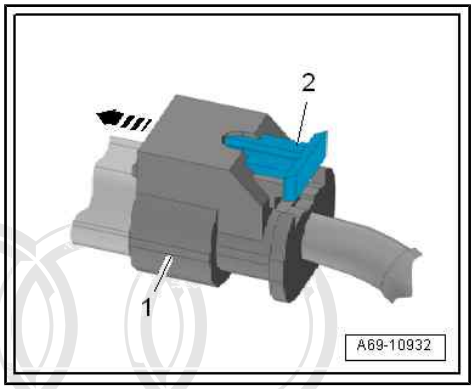
– Engage crash sensor for side airbag in door.
– Turn locking mechanism for crash sensor in clockwise direction.
• Retaining tabs must engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 7 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.

– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 180

11.4 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (rear) -G256- / -G257-

Removing

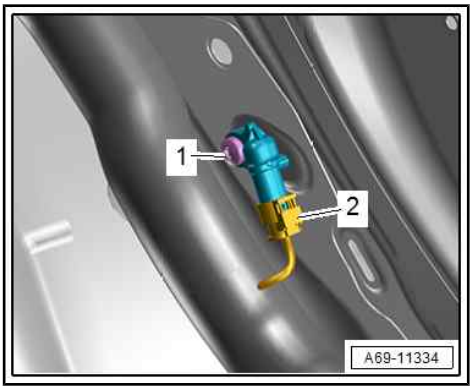
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– A5 Coupé/Cabriolet: Remove side trim ⇒ page 293 .
– A5 Sportback: Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .
– Remove bolt -1- and detach crash sensor -2- for side airbag from body.



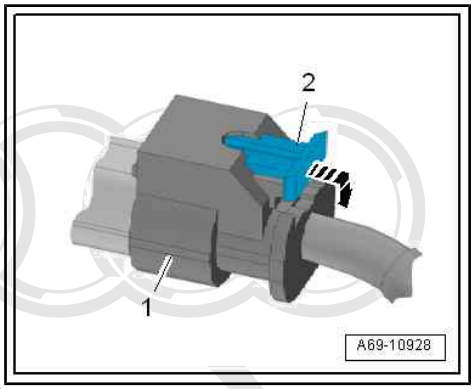
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.



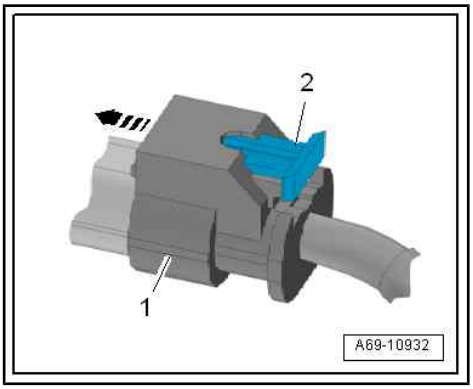
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.

– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags”, page 180

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 Seat position sensor

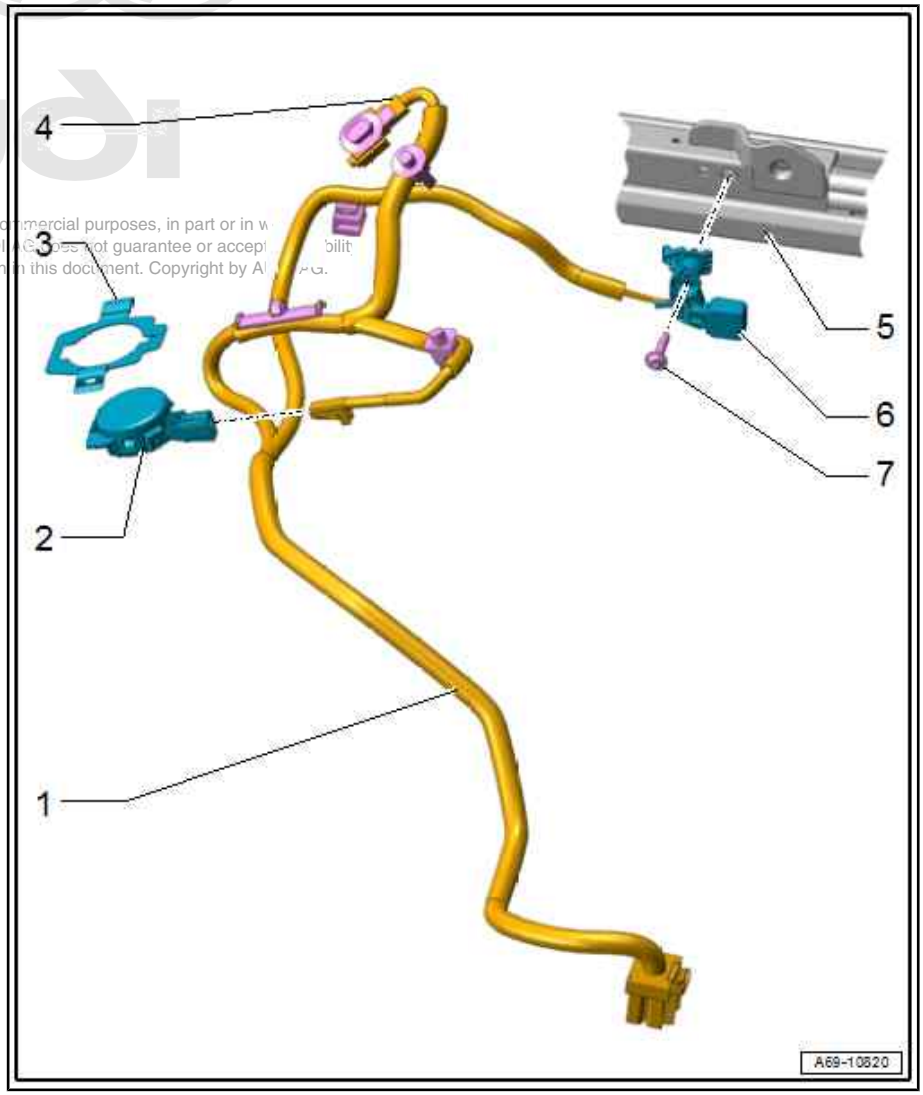
⇒ “12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor”, page 191

⇒ “12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor”, page 192

12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor

Note

The illustration shows the front passenger's side as an example.



1 - Wiring harness

- ❑ Seat position sensor/ seat occupied sensor/ belt switch
- ❑ Clip into seat pan
- ❑ Black connector, connector point in vehicle floor under seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor”, page 192

2 - Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

- ❑ Passenger side only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 194
- ❑ Press into seat pan until it engages audibly

3 - Retainer for seat occupied sensor

- ❑ Clip into seat pan
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 194

4 - Plug-in connector

- ❑ For belt buckle

5 - Seat rail

- ❑ Tunnel side

6 - Seat position sensor

- ♦ Driver side seat position sensor - G553-
- ♦ Front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
  - ❑ Removing and installing, adjusting ⇒ page 192
  - ❑ Checking ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.6 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

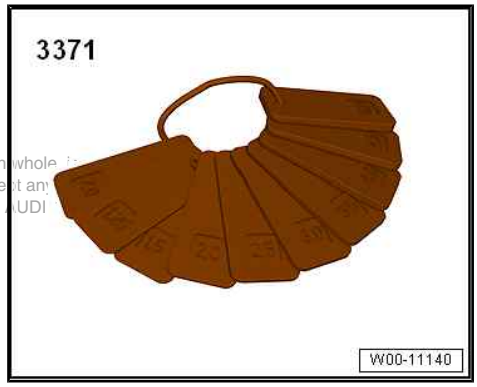
12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor

Replacement seat position sensors are available with wiring harness and electrical connector. The following wires with connectors are incorporated into the wiring harness:

- Driver side seat position sensor - G553- : wire with connector for belt buckle coupling
- Front passenger side seat position sensor - G554- : wire with connector for belt buckle coupling, seat occupied sensor and seat occupied recognition control unit (country-specific version)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Setting gauge - 3371- or



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

- Setting gauge - VAS 6448-



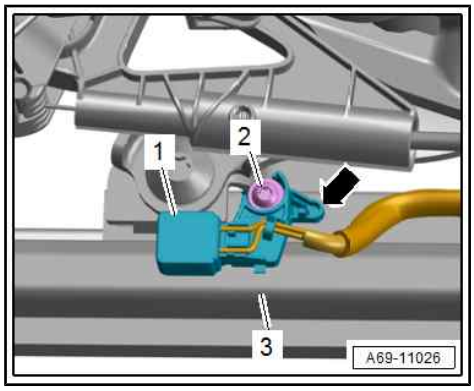
Removing

– Disconnect modular wiring ⇒ page 407 .

– Open up corrugated tube, take out wire for seat position sensor -G553- / -G554- together with electrical connector and move clear.

– Unfasten cable ties/cable clips for wiring from lower seat pan frame.

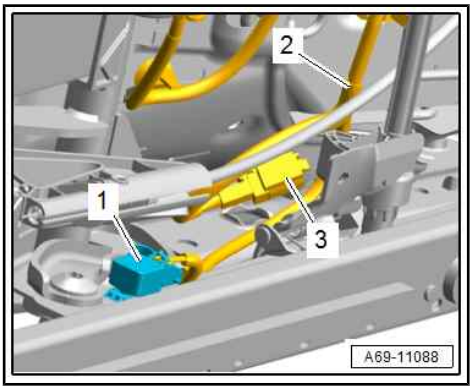
– Unscrew bolt -2- and unclip and disengage seat position sensor -1- from lower seat pan frame -3- -arrow-.



Driver seat:

– Move clear and unplug electrical connector -3- for belt buckle.

– Detach seat position sensor -1- with wires -2-.

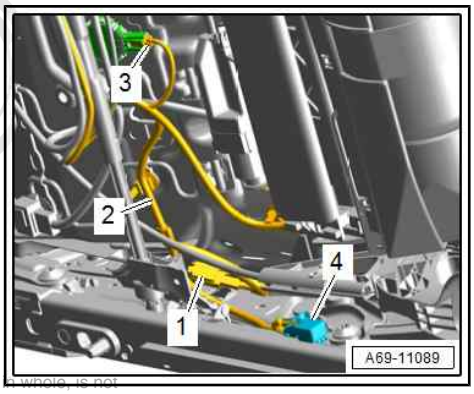


Front passenger seat:

– Move clear and unplug electrical connector -1- for belt buckle.

– Unplug electrical connector -3- at seat occupied sensor, front passenger side - G128- .

– Detach seat position sensor -4- with wires -2-.



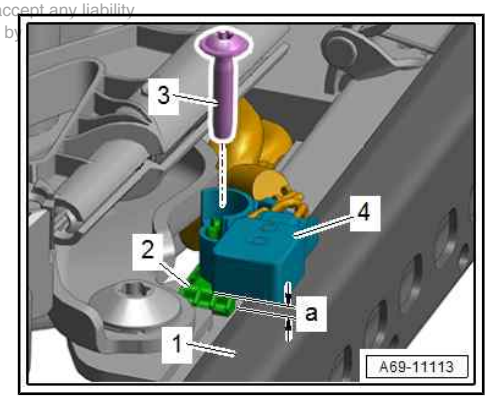
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

Installing and adjusting

– Hook retainer -2- into seat rail (top) and clip in.

– Slide seat position sensor -4- onto retainer and position at distance -a- = 4.0 mm from seat rail (bottom) -1-.

– To do so, place setting gauge - 3371- / 4 mm or -VAS 6448- / 4 mm between seat position sensor and seat rail (bottom), and tighten bolt -3-.



Note

Checking seat position sensor ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor", page 191

13 Belt-fastened recognition system

⇒ “13.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) G128 ”, page 194

13.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

Note

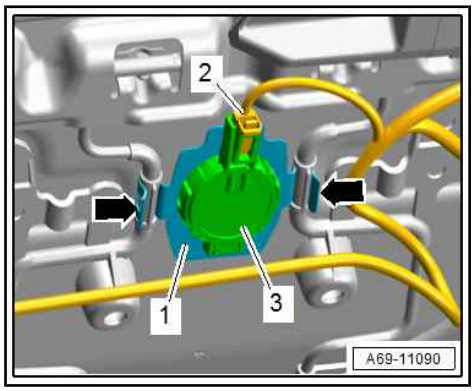
The seat occupied sensor is only fitted on the front passenger seat.

Removing

– Move front passenger's seat to the highest, rearmost position.

– Unplug electrical connector -2- for seat occupied sensor.

– Unclip mounting -1- from seat pan -arrows- and detach seat occupied sensor -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “12.1 Exploded view - seat position sensor”, page 191

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 Seat occupied recognition system

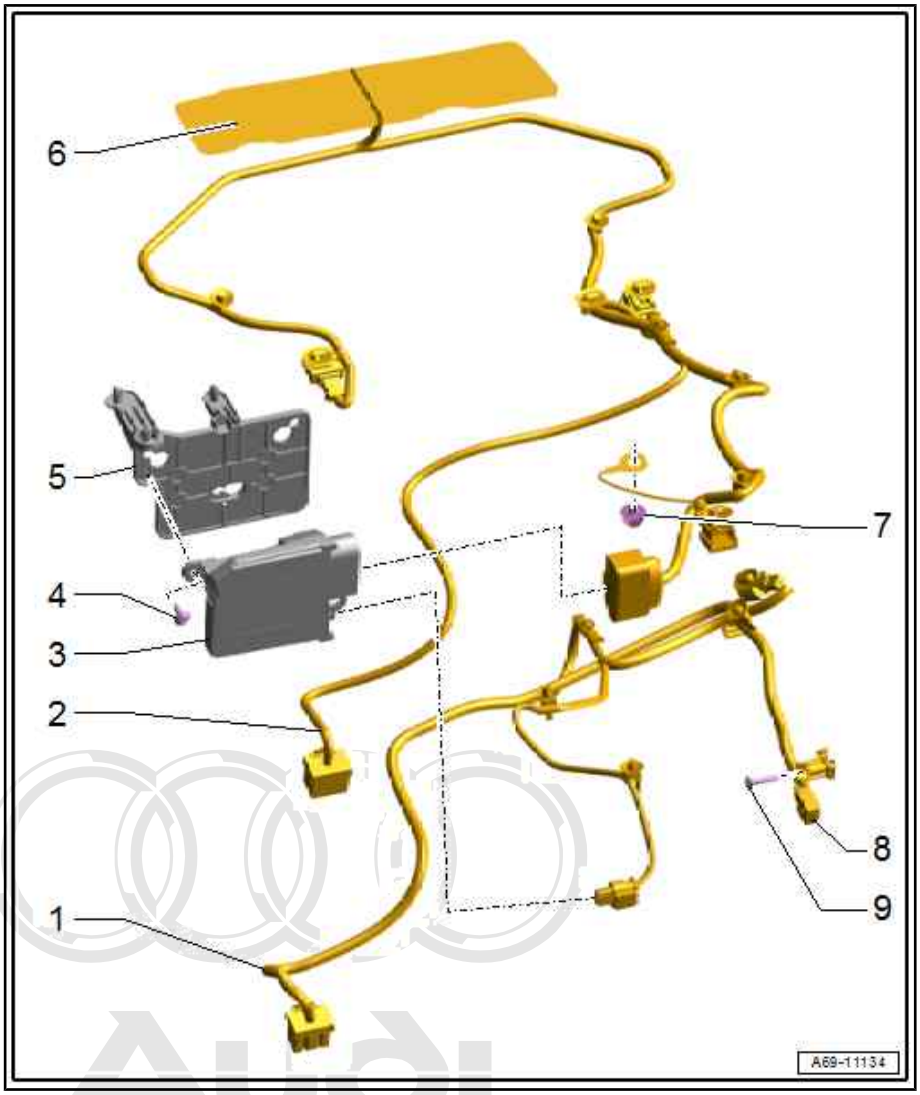
⇒ “14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system”, page 195

⇒ “14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor”, page 196

14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system

Note

The seat occupied sensor is incorporated in the seat heating element.



1 - Wiring harness

- For seat position sensor/belt-fastened sensor/belt switch
- Clip into seat pan
- Black connector, connector point in vehicle floor under seat
- Removing and installing ⇒ “12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor”, page 192

2 - Wiring harness

- For seat heating element with seat occupied sensor
- Clip into seat pan
- Green connector, connector point in vehicle floor under seat
- Removing and installing ⇒ “14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor”, page 196

3 - Seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

4 - Bolt

- 1.5 Nm

5 - Bracket for control unit

- Clip into seat pan

6 - Seat occupied sensor

- Seat occupied sensor is incorporated in seat heating element
- Depending on seat version, seat occupied sensor is sewn into seat cover or bonded onto seat padding with seat heating element
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

7 - Nut

- 1.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 192

9 - Bolt

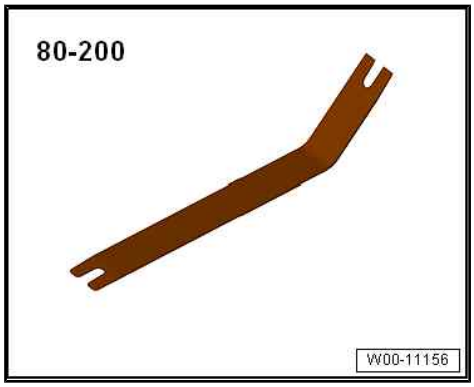
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 7 (page 191)

14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor

- The seat occupied sensor is only fitted in the front passenger seat.
- All components of the service kit for the seat occupied recognition system must always be installed.
- In other words, the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- and seat occupied sensor from the service kit for the seat occupied recognition system complement each other and must therefore always be installed together.
- It is not permitted to exchange either the seat occupied recognition control unit - J706- or the seat occupied sensor for a similar component for a different vehicle.
- The components included in the service kit vary depending on the seat version; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

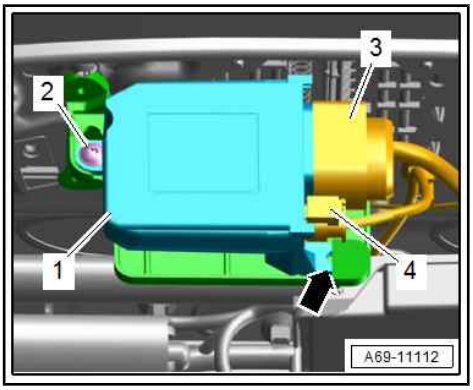
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front passenger seat ⇒ page 399 .

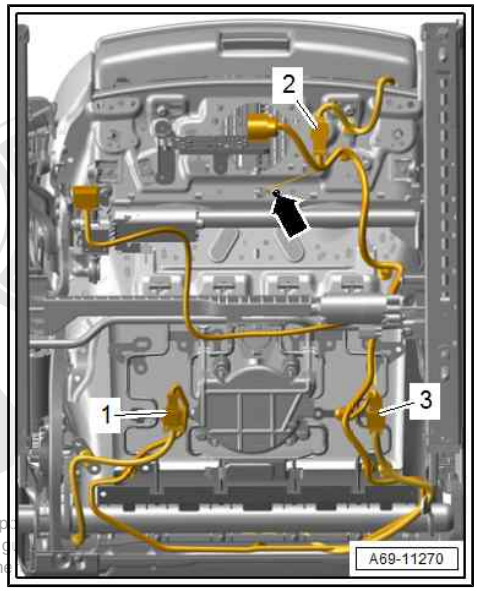
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

– Remove bolt -2-.
– Disengage control unit -1- from bracket -arrow-.
– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors -3 and 4- at control unit.
– If fitted, remove control unit for seat functions together with bracket ⇒ page 457 .
– Disconnect modular wiring ⇒ page 407 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Open up corrugated tube and move wiring clear.
– Unscrew nut -arrow- and move wiring clear.
– Unplug electrical connectors -1, 2, 3-.
– Unclip wiring harness from seat pan and move it clear.
– Remove seat cover with padding for seat pan ⇒ page 522 .
– Separate seat cover and padding (if necessary) ⇒ page 534 .



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
this docume

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.

The basic setting of the seat occupied recognition control unit has to be performed when a new service kit is installed ⇒ page 8 .

– Finally, select “Airbag” function in “Guided Fault Finding” mode using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

♦ Basic setting for seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system”, page 195

15 Automatic Rollover Support System

⇒ “15.1 Exploded view - Automatic Rollover Support System”, page 199

⇒ “15.2 Removing and installing rollover bar”, page 200

⇒ “15.3 Retracting extended rollover bars”, page 203

15.1 Exploded view - Automatic Rollover Support System

WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Risk of malfunctions.

- *Only the bolts shown in the illustration may be loosened.*

1 - Rollover bar (right-side)

- With trigger for passenger side rollover bar - N647-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 200

2 - Rollover bar (left-side)

- With trigger for driver side rollover bar - N646-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 200

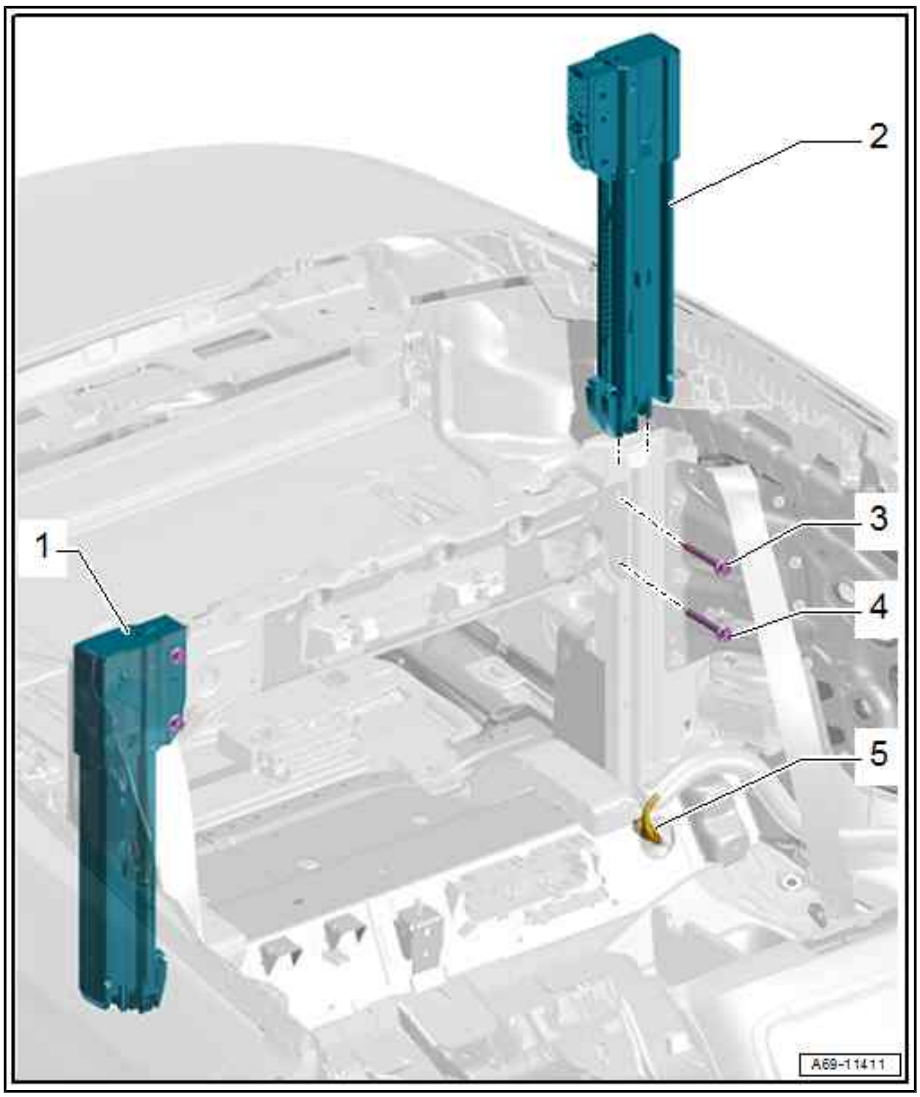
3 - Bolt

- Renew after removing
- 55 Nm
- Tightening sequence ⇒ page 200

4 - Bolt

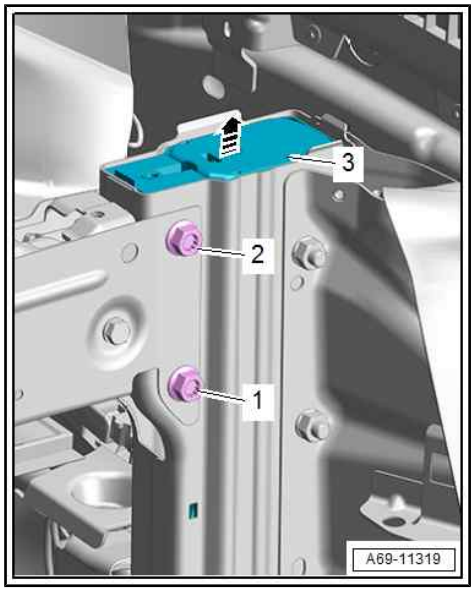
- Renew after removing
- 55 Nm
- Tightening sequence ⇒ page 200

5 - Electrical connector



Tightening sequence

– Tighten bolts in tightening sequence -1, 2-.



15.2 Removing and installing rollover bar

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Move convertible roof into service position ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 61 ; Convertible roof; Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid .

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

♦ ***Observe safety regulations for working on Automatic Rollover Support System ⇒ page 15 .***

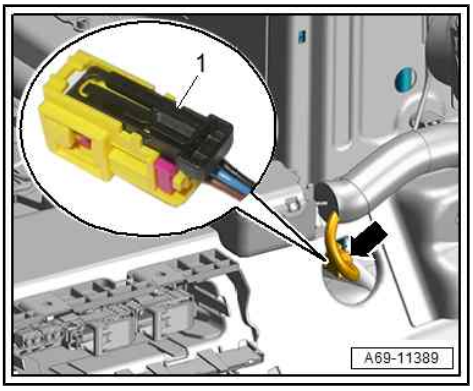
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 553 .

– Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ page 485 .

– Using pliers - T40172 A- , remove fasteners for back panel trim (front and rear).

– Using pliers - T40172 A- , remove fasteners for luggage compartment floor (front).
– Using pliers - T40172 A- , remove fastener for luggage compartment side trim.
– Press luggage compartment side trim to one side in area of connector.
– Pull out and press down connector locking element -1- and unplug electrical connector -arrow-.

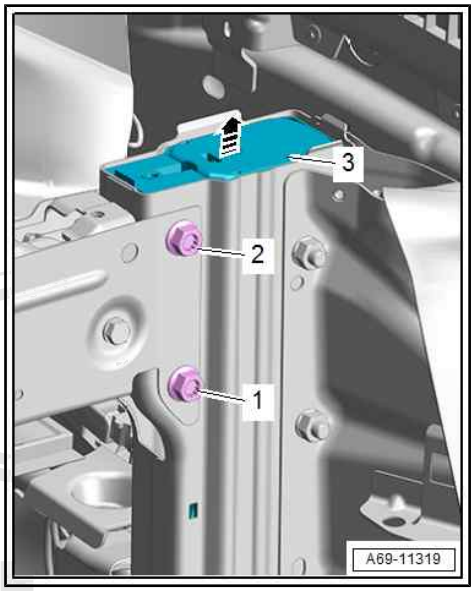


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Risk of malfunctions.

- *Only the bolts shown in the illustration may be loosened.*



– Unfasten back panel trim (front) in vicinity of bolted connections and push to one side.
– Remove bolts -1, 2-.
– Press back panel trim (rear) above rollover bar to one side.
– Pull rollover bar -3- upwards out of vehicle -arrow-.

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety regulations for working on Automatic Roll-over Support System ⇒ page 15 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *There must not be anyone in the vicinity of the rollover bars (safety distance approx. 1 m) when connecting the battery.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

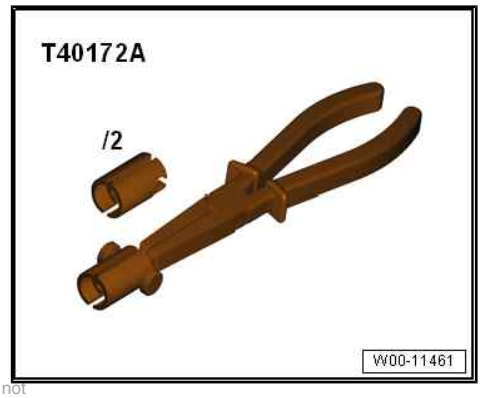
- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "15.1 Exploded view - Automatic Rollover Support System", page 199

15.3 Retracting extended rollover bars

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pliers - T40172 A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

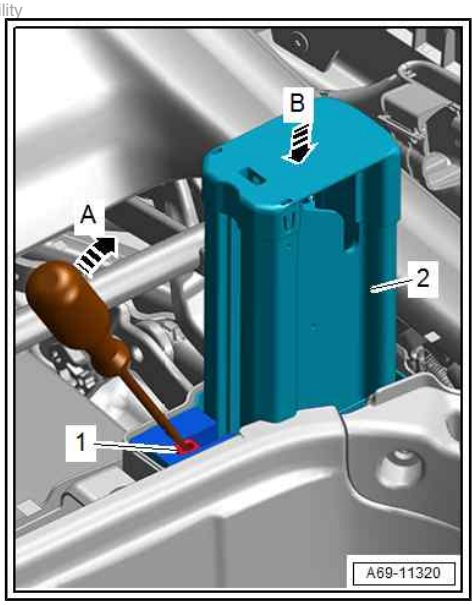
– Remove fasteners using pliers - T40172 A- and remove back panel trim (rear) ⇒ page 301 .

– Retract convertible roof into convertible roof compartment and leave convertible roof compartment lid open.

– Release rollover bar on driver or passenger side -2- using a screwdriver at the corresponding locking element -1- -arrow A- and press rollover bar back into original position -arrow B-.

– While retracting rollover bar, tilt aluminium profile in direction of -arrow- (on top) to make sure system locks in place correctly.

- When system is locked correctly, it can be pressed downwards by another 2 ... 3 mm.
- After it is let go, it returns to the locked end position again automatically (spring force).



16 Pedestrian protection

⇒ “16.1 Overview - pedestrian protection”, page 204

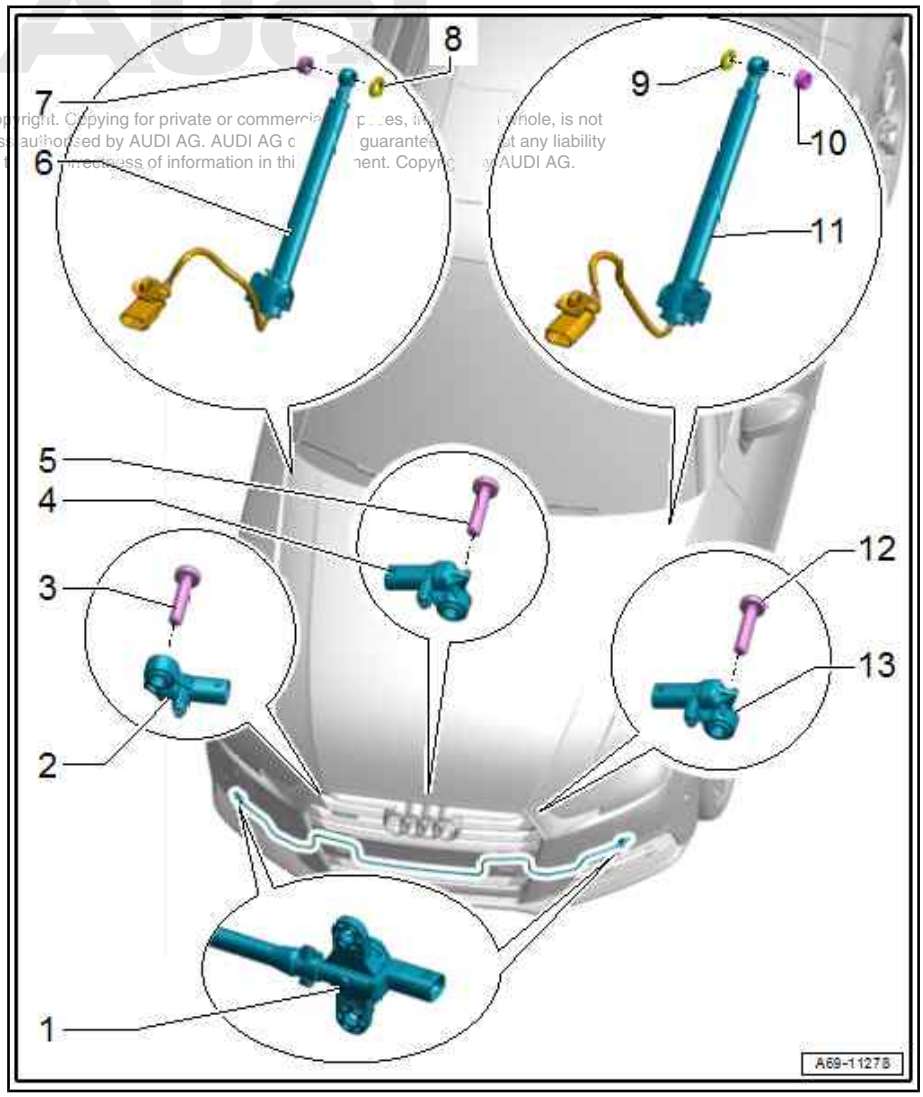
⇒ “16.2 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection G693 ”, page 205

⇒ “16.3 Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection”, page 208

⇒ “16.4 Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered”, page 210

⇒ “16.5 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection G598 / G599 ”, page 211

16.1 Overview - pedestrian protection



1 - Crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection

- Driver side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G851-
- Front passenger side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G852-
  - ❑ Combined with pressure hose
  - ❑ Fitting location: in moulded foam insert on impact bar
  - ❑ Must be renewed if:
- Moulded foam insert is visibly damaged
- Impact bar is visibly deformed
- Bumper cover is deformed
- Pressure hose is damaged
  - ❑ Insert pressure hose into groove on moulded foam insert
  - ❑ Insert pressure hose in centre of moulded foam insert so that it protrudes equally on left and right
  - ❑ Do not kink or crimp pressure hose
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 208

2 - Front passenger side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G571-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Fitting location: on bracket for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 205

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

Audi
...by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - Centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693-

- ❑ Fitting location: on bracket for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 205

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Trigger 2 for pedestrian protection - G599-

- ❑ Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 211

7 - Clip

8 - Seal

9 - Seal

10 - Clip

11 - Trigger 1 for pedestrian protection - G598-

- ❑ Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 211

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

13 - Driver side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G570-

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Fitting location: on bracket for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 205

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

16.2 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693-

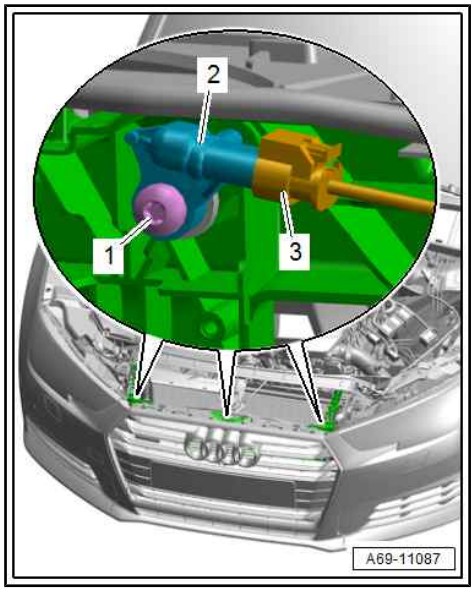
Note

The driver side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G570- / front passenger side crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G571- are removed and installed in the same way.

Removing

– Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front) .

– Remove bolt -1- and detach centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693- -item 2- from bumper.



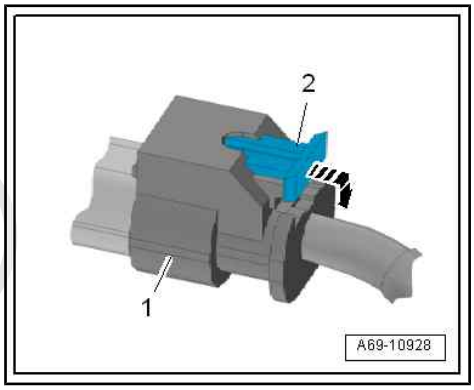
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.



Installing

WARNING

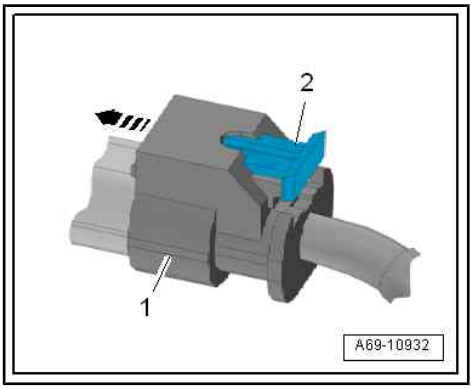
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.

– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “16.1 Overview - pedestrian protection”, page 204

16.3 Removing and installing crash sensor for pedestrian protection

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front); Removing and installing bumper cover .

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

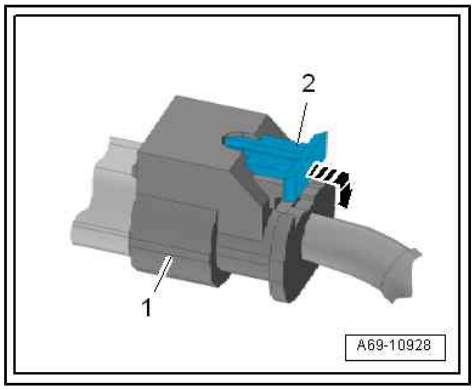
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Audi
Any unauthorized copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

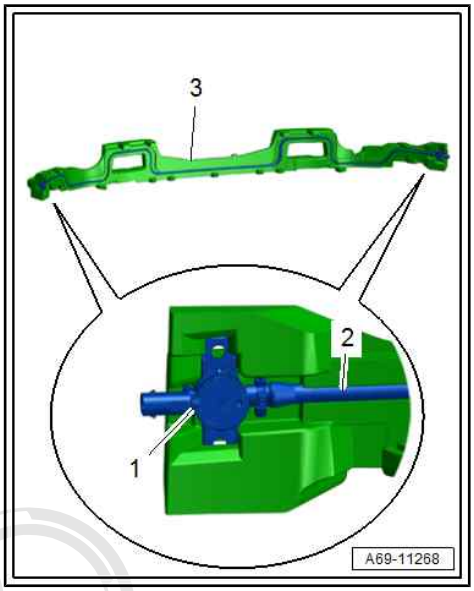
– Pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- from crash sensor.

– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

– Remove moulded foam insert ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front) .



– Disengage crash sensor -1- for pedestrian protection at moulded foam insert -3- and remove together with pressure hose -2-.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Engage crash sensor for pedestrian protection in moulded foam insert.

WARNING

Risk of malfunctions.

- *Do not kink or stretch the pressure hose.*

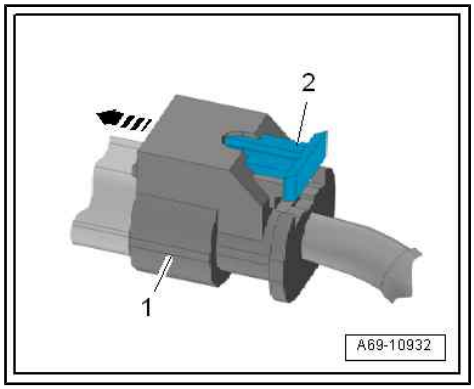
• The pressure hose must be inserted so that it is free of tension.

– Install moulded foam insert with crash sensor for pedestrian protection ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63 ; Bumper (front) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.

– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “16.1 Overview - pedestrian protection”, page 204

16.4 Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered

Resetting pedestrian protection system after it has been triggered ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Resetting hinge

16.5 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection -G598- / -G599-

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove wing panel cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50 ; Wing; Exploded view - wing .

WARNING

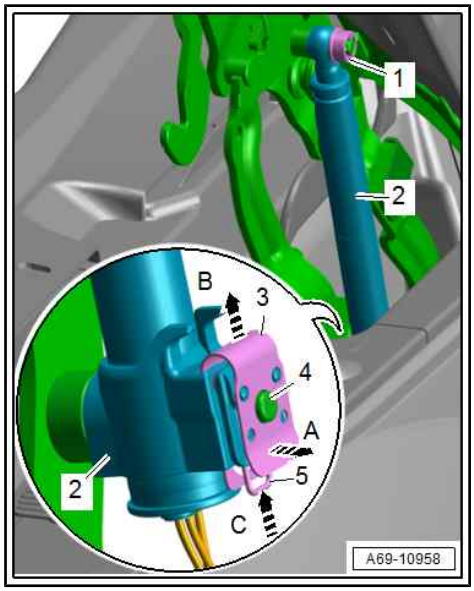
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Press release catch, unplug electrical connector for trigger for pedestrian protection and move connector clear.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove clip -1- with a screwdriver.
– Release securing clip -3- by pulling it in direction of -arrow A- and at the same time press over pin -4- in direction of -arrow B-.
– Press and hold retaining clip -5- -arrow C- and at the same time detach trigger for pedestrian protection -2- from pin.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Note

- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*
- *Take care not to trap any wires.*

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “16.1 Overview - pedestrian protection”, page 204

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

70 – Trim, insulation

1 Door trim (front)

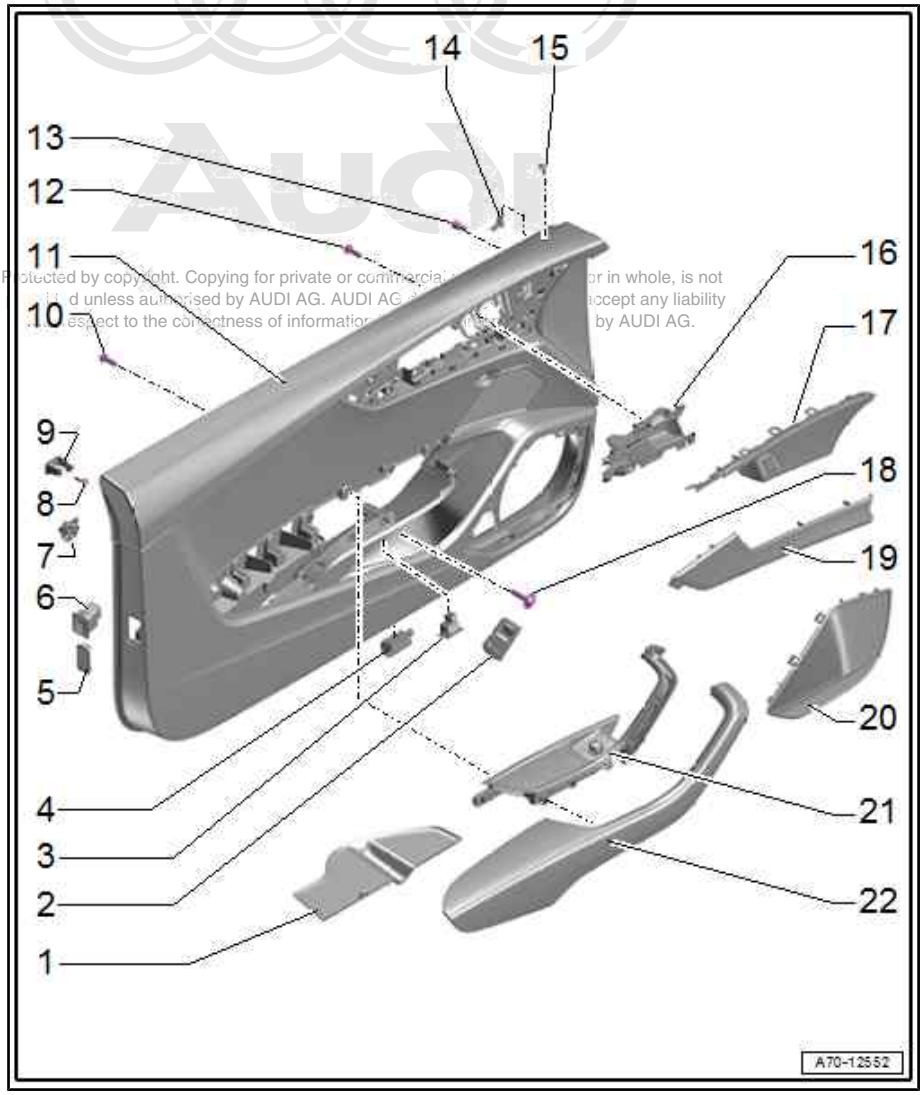
⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 214

⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing door trim (front)”, page 216

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing door puller (front)”, page 218

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 219

1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)



1 - Lining for door pocket

- ❑ Insert into door

2 - Rear lid remote release button - E233-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

3 - Storage compartment illumination bulb

- ❑ Equipment versions:

- ◆ Driver door storage compartment illumination bulb - L160-
- ◆ Front passenger door storage compartment illumination bulb - L161-
  - ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors

4 - Entry light

- ◆ Driver side entry light - W92-
- ◆ Passenger side entry light - W93-
  - ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors

5 - Door warning lamp

- ❑ Equipment versions:

- ◆ Exit warning lamp, driver side - W111-
- ◆ Exit warning lamp, front passenger side - W112-
  - ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Source: by AUDI AG.

6 - Button for deactivating interior monitoring and vehicle inclination sender - E616-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

7 - Clip

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Insert in trim

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ A5 Cabriolet: not installed

9 - Clip

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ A5 Cabriolet: not installed

10 - Bolt

- ❑ For armrest
- ❑ 16x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

11 - Door trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 216
- ❑ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve -item 15- must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

12 - Bolt

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - Stop for door trim

- ❑ 4.5 Nm

14 - Central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-

15 - Sleeve

- ❑ For central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp - K133-
- ❑ Driver's door only
- ❑ If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

16 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 219

17 - Trim panel for interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 219

18 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

19 - Trim panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing door trim (front)”, page 216

20 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For bass loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 221
- ❑ Hook into door trim and press on until it engages audibly

21 - Switch mounting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing door puller (front)”, page 218

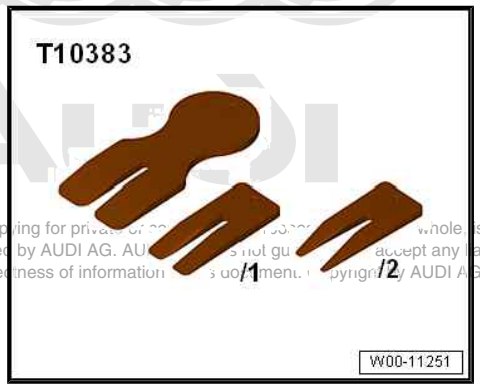
22 - Door puller with armrest

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 218

1.2 Removing and installing door trim (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



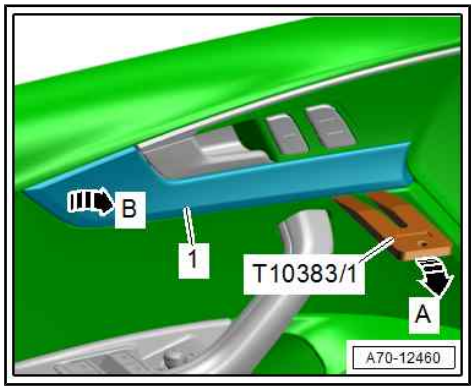
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

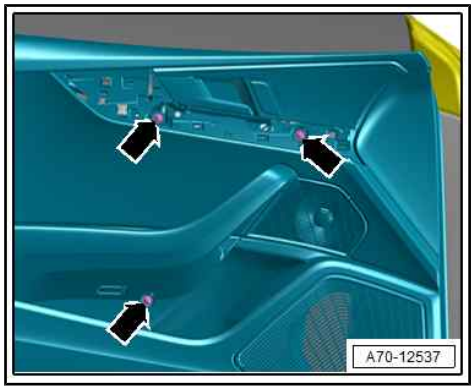
– Switch off ignition.

– Unclip trim panel -1- -arrow A- using wedge - T10383/1- .

– Release all other retaining catches, disengage trim panel from door trim -arrow B- and detach.

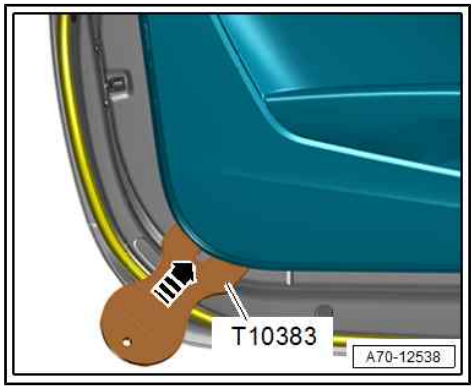


– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Starting in bottom rear corner, use wedge - T10383- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips -arrow-.

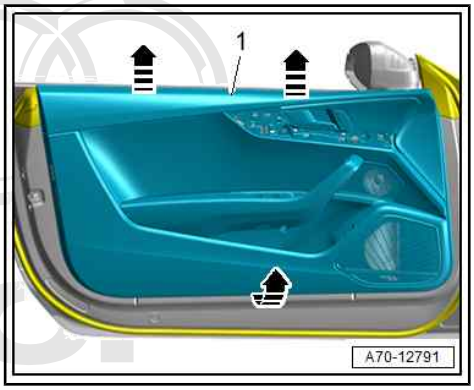
Unclip remaining retaining clips along door trim from door.



– Pull door trim -1- slightly away from door all around.

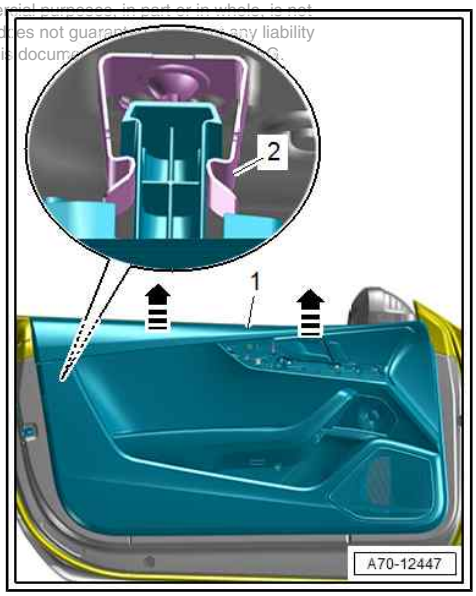
• Do not leave retaining clips in door.

– Press door trim upwards and disengage it from door at window slot -arrows-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © Copyright by AUDI AG.

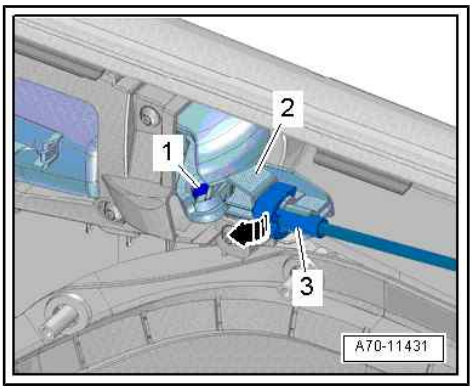
– If fitted, press door trim upwards out of clip -2- and disengage from door at window slot -arrows-.



– Carefully unclip Bowden cable -3- from interior door handle -2-.

– Swivel Bowden cable for interior door handle inwards -arrow-.

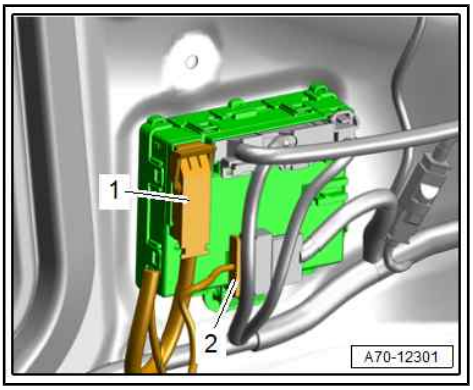
– Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.



– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2- from door control unit.

– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for mid-range loudspeaker.

– Detach door trim.



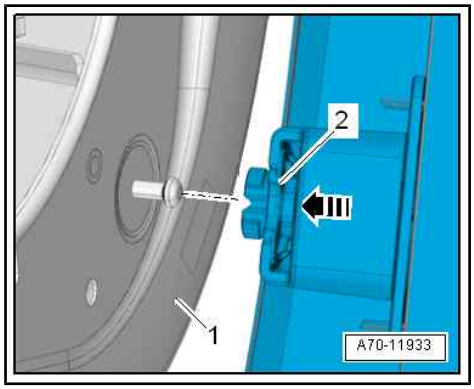
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.

– Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrow- until it engages audibly at anchorage points.

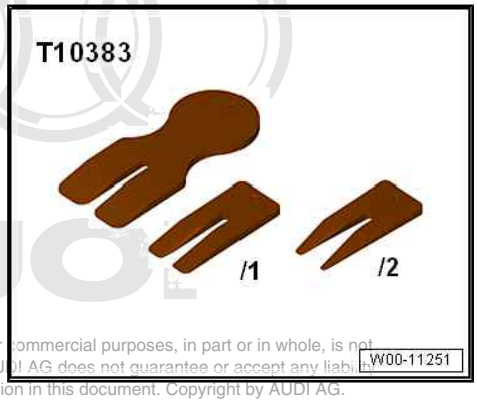
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)", page 214



1.3 Removing and installing door puller (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

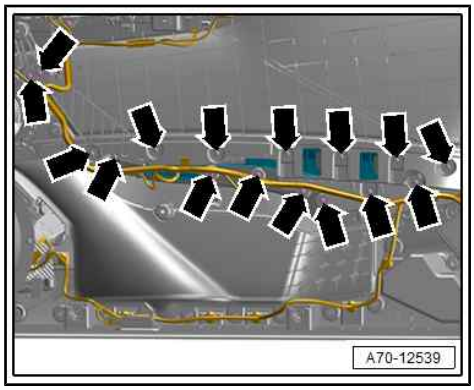
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 216 .

– Set down door trim on a soft surface.

– Unplug electrical connectors at rear of door trim.

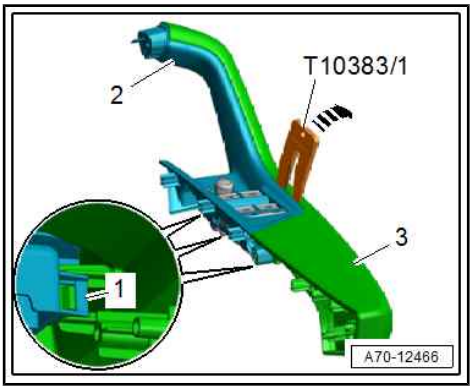
– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Unfasten door puller with armrest from door trim and detach.



– Release fasteners -1- using a small screwdriver and at the same time unclip switch mounting -2- from door puller -3- using wedge -T10383/1- -arrow-.

– Disengage all other fasteners and detach switch mounting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 214

1.4 Removing and installing interior door handle

Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 216 .

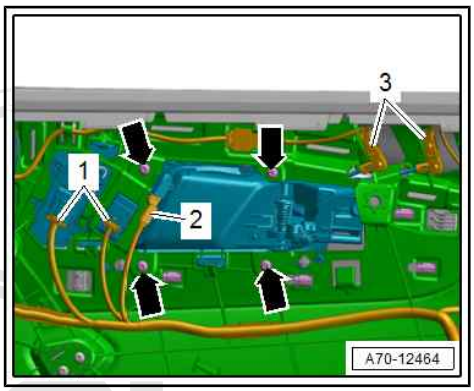
– Set down door trim on a soft surface.

– Depending on equipment version: Remove lights for door ambient lighting -3- from door trim (rear); to do so, release fasteners and pull light off light conductor.

– Unplug electrical connectors -1-.

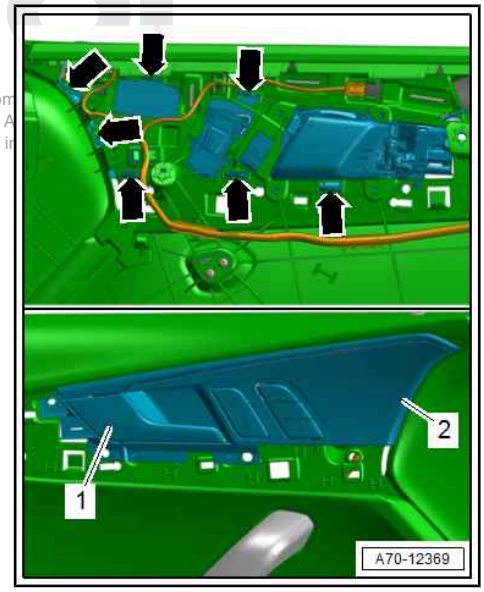
– If fitted, pull bulb holder -2- for interior door handle lighting out of light conductor.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Release trim -2- together with interior door handle -1- from door trim; to do so, release fasteners -arrows- on door trim (rear).

– Disengage trim and interior door handle from door trim and remove.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
with respect to the correctness of information in

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 214

2 Door trim (rear)

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 220

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim in door trim”, page 221

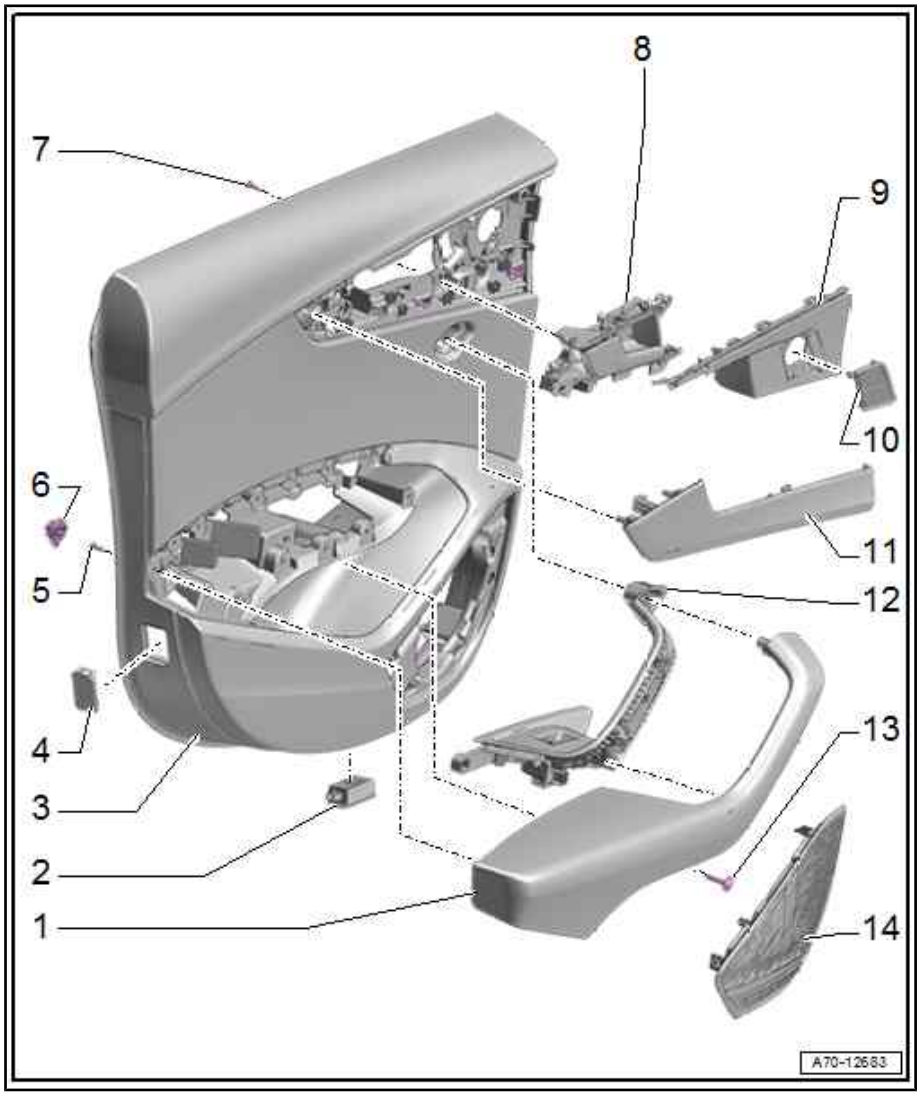
⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 222

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing door trim (rear)”, page 223

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing door puller (rear)”, page 225

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)



1 - Door puller with armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 225

2 - Entry light (rear)

- ♦ Rear driver side entry light - W83-
- ♦ Rear passenger side entry light - W84-
  - ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in rear doors

3 - Door trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 223

4 - Exit warning reflector/reflector

5 - Bolt

- ❑ For door puller with armrest
- ❑ 15x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

6 - Clip

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ Insert in trim

7 - Bolt

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

8 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 222

9 - Trim panel for interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing interior door handle”, page 222

10 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For treble loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 221

❑ Push on until it engages audibly

11 - Trim panel

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing door trim (rear)”, page 223

12 - Switch mounting

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing door puller (rear)”, page 225

13 - Bolt

❑ For door trim
❑ 3x
❑ 2.5 Nm

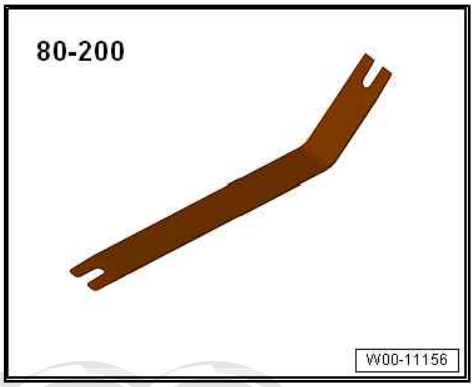
14 - Loudspeaker trim

❑ For bass loudspeaker
❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 221
❑ Hook into door trim and press on until it engages audibly

2.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim in door trim

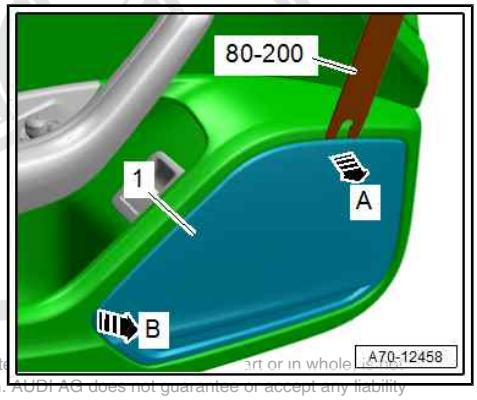
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing trim for bass loudspeaker in front door

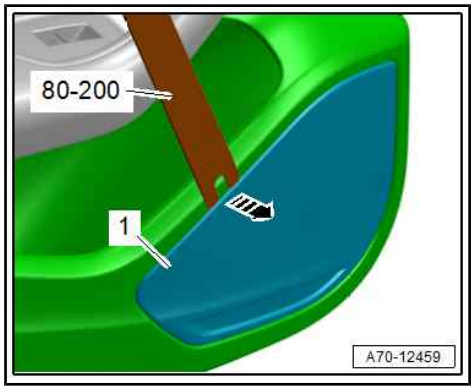
– Loudspeaker trim with ambient lighting: Remove front door trim ⇒ page 216 .
– If fitted, remove light for ambient lighting from loudspeaker trim (rear); to do so, release fasteners and pull light off light conductor.
– Using removal lever - 80-200- , carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow A-.
– To do so, release fasteners on door trim.
– Disengage loudspeaker trim from door trim -arrow B- at rear and remove.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private ... art or in whole is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

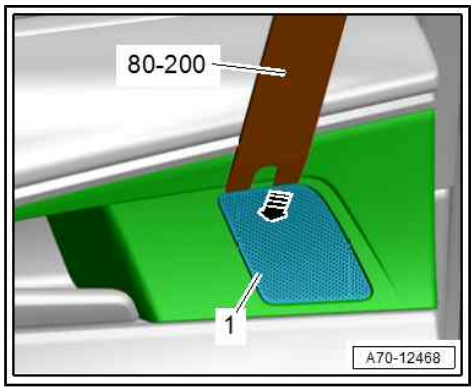
Removing trim for bass loudspeaker in rear door

– Using removal lever - 80-200- , carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow- and remove.



Removing trim for treble loudspeaker in rear door

– Using removal lever - 80-200- , prise loudspeaker trim -1- carefully off door trim -arrow- and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door trim (front)”, page 214 ; ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 220

2.3 Removing and installing interior door handle

Removing

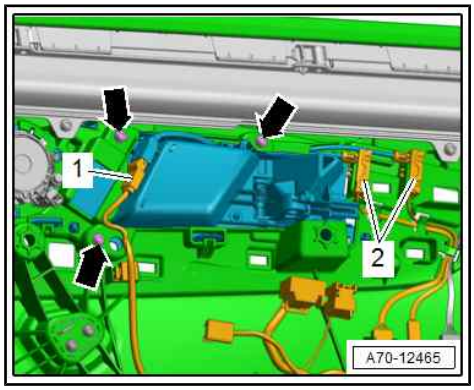
– Remove door trim ⇒ page 223 .

– Set down door trim on a soft surface.

– Depending on equipment version: Remove lights for door ambient lighting -2- from door trim (rear); to do so, release fasteners and pull light off light conductor.

– Pull bulb holder -1- for interior door handle lighting out of light conductor.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.



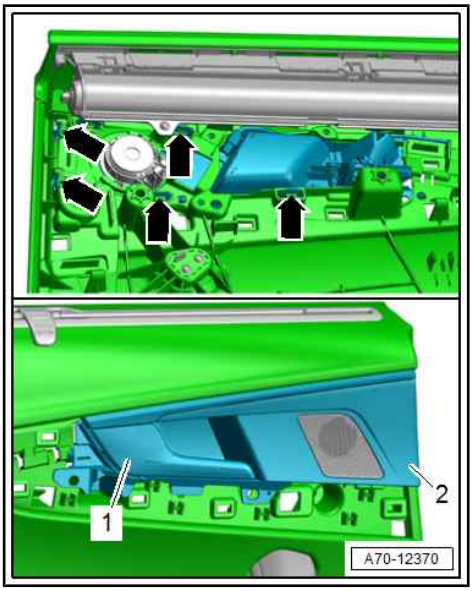
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release trim -2- together with interior door handle -1- from door trim; to do so, release fasteners -arrows- on door trim (rear).
– Disengage trim and interior door handle from door trim and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

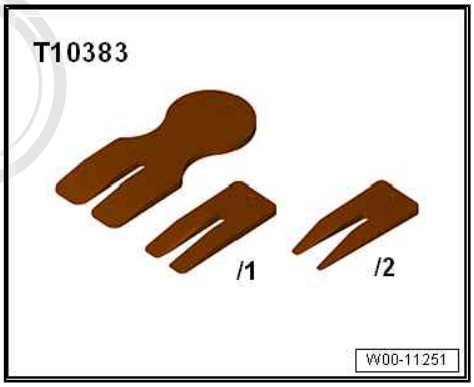
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 220



2.4 Removing and installing door trim (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

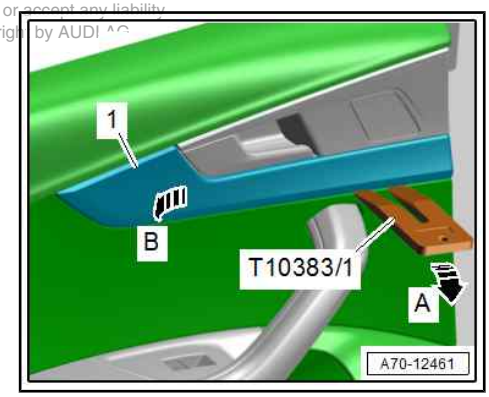
♦ Wedges - T10383-



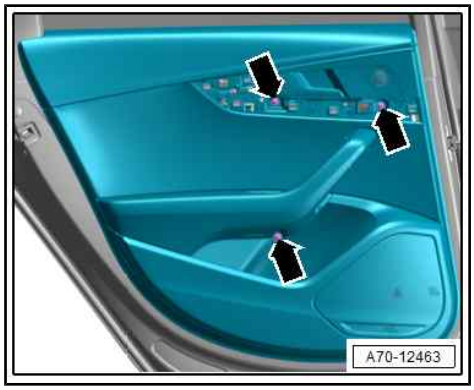
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Removing

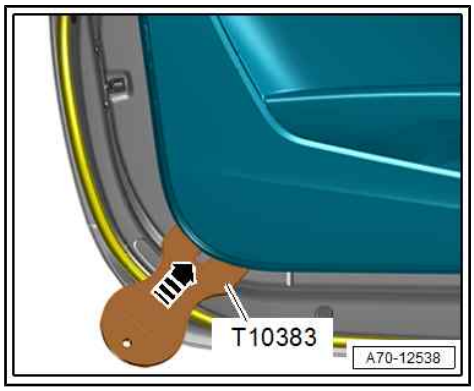
– Switch off ignition.
– Unclip trim panel -1- -arrow A- using wedge - T10383/1- .
– Release all other retaining catches, disengage trim panel from door trim -arrow B- and detach.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Starting in bottom rear corner, use wedge - T10383- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips -arrow-.



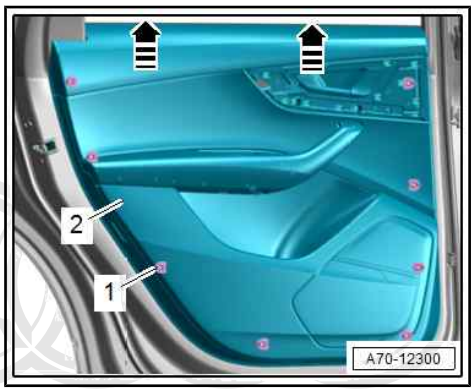
Unclip all other retaining clips -1- along door trim from door; marking shows position of retaining clips.

– Pull door trim -2- slightly away from door all around.

• Do not leave retaining clips in door.

– Disengage door trim from door at top of window slot -arrows- and detach.

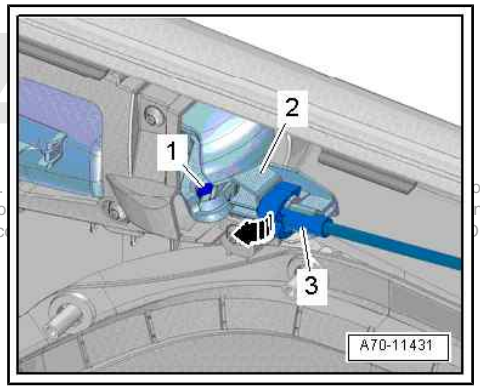
– Equipment version with loudspeaker: Unplug electrical connector for loudspeaker.



– Carefully unclip Bowden cable -3- from interior door handle -2-.

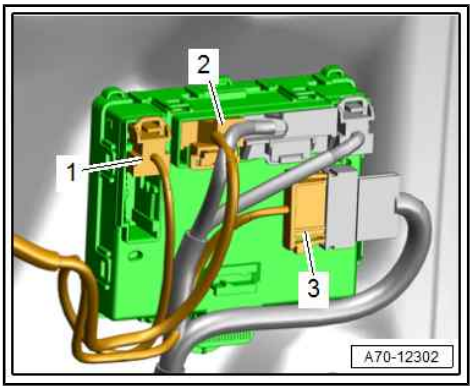
– Swivel Bowden cable for interior door handle in direction of -arrow-.

– Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.



Protected by copyright. ble, is not
permitted unless autho ny liability
with respect to the c DI AG.

– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors -1, 2 and 3- from door control unit.
– Detach door trim.

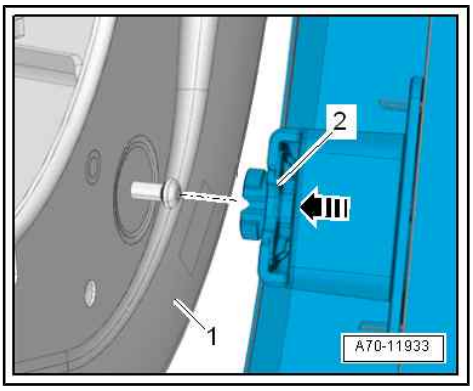


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.
– Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrow- until it engages audibly at anchorage points ⇒ page 224 .

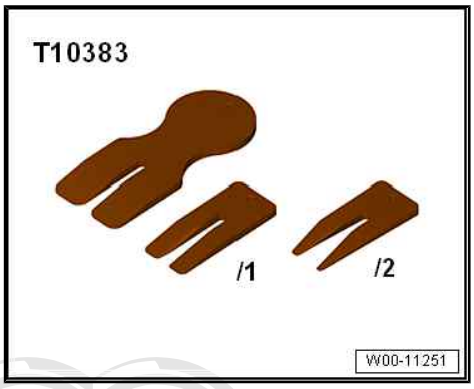
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)”, page 220



2.5 Removing and installing door puller (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

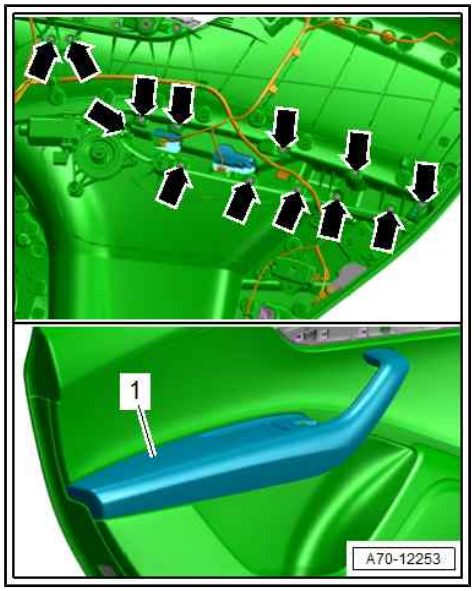
♦ Wedges - T10383-



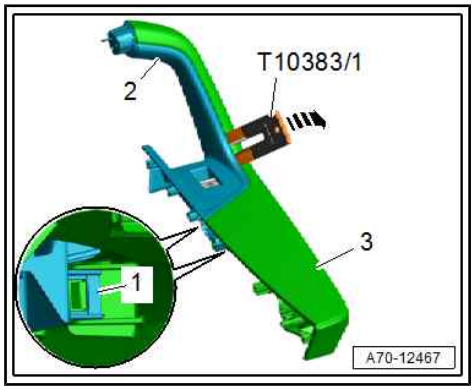
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 223 .
– Set down door trim on a soft surface.
– Unplug electrical connector for switch at rear of door trim.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach door puller with armrest -1- from door trim.



– Release fasteners -1- using a small screwdriver and at the same time unclip switch mounting -2- from door puller -3- using wedge -T10383/1- -arrow-.
– Disengage all other fasteners and detach switch mounting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - door trim (rear)", page 220

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Dash panel

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 227

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)”, page 229

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing cover for MMI screen”, page 230

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing trim for dash panel insert”, page 231

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim”, page 231

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing trim for light switch”, page 232

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing dash panel”, page 233

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing trim for operating and display unit”, page 238

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting”, page 238

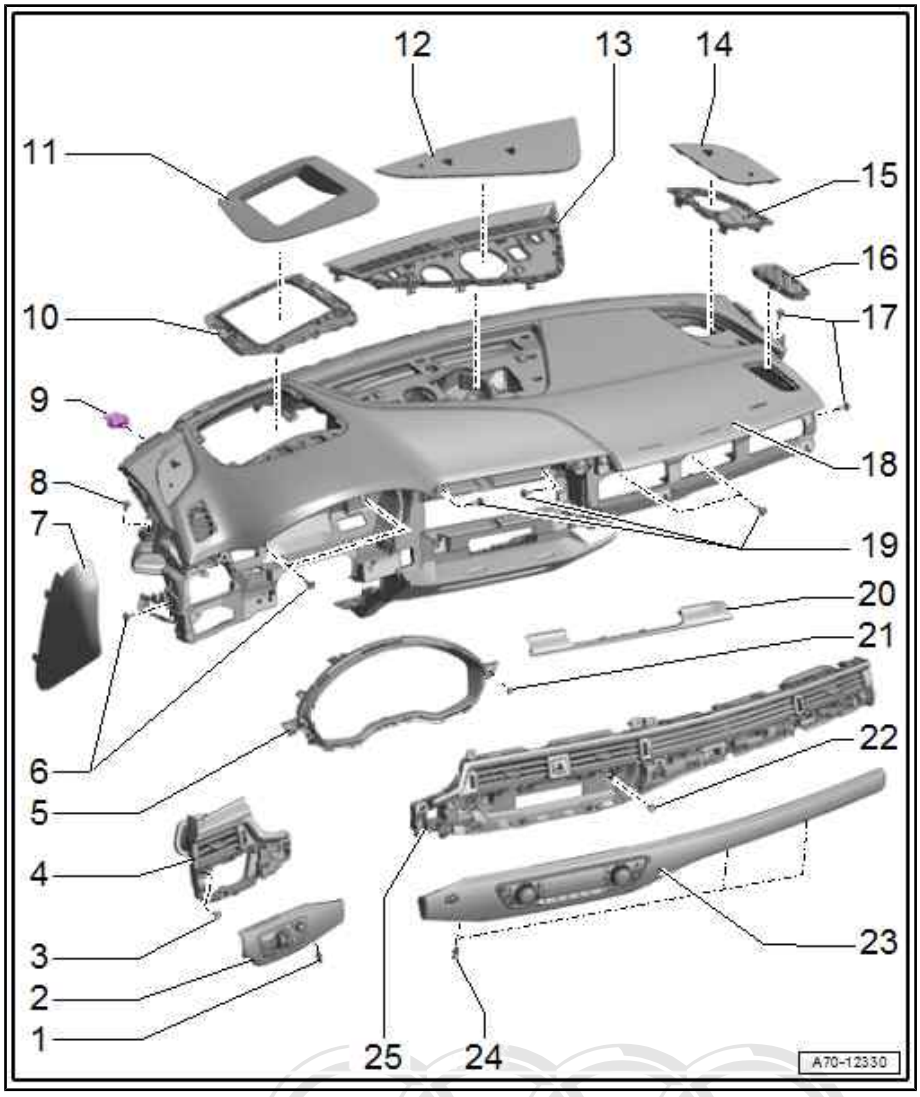
⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing dash panel vents”, page 239

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)”, page 241

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing defroster vent (side)”, page 242

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1 Exploded view - dash panel



1 - Bolt/fastener

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

2 - Trim for light switch

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 232
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - Bolts

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

4 - Dash panel vent on driver side

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 239
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Trim for dash panel insert

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 231

6 - Bolts

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 3 Nm

7 - Dash panel cover (side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 229
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

9 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in mounting for dash panel on windscreen frame (bottom)

10 - Retaining frame for head-up display

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - head-up display

11 - Cover for head-up display

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - head-up display

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Centre loudspeaker trim

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 231
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

13 - Defroster vent (front centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 241
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

14 - Loudspeaker trim (outer)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 231
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

15 - Loudspeaker mounting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 238

16 - Side defroster vent

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 242
- ❑ Press on until it engages

17 - Bolts

- ❑ 3 Nm

18 - Dash panel

> **WARNING**
> *Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently. Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 233

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

19 - Bolts

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3 Nm

20 - Cover for MMI screen

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

21 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

22 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 3 Nm

23 - Trim for air conditioner operating and display unit

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 238
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

24 - Bolt/fastener

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

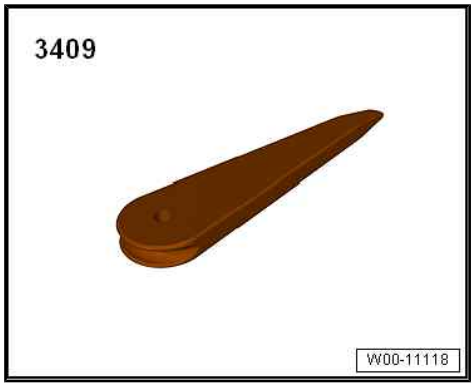
25 - Dash panel vent (passenger side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 240
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

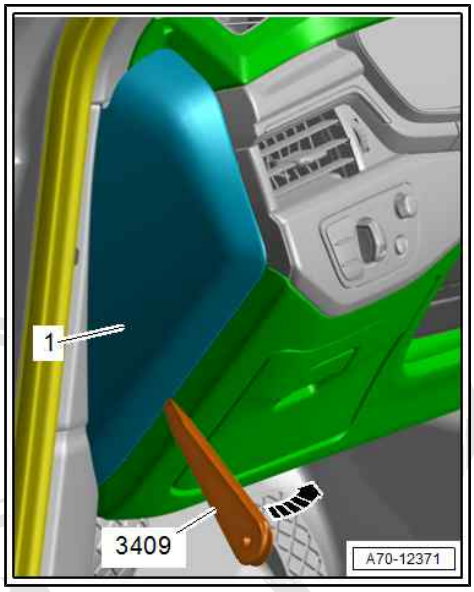
– Prise off dash panel cover (side) -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow-.

– Release all other retaining catches, pull dash panel cover out of trim cover for A-pillar and remove dash panel cover.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 227

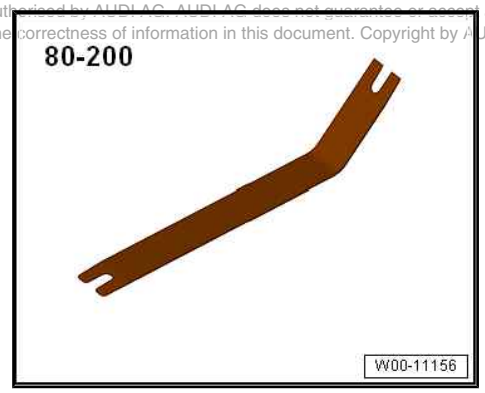


3.3 Removing and installing cover for MMI screen

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-

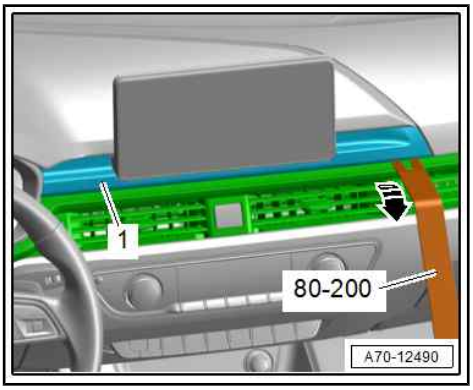
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

– Unclip cover -1- for MMI screen -arrow- using removal lever - 80-200- ; to do so, apply removal lever - 80-200- carefully at cover.

– Release all other retaining catches for cover for MMI screen and remove cover.



Installing

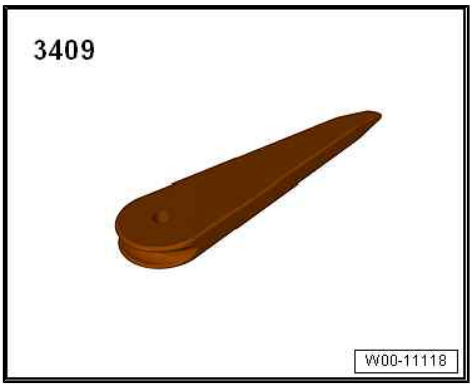
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 227

3.4 Removing and installing trim for dash panel insert

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

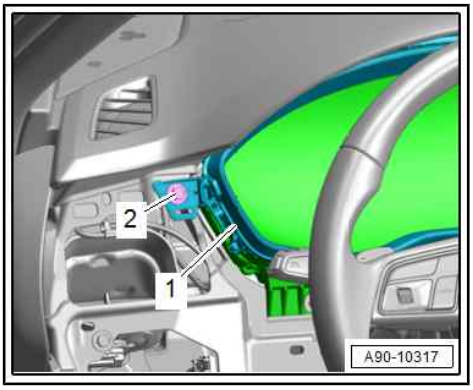
– Remove dash panel vent (driver side) ⇒ page 239 .

– Remove dash panel vent (passenger side) ⇒ page 240 .

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Remove bolt on opposite side.

– Remove trim -1- for dash panel insert.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

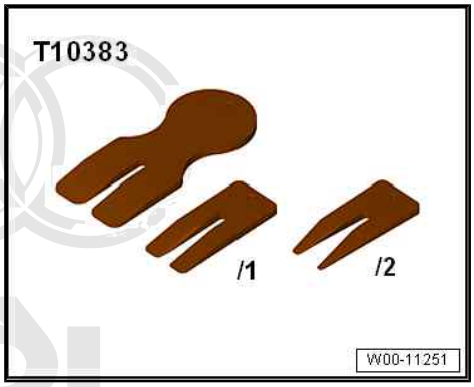
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 227

3.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Reproduction or commercial use of this publication for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

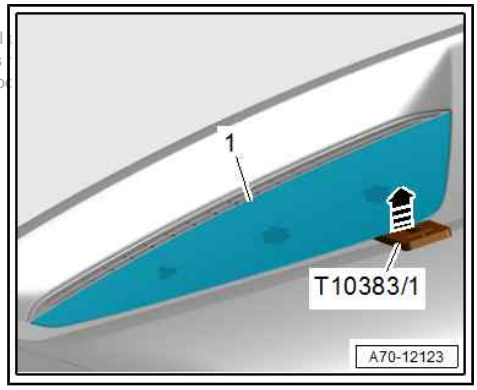
- Wedges - T10383-



Removing loudspeaker trim (centre):

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

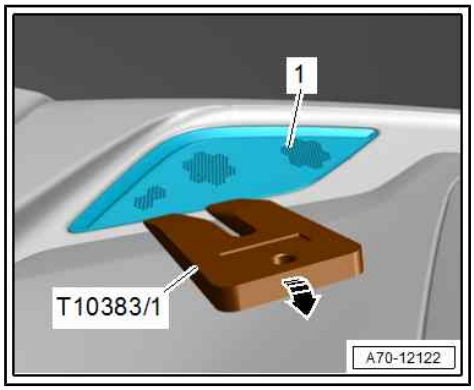
- Disengage loudspeaker trim -1- arrow- using wedge - T10383/1- ; to do so, insert wedge only approx. 2 mm in gap beneath trim.
- Release all other retaining catches for loudspeaker trim further along gap.
- If necessary, push a long screwdriver all the way through under loudspeaker trim towards front until front retaining pins disengage.



Removing outer loudspeaker trim:

> **Caution**
>
> *Risk of damage to loudspeaker trim.*
>
> - *Proceed very carefully when removing and installing.*

- Carefully disengage loudspeaker trim -1- along gap -arrow- using wedge - T10383/1- ; to do so, insert wedge only approx. 2 mm in gap beneath trim.
- Release and detach all other retaining catches for loudspeaker trim.



Installing

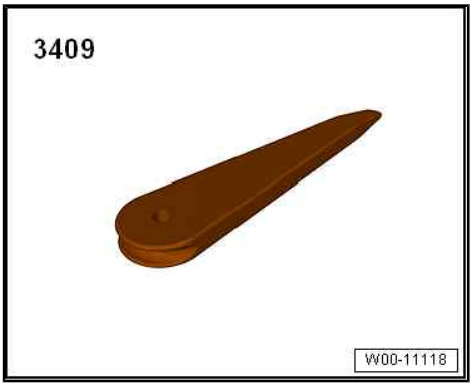
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 227

3.6 Removing and installing trim for light switch

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



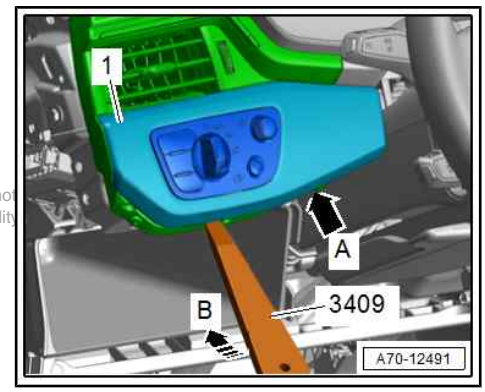
Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 23 .

– Remove fastener/bolt -arrow A-.

– Unclip trim -1- for light switch (together with light switch) -arrow B- using removal wedge - 3409-

– Unplug electrical connector and remove trim for light switch (together with light switch).



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 227

3.7 Removing and installing dash panel

Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 50 .

– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Move front seats as far towards rear as possible and tilt backrests to 45°.

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

♦ ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ page 138 .

– Remove steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .

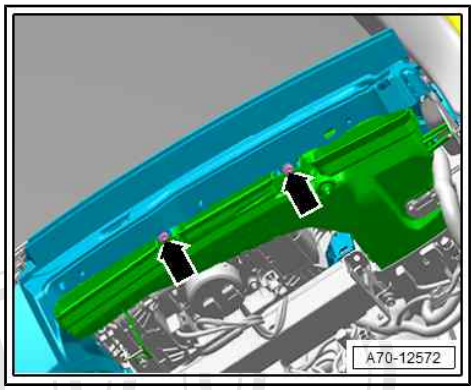
– Remove steering column trim (top) ⇒ page 23 .

– Remove centre switch module in dash panel - EX22- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel .

– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 229 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 23 .
- Remove trim for light switch ⇒ page 232 .
- Remove glove box ⇒ page 27 .
- Remove trim for air conditioner operating and display unit ⇒ page 238 .
- Remove cover for MMI screen ⇒ page 230 .
- Remove dash panel vents (driver and passenger side) ⇒ page 239 .
- Remove trim for dash panel insert ⇒ page 231 .
- Remove dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Exploded view - dash panel insert .
- Remove infotainment system display ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .
- Remove centre defroster vent (front) ⇒ page 241 .
- Remove loudspeaker (centre) in dash panel ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 276 .
- Remove mounting for control unit 1 for information electronics - J794- and let it hang down with electrical wiring attached ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove fasteners -arrows- for air duct leading to dash panel vent (right-side) and to wide air outlet.

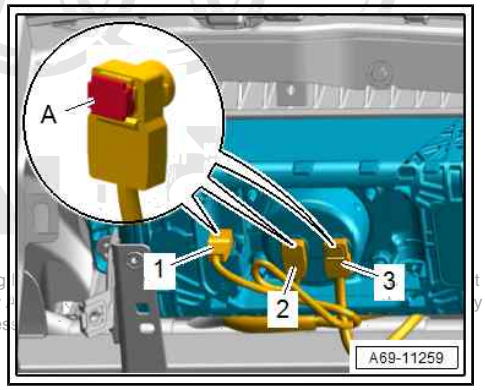


WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

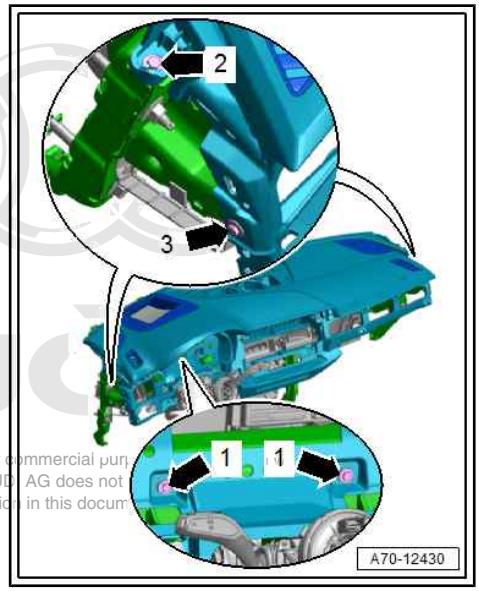
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by ... with respect to the correctness ...



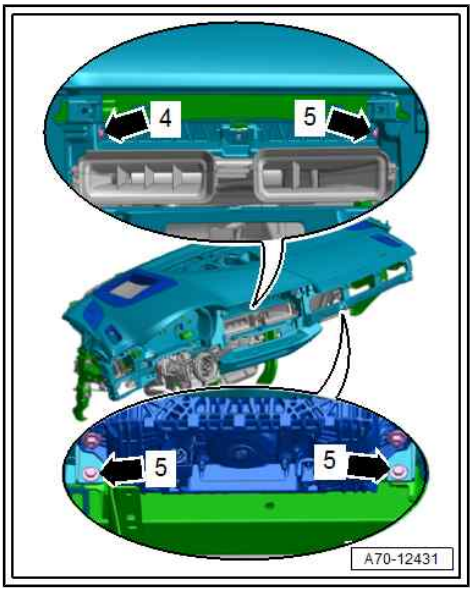
- Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 3- and -2- (if fitted) for air-bag unit (front passenger side).
- To do so, release connector locking element -A- with a small screwdriver.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows 1, 2, 3- for dash panel at cross member.

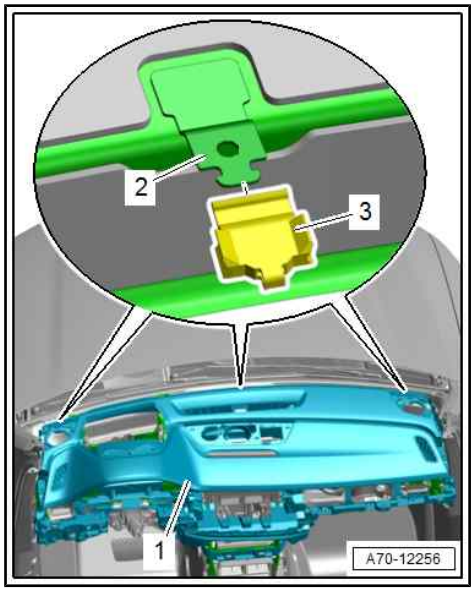


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

– Unscrew bolts -arrows 4, 5- for dash panel at cross member.
– Unclip wiring harnesses from dash panel and move them clear.



– Lift dash panel -1- slightly and detach carefully from mounting -2- towards rear and from cross member.
– Lift dash panel slightly and unplug electrical connectors for loudspeakers (side).
– Carefully detach dash panel towards rear, guiding out electrical connectors.
– Take dash panel out of passenger compartment and set it down on a soft surface.



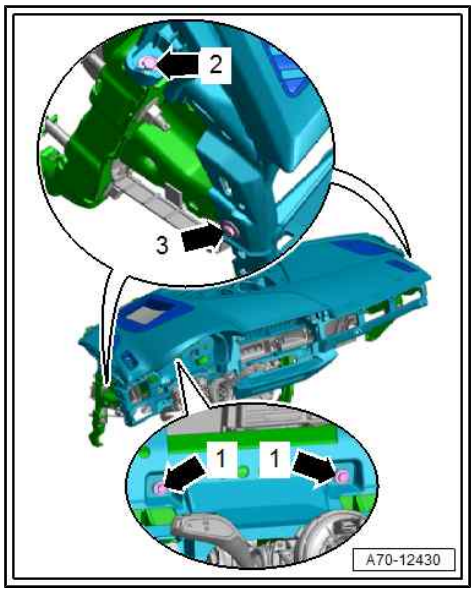
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

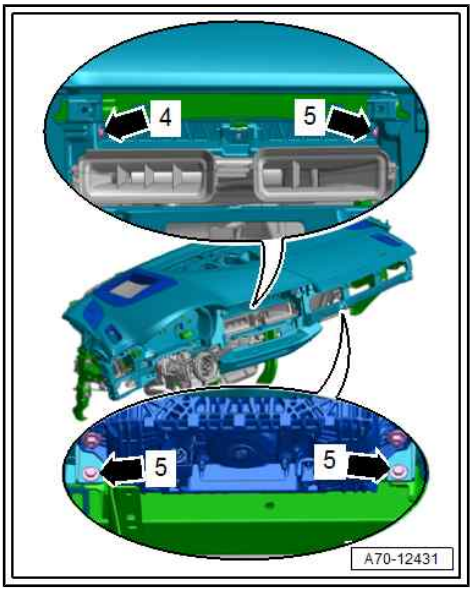
Note assignment of airbag to dash panel ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

– Fit dash panel in position and guide electrical connectors through opening in dash panel.
– Check whether a rubber buffer -3- has been fitted on each of the dash panel mountings -2- at the lower windscreen frame.
– When inserting dash panel -1-, make sure mountings for dash panel engage in box-shaped sections on underside of dash panel.
– Tighten bolts for dash panel in sequence -arrows 1, 2, 3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tighten bolts for dash panel in sequence -arrows 4, 5-.



WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

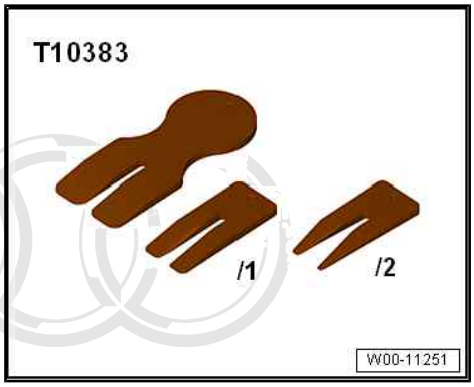
If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 227

3.8 Removing and installing trim for operating and display unit

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383-



Removing

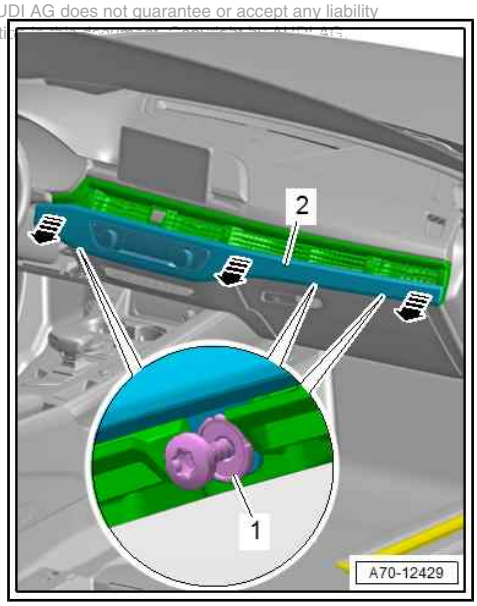
– Move steering wheel upwards and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 23.

– Open glove box lid and unscrew fasteners/bolts -1-.

– Unclip trim -2- together with air conditioner operating and display unit -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- .

– Unplug electrical connectors and remove trim together with air conditioner operating and display unit.



Installing

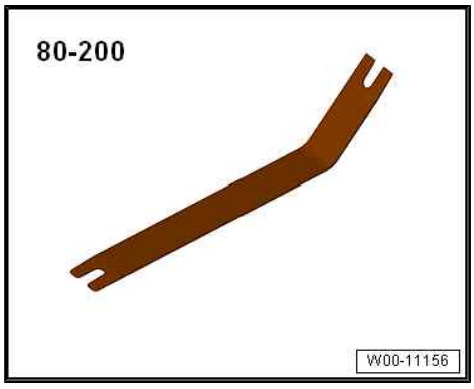
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 227

3.9 Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting

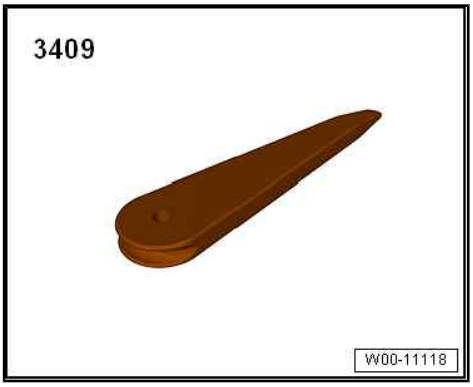
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

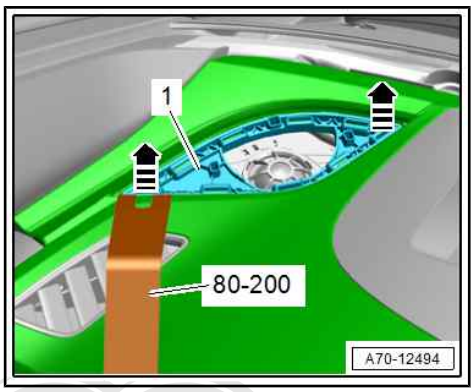


Removing

– Remove loudspeaker trim ⇒ page 231 .

– Carefully prise out mounting -1- for loudspeaker using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows-.

– If necessary, slide removal wedge - 3409- under mounting and carefully disengage retaining pins.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 227

3.10 Removing and installing dash panel vents

⇒ "3.10.1 Removing and installing dash panel vent (driver side)", page 239

⇒ "3.10.2 Removing and installing dash panel vent (passenger side)", page 240

3.10.1 Removing and installing dash panel vent (driver side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



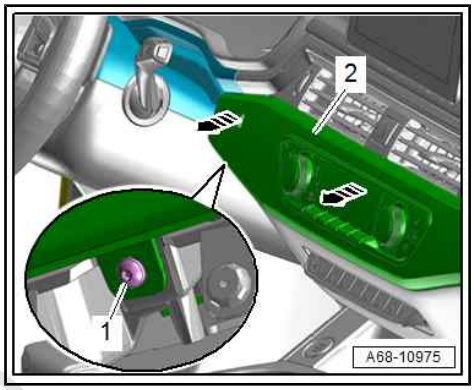
Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 23 .

– Remove bolt/fastener -1-.

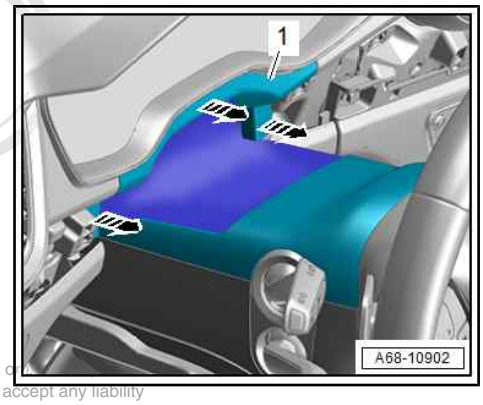
– Unclip trim -2- together with air conditioner operating and display unit in vicinity of trim cover -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- .

– Remove trim for light switch ⇒ page 232 .



– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Unclip trim cover -1- for steering column trim (top) from dash panel vent -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .

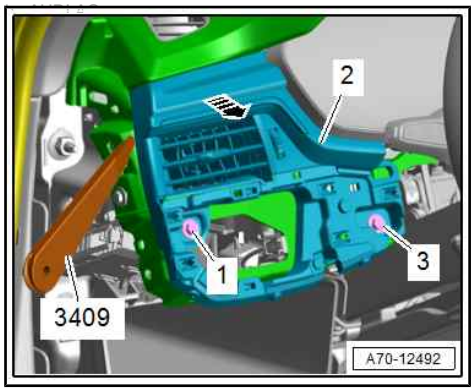


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -1, 3-.

– Unclip dash panel vent -2- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow-.

– Release all other retaining catches, carefully remove dash panel vent and unplug electrical connectors.



Installing

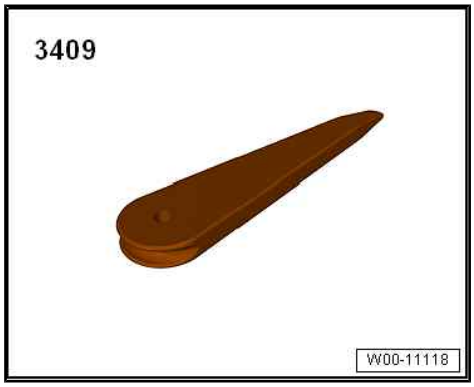
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 227

3.10.2 Removing and installing dash panel vent (passenger side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

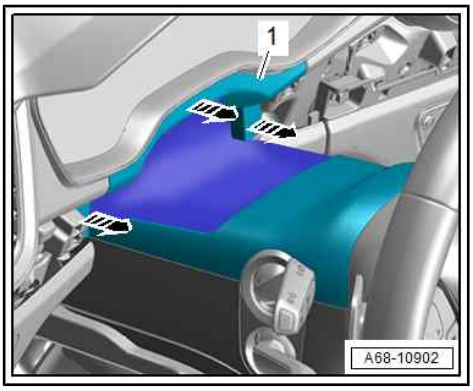
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



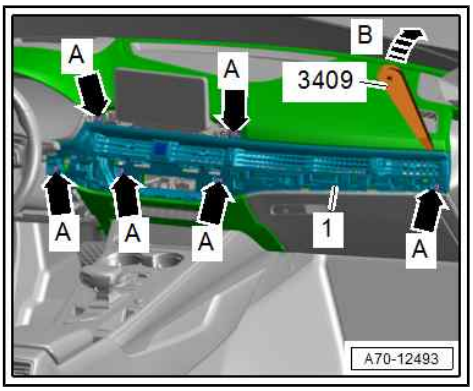
Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 23 .

– Remove trim for light switch ⇒ page 232 .
– Remove trim for air conditioner operating and display unit ⇒ page 238 .
– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
– Unclip trim cover -1- for steering column trim (top) from dash panel vent -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Remove cover for MMI screen ⇒ page 230 .



– Remove bolts -arrows A-.
– Unclip dash panel vent -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow B-.
– Release all other retaining catches, carefully remove dash panel vent and unplug electrical connectors.



Installing

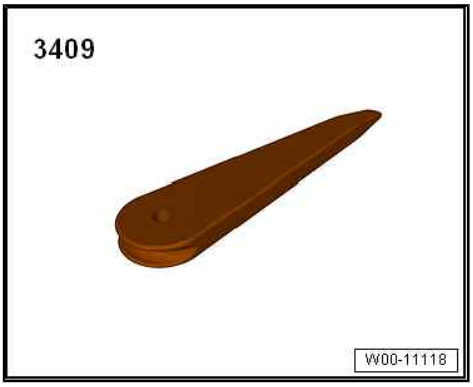
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 227

3.11 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)

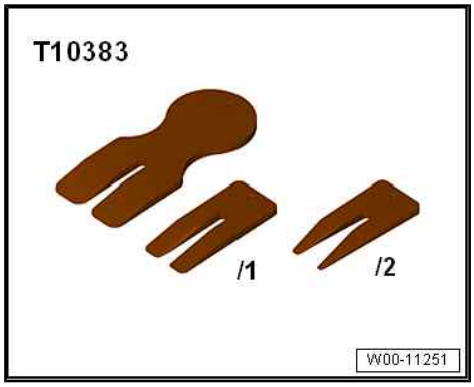
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Wedges - T10383-

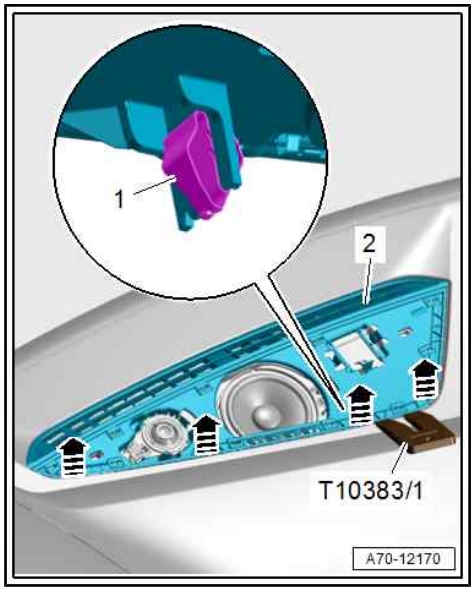


Removing

– Remove loudspeaker trim ⇒ page 231 .

– Carefully prise defroster vent -2- out of retaining clips -1- -arrows- using wedge - T10383/1- .

– Carefully release all other retaining catches with removal wedge - 3409- (if necessary), remove defroster vent upwards and unplug electrical connector.



Installing

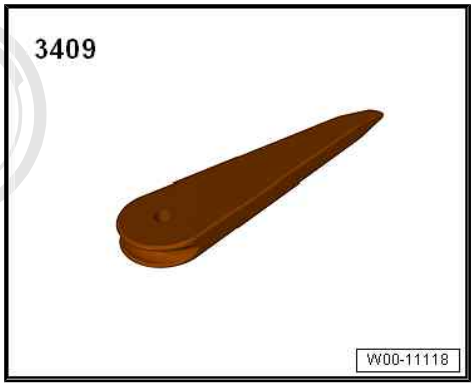
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - dash panel", page 227

3.12 Removing and installing defroster vent (side)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

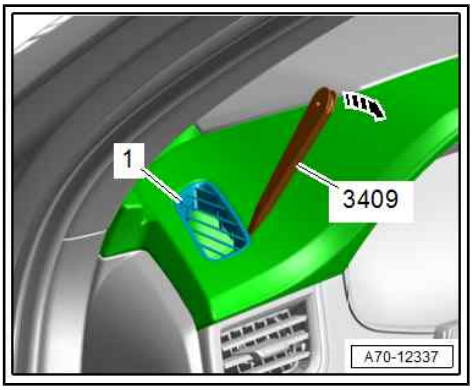


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Unclip defroster vent -1- using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow-.

– Release all other retaining catches and remove defroster vent.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - dash panel”, page 227

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

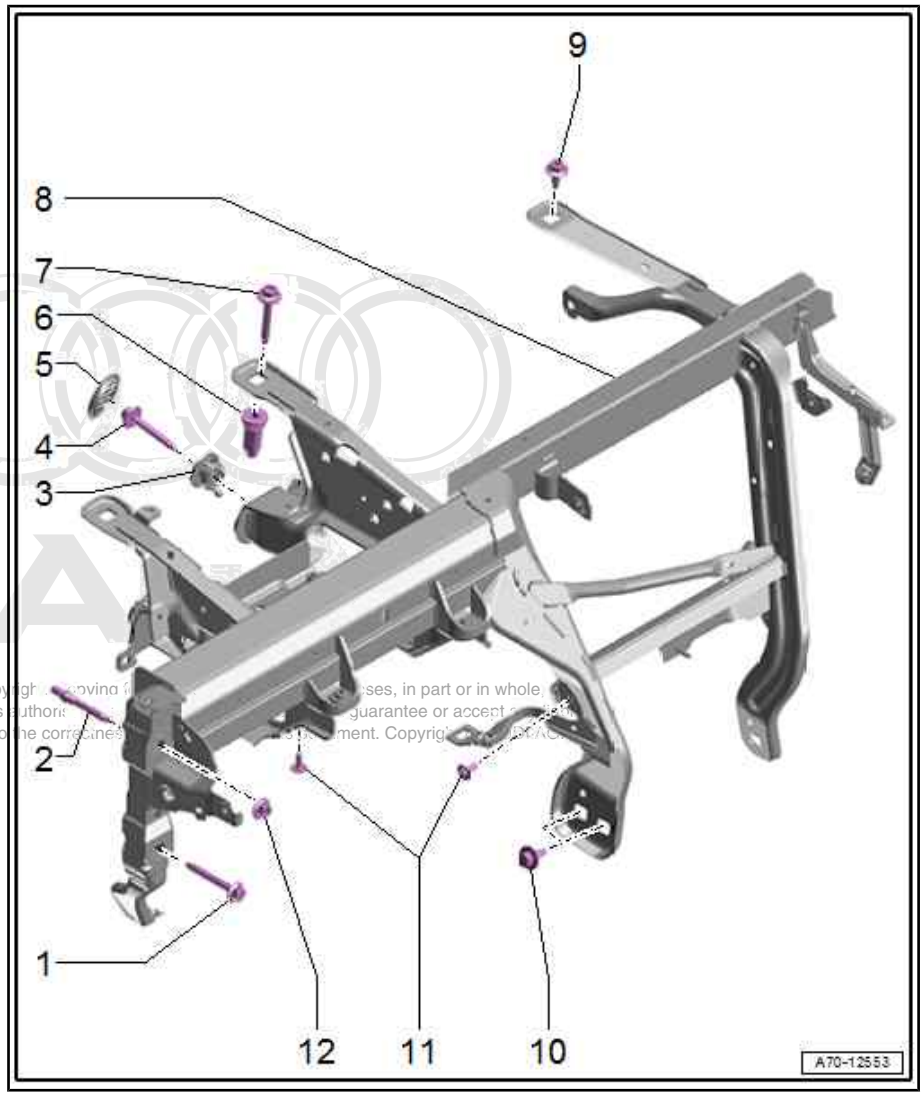
4 Dash panel cross member

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 244

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing dash panel cross member”, page 246

⇒ “4.3 Removing and installing cross member brace”, page 251

4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Threads and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection

2 - Threaded pin

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

3 - Compensation element

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clip into cross member
- ❑ Check freedom of movement of adjuster nut of compensation element.
- ❑ Turn adjuster nut down as far as it will go until adjuster element engages in transport lock

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

5 - Plug

- ❑ 2x

6 - Pop rivet nut with compensation element

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Riveted to windscreen frame
- ❑ Check freedom of movement of adjuster nut of compensation element.
- ❑ Completely screw down adjuster nut, but do not tighten

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

8 - Cross member

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 246

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 20 Nm

11 - Bolt

- ❑ For air conditioning unit
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ 3.6 Nm

12 - Nut

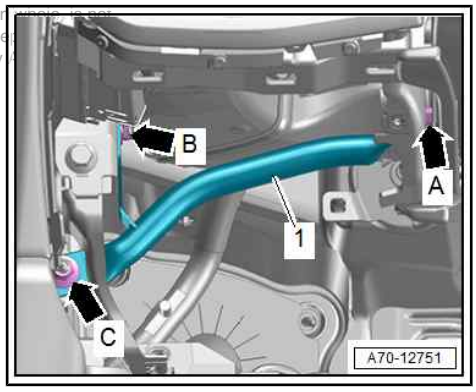
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 20 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torque - cross member brace/A-pillar

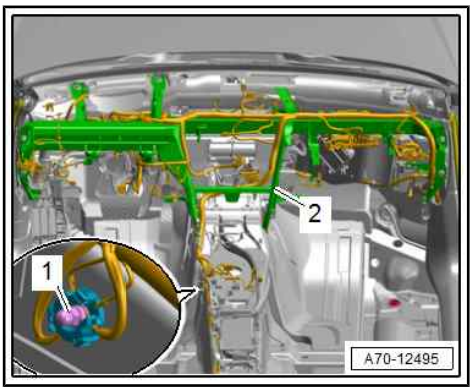
– Tighten bolts/nut in the sequence -arrows A, B, C-.

- ♦ Bolt -arrow A- = 8 Nm
- ♦ Bolt -arrow B- = 3 Nm
- ♦ Nut -arrow C- = 20 Nm



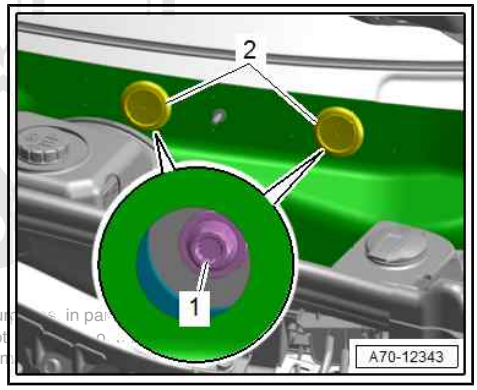
Tightening torque - earth wires at centre tunnel

– Tightening torque for nut -1- ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations



4.2 Removing and installing dash panel cross member

Removing



– Remove windscreen wiper motor ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing windscreen wiper motor - V- .

– Remove plugs -2- and unscrew bolt -1- securing cross member to plenum chamber partition panel.

– Remove windscreen ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 64 ; Windscreen; Removing and installing windscreen .

– Remove dash panel ⇒ page 233 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Remove cover (bottom) on driver side ⇒ page 23 .

– Driver side (depending on equipment version): Remove knee airbag with igniter ⇒ page 174 .

– Depending on equipment version: Remove control unit for head-up display - J898- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing control unit for head-up display .

– Remove air guide and air duct leading to dash panel vent at cross member for dash panel ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .

– Remove intermediate piece between air duct and defroster vent (centre) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .

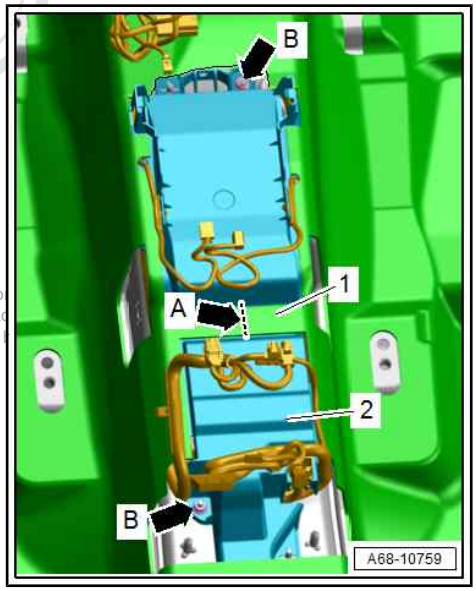
– Remove fuse holder (left A-pillar) from dash panel cross member ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .

– Remove interior aerial 1 for entry and start authorisation - R138- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Overview of fitting locations - keyless entry system .

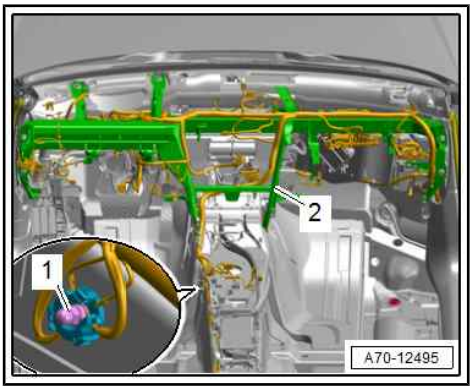
– Depending on equipment version: Remove air duct (rear) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .

– Cut through connecting piece -1- of floor covering using a pair of scissors at point indicated in illustration -arrow A-.
– Unscrew nuts -arrows B-.
– Unclip cover -2- for control unit from studs.
– Unclip electrical wiring harness from cover using removal lever - 80-200- and move wiring harness clear.
– Pull cover for control unit out from under floor covering and detach.

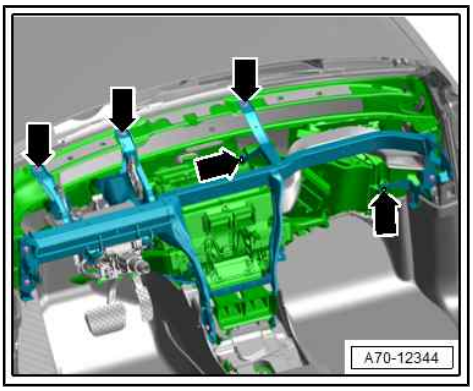
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part o
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright



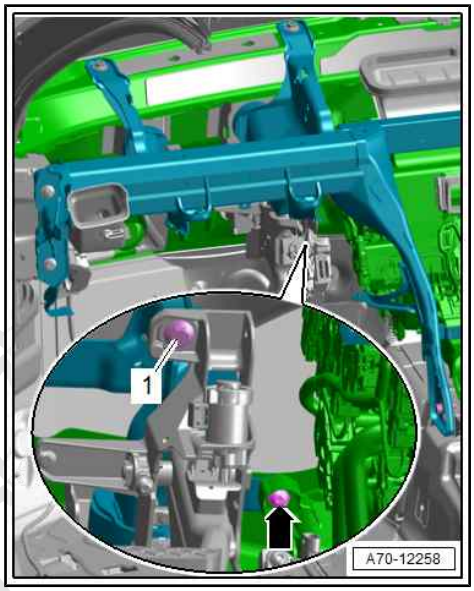
– Press floor covering to side in vicinity of bolted connection, unscrew nut -1- and move earth wires clear.
– Unclip electrical wiring harness from centre tunnel and move it clear.
– Unclip electrical wiring harness at dash panel cross member -2- and move it clear.
– Unbolt steering column from dash panel cross member and set it down on floor of vehicle ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .



– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Remove bolt -1-.
– Remove bolt -arrow- for air conditioning unit.

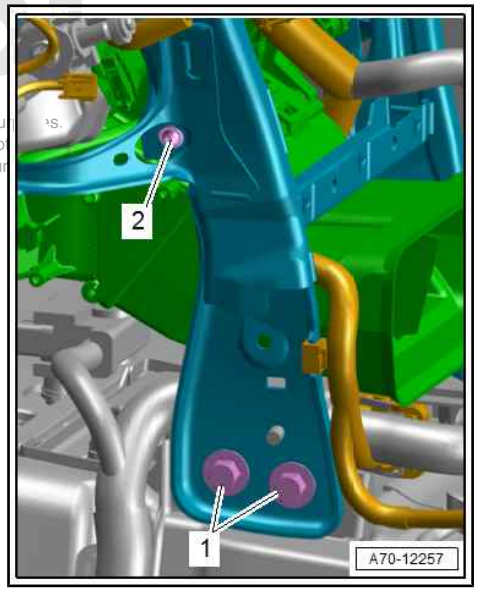


Note

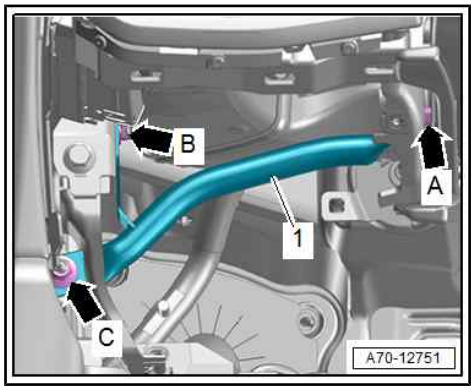
Mark the vertical and side positions at the dash panel cross member for re-installation.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Any copying, distribution or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

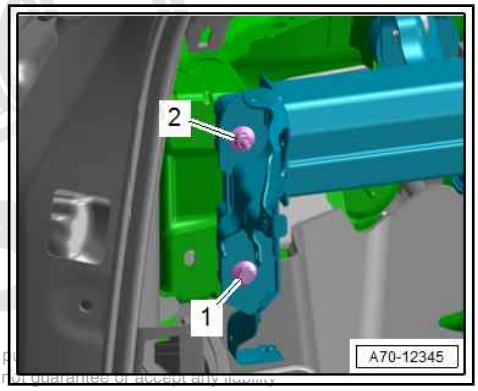
– Press floor covering to side in vicinity of bolted connection and unscrew bolts -1-.
– Remove bolt -2- for air conditioning unit.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.



– A5 Cabriolet: Remove nut -arrow C- for cross member brace.



– Remove bolt -1- and nut -2- for dash panel cross member.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.
– Unclip and disengage wires at dash panel cross member and move them clear.



Note

A second mechanic is required to detach dash panel cross member.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
be taken from this PDF file. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness and completeness of the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage cross member for dash panel from air conditioning unit and take out of passenger compartment towards rear.

Installing

– Carefully insert dash panel cross member in body.
– Align dash panel cross member with A-pillar in accordance with markings (made during removal).
– Tighten nuts and bolts for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).

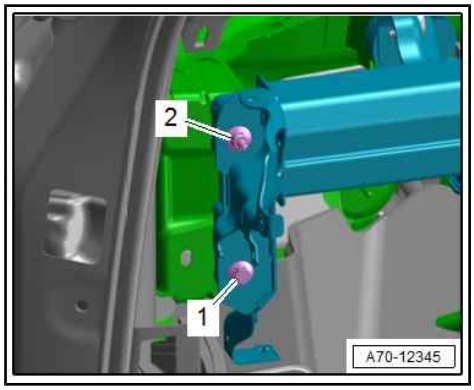
Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Install steering column ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Exploded view - steering column .
– Install mounting bracket for pedal cluster ⇒ Brake system; Rep. gr. 46 ; Brake pedal; Exploded view - brake pedal .
– Depending on equipment version: Install control unit for head-up display - J898- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing control unit for head-up display .

Checking installation position of dash panel cross member

– Insert dash panel to check if it fits correctly.
– Bolt dash panel (left and right) to dash panel cross member.
– Close doors.
– Check whether gap between dash panel and door is the same on left and right.
– Check whether height of dash panel coincides with recesses in door trim.
– If setting is incorrect, note down the lateral and/or vertical deviation.
– Unscrew bolts on dash panel cross member.
– Adjust dash panel cross member in accordance with notes on deviations.

– Tighten bolt -1- and nut -2- for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).



WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

– Install windscreen ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 64 ; Windscreen; Removing and installing windscreen .

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

Note

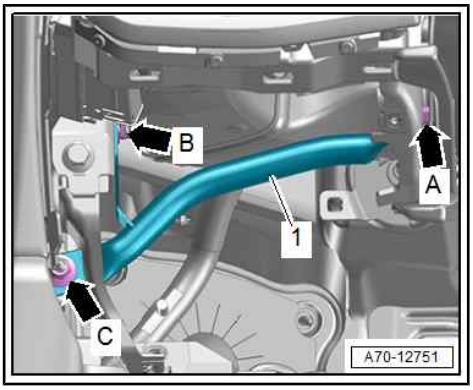
If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - dash panel cross member”, page 244 ,
⇒ Fig. ““Tightening torque - cross member brace/A-pillar”“ , page 245

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.3 Removing and installing cross member brace



Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ page 23 .
– Disengage storage compartment and press to one side.
– Remove bolts -arrows A, B-.
– Unscrew nut -arrow C-.
– Pivot brace -1- towards front on inside and detach it from studs at A-pillar.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ Fig. ""Tightening torque - cross member brace/A-pillar"" , page 245

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels”, page 252

⇒ “5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim”, page 256

⇒ “5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim”, page 259

⇒ “5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim”, page 261

⇒ “5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim”, page 263

⇒ “5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim”, page 265

⇒ “5.7 Exploded view - trim for windscreen frame”, page 266

⇒ “5.8 Exploded view - side trim”, page 267

⇒ “5.9 Exploded view - back panel trim”, page 270

⇒ “5.10 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 271

⇒ “5.11 Exploded view - rear shelf”, page 272

⇒ “5.12 Removing and installing sill panel trim”, page 273

⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 276

⇒ “5.14 Removing and installing B-pillar trim”, page 283

⇒ “5.15 Removing and installing C-pillar trim”, page 288

⇒ “5.16 Removing and installing D-pillar trim”, page 291

⇒ “5.17 Removing and installing trim for windscreen frame”, page 293

⇒ “5.18 Removing and installing side trim”, page 293

⇒ “5.19 Removing and installing back panel trim”, page 300

⇒ “5.20 Removing and installing foot rest”, page 301

⇒ “5.21 Removing and installing floor covering”, page 302

⇒ “5.22 Removing and installing rear shelf”, page 303

⇒ “5.23 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim”, page 304

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ “5.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, A5 Coupé”, page 252

⇒ “5.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, A5 Sportback”, page 254

⇒ “5.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, A5 Cabriolet”, page 255

5.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, A5 Coupé

1 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 263

2 - Side trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 267

3 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 256

4 - B-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 261

5 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 259

6 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 276

7 - A-pillar trim (top)

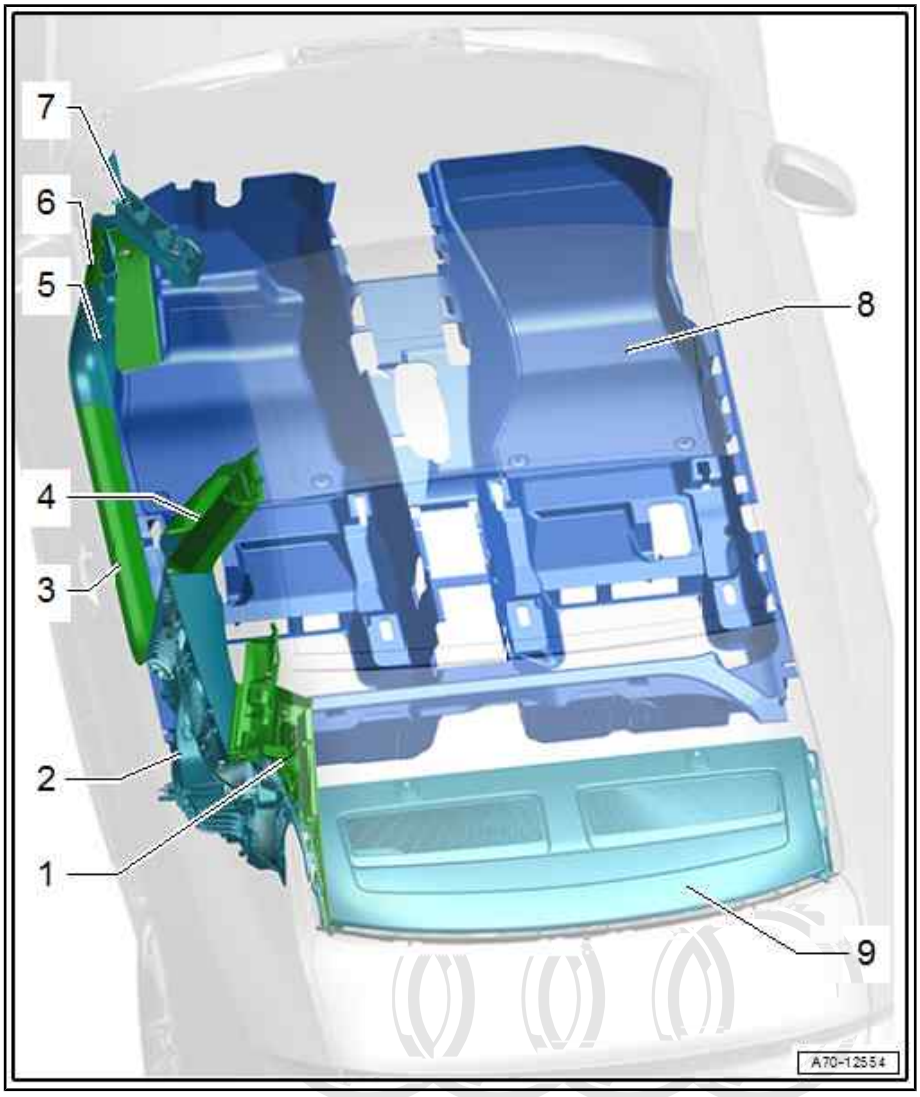
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 259

8 - Floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 271

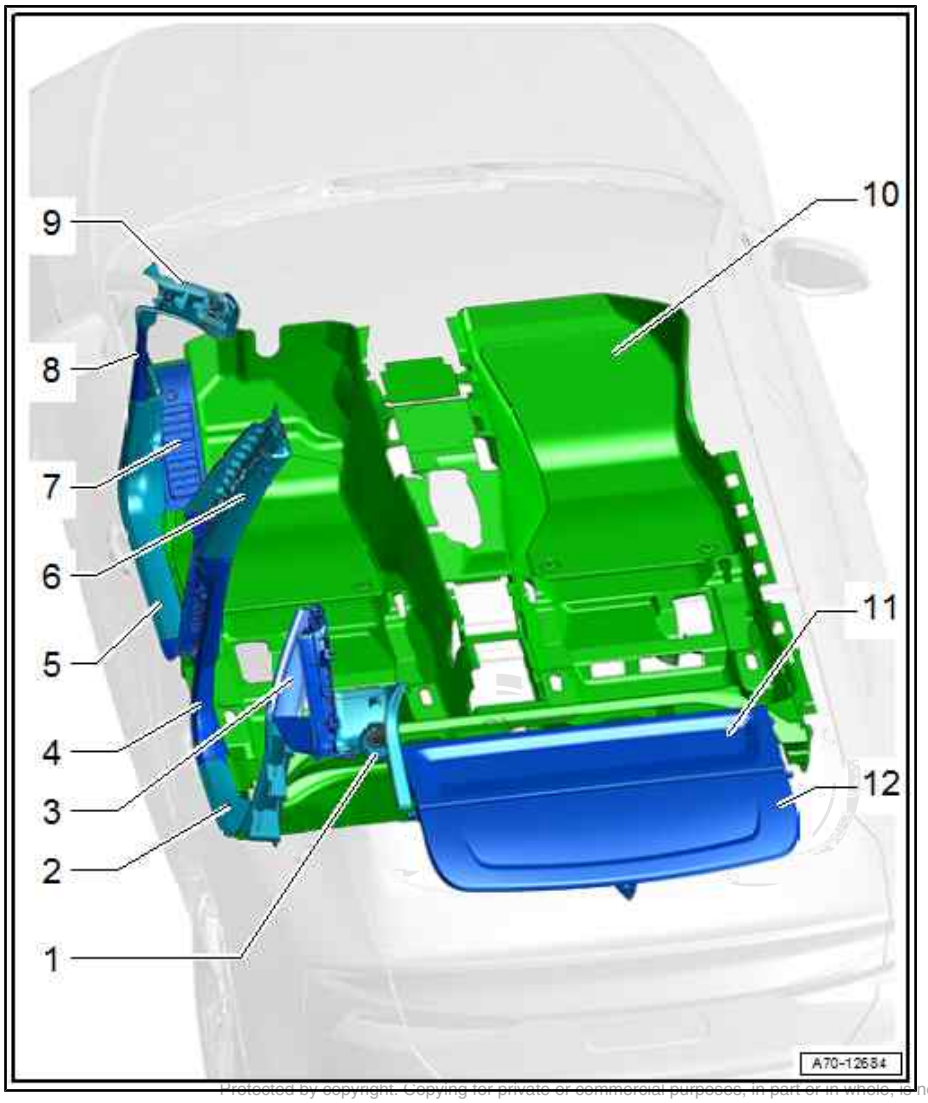
9 - Rear shelf

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 272



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, A5 Sportback



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 265

2 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 257

3 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 264

4 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 262

5 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 259

6 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 262

7 - Foot rest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 301

8 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 276

9 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 259

10 - Floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 271

11 - Luggage compartment cover (front)

- ❑ Insert in mountings in luggage compartment side trim panels

12 - Luggage compartment cover (rear)

- ❑ Engaged in mountings in rear lid trim

5.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, A5 Cabriolet

1 - Floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 271

2 - Trim for windscreen frame

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 266

3 - Trim for backrest locking mechanism

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 471

4 - Back panel trim (front section)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

5 - Back panel trim (rear section)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 270

6 - Side trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 268

7 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 260

8 - Sill panel trim

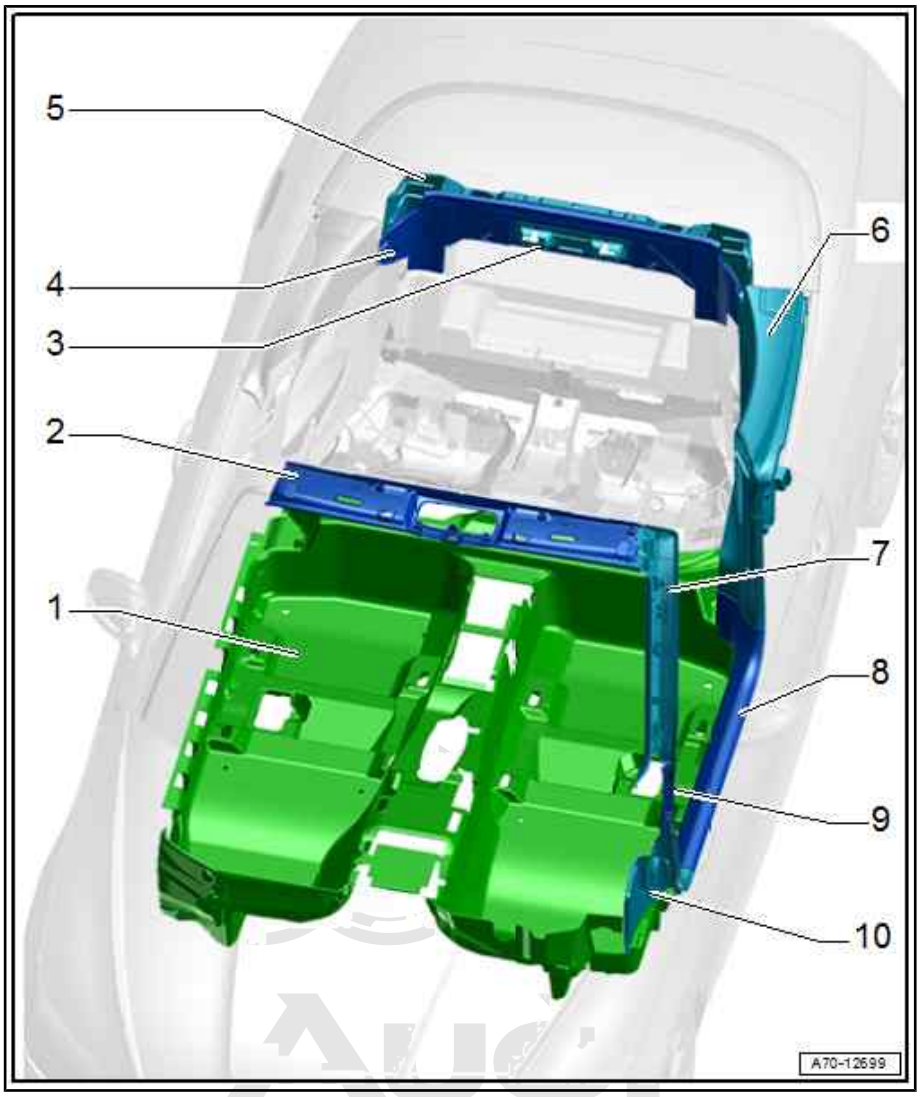
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 258

9 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 276

10 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 260



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim

⇒ “5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim - A5 Coupé”, page 256

⇒ “5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim, A5 Sportback”, page 257

⇒ “5.2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim, A5 Cabriolet”, page 258

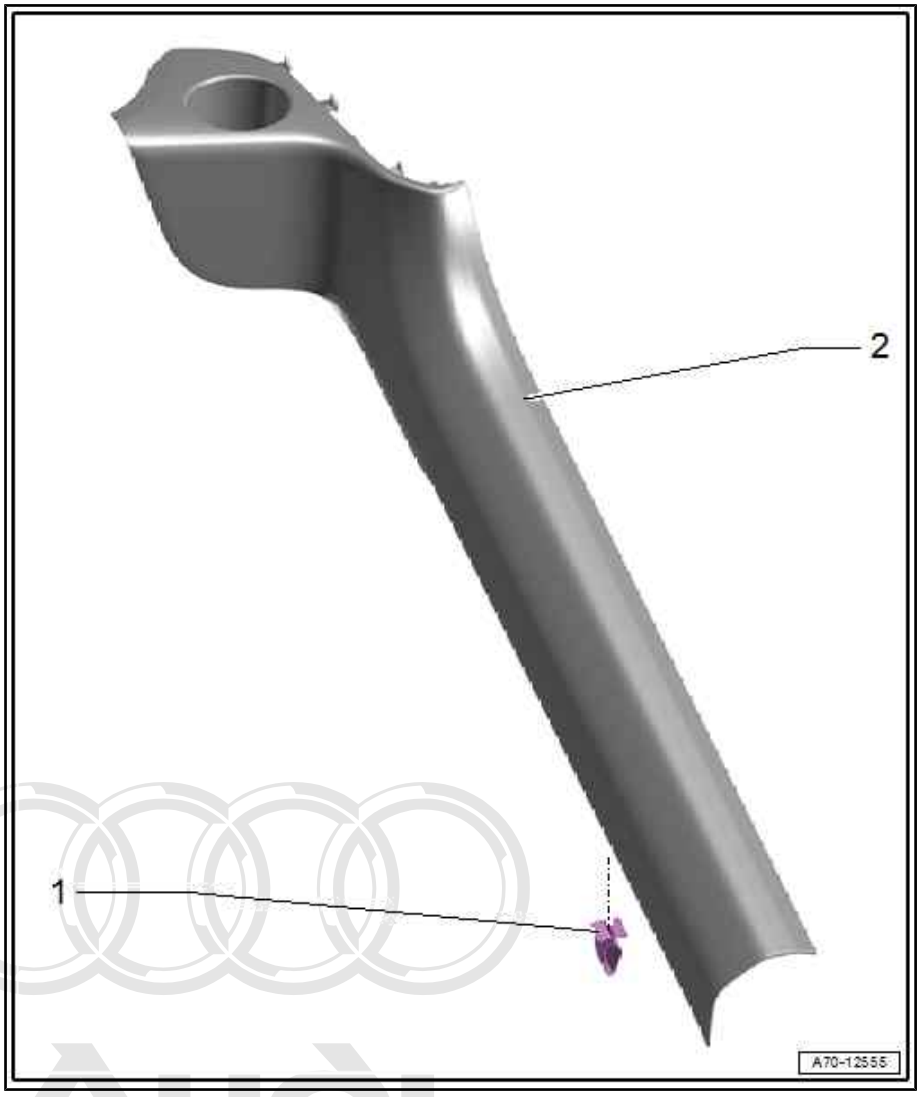
5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim - A5 Coupé

1 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 273
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of inner door seal



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim, A5 Sportback

1 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim

2 - Sill panel trim

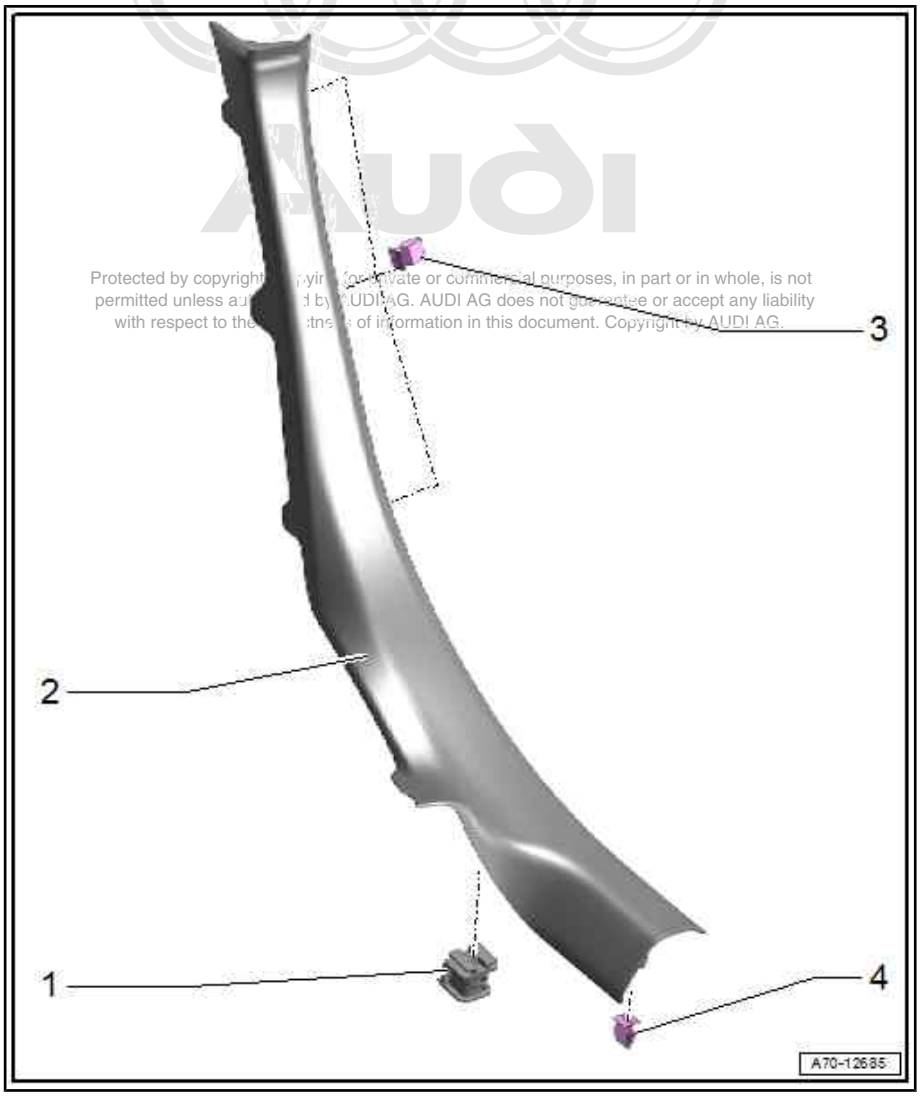
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 274
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of inner door seal

3 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



Protected by copyright. Any private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the contents of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim, A5 Cabriolet

1 - Clip

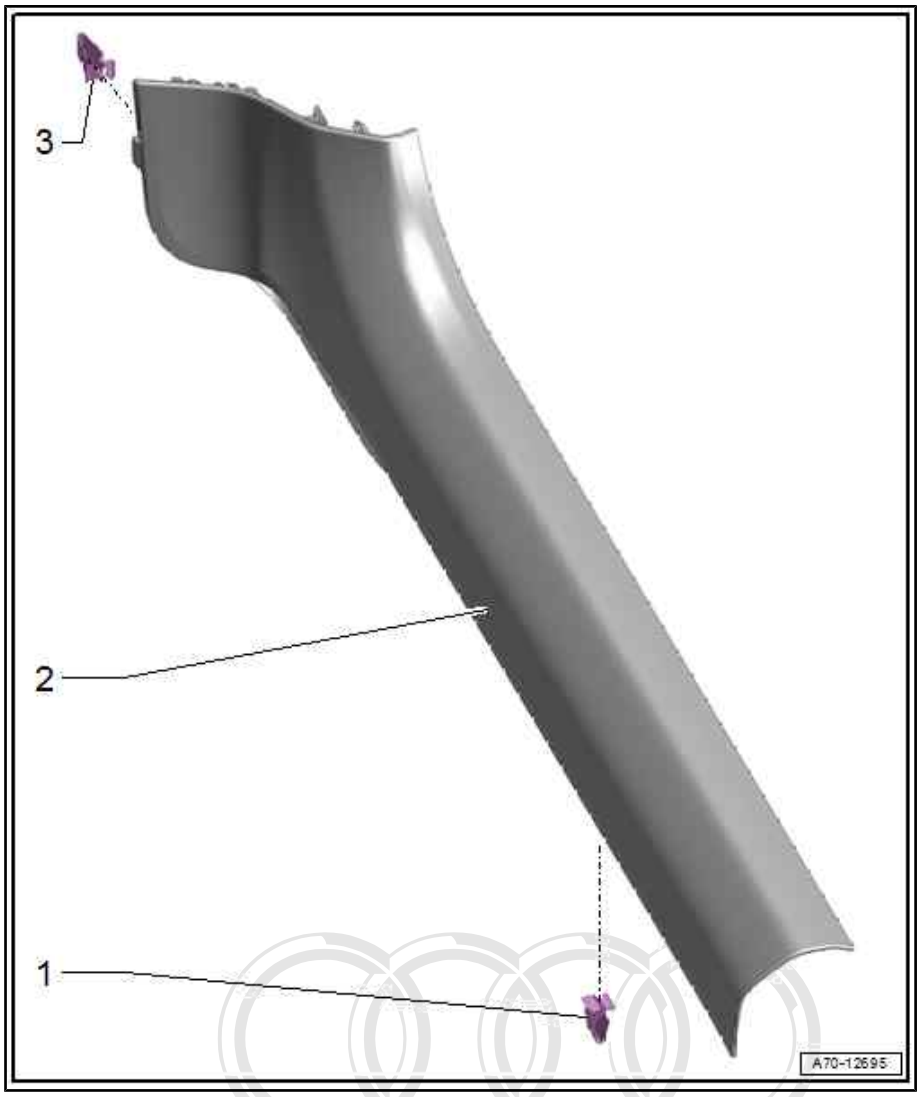
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 275
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of inner door seal

3 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



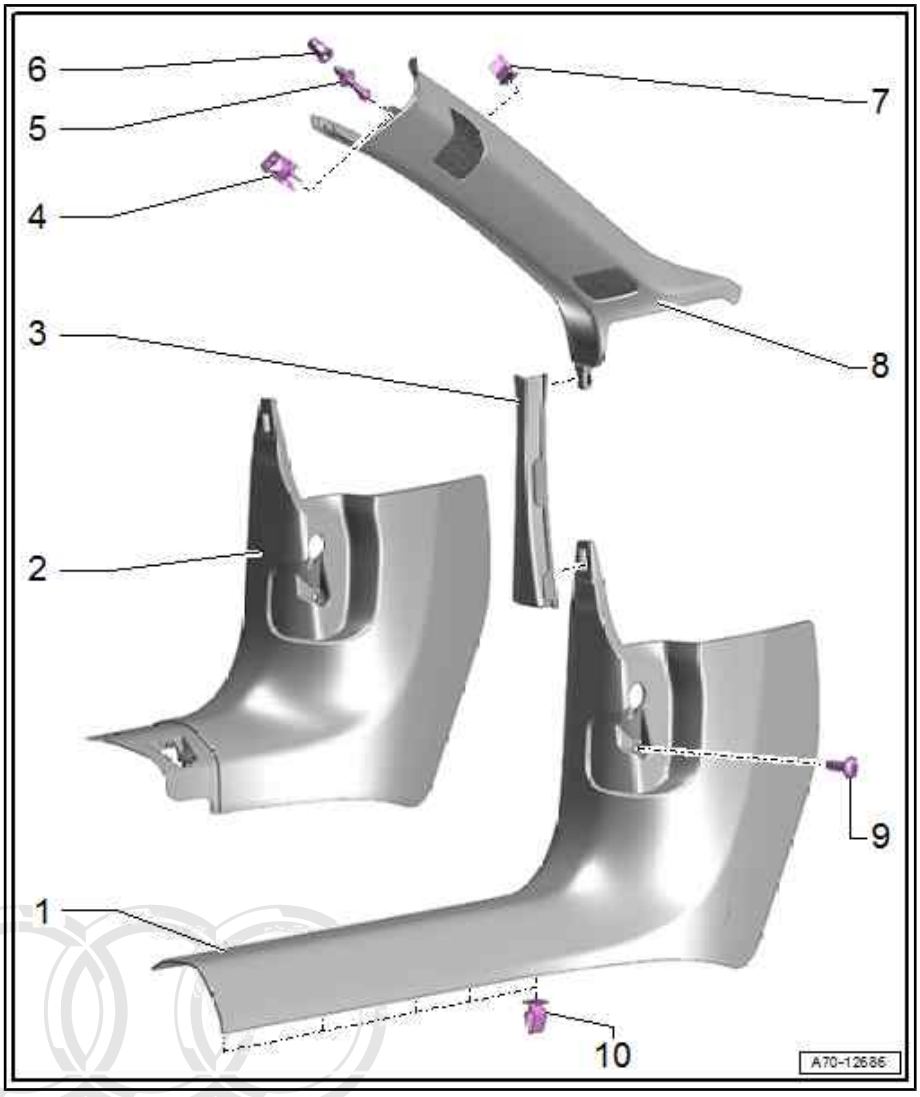
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim

⇒ “5.3.1 Exploded view - A-pillar trim, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 259

⇒ “5.3.2 Exploded view - A-pillar trim, A5 Cabriolet”, page 260

5.3.1 Exploded view - A-pillar trim, A5 Coupé/Sportback



1 - A-pillar trim (bottom) - Sportback

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 281
- ❑ Insert in floor covering at front
- ❑ Fold over lip of inner door seal

2 - A-pillar trim (bottom) - Coupé

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 280
- ❑ Insert in floor covering at front
- ❑ Fold over lip of inner door seal

3 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 276
- ❑ Clip into A-pillar trim panels
- ❑ Fold over lip of inner door seal

4 - Clip

- ❑ With catch
- ❑ Renew if A-pillar trim is removed
- ❑ Insert in trim

5 - Retaining pin

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

6 - Pop rivet nut

- ❑ Riveted into A-pillar

7 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 276
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of inner door seal

9 - Bolt

- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

10 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5.3.2 Exploded view - A-pillar trim, A5 Cabriolet

1 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 280
- ❑ Insert in floor covering at front
- ❑ Fold over lip of inner door seal

2 - Trim cover for A-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.13 Removing and installing A-pillar trim”, page 276
- ❑ Clip into A-pillar trim panels
- ❑ Fold over lip of inner door seal

3 - A-pillar trim (top)

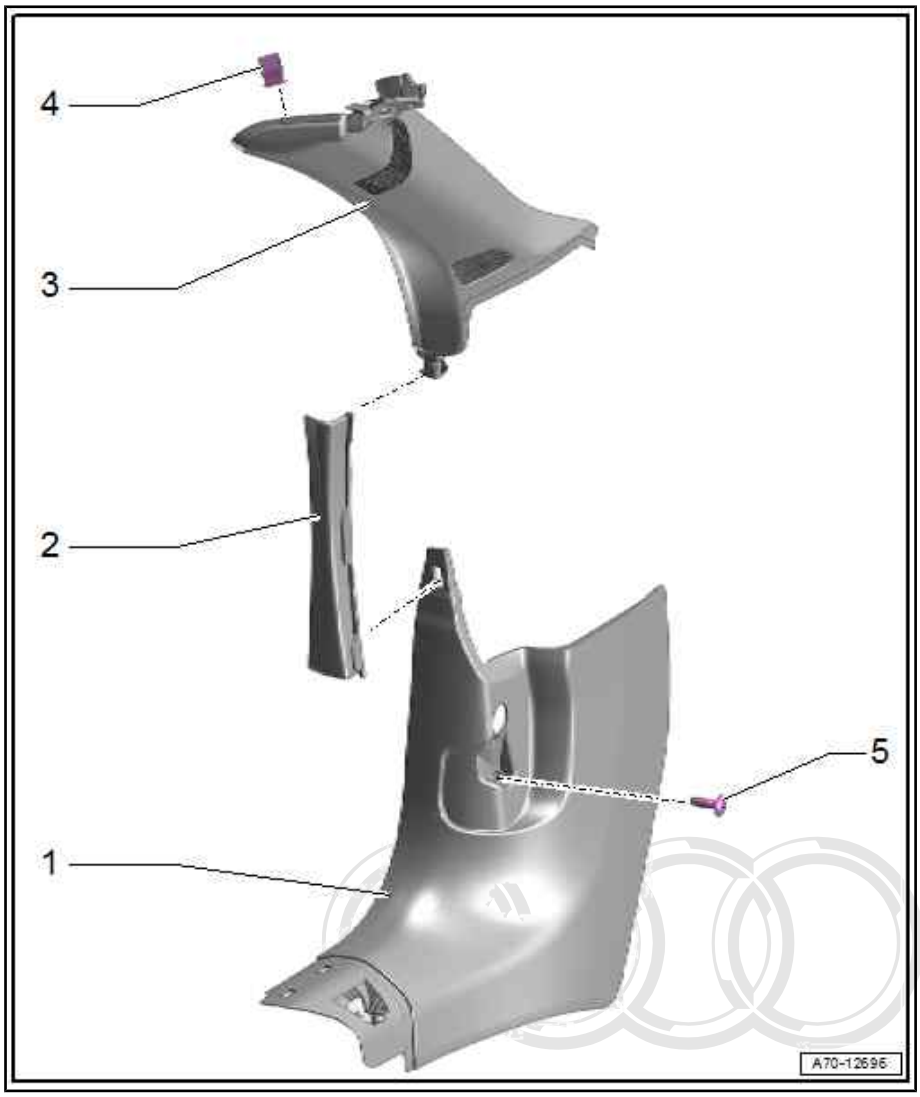
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 278
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of inner door seal

4 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Driver side only
- ❑ 2.5 Nm



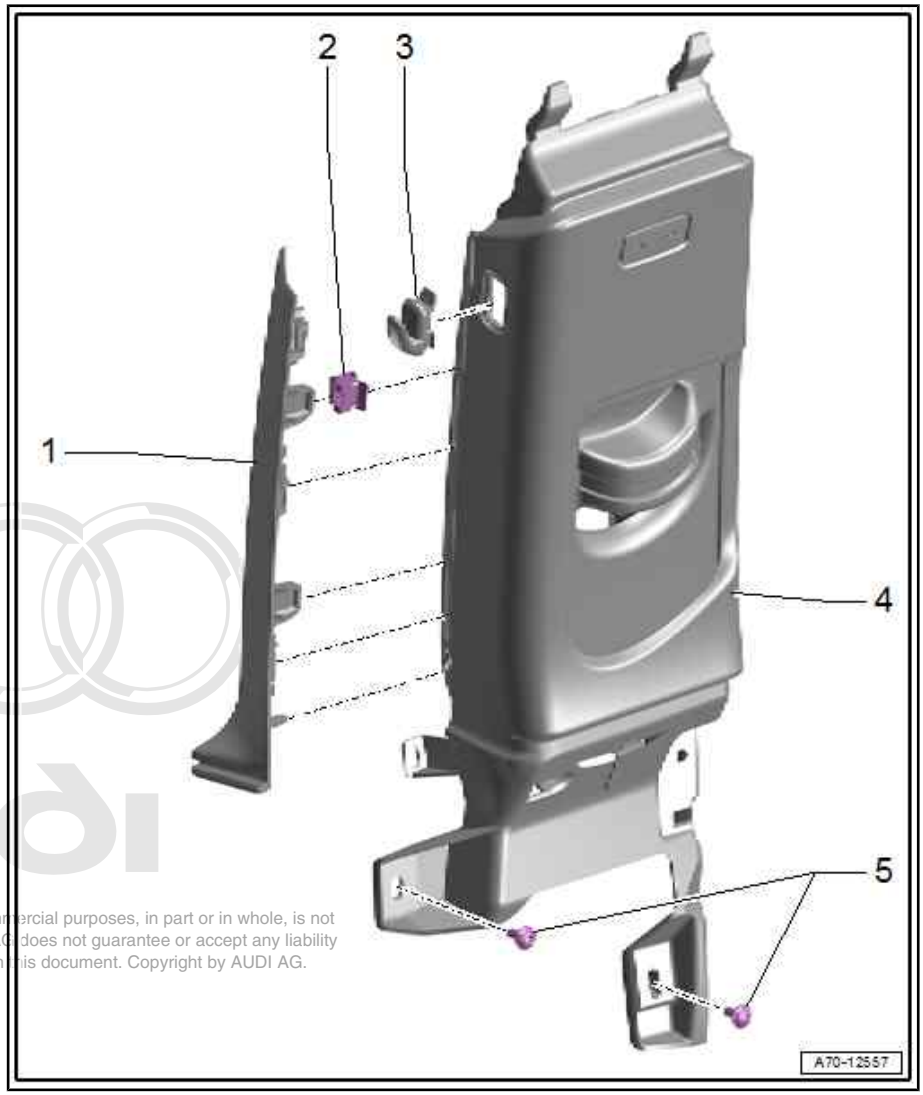
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4 Exploded view - B-pillar trim

⇒ “5.4.1 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A5 Coupé”, page 261

⇒ “5.4.2 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A5 Sportback”, page 262

5.4.1 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A5 Coupé



1 - B-pillar cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.14.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim - A5 Coupé”, page 283
- ❑ Press onto B-pillar trim until it engages completely

2 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clip into B-pillar

3 - Coat hook

- ❑ Clip into B-pillar trim

4 - B-pillar trim

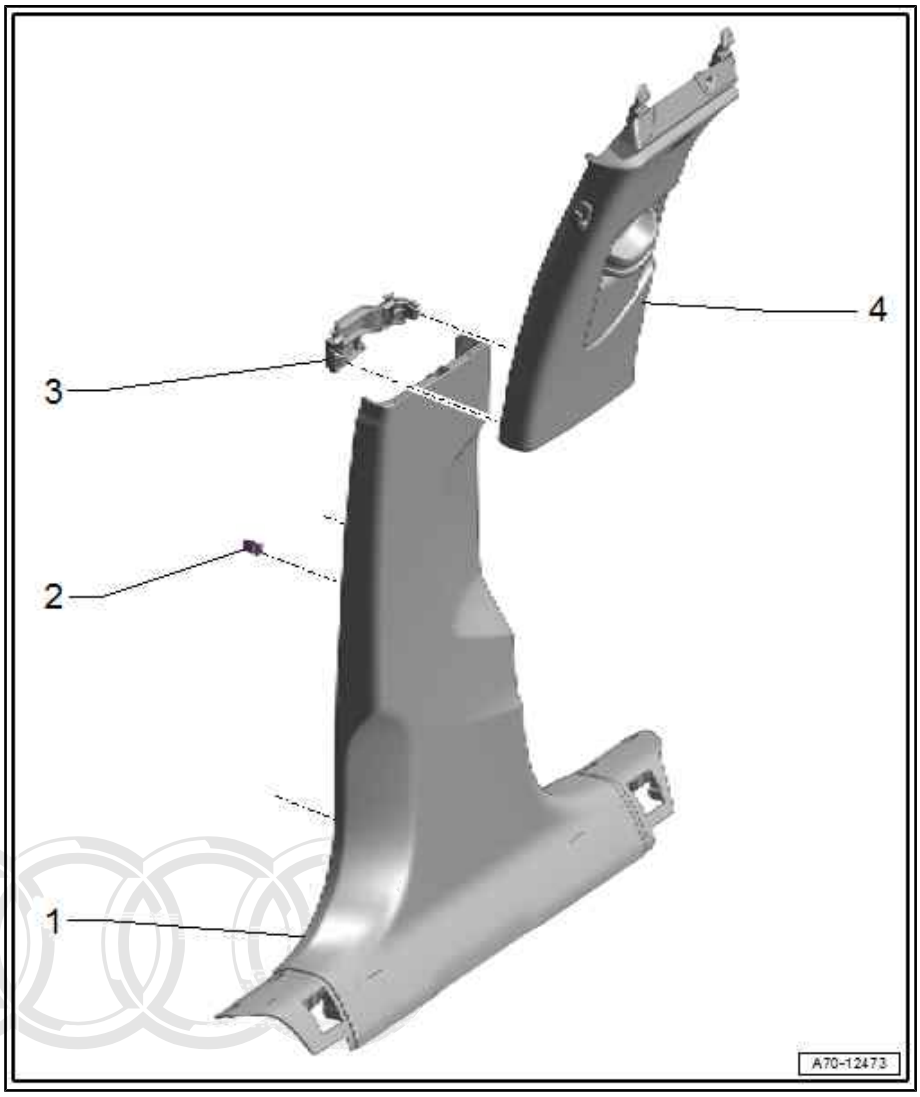
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 283
- ❑ Insert in mounting points on roof and press onto B-pillar until it engages completely
- ❑ Fold over lip of inner door seal

5 - Bolts

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4.2 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A5 Sportback



1 - B-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 287
- ❑ Clip into B-pillar
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seals

2 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Bracket

- ❑ For B-pillar trim (top)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.14.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) - A5 Sportback”, page 285
- ❑ Clip into B-pillar
- ❑ Press on until it engages

4 - B-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 285
- ❑ Insert at top in mounting points at roof and clip into bracket
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of door seals

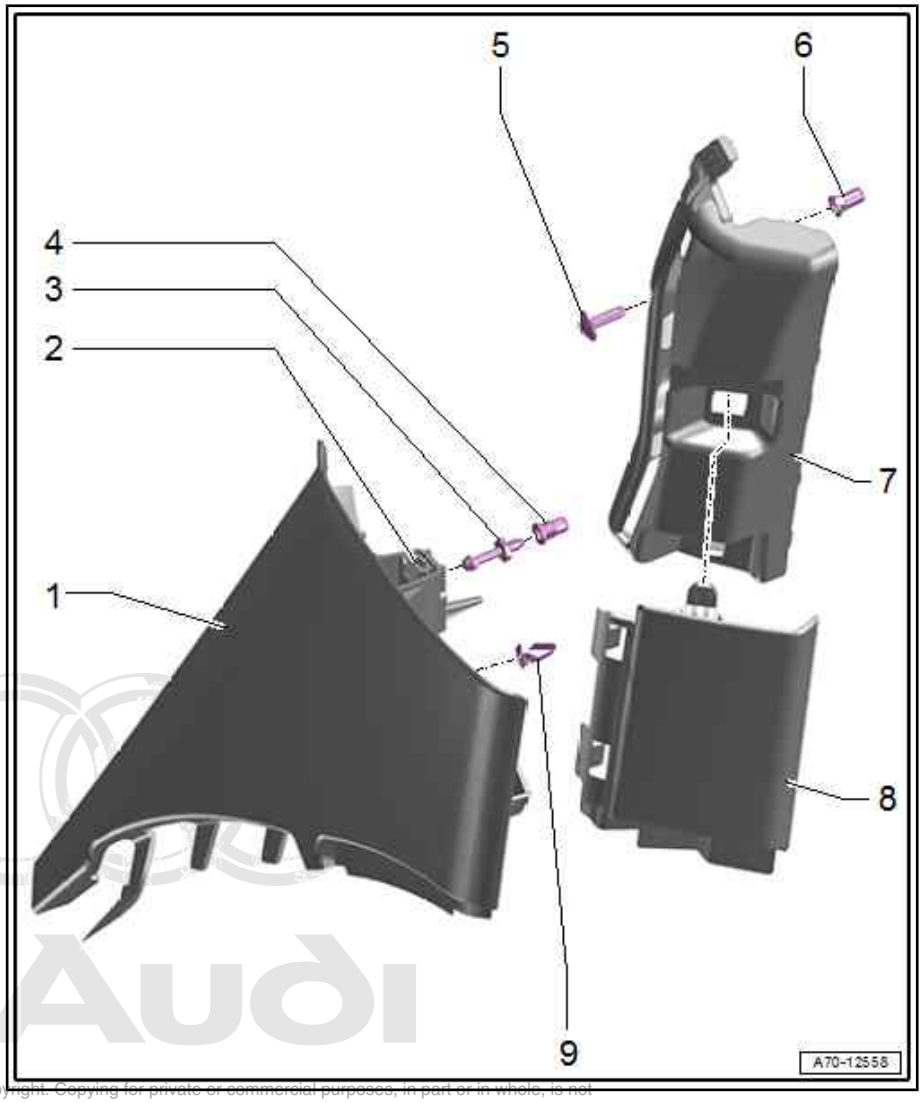
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.5 Exploded view - C-pillar trim

⇒ “5.5.1 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A5 Coupé”, page 263

⇒ “5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A5 Sportback”, page 264

5.5.1 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A5 Coupé



1 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Press onto C-pillar cover until it engages completely

2 - Clip

- ❑ With catch
- ❑ Renew C-pillar trim after removing
- ❑ Insert in trim

3 - Retaining pin

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

4 - Pop rivet nut

- ❑ Riveted into C-pillar

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 5 Nm

6 - Pop rivet nut

- ❑ Riveted into C-pillar

7 - Guide for curtain airbag

- ❑ Insert into mounting points at roof

8 - C-pillar cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.15.1 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - A5 Coupé”, page 288
- ❑ Engage in guide for curtain airbag and press on until it engages audibly

Audi
Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A5 Sportback

1 - C-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 290
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - C-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291
- ❑ Engage in guide for curtain airbag and press on until it engages audibly

3 - Fastener

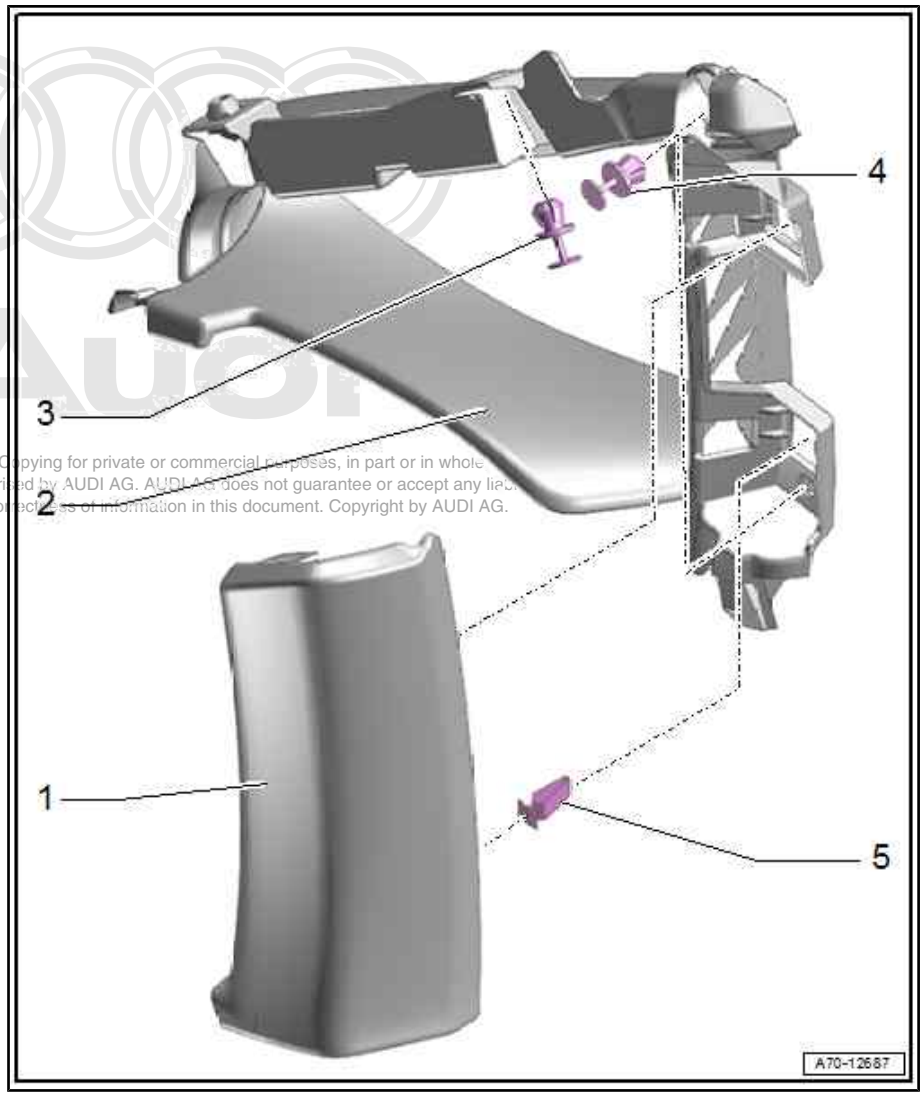
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

4 - Fastener

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

5 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim

1 - D-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

2 - Fastener

- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

3 - Bracket

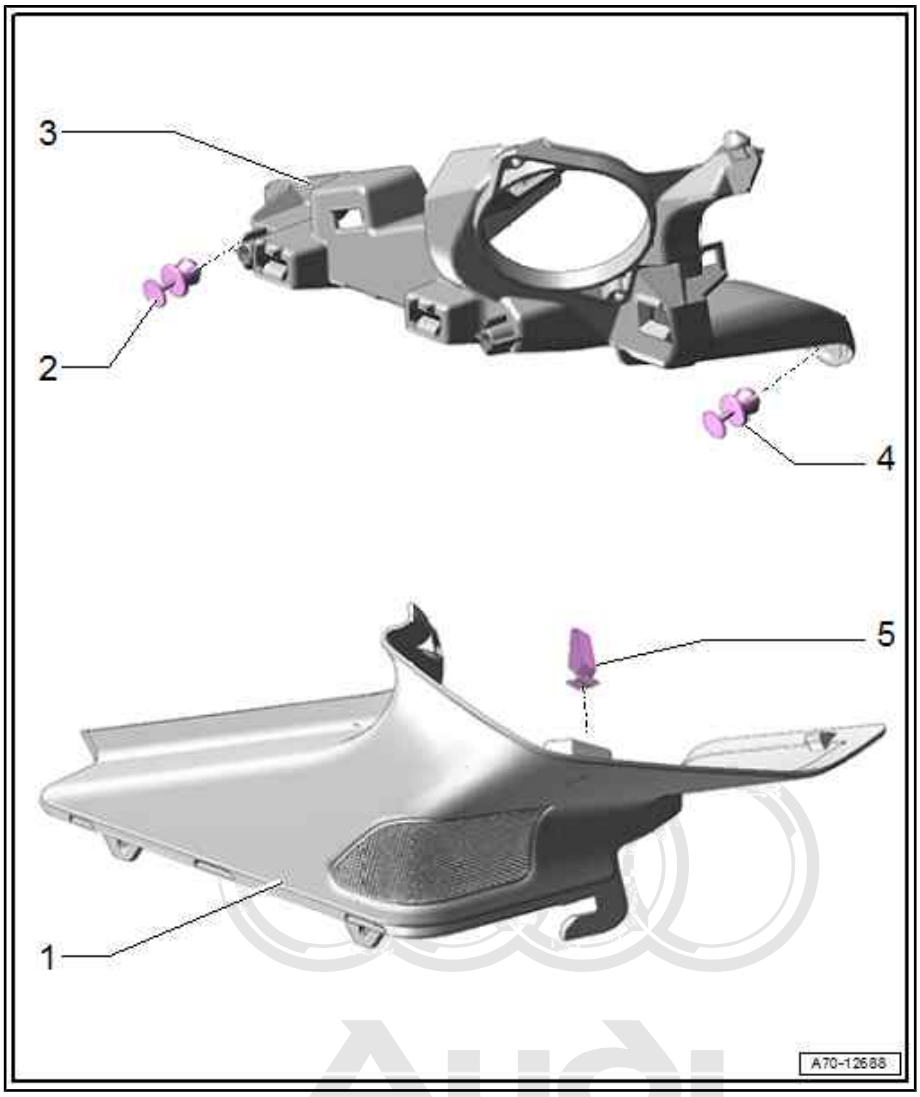
- ❑ D-pillar trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.16 Removing and installing D-pillar trim”, page 291

4 - Fastener

- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

5 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.7 Exploded view - trim for windscreen frame

1 - Trim for windscreen frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Stop

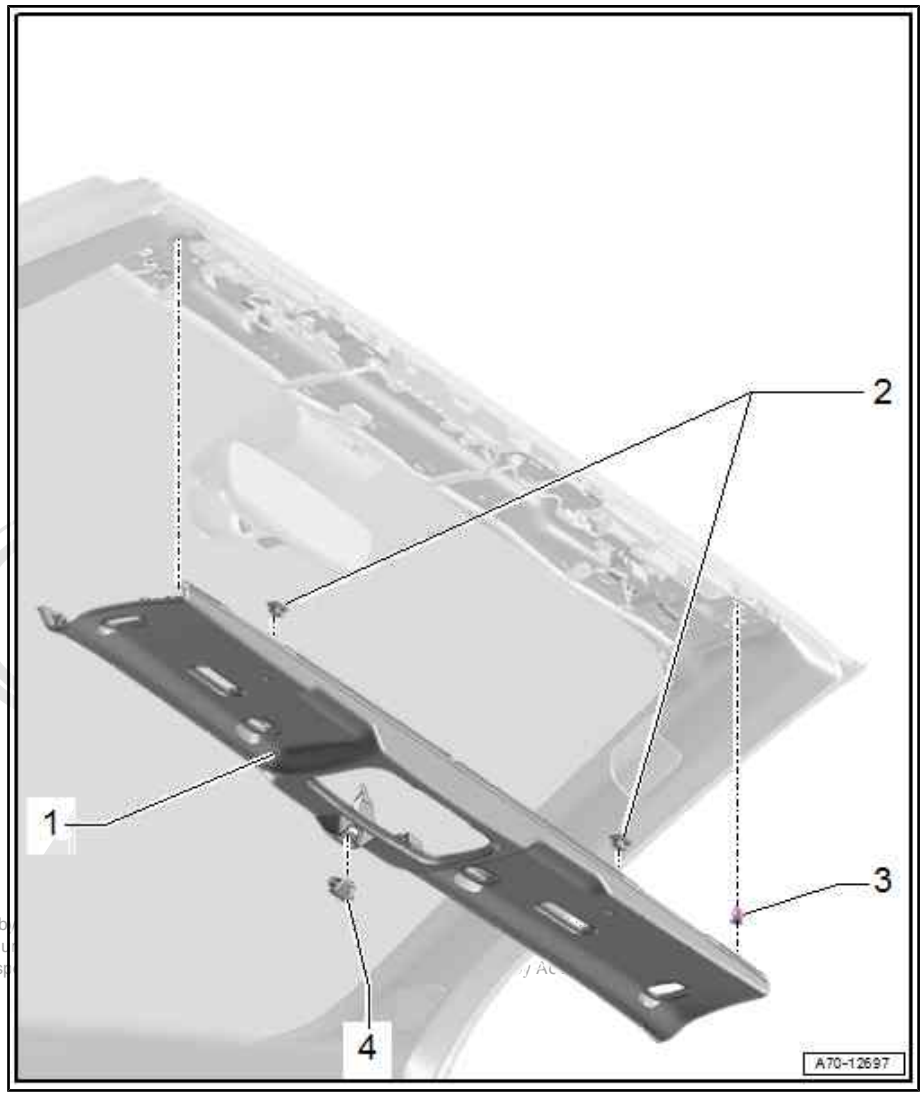
- ❑ For sun visor
- ❑ Insert in trim

3 - Clip

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Clip into trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Trim

- ❑ For anti-theft alarm sensor - G578-
- ❑ Clip into trim



Protected by
permitted u
with resp

5.8 Exploded view - side trim

⇒ “5.8.1 Exploded view - side trim, A5 Coupé”, page 267

⇒ “5.8.2 Exploded view - side trim, A5 Cabriolet”, page 268

5.8.1 Exploded view - side trim, A5 Coupé

1 - Side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

2 - Insulating mat

3 - Foam strip

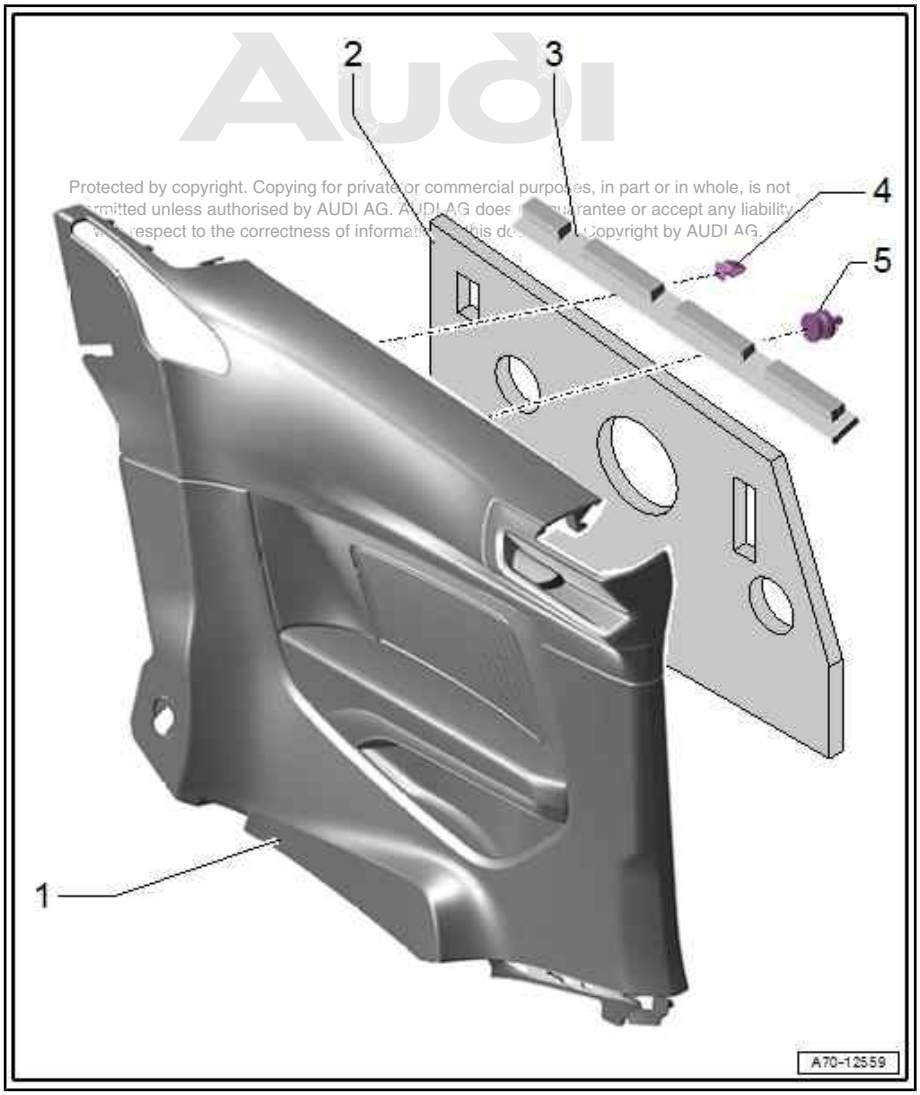
- ❑ Bonded to side trim

4 - Clip

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

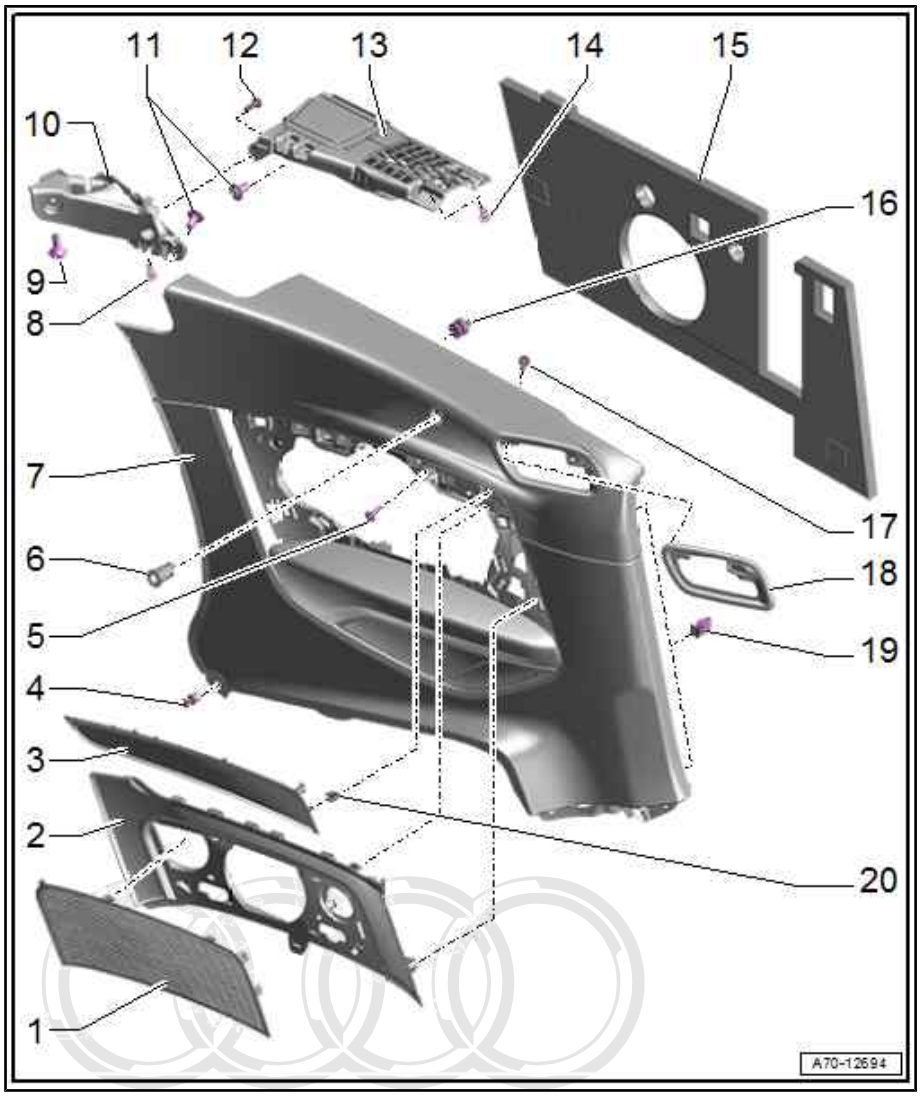
5 - Clip

- ❑ For side trim
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.8.2 Exploded view - side trim, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305
- ❑ Hook into cover and press on until it engages audibly

2 - Centre section of side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 297
- ❑ Hook into side trim and press on until it engages

3 - Trim panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.18.2 Removing and installing side trim - A5 Cabriolet”, page 295
- ❑ Hook into side trim and press on until it engages

4 - Fastener

- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.8 Nm

6 - Mounting for windbreak

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 39
- ❑ Clip onto side trim and press on as far as stop

7 - Side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 6 (page 86)

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

10 - Belt guide (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 110

11 - Bolts

- ❑ 9 Nm

12 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 5 (page 86)

13 - Flap for convertible roof frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 299

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ 4x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15 - Insulating mat

16 - Clip

- For side trim
- 2x
- Insert in trim
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

17 - Bolt

- 1.5 Nm
- 2x

18 - Belt exit point trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 299

19 - Clip

- 3x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

20 - Clip

- 5x
- Insert in trim
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.9 Exploded view - back panel trim

1 - Trim for backrest locking mechanism

- ❑ Clip into back panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 485
- ❑ Press on until it engages completely

2 - Back panel trim (front section)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 300

3 - Back panel trim (rear section)

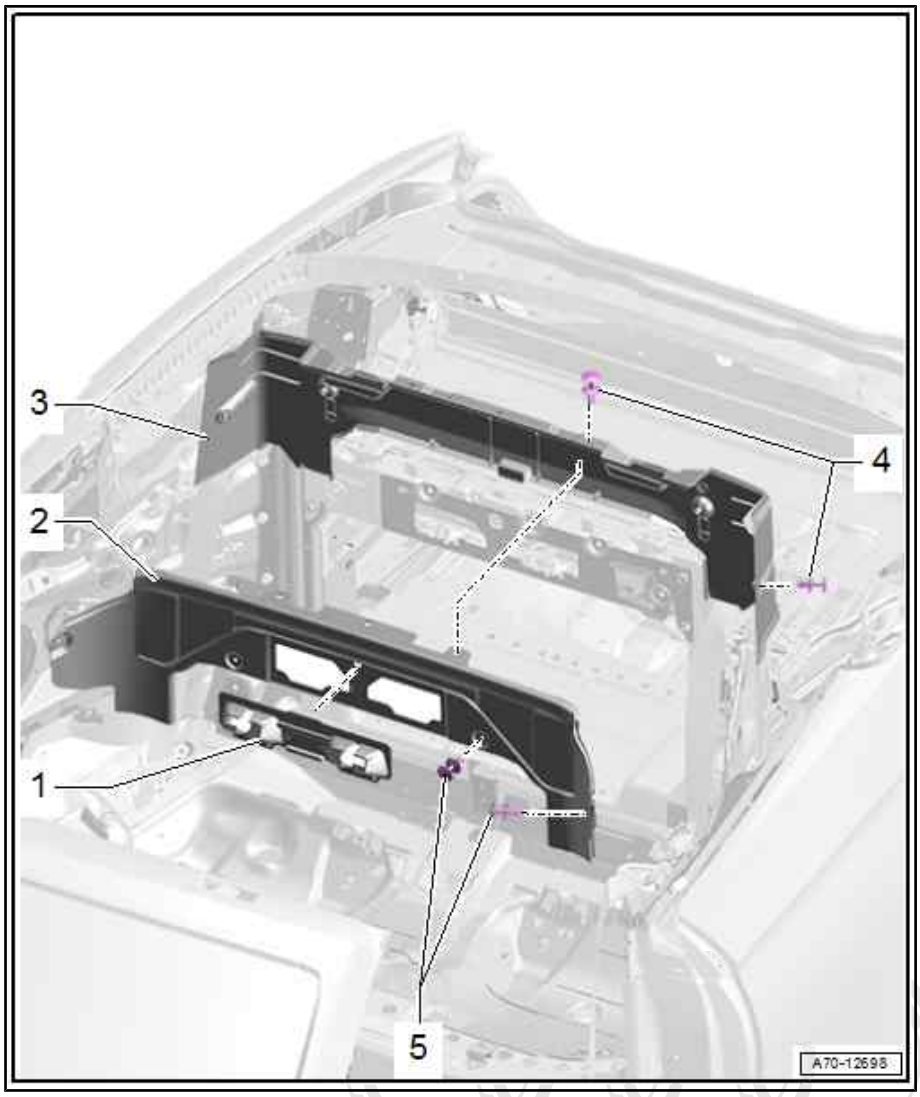
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 301

4 - Fastener

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

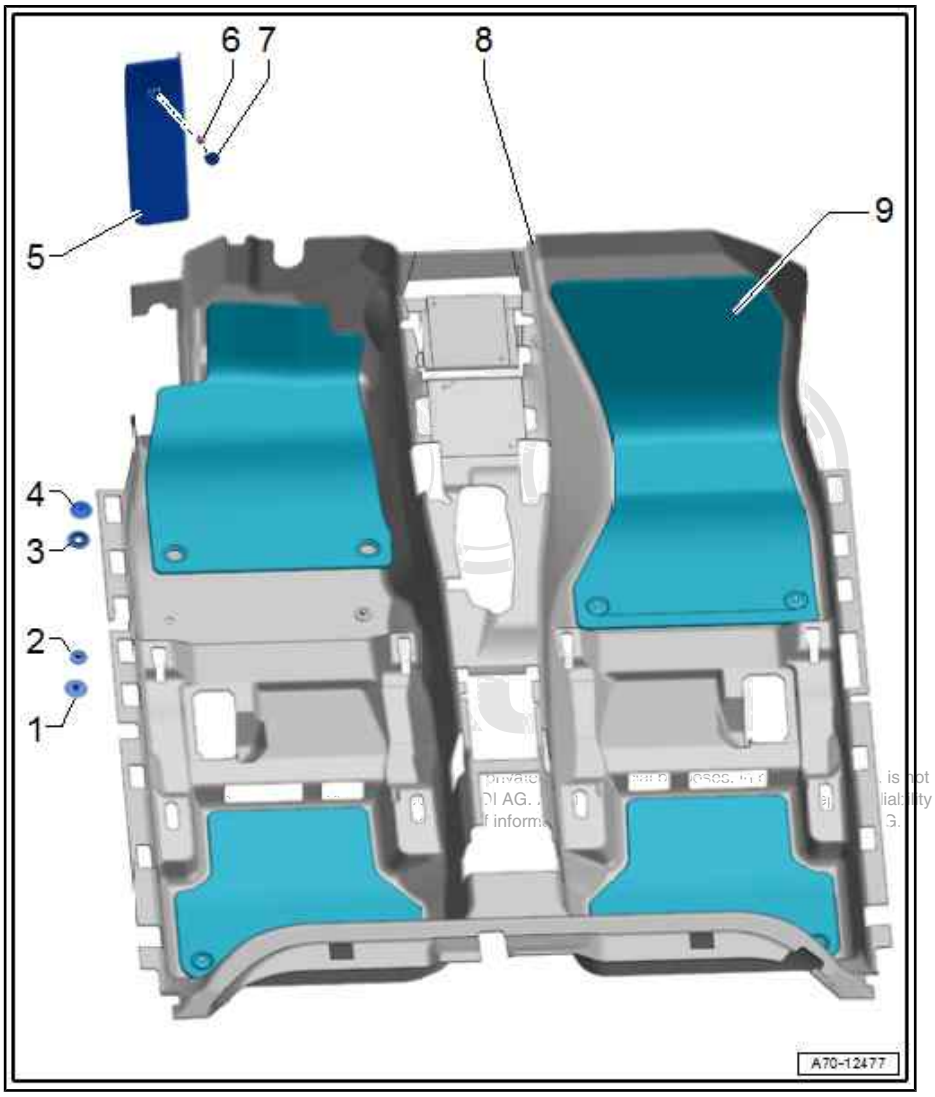
5 - Fastener

- ❑ 7x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.10 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering



1 - Retainer
- ❑ For floor mat
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert into floor covering from underneath

2 - Cap
- ❑ For floor mat
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Unclip using removal lever - 80-200-
- ❑ Press into retainer until it engages audibly

3 - Retainer
- ❑ For floor mat
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert into floor mat from underneath

4 - Cap
- ❑ For floor mat
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Unclip using removal lever - 80-200-
- ❑ Press into retainer until it engages audibly

5 - Foot rest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 301
- ❑ Engage in relay and fuse carrier

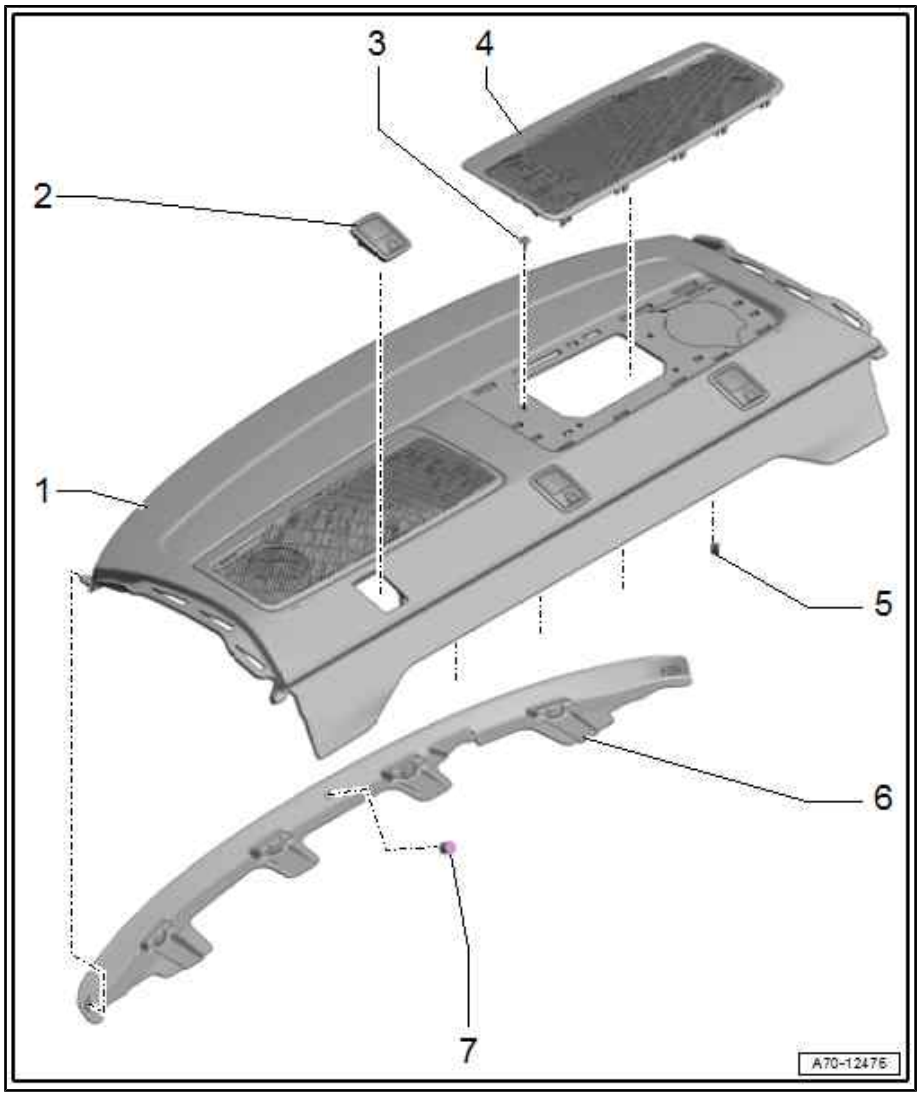
6 - Bolt
- ❑ 3 Nm

7 - Cap
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

8 - Floor covering
- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ With perforation
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 302

9 - Floor mat
- ❑ 4x

5.11 Exploded view - rear shelf



1 - Rear shelf

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 303
- ❑ Insert rear shelf in rear window frame and press on until it engages audibly.

2 - Cover for child seat anchor

- ❑ 2x or 3x (depending on equipment version)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 125
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

4 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 304
- ❑ Insert in rear shelf and press on until it engages audibly

5 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in rear shelf
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

6 - Trim for rear window frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “5.22 Removing and installing rear shelf”, page 303

7 - Fastener

- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.12 Removing and installing sill panel trim

⇒ “5.12.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim - A5 Coupé”, page 273

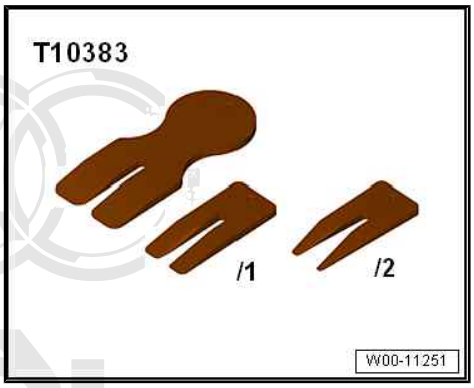
⇒ “5.12.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim - A5 Sportback”, page 274

⇒ “5.12.3 Removing and installing sill panel trim - A5 Cabriolet”, page 275

5.12.1 Removing and installing sill panel trim - A5 Coupé

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wedges - T10383- or



- Medium hard scraper (semi-round) from scraper set - VAS 6845- (not illustrated)
- Removal tool - T40280-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



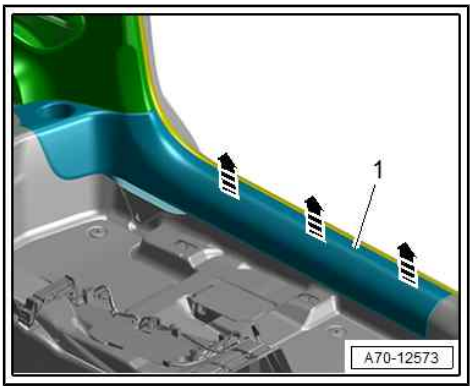
Removing

– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.

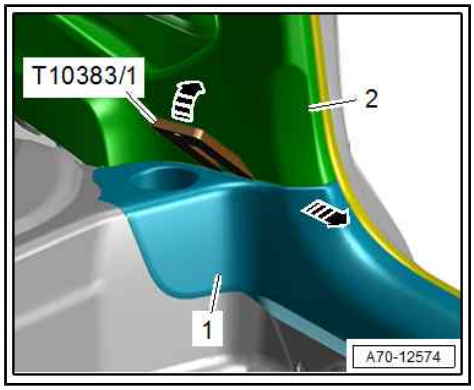
– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

– Move sill panel trim clear in area of inner door seal.

– Starting at front, use wedge -T10383- to unclip sill panel trim -1- from side member -arrows-.



– Insert wedge -T10383/1- or medium hard scraper (semi-round) into position shown between sill panel trim and side trim.
– Release retaining tab for sill panel trim -1- -arrow- and at the same time pull sill panel trim off side trim -2- towards front -arrow-.



Installing

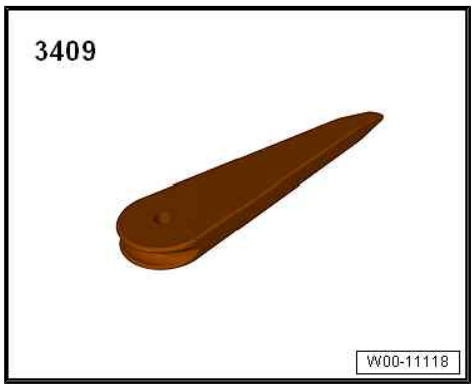
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.2.1 Exploded view - sill panel trim - A5 Coupé”, page 256

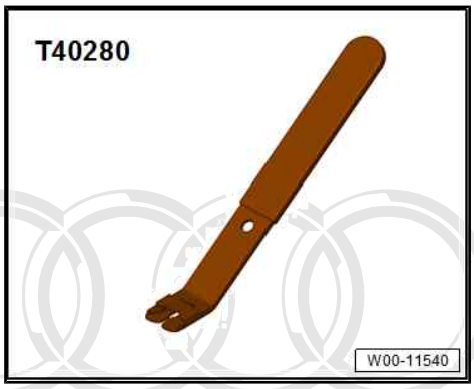
5.12.2 Removing and installing sill panel trim - A5 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

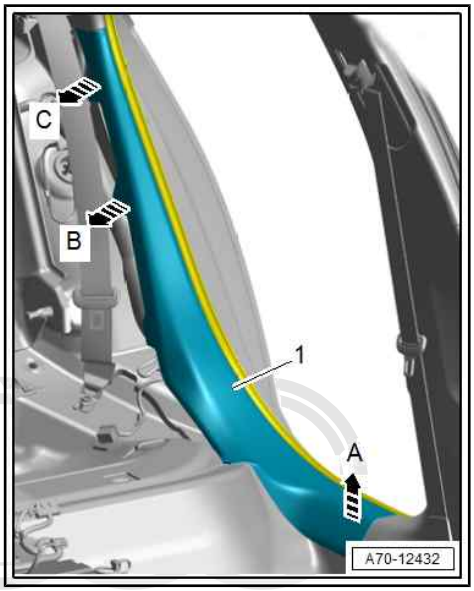
Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .

– Starting at front, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim -1- from side member and side panel -arrows A, B, C-.

– Pull sill panel trim downwards out of C-pillar trim and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.2.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim, A5 Sportback”, page 257

5.12.3 Removing and installing sill panel trim - A5 Cabriolet

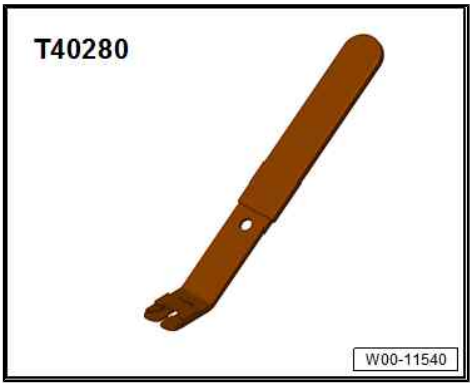
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

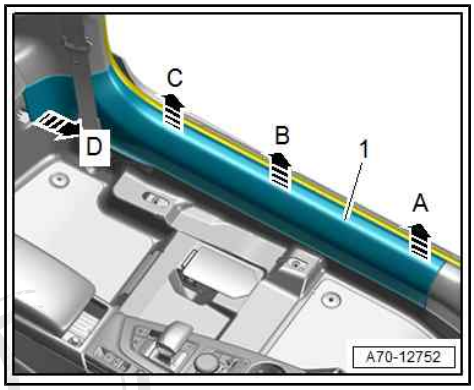
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing



- Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
- Move sill panel trim clear in area of inner door seal.
- Starting at front, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim -1- from side member -arrows A, B, C-.
- Disengage retaining catch at rear using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow D- and detach sill panel trim from side trim towards front.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.2.3 Exploded view - sill panel trim, A5 Cabriolet”, page 258

5.13 Removing and installing A-pillar trim

⇒ “5.13.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - A5 Coupé/ Sportback”, page 276

⇒ “5.13.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - A5 Cabriolet”, page 278

⇒ “5.13.3 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom) - A5 Coupé/Cabriolet”, page 280

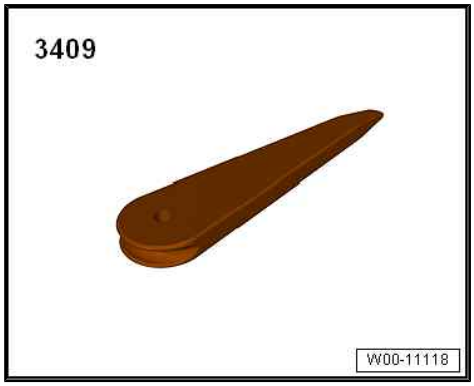
⇒ “5.13.4 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom) - A5 Sportback”, page 281

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

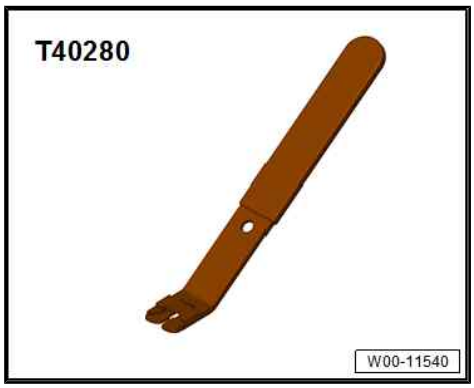
5.13.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - A5 Coupé/Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Removal tool - T40280-



- Medium hard scraper (semi-round) from scraper set - VAS 6845- (not illustrated)

Removing

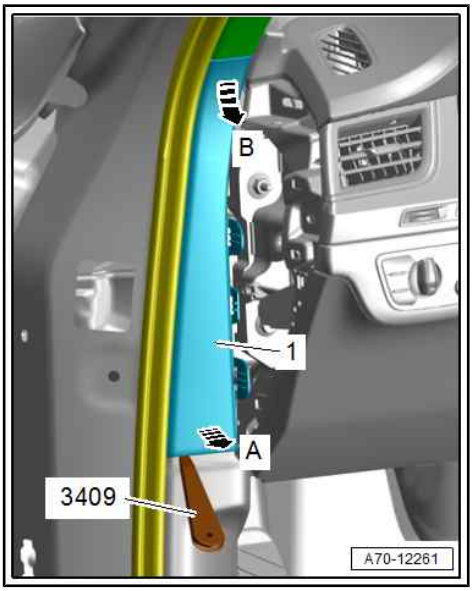
– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 229 .

– Unclip trim cover -1- for A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow A- and disengage from A-pillar trim (top) -arrow B-.

WARNING

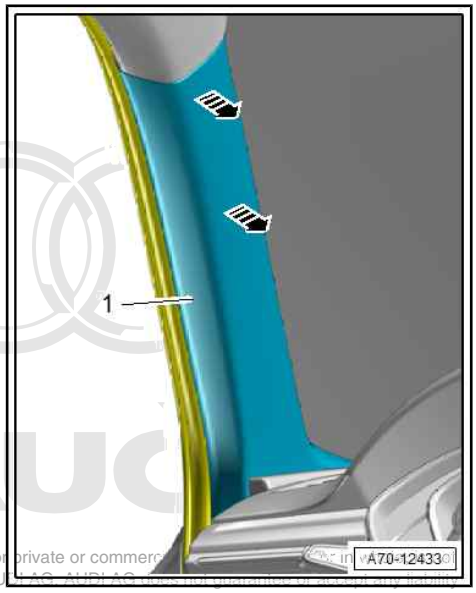
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***



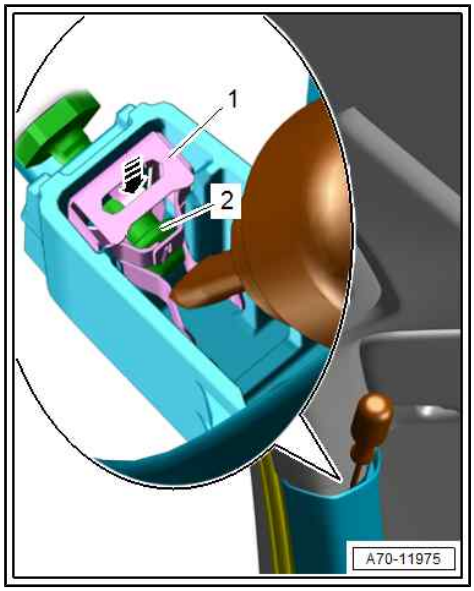
– Move A-pillar trim -1- clear in vicinity of inner door seal.

– Unclip A-pillar trim as far as first detent using removal lever - 3409- -arrows-.

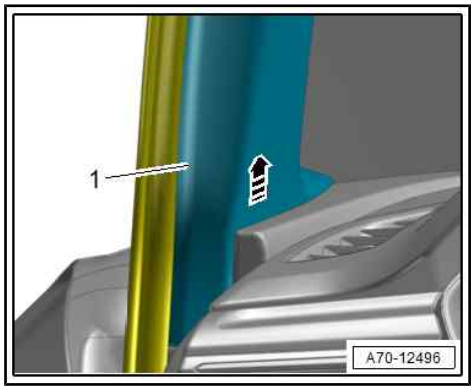


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To disengage trim from retaining pin on A-pillar, move clip -1- (with catch) into removal position using medium hard scraper (semi-round) or a flat-bladed screwdriver.
– To do so, position medium hard scraper (semi-round) or flat-bladed screwdriver at clip, as shown.
– Press clip in trim downwards -arrow- using medium hard scraper (semi-round) or flat-bladed screwdriver; this causes head -2- of pin to slide out of catches on clip.



– Carefully lift trim -1- out of dash panel -arrow-.
– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for treble loudspeaker.

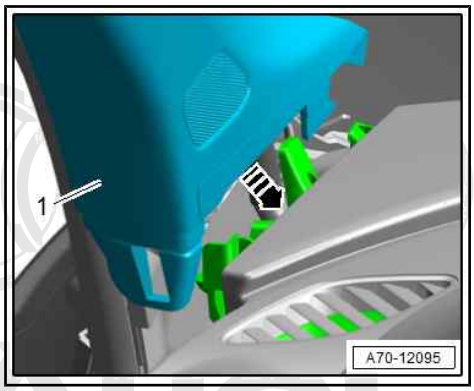


Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting A-pillar trim (top).*



– To install trim, insert new clip with catch in trim and move into installation position.
– Insert A-pillar trim -1- in mounting at dash panel -arrow-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

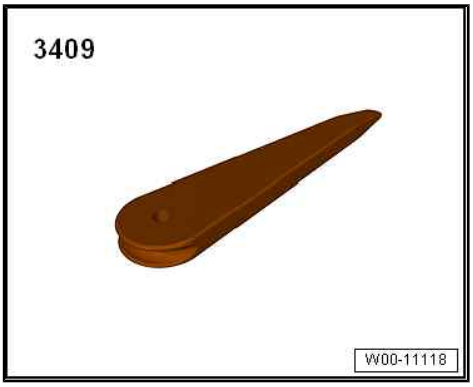
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.3.1 Exploded view - A-pillar trim, A5 Coupé/Sportback", page 259

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

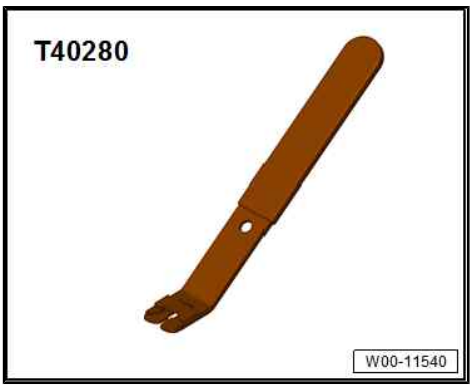
5.13.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



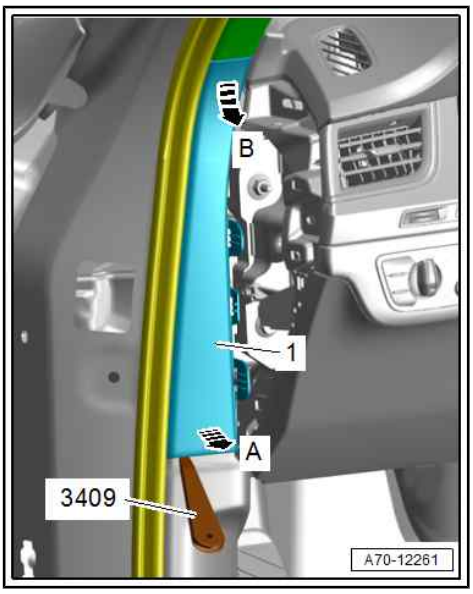
♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

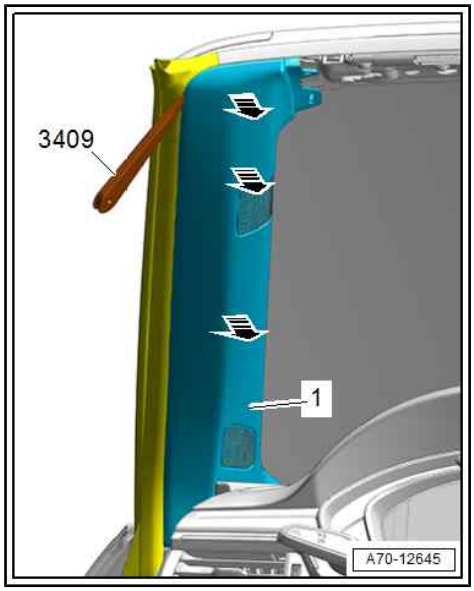
– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 229 .

– Unclip trim cover -1- for A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow A- and disengage from A-pillar trim (top) -arrow B-.

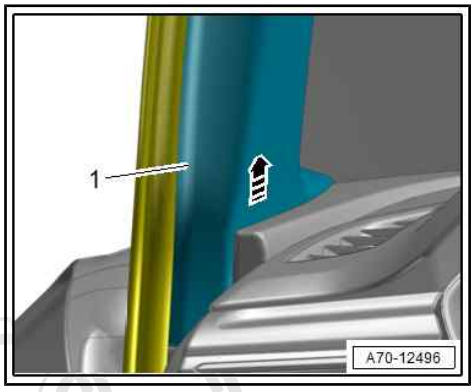


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove trim for windscreen frame ⇒ page 293 .
– Move A-pillar trim clear in vicinity of inner door seal.
– Starting at top, unclip A-pillar trim -1- from A-pillar using removal lever - 3409- -arrows-.



– Carefully lift trim -1- out of dash panel -arrow-.
– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for treble loudspeaker.

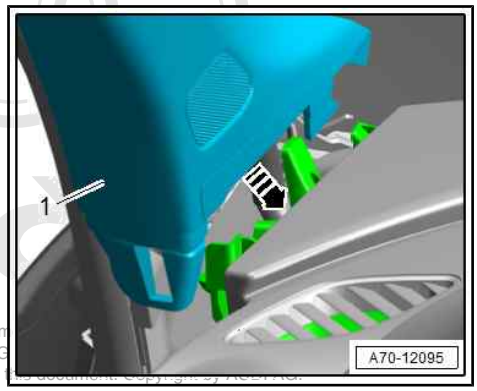


Installing

– Insert A-pillar trim -1- in mounting at dash panel -arrow-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.3.2 Exploded view - A-pillar trim, A5 Cabriolet", page 260

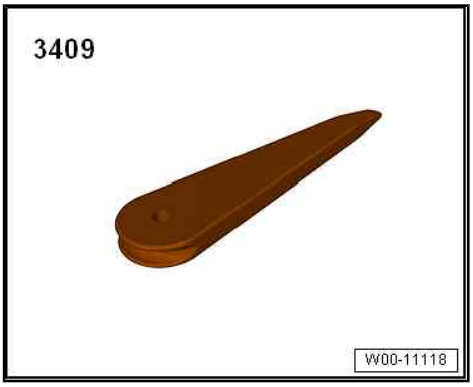


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in

5.13.3 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom) - A5 Coupé/Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

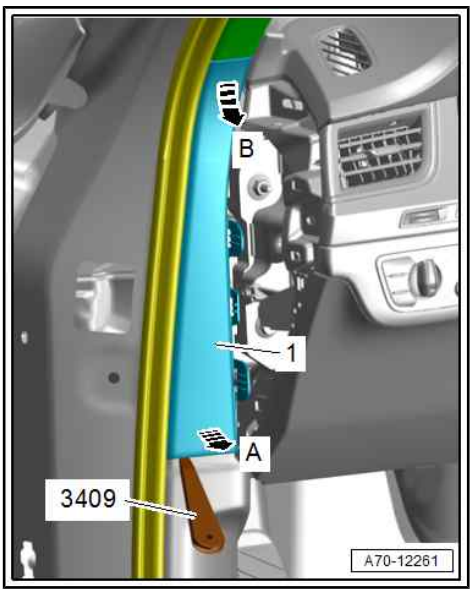


Removing

– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 229 .

– Unclip trim cover -1- for A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow A- and disengage from A-pillar trim (top) -arrow B-.

– Unclip sill panel trim at front from A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 273 .



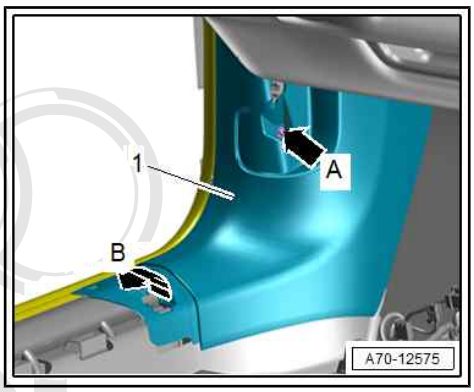
Driver side:

– Remove handle of operating lever for bonnet lock ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet .

– Remove bolt -arrow A- for A-pillar trim (bottom).

Both sides of vehicle (continued):

– Disengage A-pillar trim -1- at bottom of side member -arrow B- and detach towards rear.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

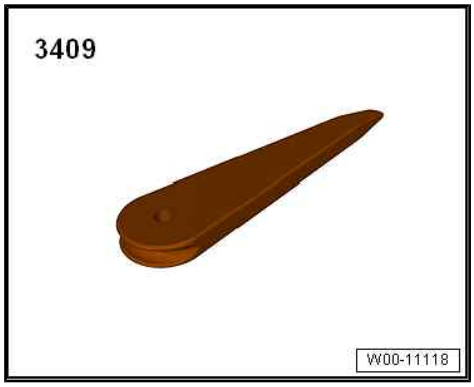
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.3 Exploded view - A-pillar trim", page 259

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

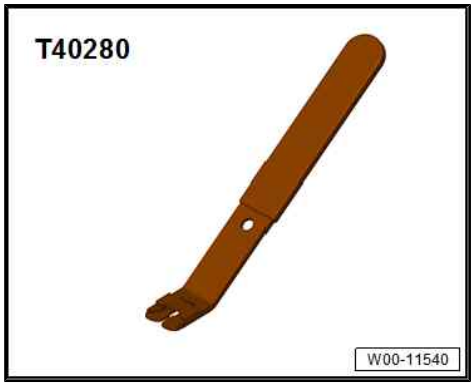
5.13.4 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom) - A5 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

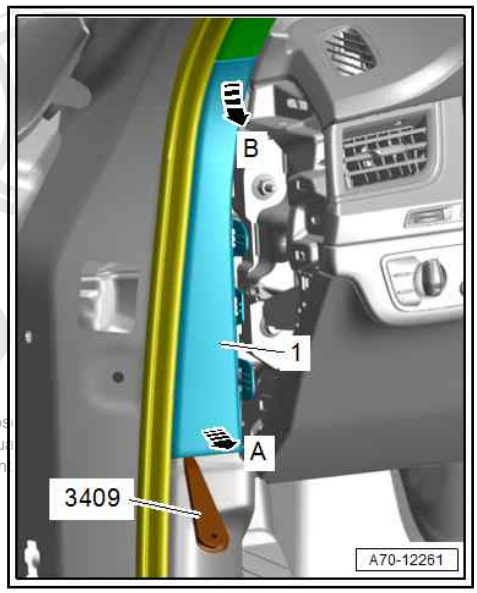


♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Move front seat as far towards rear as it will go.
– Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ page 229 .
– Unclip trim cover -1- for A-pillar using removal wedge - 3409- -arrow A- and disengage from A-pillar trim (top) -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

Driver side:

– Remove operating lever for Bowden cable for bonnet lock ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet .

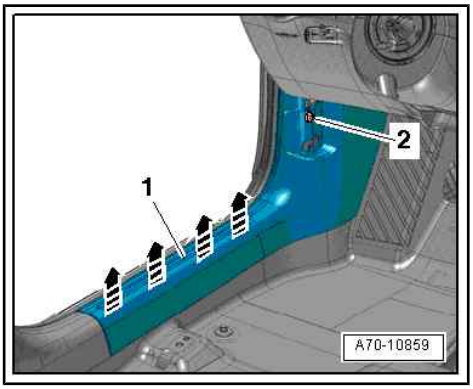
– Remove bolt -2-.

Both sides of vehicle (continued):

– Move sill panel trim clear in area of door seal.

– Starting at rear, use removal wedge - 3409- to unclip sill panel trim (front) -1- from side member -arrows- and pull off towards rear.

– Detach sill panel trim (front).



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “5.3.1 Exploded view - A-pillar trim, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 259

5.14 Removing and installing B-pillar trim

⇒ “5.14.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim - A5 Coupé”, page 283

⇒ “5.14.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) - A5 Sportback”, page 285

⇒ “5.14.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom) - A5 Sportback”, page 287

5.14.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim - A5 Coupé

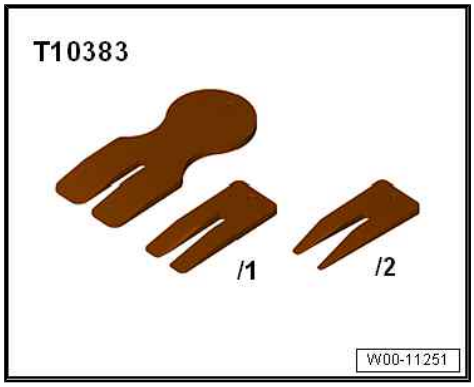
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Wedges - T10383-



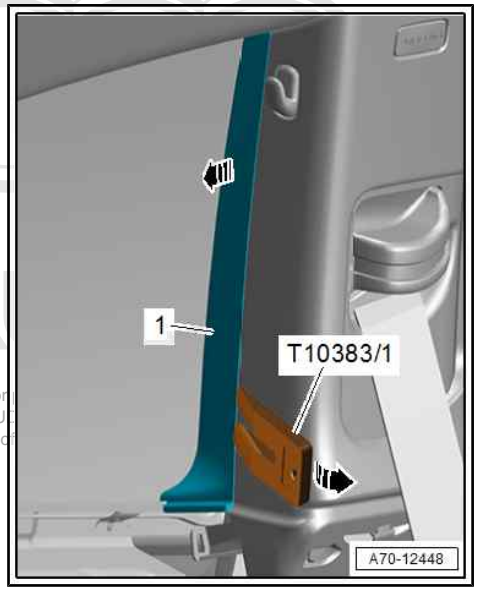
Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

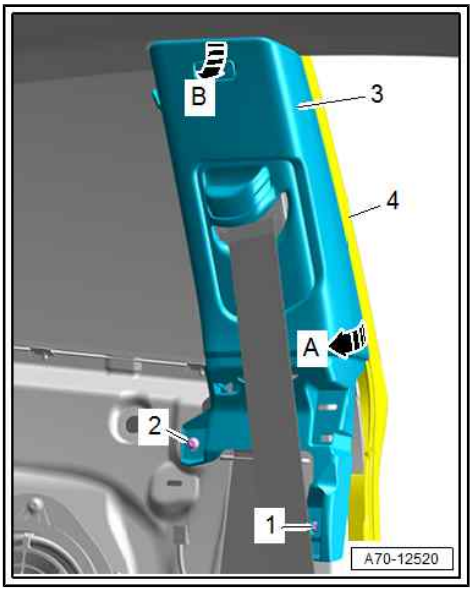
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 273 .
– Unfasten side trim in vicinity of B-pillar trim and have a second person pull it away from B-pillar ⇒ page 267 .
– Unclip B-pillar cover -1- using wedge -T10383/1- -arrows-.
– Disengage cover from B-pillar trim and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by AU
with respect to the correctness o

– Move belt height adjuster to lowest possible position.
– Hold side trim to side in area of B-pillar trim.
– Remove bolts -1, 2-.
– Starting from bottom and working upwards, move B-pillar trim -3- clear in vicinity of inner door seal -4- and disengage it at B-pillar -arrow A-.
– Pull B-pillar trim (top) out of mounting on body -arrow B-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.
– Detach B-pillar trim with belt inserted.



Note

When renewing B-pillar trim, remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 113 .

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

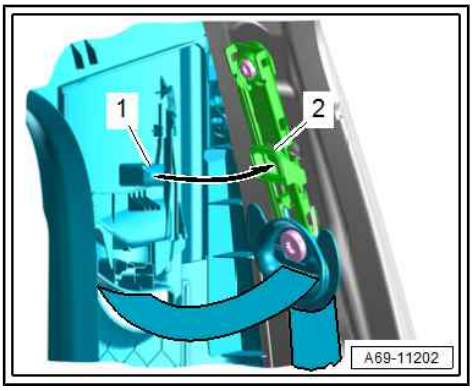
- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting B-pillar trim.***

– Thread in belt with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster.

Note

Make sure belt height adjuster is in bottom position.

– First insert B-pillar trim upwards into mounting at roof.
• Retaining pin -1- on sliding element of B-pillar trim must engage in mounting -2- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.



The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

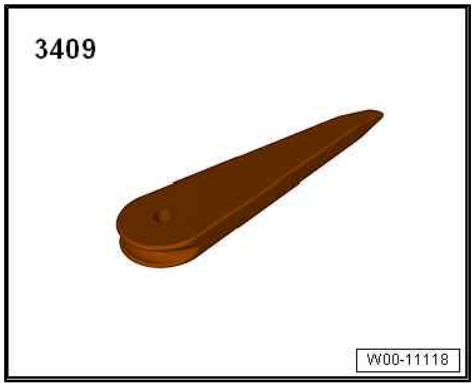
Copyrighted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.4.1 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A5 Coupé", page 261

5.14.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (top) - A5 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-

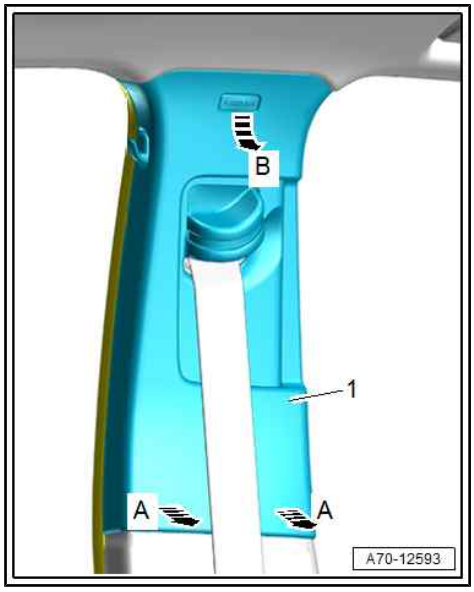


Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*



– Move belt height adjuster to lowest possible position.
– Move B-pillar trim -1- clear in vicinity of door seals, disengage at B-pillar and unclip from bracket -arrows A-.
– Pull B-pillar trim (top) out of mounting on body -arrow B-; to do so, swivel trim inwards and at the same time pull it off downwards.
– Detach B-pillar trim with belt inserted.

Note

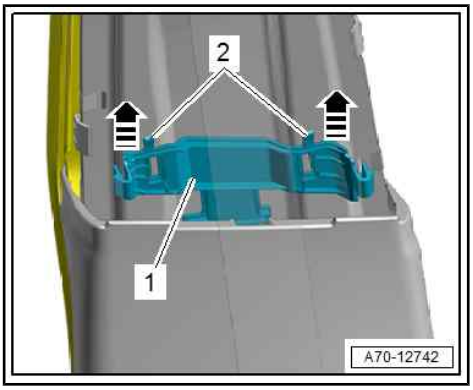
When renewing B-pillar trim (top), remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 113 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing bracket

– Hold belt to one side.

– One after another, carefully release catches -2- and pull bracket -1- for B-pillar trim upwards out of mountings -arrows-.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting B-pillar trim.*

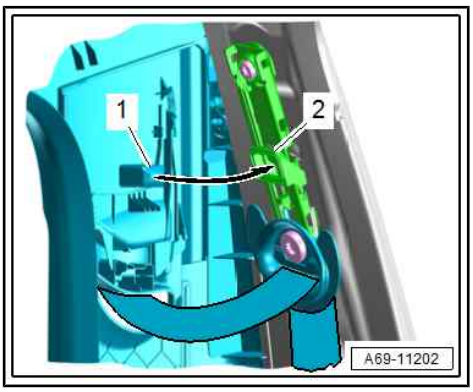
– Thread in belt with latch plate through slide for belt height adjuster.

Note

Make sure belt height adjuster is in bottom position.

– First insert B-pillar trim upwards into mounting at roof.

• Retaining pin -1- on sliding element of B-pillar trim must engage in mounting -2- at belt height adjuster -arrow-.



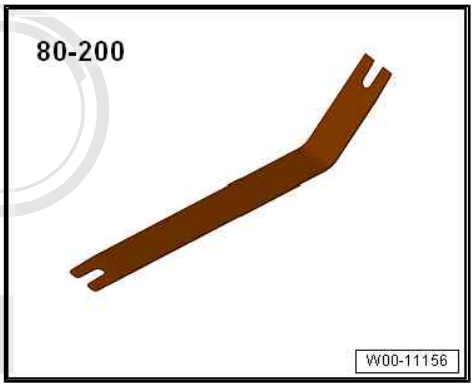
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "5.4.2 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A5 Sportback", page 262

5.14.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim (bottom) - A5 Sportback

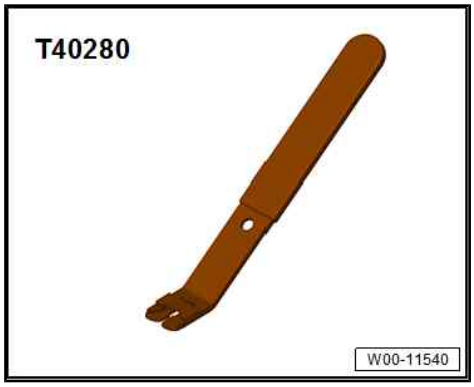
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

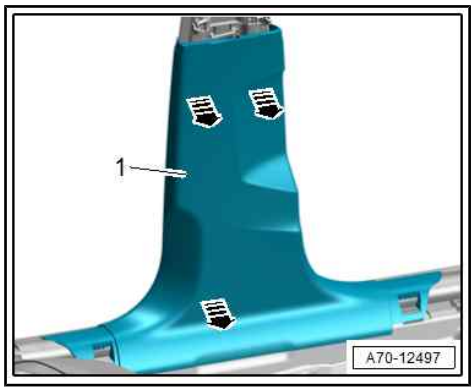
– Remove B-pillar trim (top) ⇒ page 285 .

– Unclip A-pillar trim (bottom) from B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 281 .

– Unclip sill panel trim from B-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 274 .

– Move B-pillar trim (bottom) -1- clear in vicinity of door seals and disengage at side of B-pillar.

– Starting at top, use removal lever - 80-200- to unclip B-pillar trim from B-pillar -arrows-.



Installing

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.4.2 Exploded view - B-pillar trim, A5 Sportback”, page 262

5.15 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

⇒ “5.15.1 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - A5 Coupé”, page 288

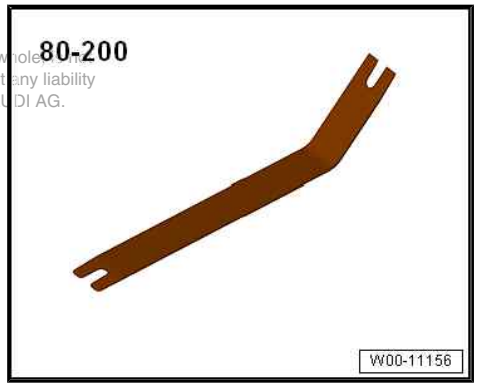
⇒ “5.15.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - A5 Sportback”, page 290

⇒ “5.15.3 Removing and installing C-pillar trim (top) - A5 Sportback”, page 291

5.15.1 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - A5 Coupé

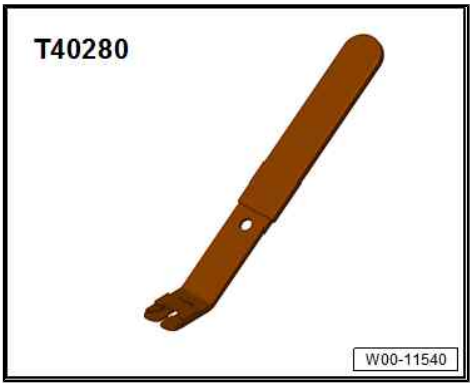
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



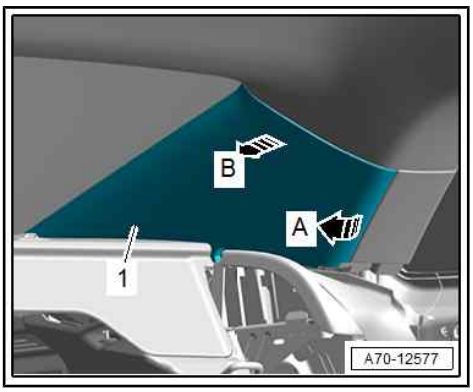
♦ Medium hard scraper (semi-round) from scraper set - VAS 6845- (not illustrated)

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 293 .

– Unclip C-pillar trim -1- at trim panel -arrow A- using wedge - T10383/1- .

– Unclip C-pillar trim as far as first detent using removal lever - 3409- -arrow B-.

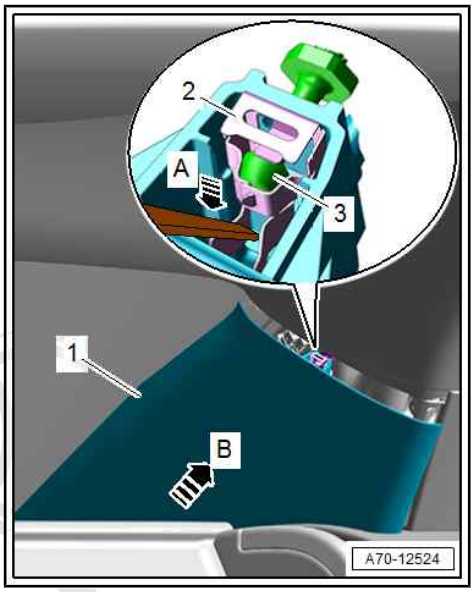


– To disengage trim from retaining pin on C-pillar, move clip -2- (with catch) into removal position using medium hard scraper (semi-round).

– To do so, apply medium hard scraper (semi-round) on clip at location indicated.

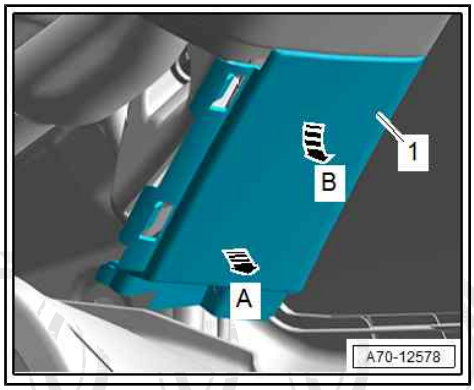
– Press clip in trim downwards -arrow A- using medium hard scraper (semi-round); this causes head -3- of pin to slide out of catches on clip.

– Pull C-pillar trim upwards off rear shelf -arrow B- and remove.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unclip C-pillar cover -1- -arrow A- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Disengage cover from curtain airbag guide -arrow B- and detach.



Installing

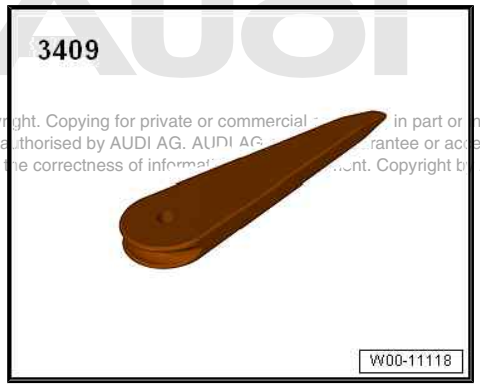
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.5.1 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A5 Coupé", page 263

5.15.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim - A5 Sportback

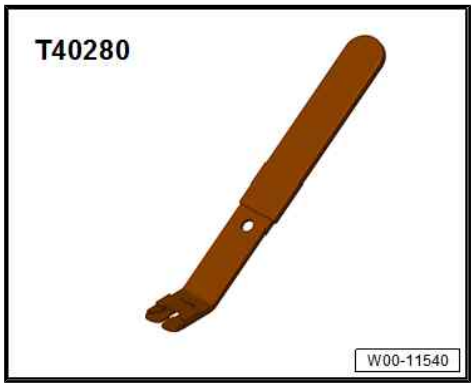
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-

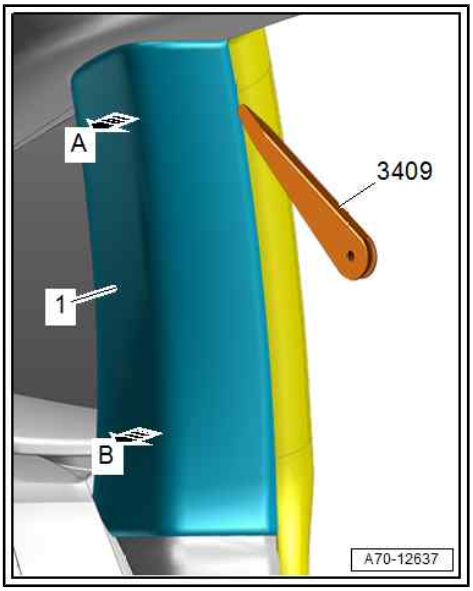


Removing

– Move C-pillar trim clear in area of door seal.

– Starting at top, use removal lever - 3409- to unclip C-pillar trim -1- from C-pillar -arrows A, B-.

– Lift off C-pillar trim upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

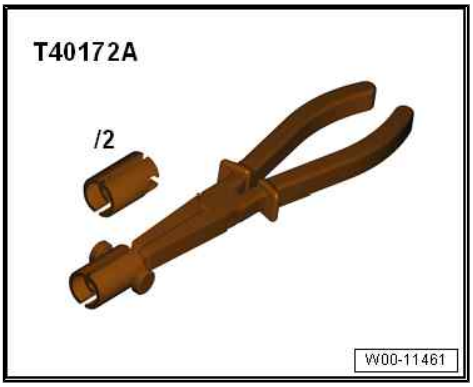
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A5 Sportback”, page 264

5.15.3 Removing and installing C-pillar trim (top) - A5 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



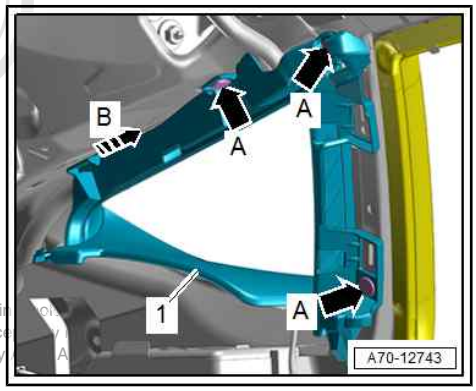
Removing

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 350 and lay it down on seats; headliner does not have to be removed.

– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 274 .

– Remove fasteners -arrows A- using pliers - T40172 A- .

– Release C-pillar trim -1- from C-pillar at front and disengage from mounting -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

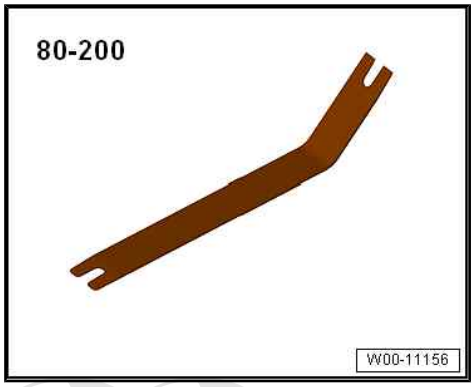
⇒ “5.5.2 Exploded view - C-pillar trim, A5 Sportback”, page 264

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acc
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

5.16 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



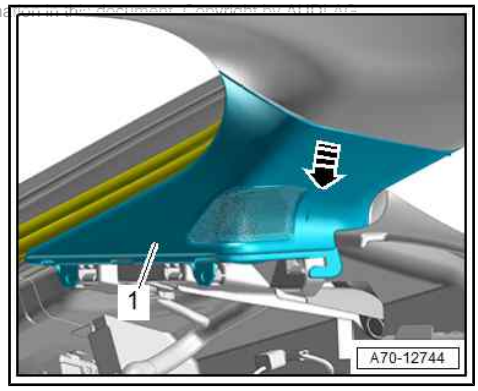
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 333 .

– Move D-pillar trim clear in vicinity of rear lid seal.

– Unclip D-pillar trim -1- from D-pillar at top using removal lever - 80-200- -arrow- and detach.



Removing bracket

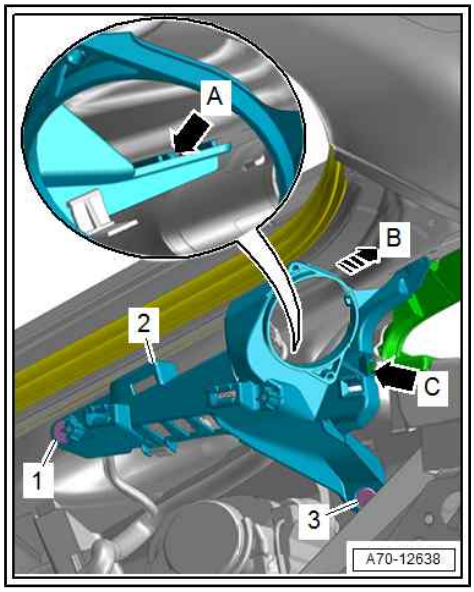
– If fitted, remove mid-range loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Remove fasteners -1, 3- using pliers - T40172 A- .

– Release retaining tab -arrow A- using a small screwdriver and pull bracket -2- upwards out of mountings -arrow B-.

– Unhook bracket at C-pillar trim -arrow C- and detach.

– Unclip electrical wiring.



Installing

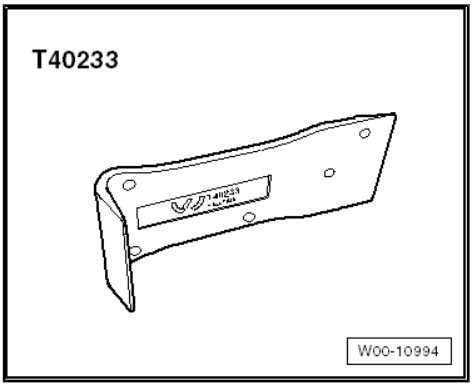
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.6 Exploded view - D-pillar trim”, page 265

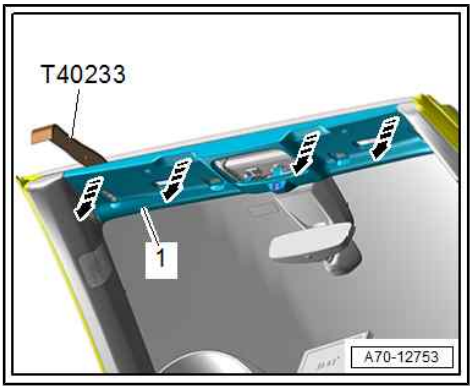
5.17 Removing and installing trim for windscreen frame

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - T40233-



Removing



– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 36 .
– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 36 .
– Remove light for make-up mirror ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
– Remove roof module ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in roof trim .
– Unclip trim -1- from windscreen frame using removal wedge - T40233- -arrows-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.7 Exploded view - trim for windscreen frame”, page 266

5.18 Removing and installing side trim

⇒ “5.18.1 Removing and installing side trim - A5 Coupé”, page 293

⇒ “5.18.2 Removing and installing side trim - A5 Cabriolet”, page 295

⇒ “5.18.3 Removing and installing centre section of side trim - A5 Cabriolet”, page 297

⇒ “5.18.4 Removing and installing flap for convertible roof frame - A5 Cabriolet”, page 299

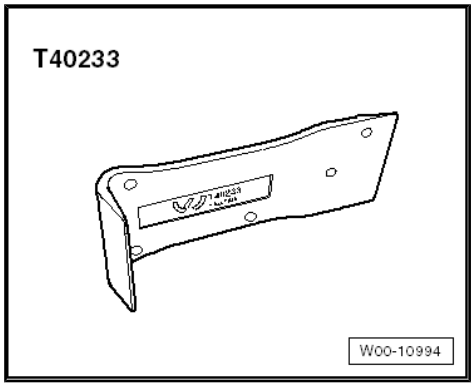
⇒ “5.18.5 Removing and installing belt exit point trim - A5 Cabriolet”, page 299

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

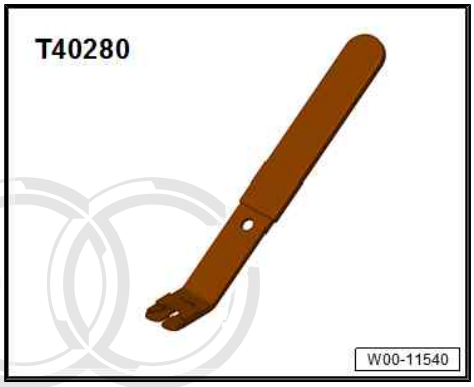
5.18.1 Removing and installing side trim - A5 Coupé

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - T40233-



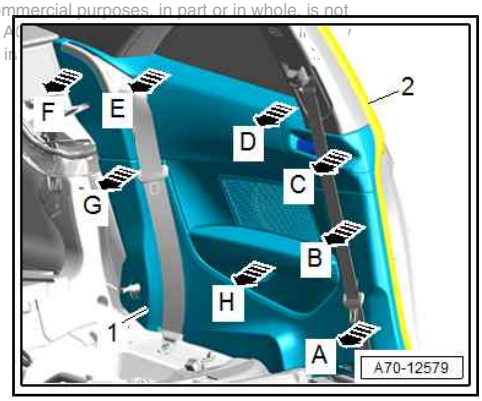
- Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Removing

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 480 .
– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 273 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 331 .
– Starting at front, move side trim -1- clear in area of inner door seal and unclip it from B-pillar -arrows A … C-.
– Unclip remaining retaining clips for side trim from body in sequence -arrows D … H-.
– Disengage side trim from mountings towards inside and unplug electrical connector.
– Detach side trim with belt inserted.



Note

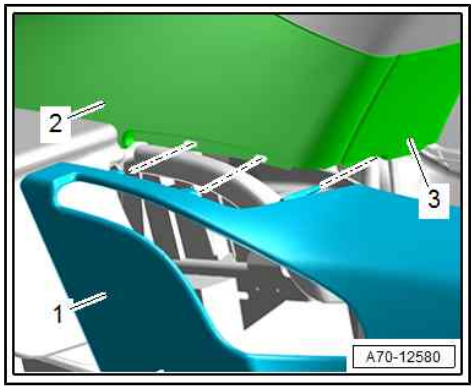
When renewing side trim, remove belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 115 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Ensure that lugs on side trim -1- engage correctly in C-pillar trim -2, 3-.

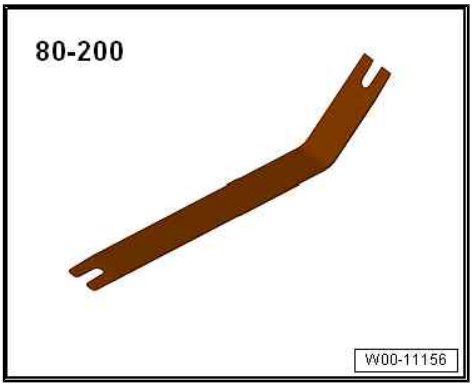
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.8.1 Exploded view - side trim, A5 Coupé", page 267



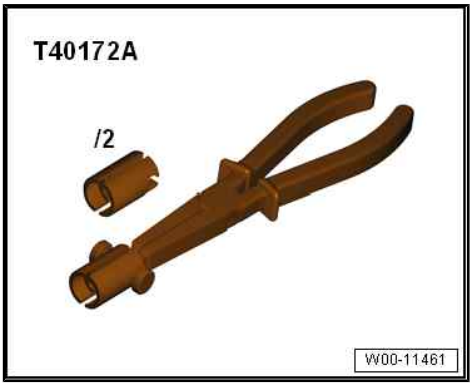
5.18.2 Removing and installing side trim - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

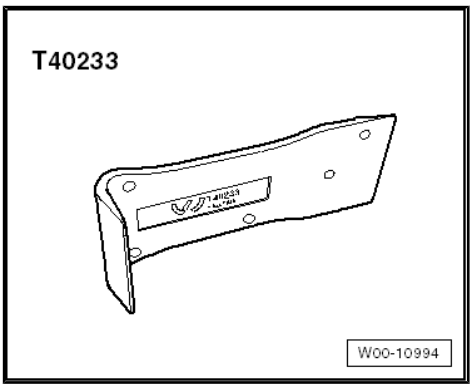
- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Pliers - T40172 A-

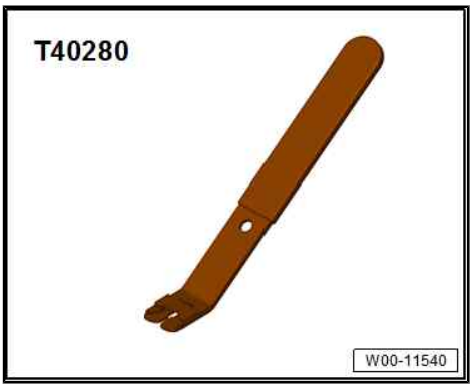


- Removal wedge - T40233-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal tool - T40280-



- Protector - VAS 871 001- (not illustrated)

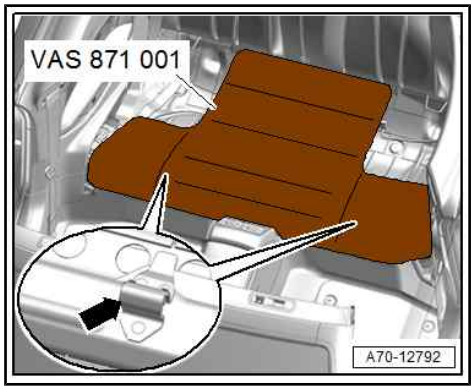
Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

Caution

Risk of damage to rear seat backrests.

- ***To avoid damaging the cover and padding, the front mountings -arrow- for seat bench must be covered using the protector - VAS 871 001- .***



– Fold down rear seat backrest.

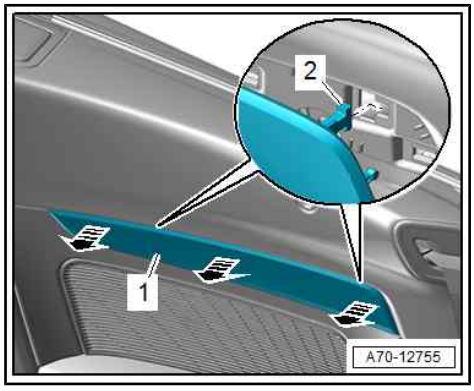
– Move convertible roof into service position ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 61 ; Convertible roof; Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid .

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 553 .

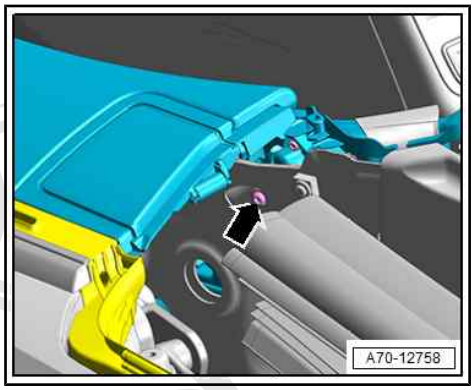
– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 275 .

– Carefully unclip trim panel -1- from side trim -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Pull trim panel slightly off side trim and slide it towards rear; hooks -2- can then be disengaged from side trim.

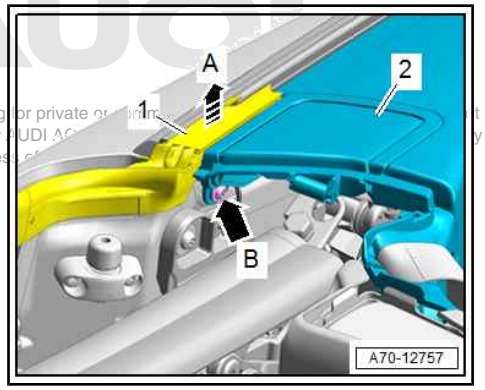


– Remove bolt -arrow-.



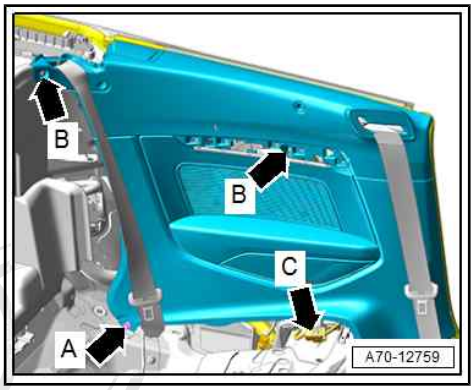
– Press flap -2- for convertible roof frame forwards and unscrew bolt -arrow B-.

– Unclip retaining strip -1- for convertible roof compartment lid seal from side trim -arrow A-.

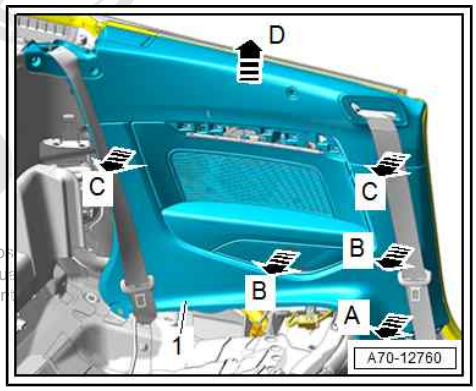


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Remove bolts -arrows B-.
– Remove fastener -arrow A- using pliers - T40172 A- .
– Unplug electrical connector -arrow C-.



– Starting at bottom, unclip side trim -1- from body -arrows A ... C-.
– Carefully disengage side trim from window slot -arrow D-.
– Detach side trim towards front and take belt (rear) out of belt guide.



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

When renewing side trim, remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 114 .

Installing

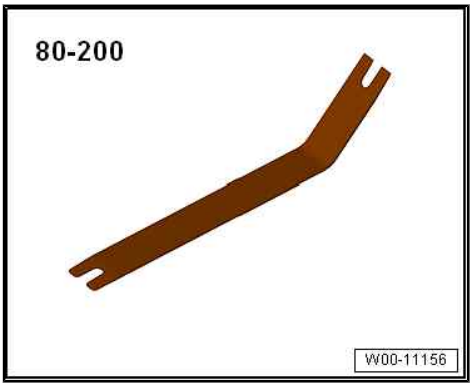
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.8.2 Exploded view - side trim, A5 Cabriolet", page 268

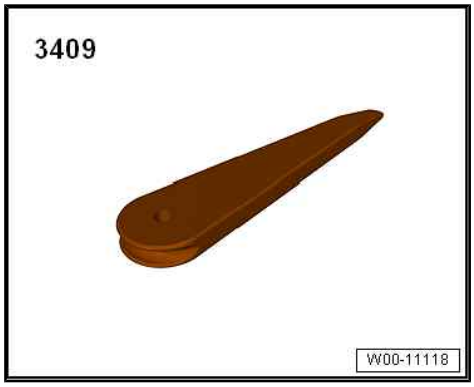
5.18.3 Removing and installing centre section of side trim - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

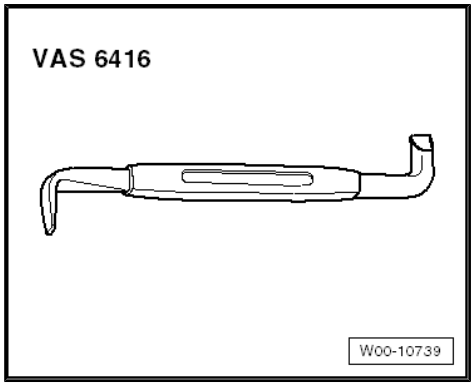
♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



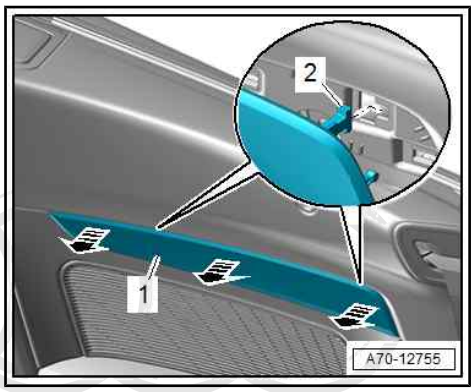
♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6416-



Removing

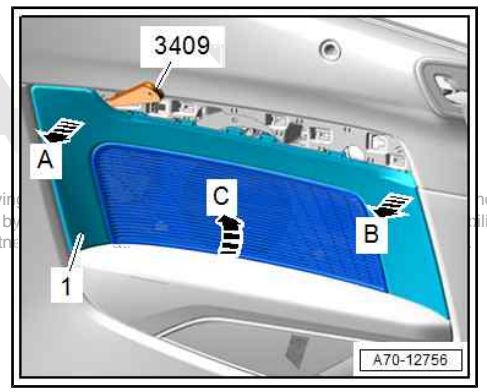
– Carefully unclip trim panel -1- from side trim -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Pull trim panel slightly off side trim and slide it towards rear; hooks -2- can then be disengaged from side trim.



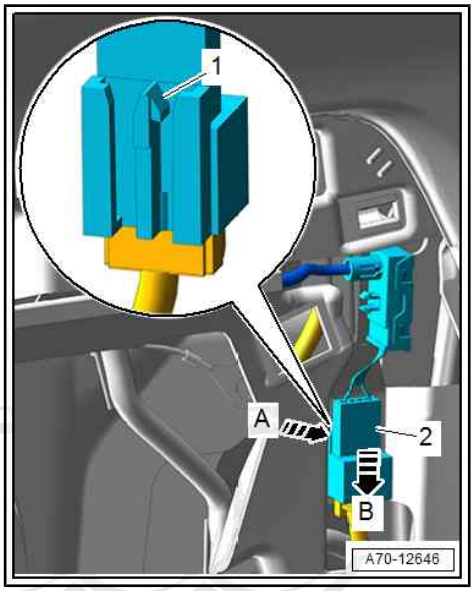
– Carefully prise retaining hooks on centre section -1- off side trim along gap -arrows A, B- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Disengage all other retaining catches, pull centre section slightly off side trim and then carefully pull it upwards out of side trim -arrow C-.



Protected by copyright. Copyri... hot
permitted unless authorised b... ility
with respect to the correctn...

– If fitted, move clear and unplug electrical connector -2- for light for ambient lighting.
– To do so, release retaining hook -1- using angled screwdriver - VAS 6416- -arrow A- and at the same time pull connector downwards out of mounting -arrow B-.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors for loudspeaker.
– Unclip rear ultrasonic sensor for passenger compartment monitoring system - G981- / -G982- from loudspeaker trim ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 61 ; Electrical and electronic components .



Installing

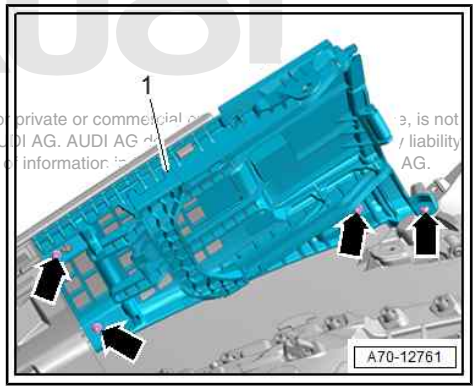
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.8.2 Exploded view - side trim, A5 Cabriolet", page 268

5.18.4 Removing and installing flap for convertible roof frame - A5 Cabriolet

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 295 .
– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach flap -1- for convertible roof frame.



Installing

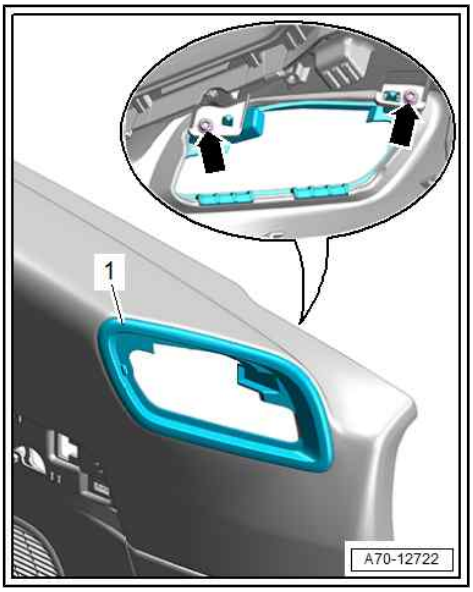
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.8.2 Exploded view - side trim, A5 Cabriolet", page 268

5.18.5 Removing and installing belt exit point trim - A5 Cabriolet

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 295 .
– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 114 .
– Thread out belt and belt end fitting.
– Remove belt feeder motor ⇒ page 99 .
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- at rear of side trim.
– Detach belt exit point trim -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.8.2 Exploded view - side trim, A5 Cabriolet", page 268

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume liability with respect to the correctness of information. © AUDI AG.

5.19 Removing and installing back panel trim

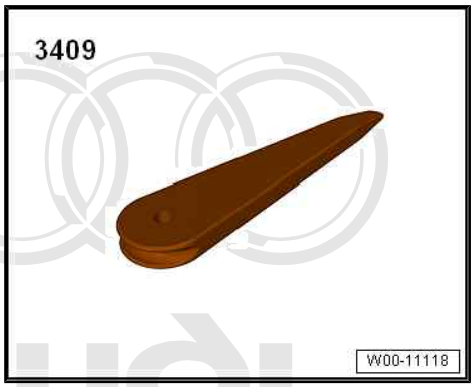
⇒ "5.19.1 Removing and installing back panel trim (front section)", page 300

⇒ "5.19.2 Removing and installing back panel trim (rear section)", page 301

5.19.1 Removing and installing back panel trim (front section)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Pliers - T40172 A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

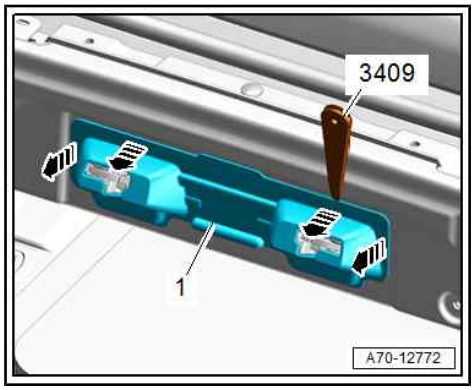
– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Move convertible roof into service position ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 61 ; Convertible roof; Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid .

– Remove side padding ⇒ page 553 .

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 295 .

– Unclip trim -1- for backrest locking mechanism from back panel -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .



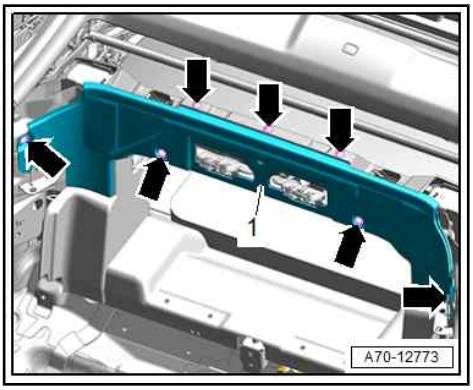
– Remove fasteners -arrows- using pliers - T40172 A- .

– Disengage and detach back panel trim -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.9 Exploded view - back panel trim”, page 270

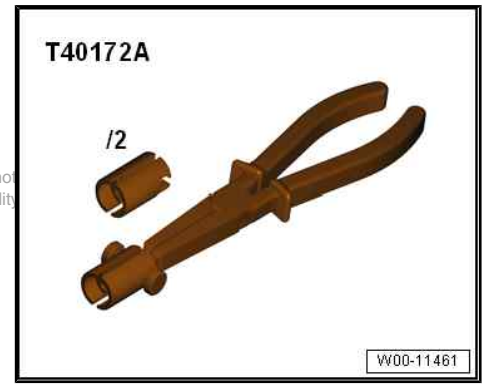


5.19.2 Removing and installing back panel trim (rear section)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pliers - T40172 A-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

– Move convertible roof into service position ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 61 ; Convertible roof; Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid .

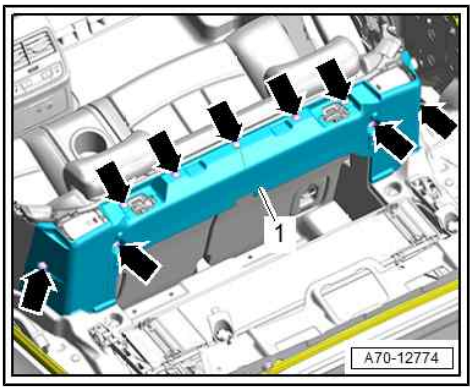
– Remove fasteners -arrows- using pliers - T40172 A- .

– Disengage back panel trim -1- at side trim panels for convertible roof compartment and remove upwards.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.9 Exploded view - back panel trim”, page 270



5.20 Removing and installing foot rest

Removing

– Use a small screwdriver to unclip cap -3-.

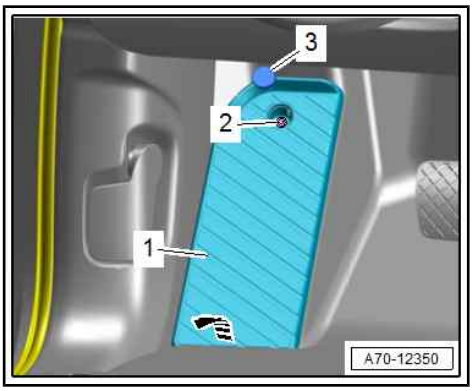
– Unscrew bolt -2- underneath cap.

– Pull foot rest -1- out at bottom -arrow- and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.10 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 271



5.21 Removing and installing floor covering

Note

- *The floor covering (front left and right) has connecting pieces in the centre when it is supplied as a replacement part.*
- *When installing the floor covering (front left and right), separate it at the perforation.*

Removing

– Remove front seats ⇒ page 399 .

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 50 .

– Remove bracket for centre console ⇒ page 55 .

– Remove interior aerial 1 for entry and start authorisation - R138- with bracket ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Overview of fitting locations - keyless entry system .

– Depending on equipment version: Remove air duct (rear) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Air duct system; Exploded view - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment .

– Remove foot rest ⇒ page 301 .

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

– Remove sill panel trim panels ⇒ page 273 .

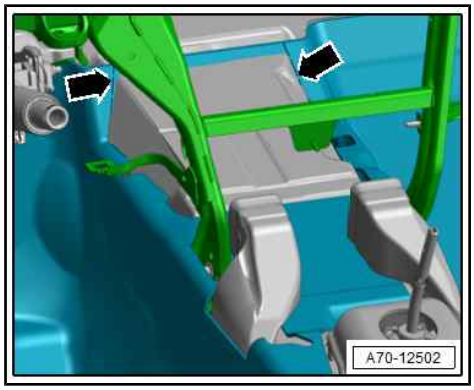
– Remove A-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ page 276 .

– A5 Sportback: Remove B-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ page 287 .

– A5 Coupé/Cabriolet: Remove belt end fittings (front) ⇒ page 113 .

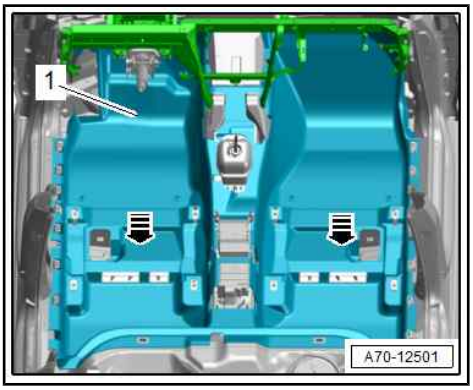
– Take out floor mats.

– If necessary, separate floor covering (front left and right) at perforation -arrows- at centre tunnel in vicinity of cross member for dash panel, and move floor covering clear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Lift floor covering -1- at rear and pull towards rear -arrows-.
– Fold up floor covering in the centre and remove.



Note

Make sure floor covering does not tear at openings.

Installing

– When installing as a replacement part, separate floor covering (front) at perforation.
– Fold up floor covering and place it in vehicle.
– Slide floor covering forwards and align until hole patterns coincide.

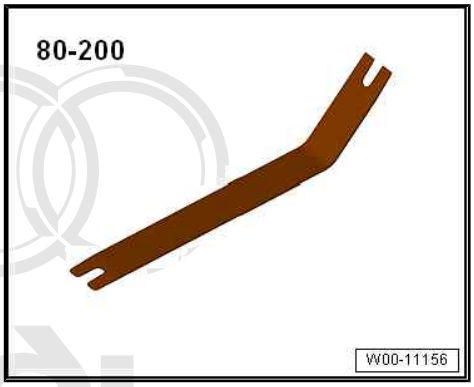
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “5.10 Exploded view - foot rest and floor covering”, page 271

5.22 Removing and installing rear shelf

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

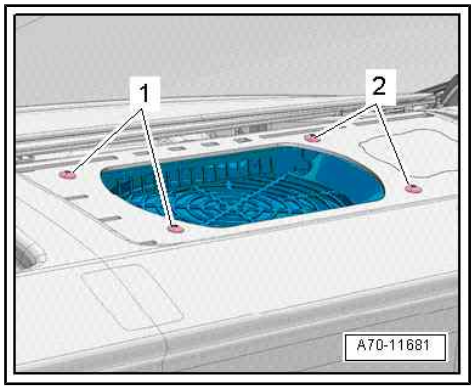
Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.
– Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 288 .

Equipment version with sound system:

– Remove loudspeaker trim (both sides) in rear shelf ⇒ page 304 .

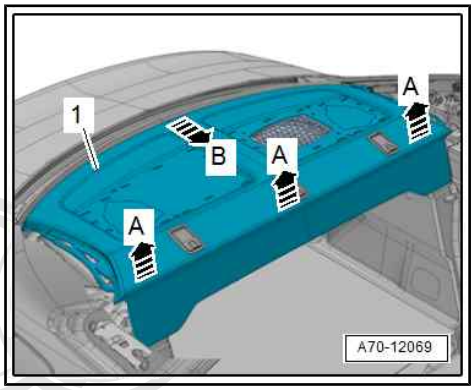
– Remove bolts -1, 2-.



All versions (continued):

– Unclip rear shelf -1- at front using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows A-.

– Pull rear shelf forwards out of mountings in rear window frame -arrow B- and take out.



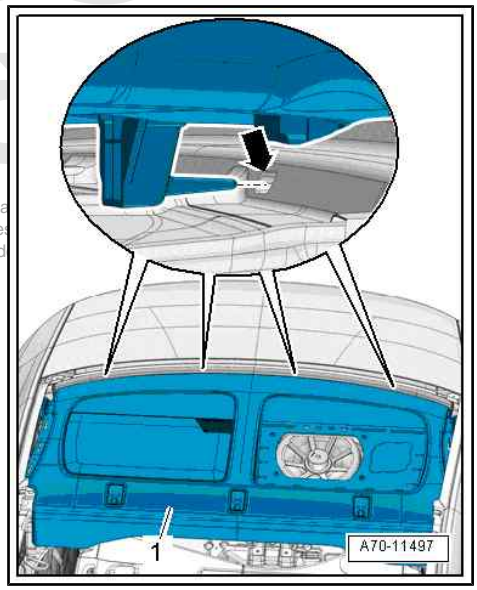
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert rear shelf -1- in rear window frame and press on until it engages audibly.

• Pins on rear shelf must engage in mountings -arrow- in rear window frame.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.11 Exploded view - rear shelf", page 272



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercia
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
n in this d

5.23 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

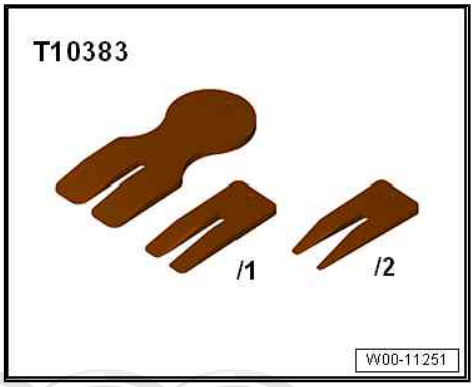
⇒ "5.23.1 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim - A5 Coupé", page 304

⇒ "5.23.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim - A5 Cabriolet", page 305

5.23.1 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim - A5 Coupé

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Removing

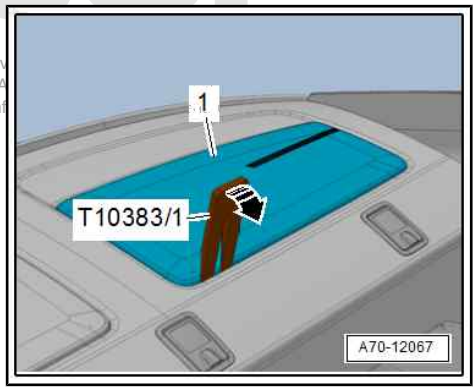
– Fold down rear seat backrest.

Caution

Risk of damage to loudspeaker trim.

♦ *Proceed very carefully when removing and installing.*

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully unclip loudspeaker trim -1- from rear shelf along gap -arrow-.



– Release all other retaining catches for loudspeaker trim further along gap.

– Equipment version with loudspeaker: Unplug electrical connector and pull out loudspeaker trim towards front.

Installing

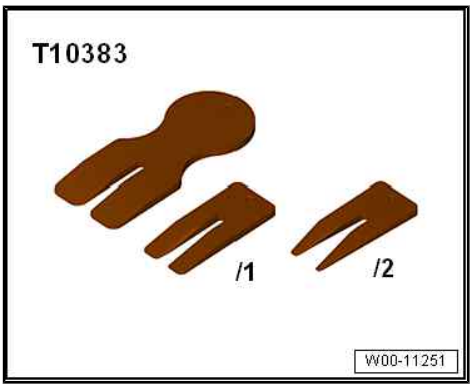
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "5.11 Exploded view - rear shelf", page 272

5.23.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



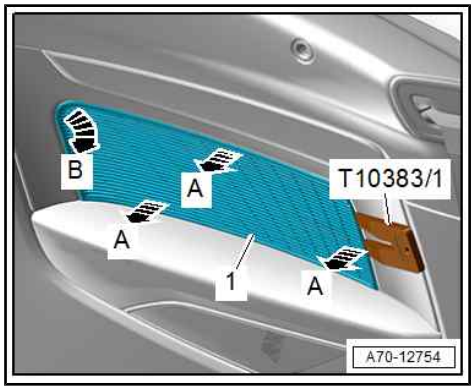
Protected by copyright. Copying for priv
permitted unless authorized by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of inf

Removing

– Using wedge -T10383/1- , carefully disengage retaining hooks on loudspeaker trim (front, bottom and top) from side trim along gap -arrows A-.

– Pull loudspeaker trim (top rear) -1- downwards out of side trim -arrow B- and detach it slightly from side trim.

– Unclip rear ultrasonic sensor for passenger compartment monitoring system - G981- / -G982- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 61 ; Electrical and electronic components .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “5.8.2 Exploded view - side trim, A5 Cabriolet”, page 268

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 Luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ “6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels”, page 307

⇒ “6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 311

⇒ “6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 316

⇒ “6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 320

⇒ “6.5 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)”, page 324

⇒ “6.6 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)”, page 330

⇒ “6.7 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 331

⇒ “6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor”, page 337

⇒ “6.9 Removing and installing lock carrier trim”, page 340

⇒ “6.10 Removing and installing fastening ring”, page 341

⇒ “6.11 Removing and installing bag hook”, page 342

⇒ “6.12 Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor (rear)”, page 342

⇒ “6.13 Removing and installing tail light cover”, page 344

⇒ “6.14 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well”, page 344

6.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ “6.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, A5 Coupé”, page 307

⇒ “6.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, A5 Sportback”, page 309

⇒ “6.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, A5 Cabriolet”, page 310

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, A5 Coupé

1 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 311

2 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 311

3 - Rear lid hinge trim

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 320

4 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 320

5 - Bag hook

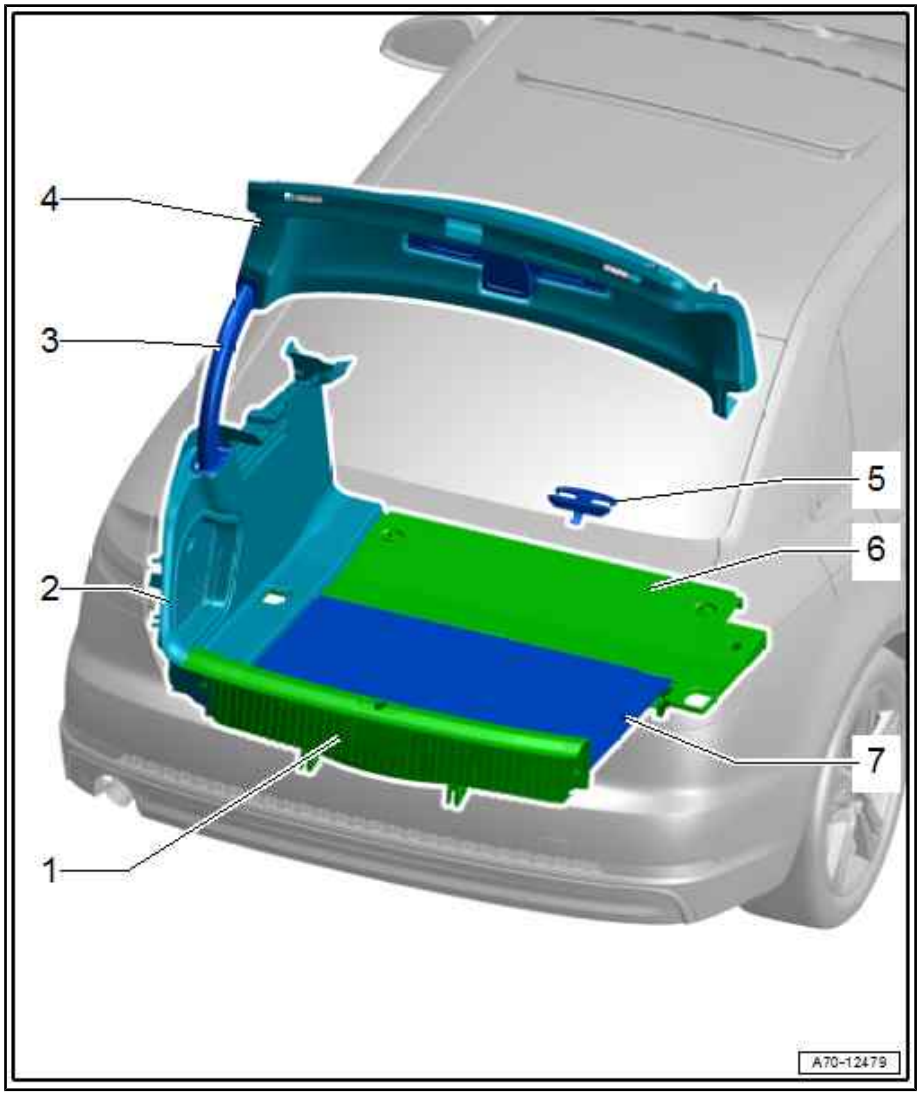
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 311

6 - Luggage compartment floor (front)

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 316

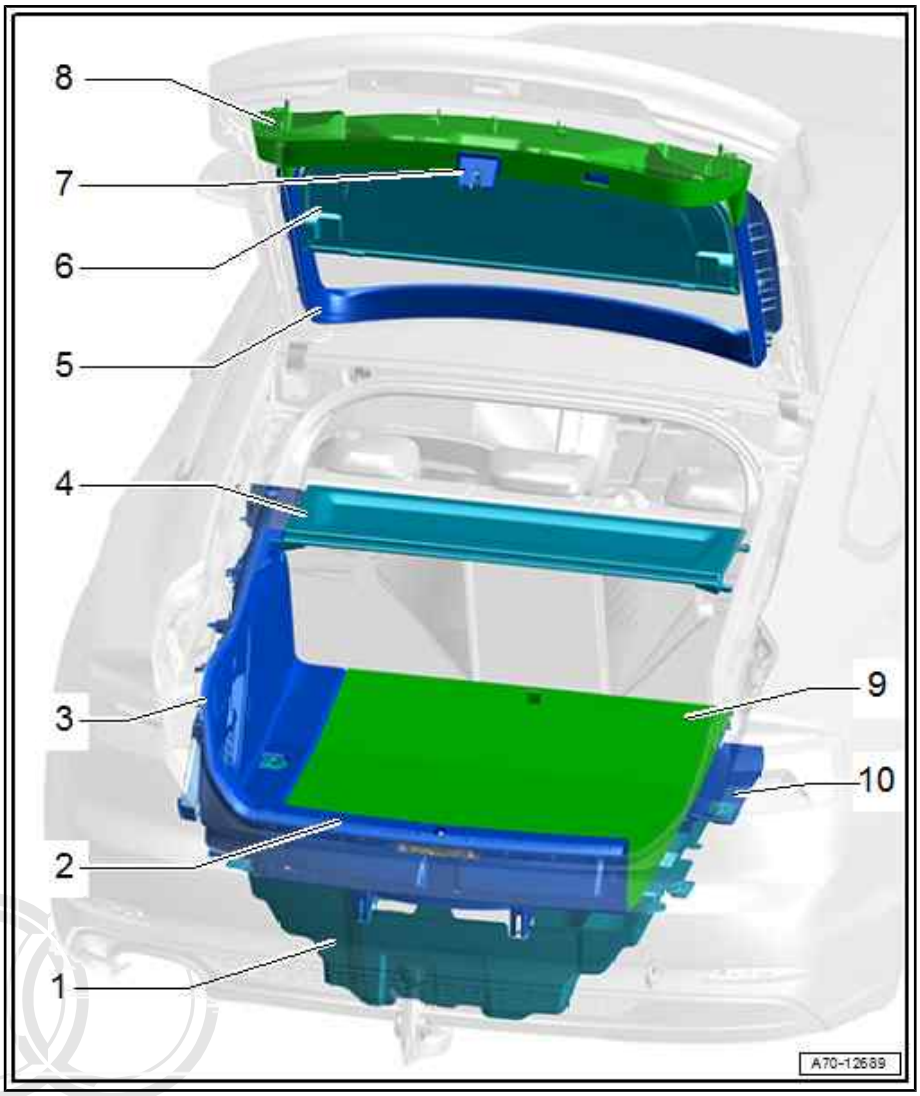
7 - Luggage compartment floor

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 316



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, A5 Sportback



1 - Lining for spare wheel well

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 344

2 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 313

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 313

4 - Luggage compartment cover (front)

- ❑ Insert in mountings in luggage compartment side trim panels

5 - Rear lid trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 322

6 - Luggage compartment cover (rear)

- ❑ Engaged in mountings in rear lid trim

7 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 322

8 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 322

9 - Luggage compartment floor

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 316

10 - Luggage compartment floor (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 316

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.1.3 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, A5 Cabriolet

1 - Mounting for jack

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 319

2 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 319

3 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 314

4 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 314

5 - Rear lid trim

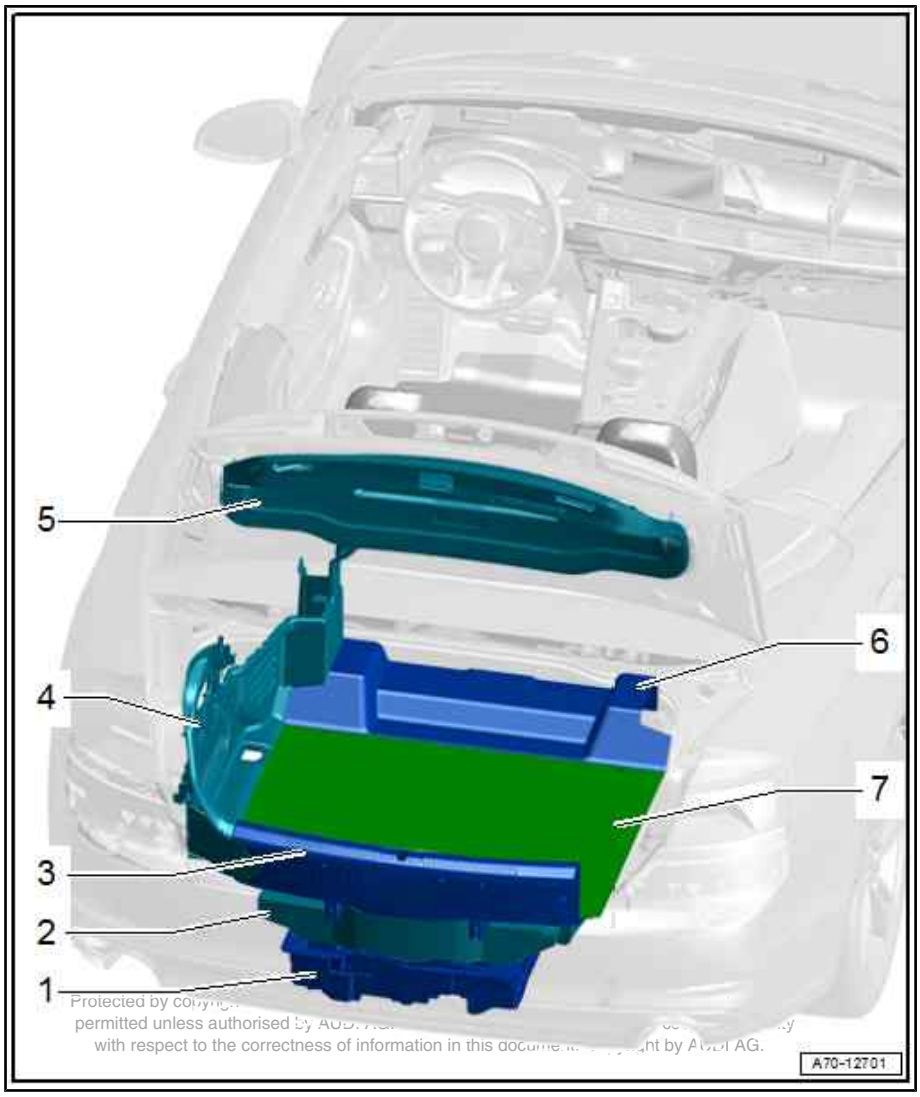
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 323

6 - Luggage compartment floor (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 319

7 - Luggage compartment floor (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 319



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

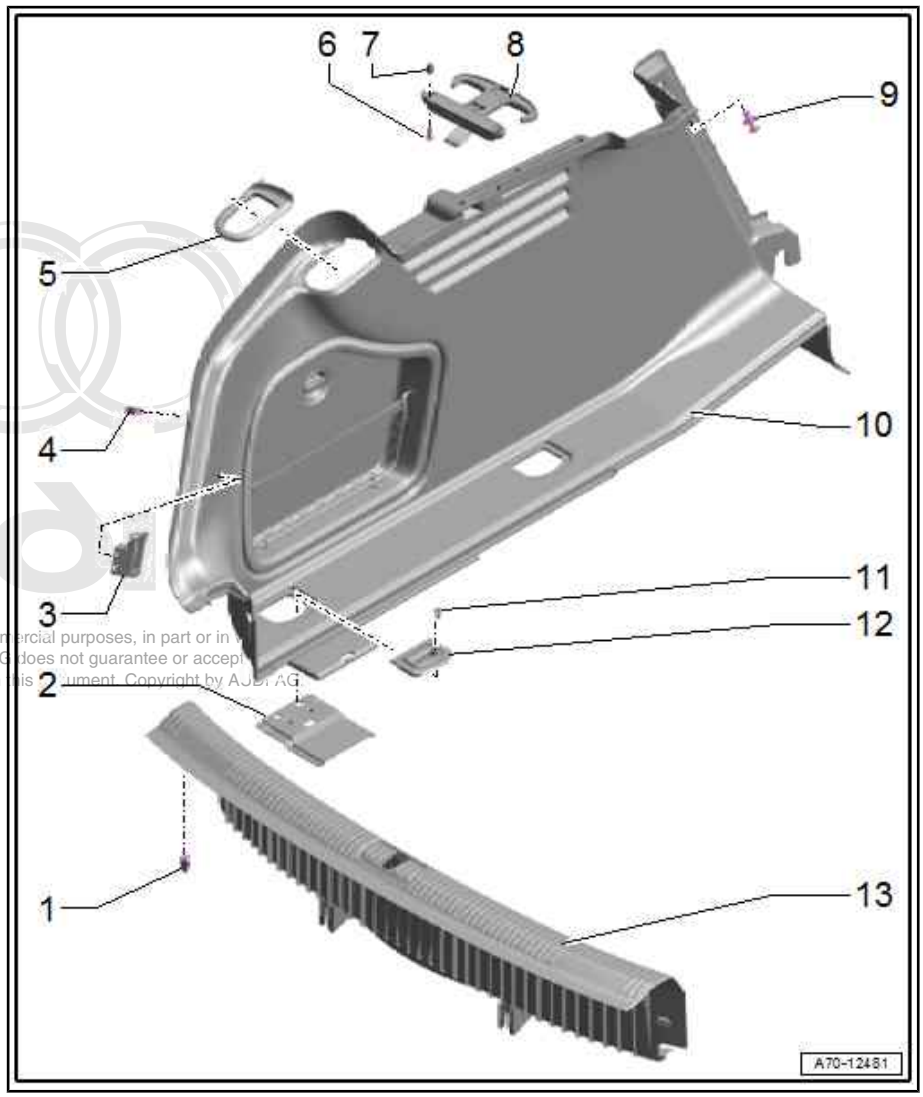
6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim

⇒ “6.2.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A5 Coupé”, page 311

⇒ “6.2.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A5 Sportback”, page 313

⇒ “6.2.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A5 Cabriolet”, page 314

6.2.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A5 Coupé



1 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Bracket for fastening ring

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.7.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A5 Coupé”, page 331

3 - Trim for towing bracket button

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment

4 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

5 - Frame for rear lid hinge

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.7.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A5 Coupé”, page 331
- ❑ Engage in trim and press on until it engages audibly

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.8 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 - Expanding nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clip into body

8 - Bag hook

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

9 - Fastener

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

10 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 331
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

12 - Fastening ring

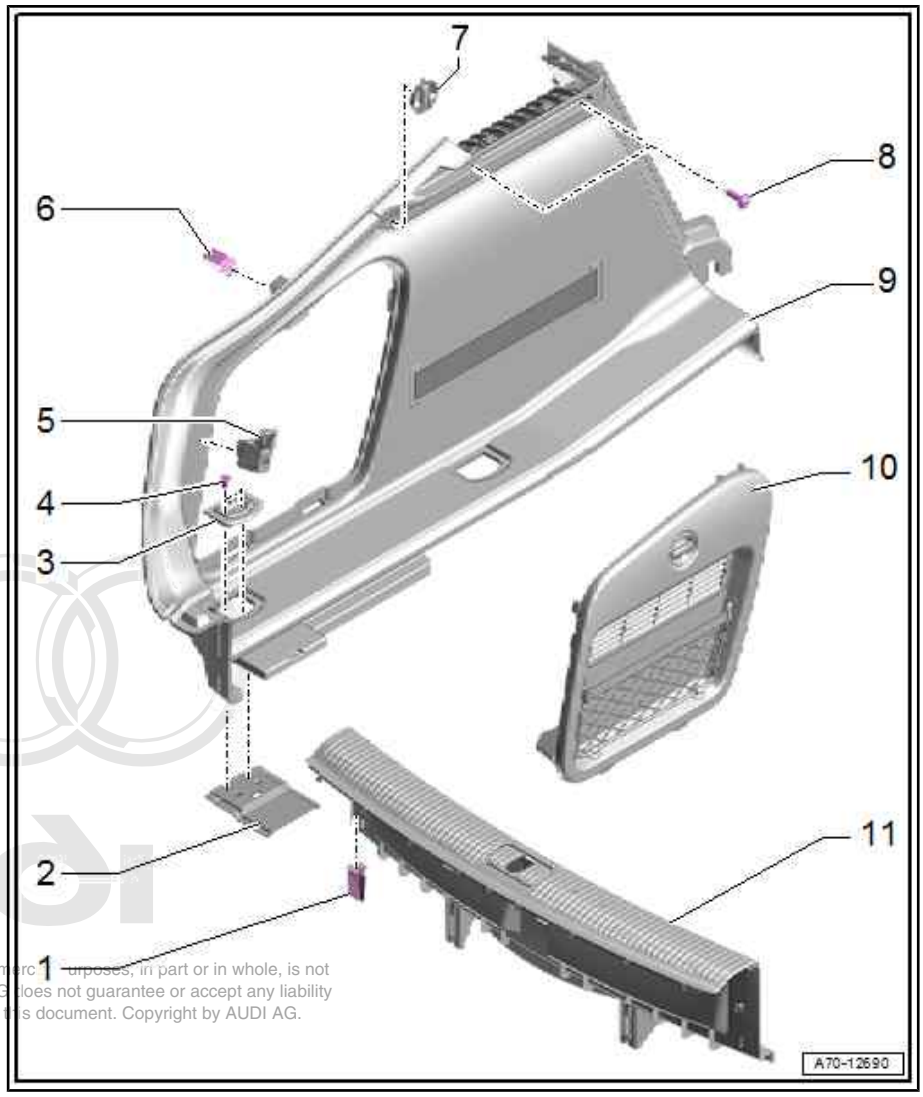
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341

13 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340
- ❑ Must engage in pins
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.2.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A5 Sportback



1 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Bracket for fastening ring

- ❑ Not for A5 g-tron
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.7.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A5 Sportback”, page 333

3 - Fastening ring

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - Trim for towing bracket button

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Bag hook

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

9 - Luggage compartment side trim

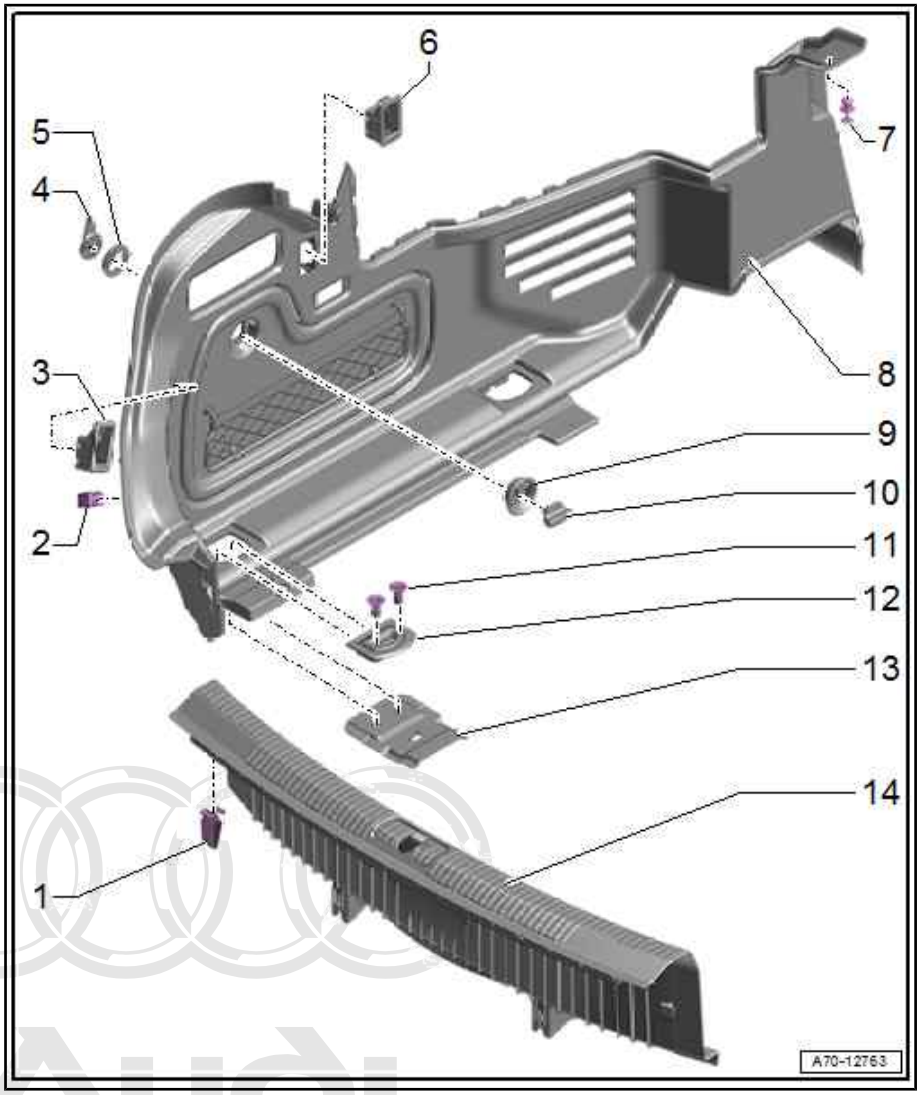
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 333
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

10 - Service cover

11 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340
- ❑ Must engage in pins
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

6.2.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Trim for towing bracket button

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment

4 - Locking bar

- ❑ For service cover
- ❑ Clip into rotary knob

5 - Locking disc

- ❑ For service cover housing
- ❑ Clip onto housing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Trim

- ❑ For button for convertible roof box operation
- ❑ Clip into trim

7 - Fastener

- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

8 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 335

- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

9 - Housing

- ❑ For service cover locking mechanism
- ❑ Clip into locking disc

10 - Rotary knob

- ❑ For service cover locking mechanism
- ❑ Clip into locking bar

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Fastening ring

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341

13 - Bracket for fastening ring

- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ “6.7.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A5 Cabriolet”, page 335

14 - Lock carrier trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 340
- ❑ Must engage in pins
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Fold over lip of rear lid seal

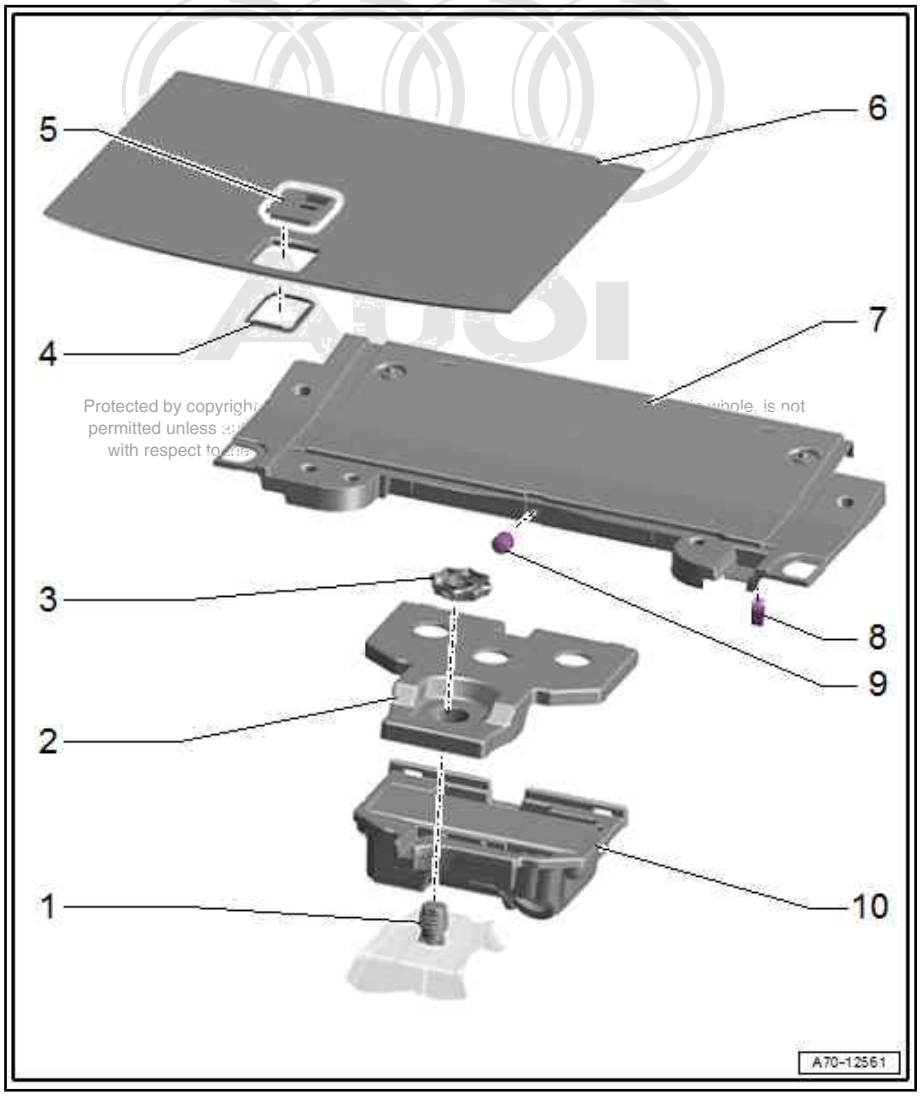
6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor

⇒ “6.3.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A5 Coupé/ Sportback except A5 g-tron”, page 316

⇒ “6.3.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A5 g-tron”, page 317

⇒ “6.3.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A5 Cabriolet”, page 319

6.3.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A5 Coupé/Sportback except A5 g-tron



1 - Bracket

- ❑ For cover for tool box
- ❑ Engage in retainer plate

2 - Cover

- ❑ For tool box

3 - Nut

- ❑ For cover for tool box

4 - Retaining frame

- ❑ For grip for luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Can only be pressed onto grip for luggage compartment floor in one position
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Grip

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

6 - Luggage compartment floor

- ❑ Equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 337

7 - Luggage compartment floor (front)

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 337

8 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in luggage compartment floor (rear) for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

9 - Fastener

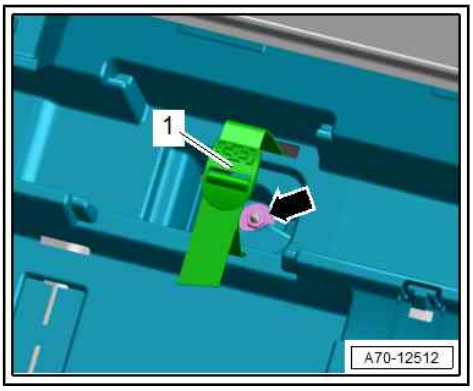
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

10 - Tool box

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

Tightening torque - retaining strap for jack

– Tighten nut -arrow- to 2 Nm.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.3.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A5 g-tron

1 - Bracket for fastening ring

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341

2 - Bolts

- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Fastening ring

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341

4 - Bolts

- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 55 Nm

6 - Trim strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.7.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A5 Sportback”, page 333

7 - Bolt

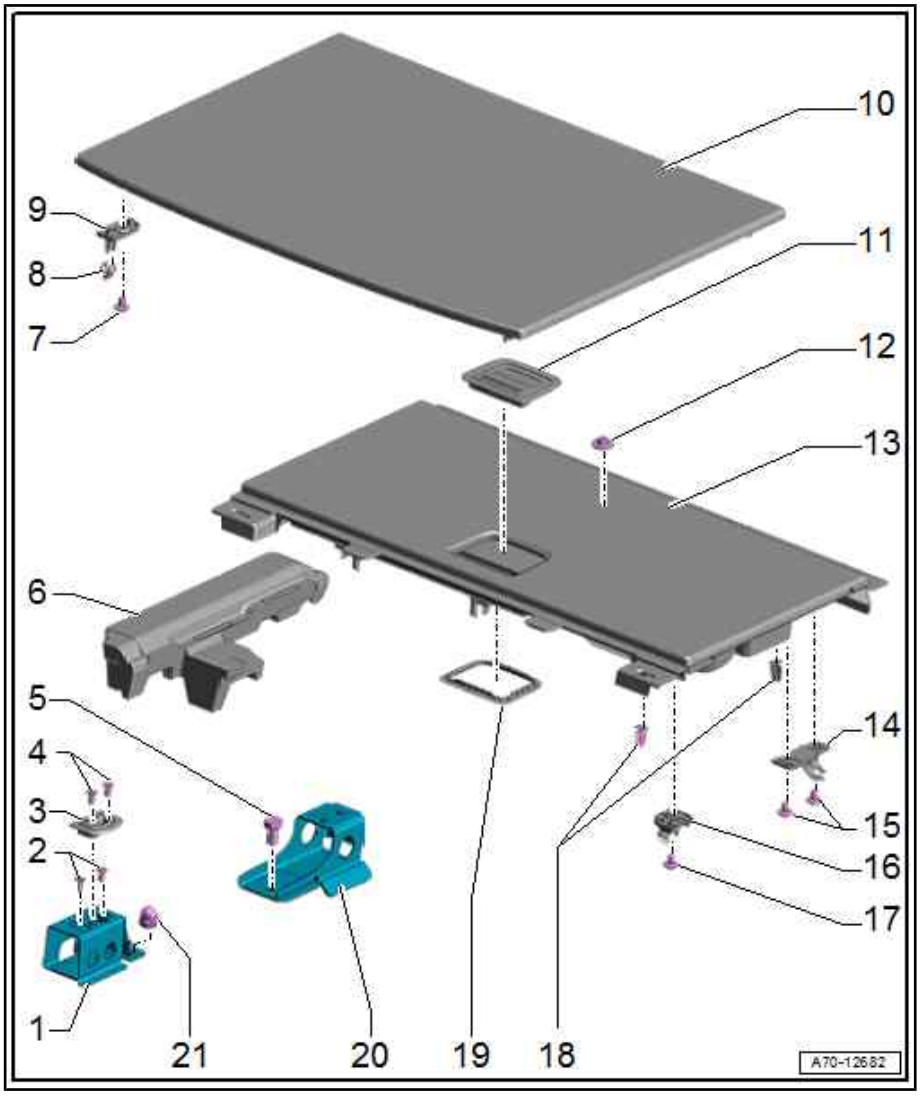
- ❑ 1 Nm

8 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in bracket
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

9 - Bracket

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ 4x



10 - Luggage compartment floor (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338

11 - Grip

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

12 - Nut

- ❑ For retaining strap
- ❑ 2 Nm

13 - Luggage compartment floor (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 338

14 - Support

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor (front)
- ❑ 2x

15 - Bolts

- ❑ 1 Nm

16 - Retaining hook

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor (front)
- ❑ 2x

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 1 Nm

18 - Clip

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Insert in luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

19 - Retaining frame

- ❑ For grip for luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Can only be pressed onto grip for luggage compartment floor in one position
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

20 - Bracket for fastening ring

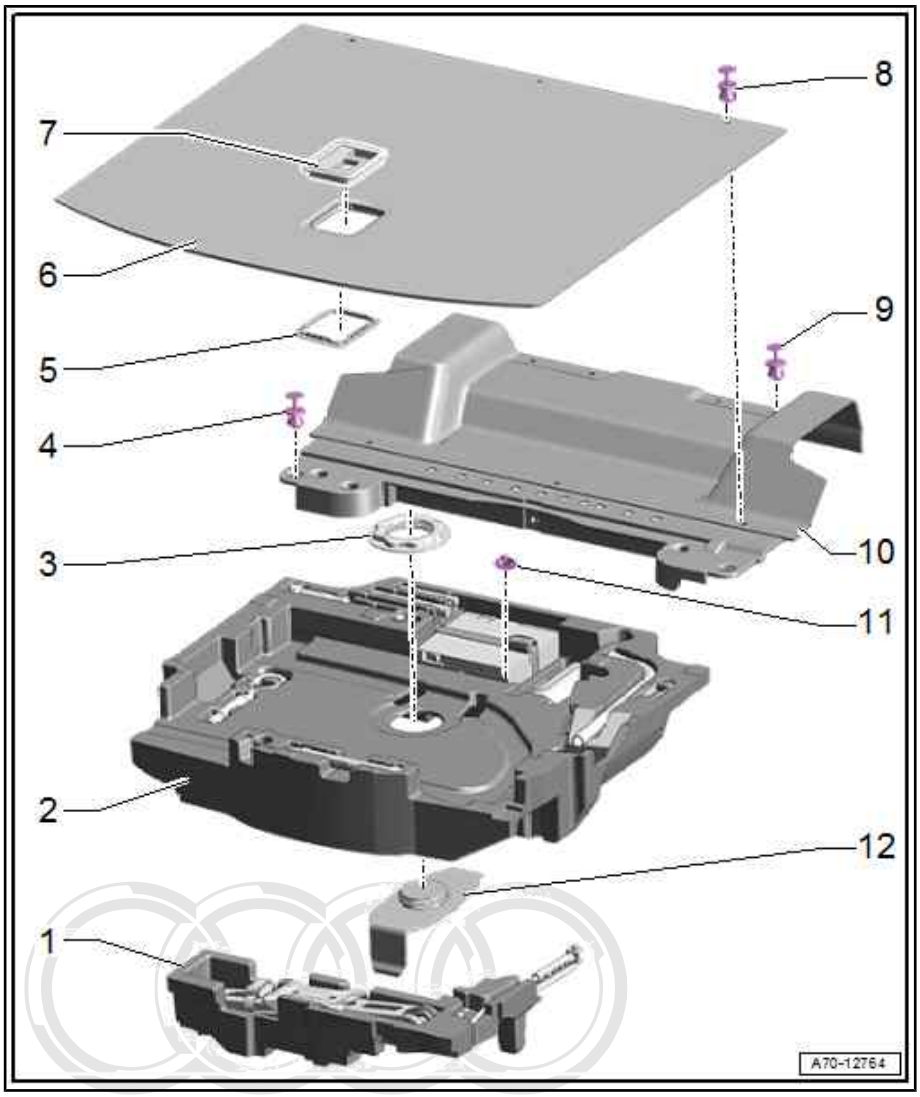
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341

21 - Nut

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.3.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Mounting for jack

2 - Storage compartment

- ❑ For tools and windbreak

3 - Nut

- ❑ For storage compartment

4 - Fastener

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

5 - Retaining frame

- ❑ For grip for luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Can only be pressed onto grip for luggage compartment floor in one position
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Luggage compartment floor (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 339

7 - Grip

- ❑ For luggage compartment floor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 342

8 - Fastener

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

9 - Fastener

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

10 - Luggage compartment floor (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 339

11 - Nut

- ❑ For retaining strap
- ❑ 2 Nm

12 - Bracket

- ❑ For storage compartment
- ❑ Clip into retaining bracket for battery

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

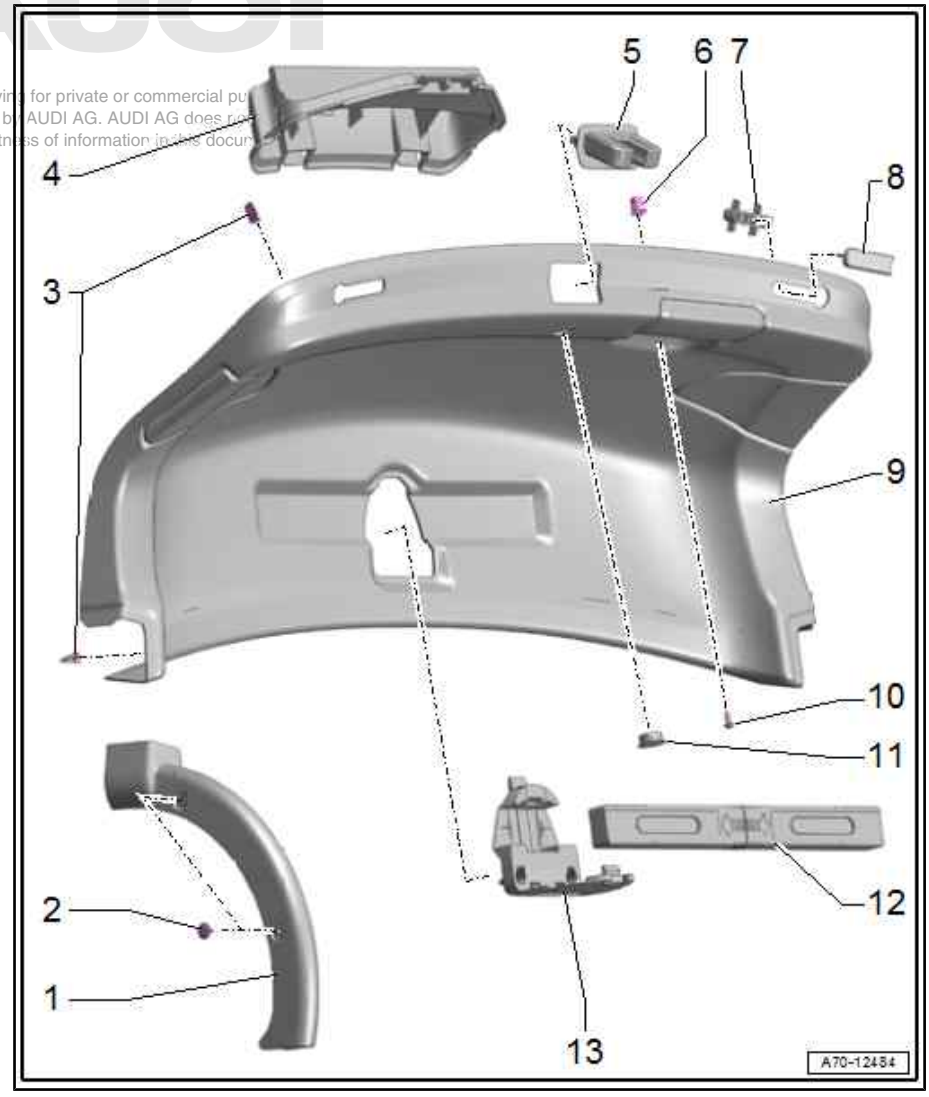
6.4 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)

⇒ “6.4.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom), A5 Coupé”, page 320

⇒ “6.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, A5 Sportback”, page 322

⇒ “6.4.3 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom), A5 Cabriolet”, page 323

6.4.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom), A5 Coupé



1 - Rear lid hinge trim

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.5.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Coupé”, page 324

2 - Fastener

- ❑ 4x

3 - Clip

- ❑ 10x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Anti-theft bracket

- ❑ Clip into rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.5.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Coupé”, page 324

5 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.5.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Coupé”, page 324
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Expanding nut

- ❑ Clip into rear lid

7 - Bracket for stop strip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clip into rear lid

8 - Stop strip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.5.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Coupé”, page 324
- ❑ Clip into bracket

9 - Rear lid trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 324
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

11 - Cover for manual release mechanism

- ❑ NAR version: manual release mechanism ⇒ page 321
- ❑ Unclip using a screwdriver
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

12 - Warning triangle

13 - Bracket for warning triangle

- ❑ Engage in rear lid and press on until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Manual release mechanism - NAR version

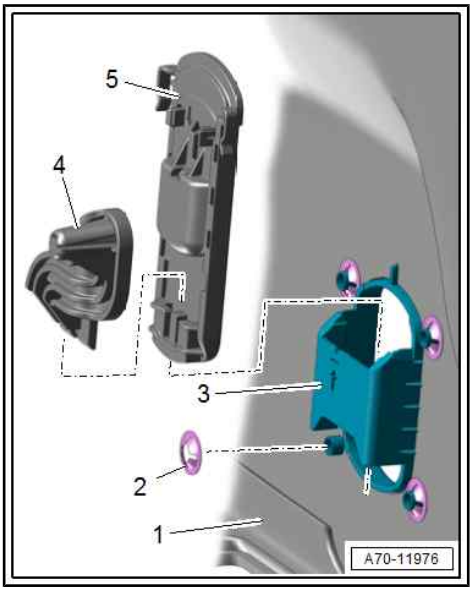
1 - Rear lid trim

2 - Clamping washers (4x)

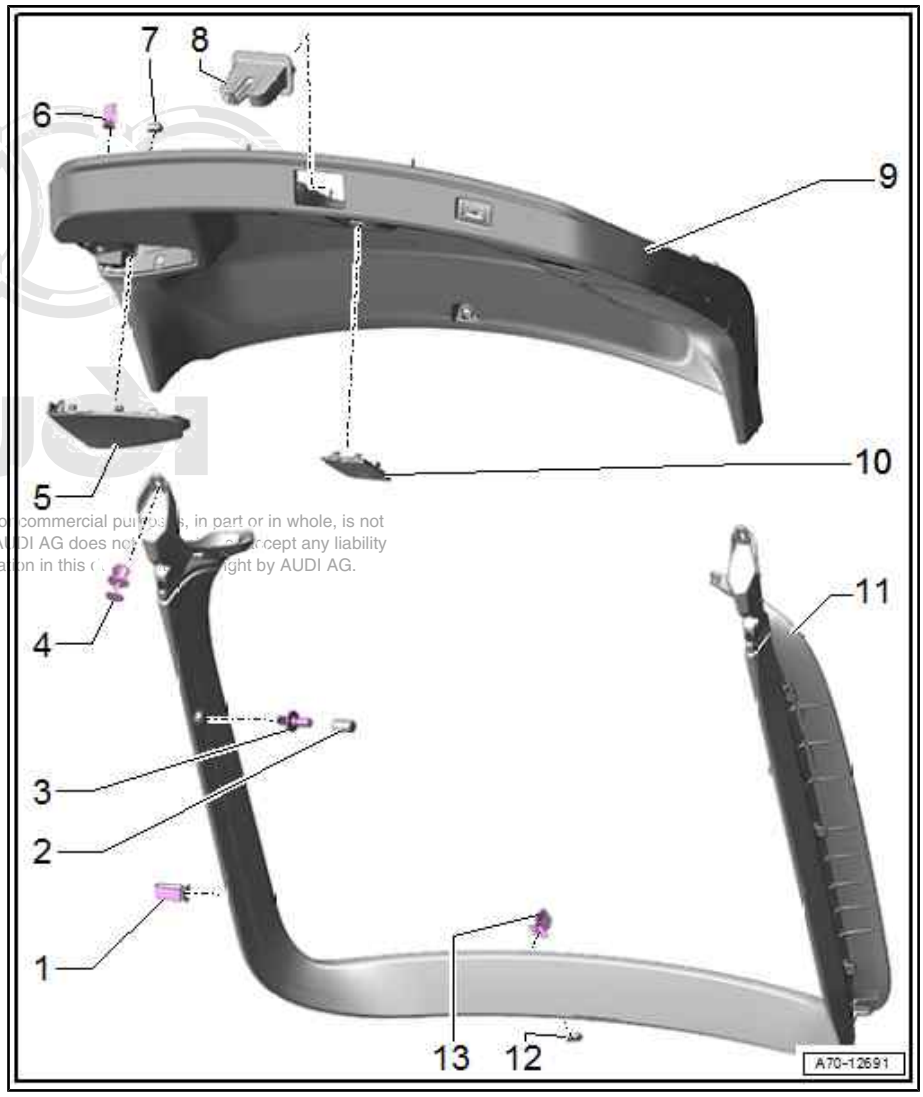
3 - Trim for manual release mechanism

4 - Manual release lever

5 - Manual release actuator



6.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, A5 Sportback



1 - Clip

- ❑ 6x (at sides)
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

2 - Protective cap

- ❑ 2x

3 - Mounting

- ❑ For luggage compartment cover
- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - Fastener

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

5 - Cover

- ❑ For tail light
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 344
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Clip

- ❑ 12x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

7 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ 7x
- ❑ Insert in trim

8 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.5.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Sportback”, page 327
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

9 - Rear lid trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 327
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

10 - Cover for manual release mechanism

- ❑ Unclip using removal wedge - 3409-
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

11 - Rear lid trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 330
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

12 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim

13 - Clip

- ❑ 5x (at top)
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

6.4.3 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom), A5 Cabriolet

1 - Bracket for warning triangle

- ❑ Engage in rear lid and press on until it engages audibly

2 - Rear lid trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 328
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - Clip

- ❑ 10x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

4 - Trim for rear lid lock

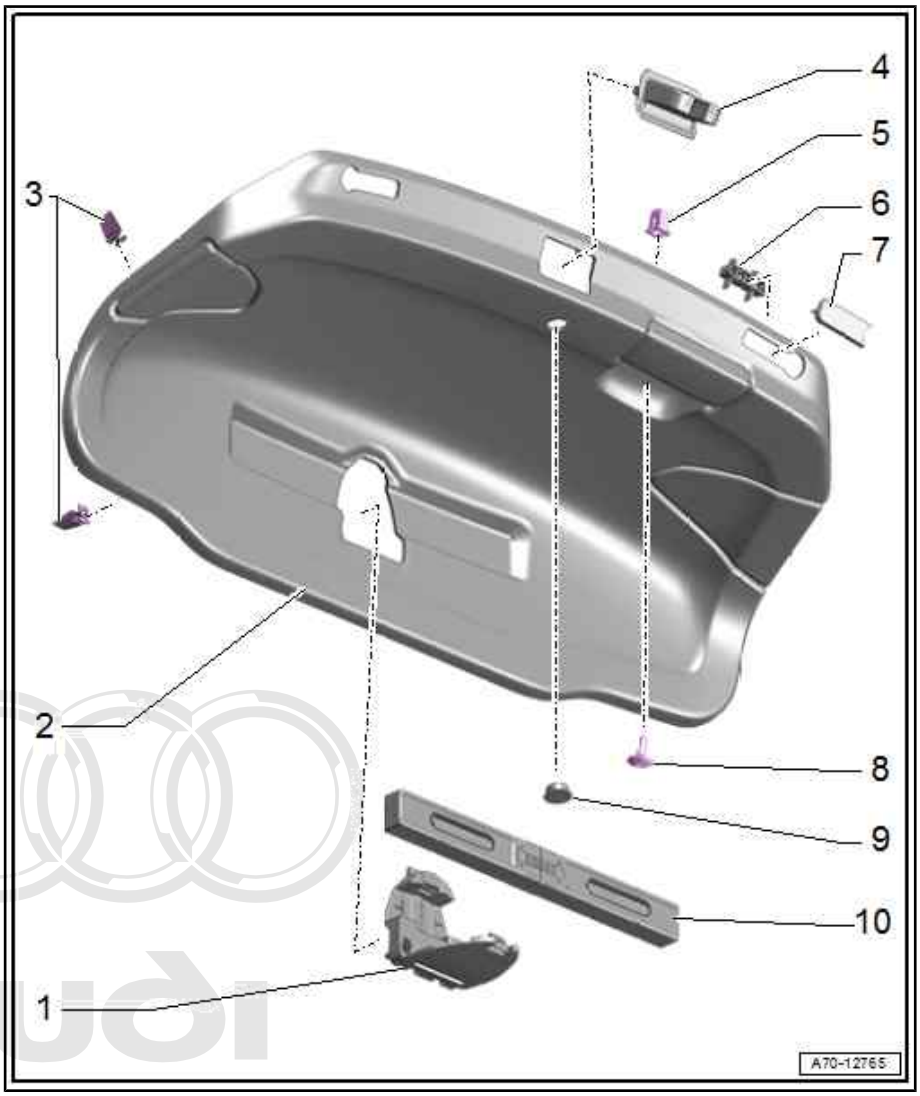
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.5.3 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Cabriolet”, page 328
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

5 - Expanding nut

- ❑ Clip into rear lid

6 - Bracket for stop strip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Clip into rear lid



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 - Stop strip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “6.5.3 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Cabriolet”, page 328
- ❑ Clip into bracket

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

9 - Cover for manual release mechanism

- ❑ Unclip using a screwdriver
- ❑ Clip into rear lid trim

10 - Warning triangle

6.5 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

⇒ “6.5.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Coupé”, page 324

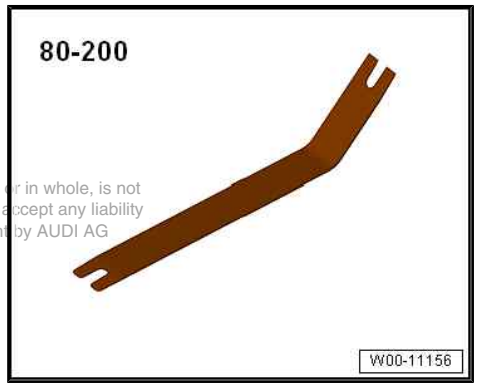
⇒ “6.5.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Sportback”, page 327

⇒ “6.5.3 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Cabriolet”, page 328

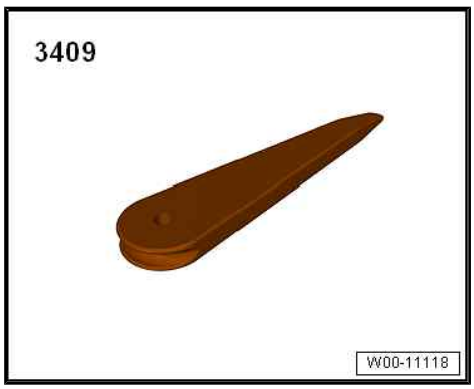
6.5.1 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Coupé

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal lever - 80-200-

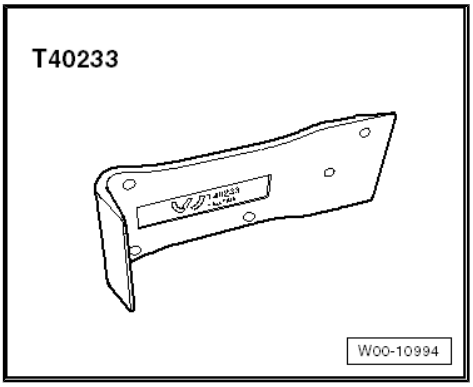


- ♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

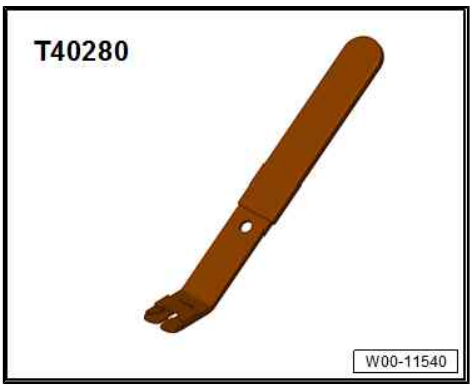


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



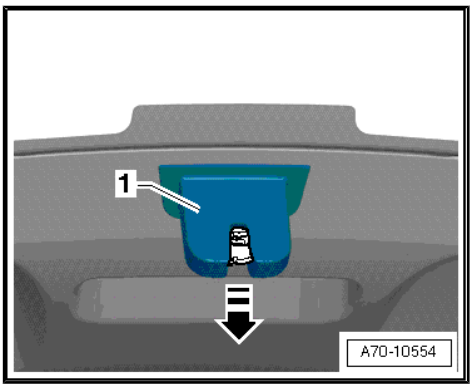
♦ Removal tool - T40280-



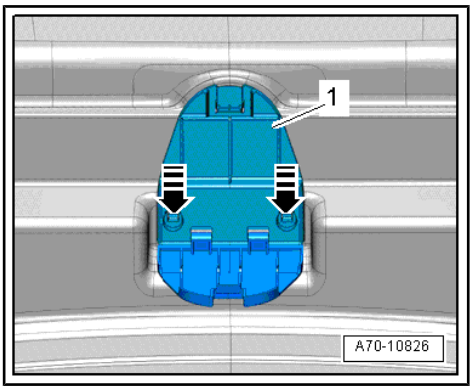
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

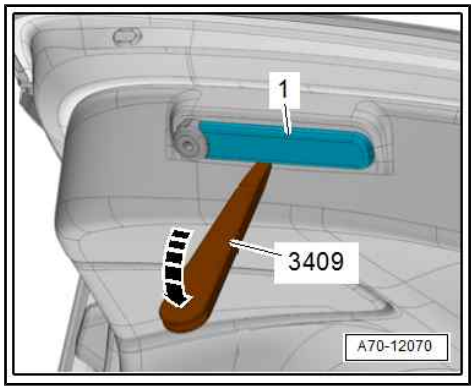
– Unclip trim for rear lid lock -1- in direction of -arrow- using removal wedge - T40233- .



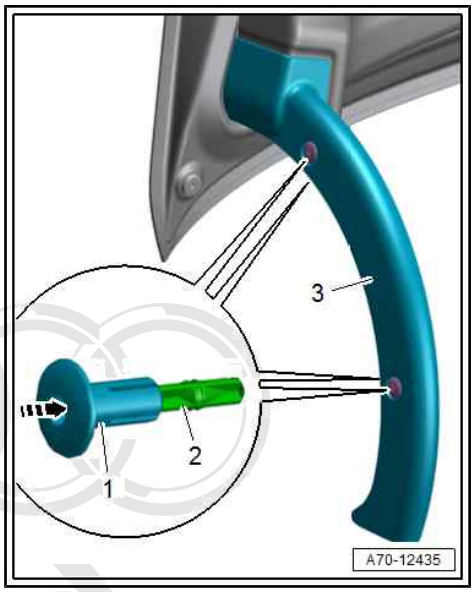
– Press release mechanism and remove warning triangle from bracket.
– Release retaining tabs -arrows- with a screwdriver and detach bracket for warning triangle -1-.



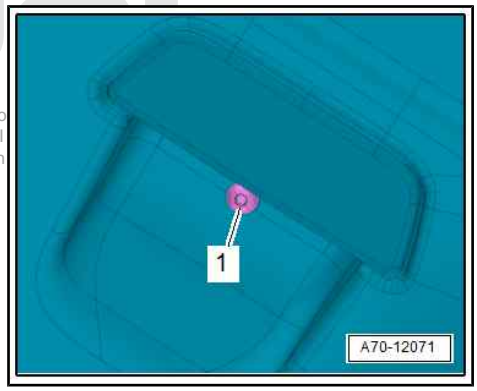
– Unclip stop strip -1- -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.



– To remove fastener -1-, carefully press locking pin -2- approx. 5 mm into fastener -arrow- until it disengages audibly (do not press through completely, otherwise locking pin will be lost).
– Remove released fastener together with locking pin.
– Pull rear lid hinge trim -3- downwards out of rear lid trim and detach.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

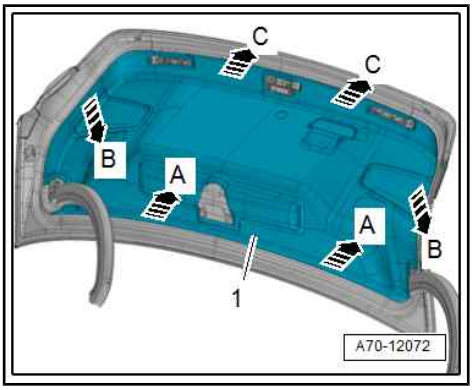


– Remove bolt -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI
with respect to the correctness of information

– Starting at top, unclip rear lid trim -1- from rear lid using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows A-.
– Unclip rear lid trim from rear lid at sides -arrows B-.
– Unclip rear lid trim from rear lid at bottom -arrows C- and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Depending on equipment version: Check that manual release mechanism is functioning correctly after installing trim.
– To do so, lock the rear lid lock using a screwdriver and operate manual release.

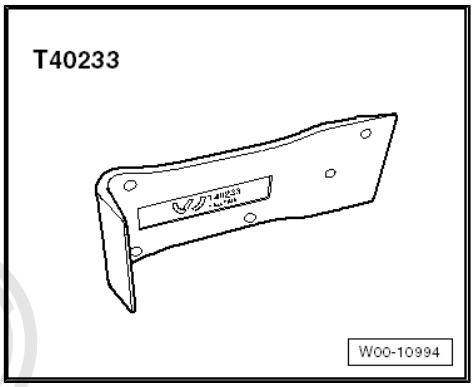
• The rear lid lock must unlock.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.4.1 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom), A5 Coupé”, page 320

6.5.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

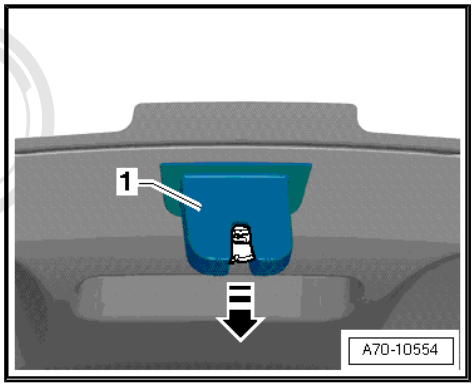
Removing

– Unclip trim for rear lid lock -1- in direction of -arrow- using removal wedge - T40233- .

– Remove luggage compartment cover (rear).

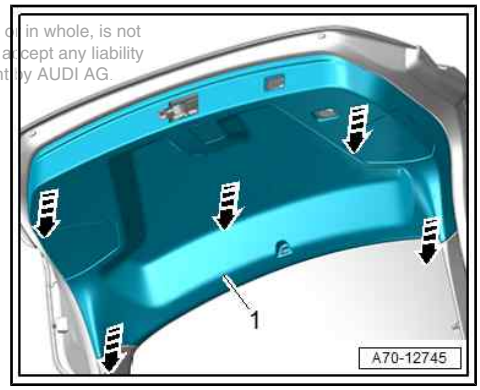
– If fitted, remove rear lid closure button ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406- .

– Remove rear lid light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment .



– Starting at top, unclip trim -1- from rear lid using removal lever - T40233- -arrows-.

– Release remaining clips for trim and detach trim.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

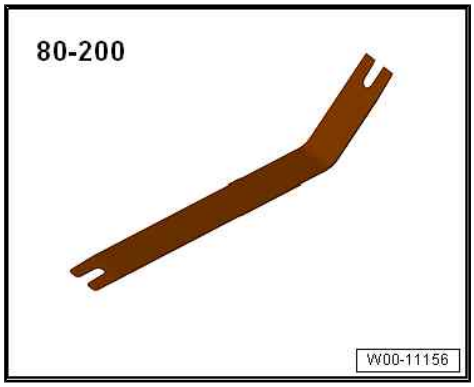
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "6.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, A5 Sportback", page 322

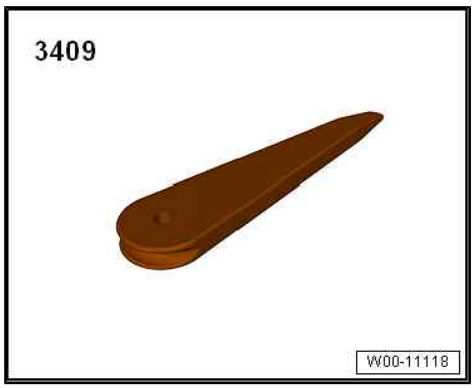
6.5.3 Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

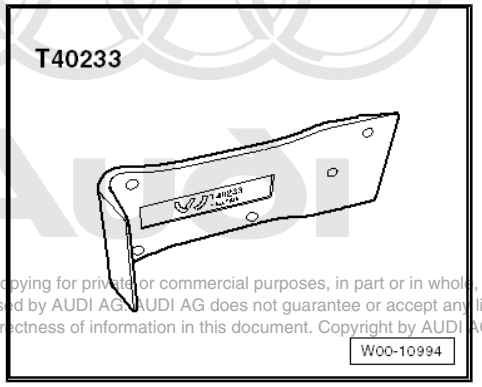
♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

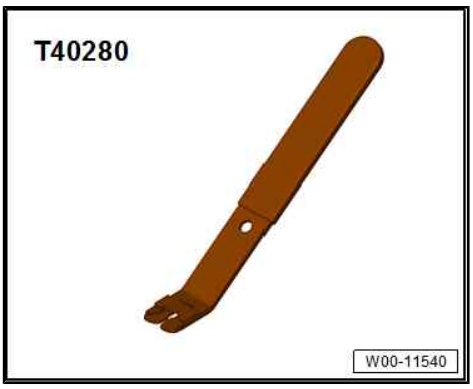


♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



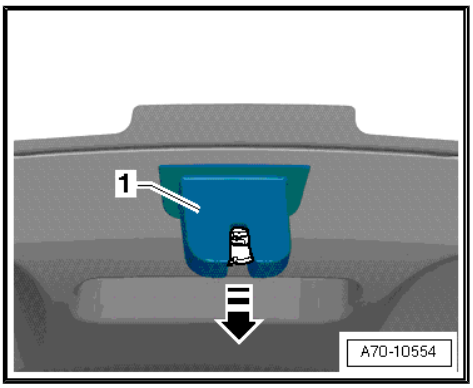
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



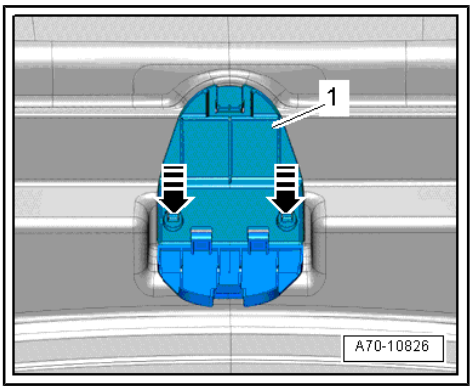
Removing

– Unclip trim for rear lid lock -1- in direction of -arrow- using removal wedge - T40233- .

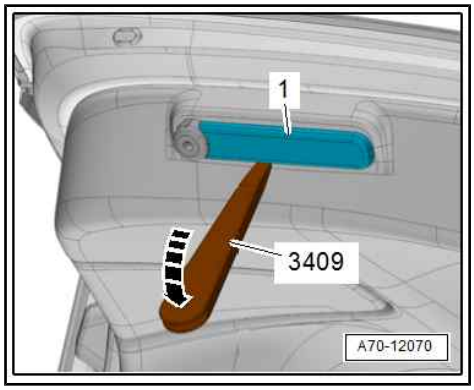


– Press release mechanism and remove warning triangle from bracket.

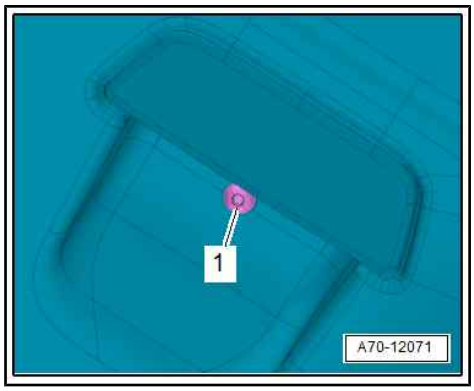
– Release retaining tabs -arrows- with a screwdriver and detach bracket for warning triangle -1-.



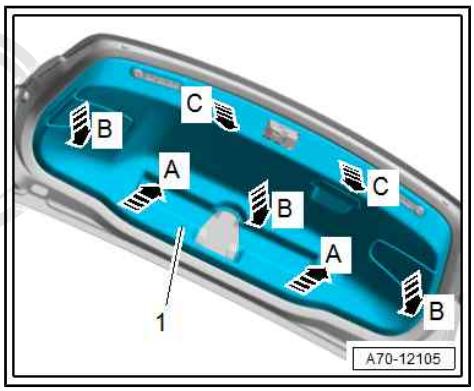
– Unclip stop strip -1- -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.



– Remove bolt -1-.



– Starting at top, unclip rear lid trim -1- from rear lid using removal lever - 80-200- -arrows A-.
– Unclip rear lid trim from rear lid at sides and in centre -arrows B-.
– Unclip rear lid trim from rear lid at bottom -arrows C- and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

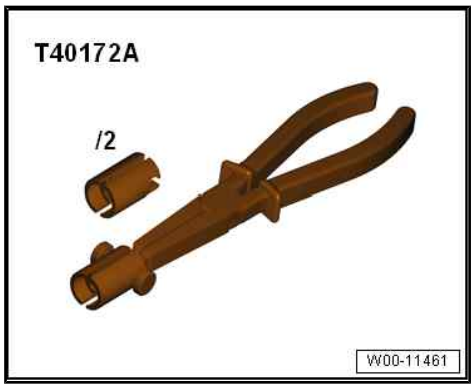
⇒ "6.4.3 Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom), A5 Cabriolet", page 323

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

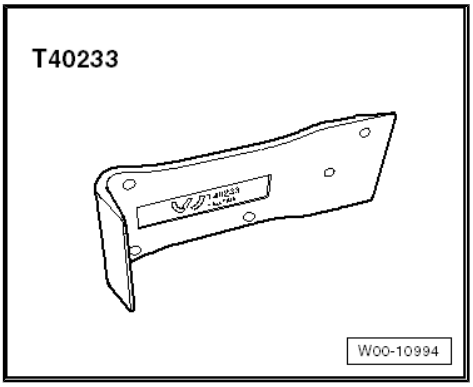
6.6 Removing and installing rear lid trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

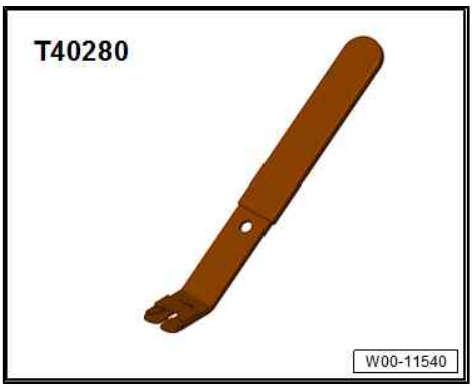
♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



♦ Removal wedge - T40233-

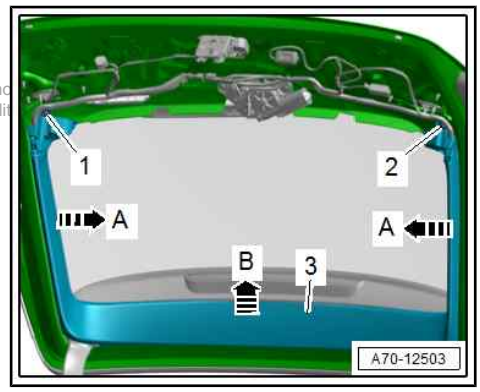


♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ page 327 .
– Remove fasteners -1, 2- using pliers - T40172 A- .
– Unclip trim -3- from rear lid from the side using removal wedge - T40233- -arrows A-.
– Release remaining clips for trim -arrow B- and detach trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, A5 Sportback”, page 322

6.7 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

⇒ “6.7.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A5 Coupé”, page 331

⇒ “6.7.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A5 Sportback”, page 333

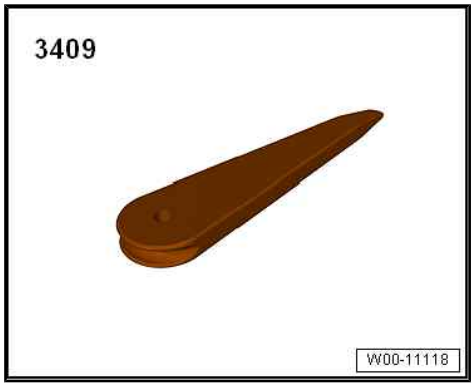
⇒ “6.7.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A5 Cabriolet”, page 335

6.7.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A5 Coupé

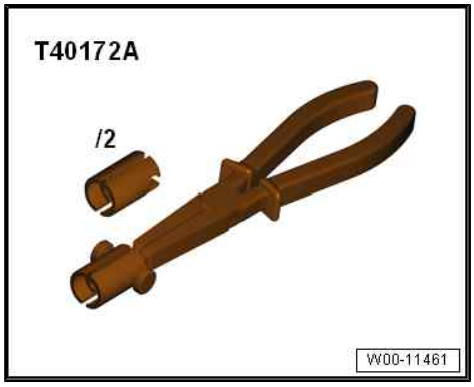
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

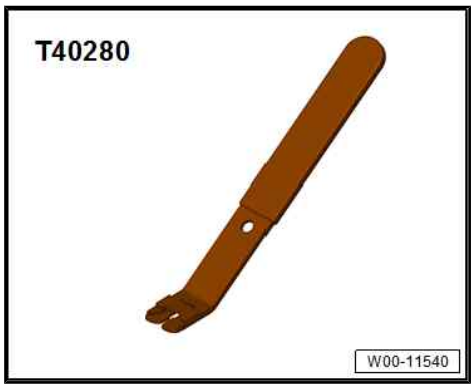
- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Pliers - T40172 A-



- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Driver side: Remove electric hinged tow coupling attachment button (if fitted) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove luggage compartment light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment .

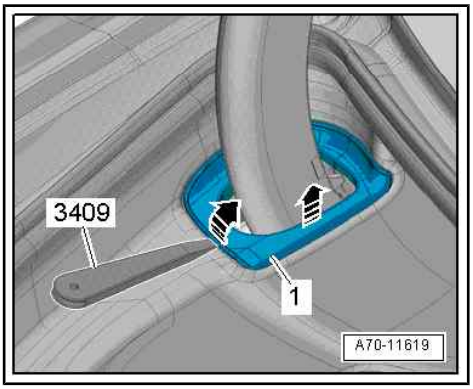
– Remove fastening ring ⇒ page 341 .

– Remove backrest remote release mechanism and move it to one side with Bowden cable installed ⇒ page 495 .

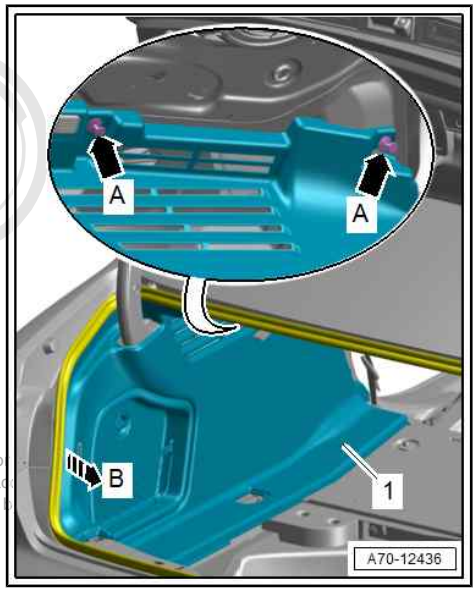
– Take out luggage compartment floor (rear).

– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ page 340 .

– Unclip frame for rear lid hinge -1- -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .
– Pull frame out of luggage compartment side trim, release fastener and disengage frame at rear lid hinge.

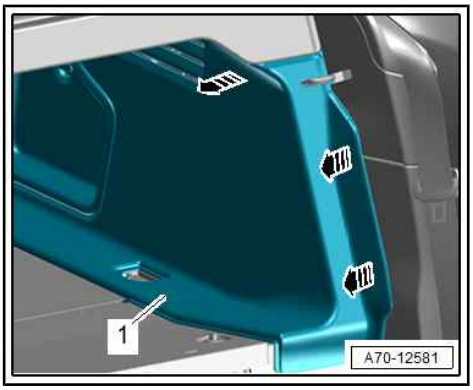


– Remove fasteners -arrows A- using pliers - T40172 A- .
– Move luggage compartment side trim clear in vicinity of rear lid seal.
– Unclip luggage compartment side trim -1- from body -arrow B-.
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at rear lid hinge.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part o
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

– Unclip luggage compartment side trim -1- from side trim at front -arrows-.
– Pull out luggage compartment side trim under rear shelf, disengage at catch for rear seat backrest and detach.



Installing

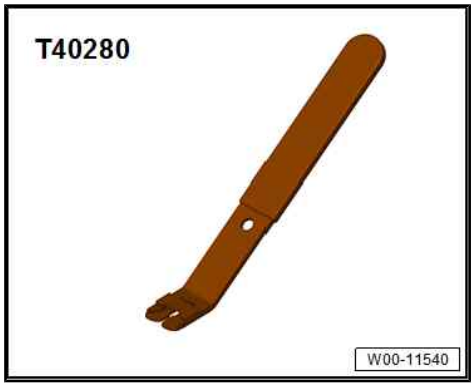
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.2.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A5 Coupé”, page 311

6.7.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A5 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove luggage compartment cover (front).

– Driver side: Remove electric hinged tow coupling attachment button (if fitted) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment .

– Remove luggage compartment light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment .

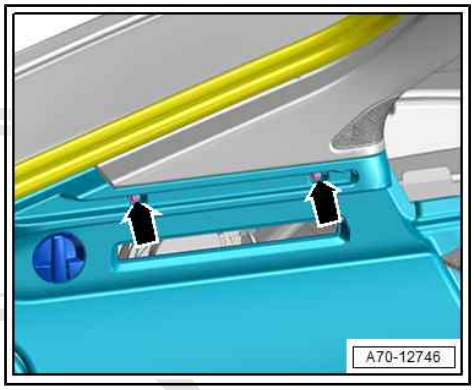
– Remove side padding ⇒ page 552 .

– Remove fastening rings ⇒ page 341 .

– Remove luggage compartment floor ⇒ page 338 .

– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ page 340 .

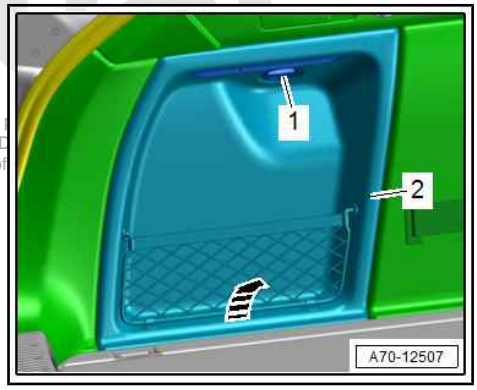
– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Turn quick-release fastener -1- 90° anti-clockwise and swivel service cover towards inside.

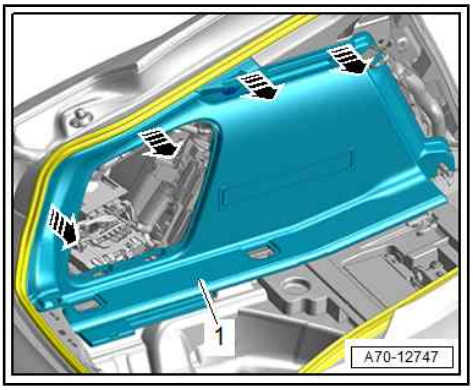
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector.

– Remove service cover -2- upwards from luggage compartment side trim -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for
with respect to the correctness of

– Move luggage compartment side trim clear in vicinity of rear lid seal.
– Unclip luggage compartment side trim -1- from body and from trim -arrows-.
– Disengage luggage compartment side trim at catch for rear seat backrest.
– Remove luggage compartment side trim.



Installing

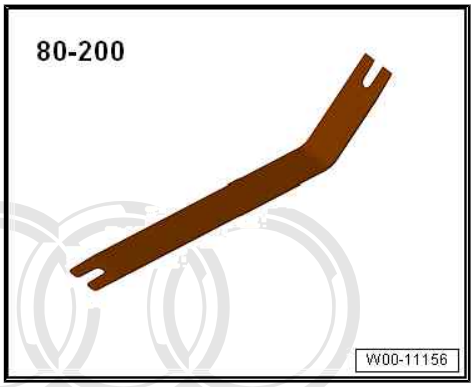
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.2.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A5 Sportback”, page 313

6.7.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



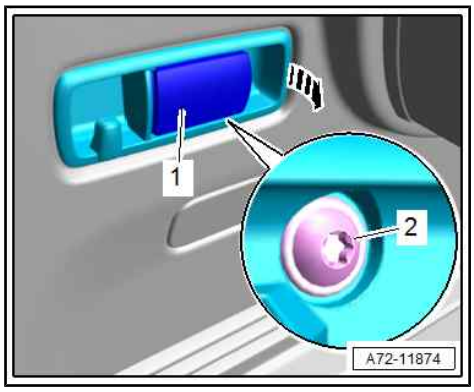
♦ Removal tool - T40280-

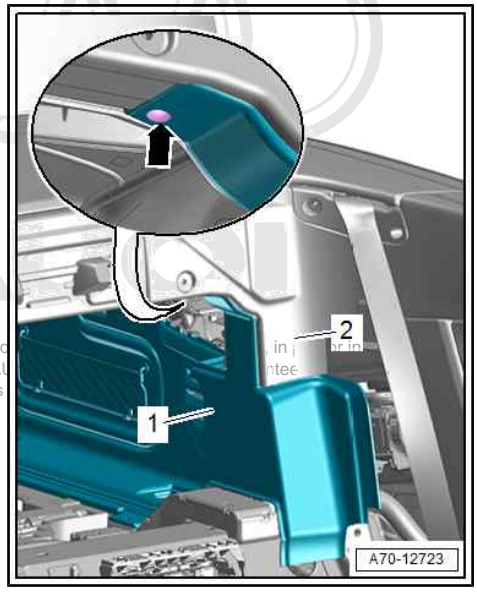


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

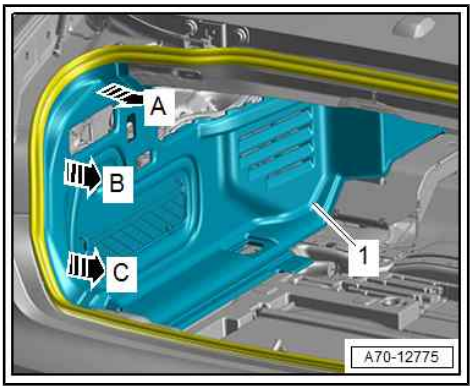
- Remove side trim for convertible roof compartment ⇒ page 363 .
- Close convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid.
- Fold convertible roof compartment tray upwards; to do so, press button for convertible roof box operation - E896- .
- Remove centre trim for convertible roof compartment ⇒ page 365 .
- Passenger side: Disengage manual release cable for tank flap unit.
- Driver side: Remove electric hinged tow coupling attachment button (if fitted) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment .
- Pull lever -1- to release rear seat backrest.
- While still pulling lever, remove bolt -2-.
- Prise backrest remote release mechanism out of luggage compartment side trim -arrow- and let it hang down with Bowden cable attached.
- Driver side: Remove button for convertible roof box operation - E896- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment .
- Remove luggage compartment light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment .
- Remove fastening ring ⇒ page 341 .
- Remove luggage compartment floor ⇒ page 339 .
- Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ page 340 .
- Remove side padding ⇒ page 553 .
- Remove fastener -arrow- using pliers - T40172 A- .
- Pull luggage compartment side trim -1- out from underneath back panel trim -2- and move it clear.





Protected by copyright. Copying fo
permitted unless authorised by AU
with respect to the correctness

– Move luggage compartment side trim clear in vicinity of rear lid seal.
– Unclip luggage compartment side trim -1- from body -arrows A, B, C-.
– Pull luggage compartment side trim slightly inwards.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector.
– Unclip Bowden cable retainer from luggage compartment side trim with a screwdriver and guide out backrest release mechanism.
– Detach luggage compartment side trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.2.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim, A5 Cabriolet”, page 314

6.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor

⇒ “6.8.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - A5 Coupé/Sportback except A5 g-tron”, page 337

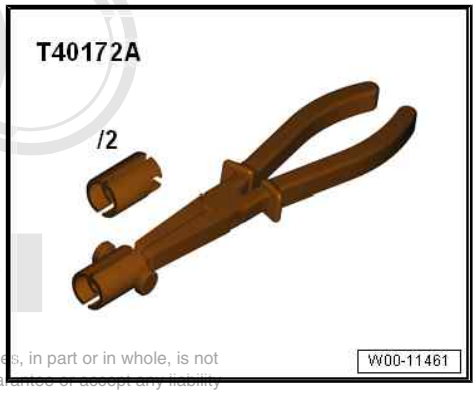
⇒ “6.8.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - A5 g-tron”, page 338

⇒ “6.8.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - A5 Cabriolet”, page 339

6.8.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - A5 Coupé/Sportback except A5 g-tron

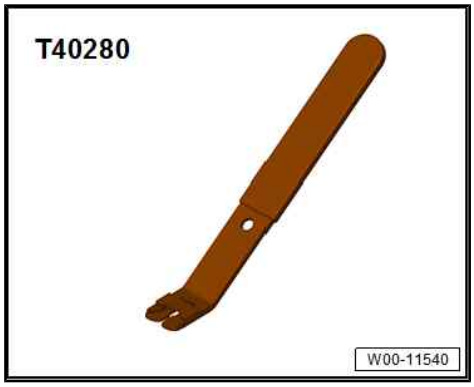
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

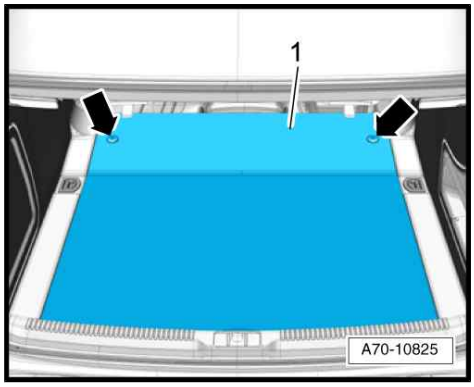
♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

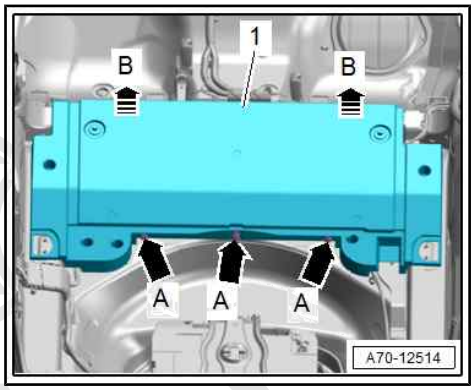
– Unclip luggage compartment floor -1- at retainers (front) -arrows- and remove.

– Remove luggage compartment side trim panels ⇒ page 331 .



– Depending on equipment version: Remove 1 or 3 fasteners -arrows A- using pliers - T40172 A- .

– Unclip luggage compartment floor (front) -1- upwards -arrows B- and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.3.1 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A5 Coupé/ Sportback except A5 g-tron", page 316

6.8.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - A5 g-tron

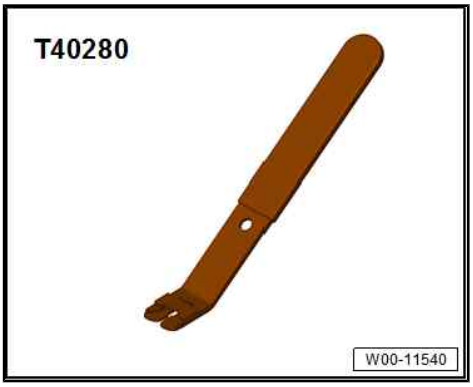
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



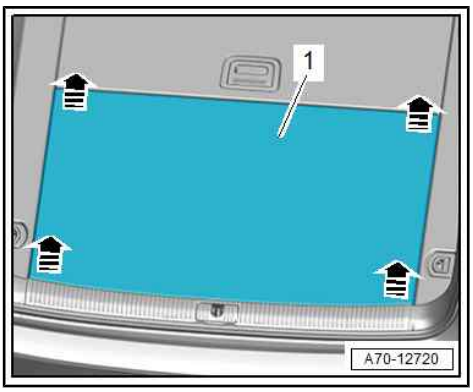
♦ Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

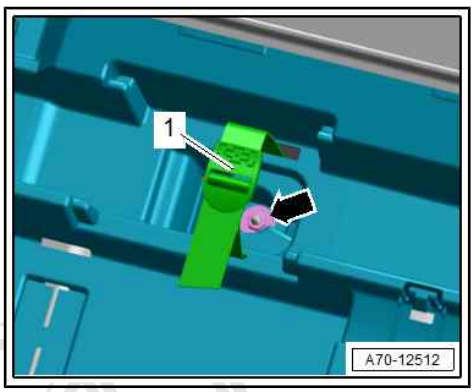
– Unclip corners of luggage compartment floor (rear) -1- -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Take out luggage compartment floor (rear).



– Open lid for tool kit mounting.

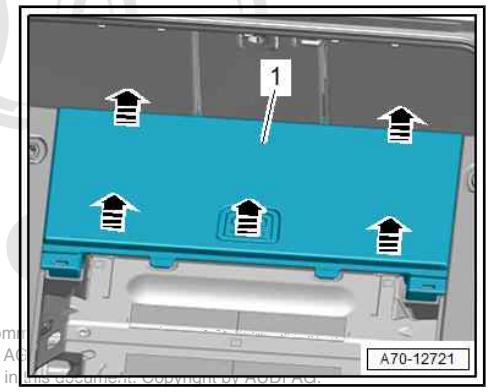
– If fitted, remove jack, and unscrew nut -arrow- for retaining strap -1-.



– Fold down rear seat backrests.

– Unclip luggage compartment floor (front) -1- -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Take out luggage compartment floor (front) with tool kit.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

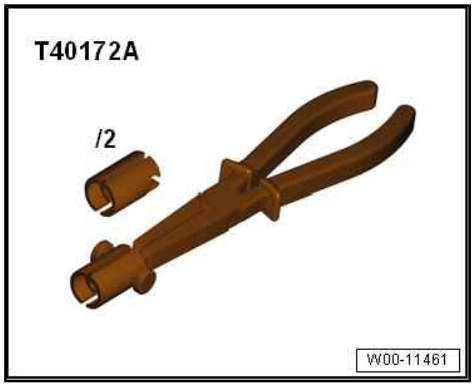
⇒ "6.3.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A5 g-tron", page 317

Copyright by AUDI AG. Any storage or commercial exploitation is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

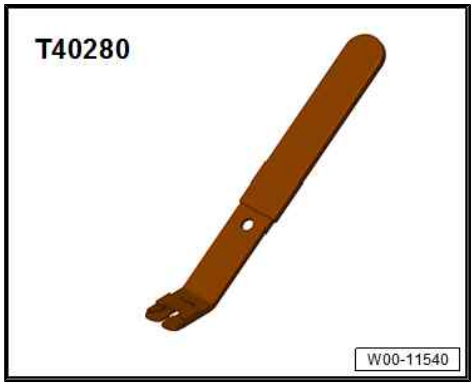
6.8.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pliers - T40172 A-



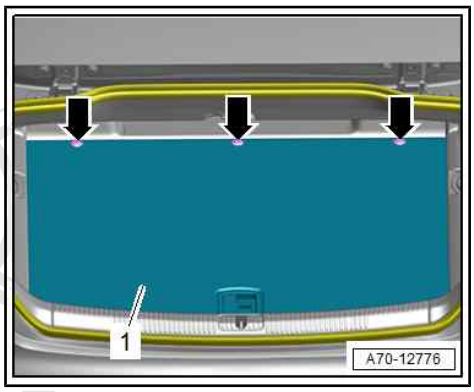
- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

– Remove fasteners -arrows- using pliers - T40172 A- .

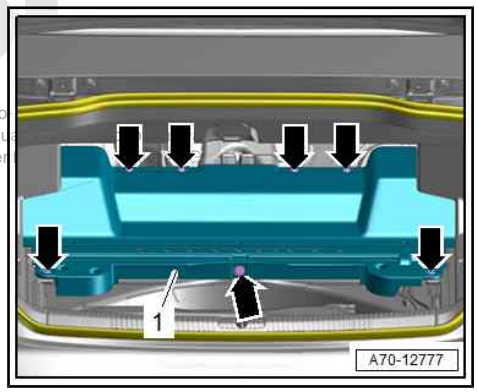
– Take out luggage compartment floor (rear) -1-.



– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Remove fasteners -arrows- using pliers - T40172 A- .

– Take out luggage compartment floor (front) -1- towards rear.



Audi
Copyright by AUDI AG. For commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documer

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

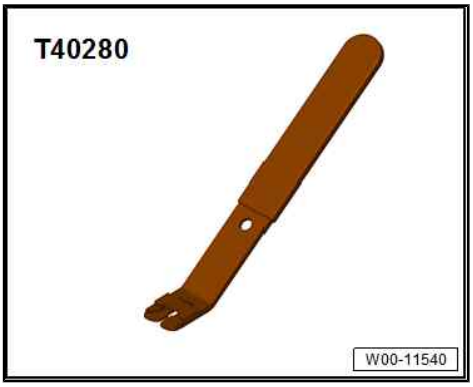
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "6.3.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A5 Cabriolet", page 319

6.9 Removing and installing lock carrier trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal tool - T40280-



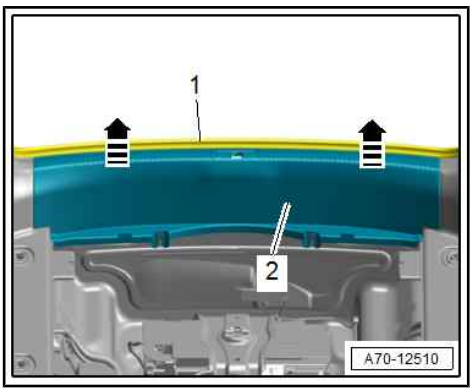
Removing

– Take out luggage compartment floor (rear) or lift it and secure it in place.

– A5 g-tron: Remove luggage compartment floor (rear) ⇒ page 338 .

– Move lock carrier trim clear in vicinity of rear lid seal -1-.

– Take hold of trim -2- and pull it vertically upwards -arrows- carefully but firmly.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim", page 311

6.10 Removing and installing fastening ring

⇒ "6.10.1 Removing and installing fastening ring", page 341

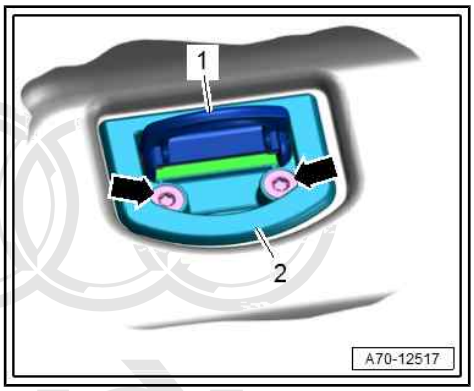
⇒ "6.10.2 Removing and installing bracket for fastening ring - A5 g-tron", page 341

6.10.1 Removing and installing fastening ring

Removing

– Open clip -1- as far as it will go.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach fastening ring -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim", page 311

6.10.2 Removing and installing bracket for fastening ring - A5 g-tron

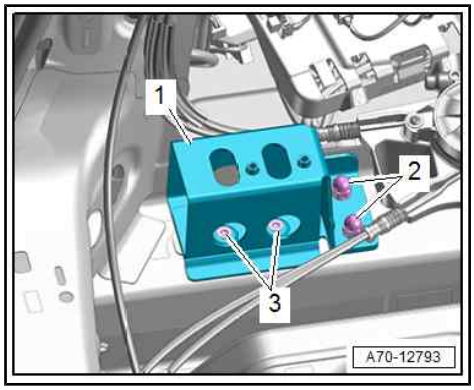
Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 333 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Bracket (rear):

– Unscrew nuts -2- and bolts -3-, and remove bracket -1-.

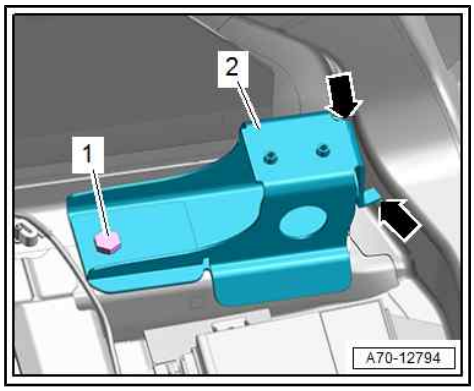


Bracket (front):

– Remove trim strip.

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Disengage bracket (front) -2- from mountings -arrows- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

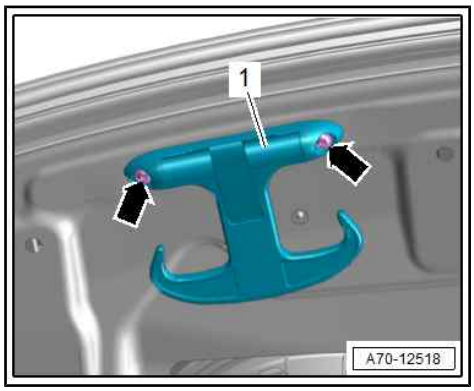
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.3.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor, A5 g-tron”, page 317

6.11 Removing and installing bag hook

Removing - A5 Coupé

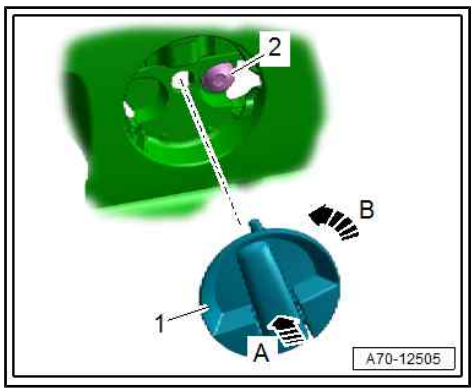
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach retaining hook -1-.



Removing - A5 Sportback

– Press bag hook -1- into mounting for bag hook -arrow A-.

– At the same time, turn bag hook anti-clockwise as far as it will go -arrow B- and detach.



Installing

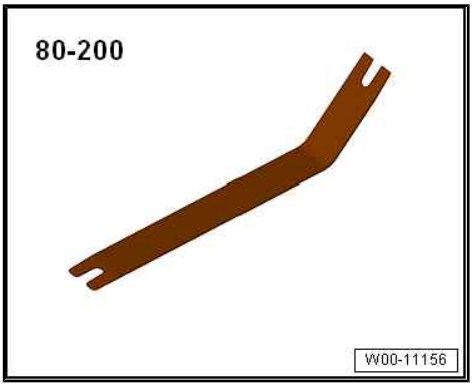
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.2 Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim”, page 311

6.12 Removing and installing grip for luggage compartment floor (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



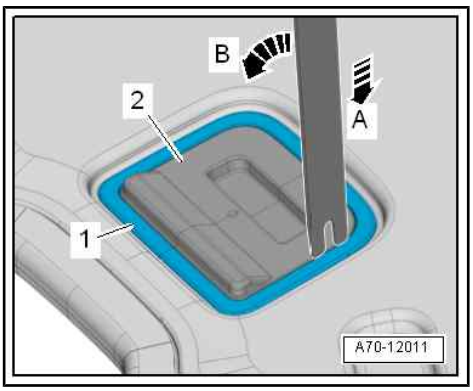
Removing

– Remove luggage compartment floor (rear) ⇒ page 337 .

– Release retaining frame -1- on underside of luggage compartment floor.

– To do so, apply removal lever - 80-200- -arrow A- and release retaining frame -arrow B-.

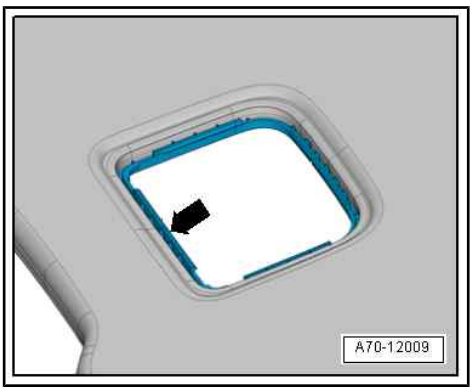
– Disengage retaining frame and detach grip -2- for luggage compartment floor.



Installing

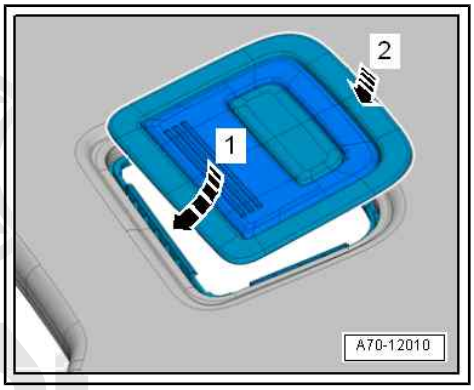
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert retaining frame -arrow- into opening in luggage compartment floor from underneath and hold it in position.



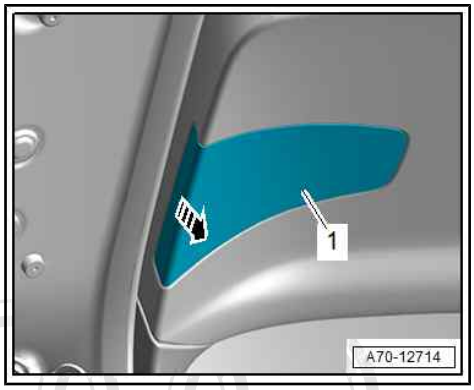
– Slide grip for luggage compartment floor into retaining frame towards rear of vehicle -arrow 1- and engage downwards -arrow 2-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor", page 316



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.13 Removing and installing tail light cover



Removing

– Unclip tail light cover -1- from rear lid trim (bottom) in direction of -arrow- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.4.2 Exploded view - rear lid trim, A5 Sportback”, page 322

6.14 Removing and installing lining for spare wheel well

Removing

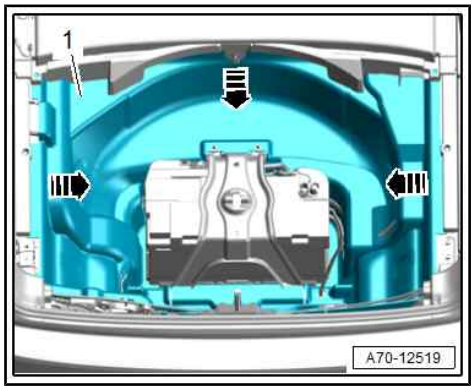
– Take out luggage compartment floor (rear).

– Remove tool box.

– Depending on equipment version: Remove spare wheel.

– Depending on equipment version: Remove subwoofer ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Pull out lining -1- for spare wheel well at side from underneath luggage compartment side trim panels and at front from underneath luggage compartment floor -arrows-.

– Disengage lining for spare wheel well and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “6.3 Exploded view - luggage compartment floor”, page 316

7 Roof trim panels

⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner”, page 345

⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner”, page 346

⇒ “7.3 Attaching roof reinforcement to body”, page 352

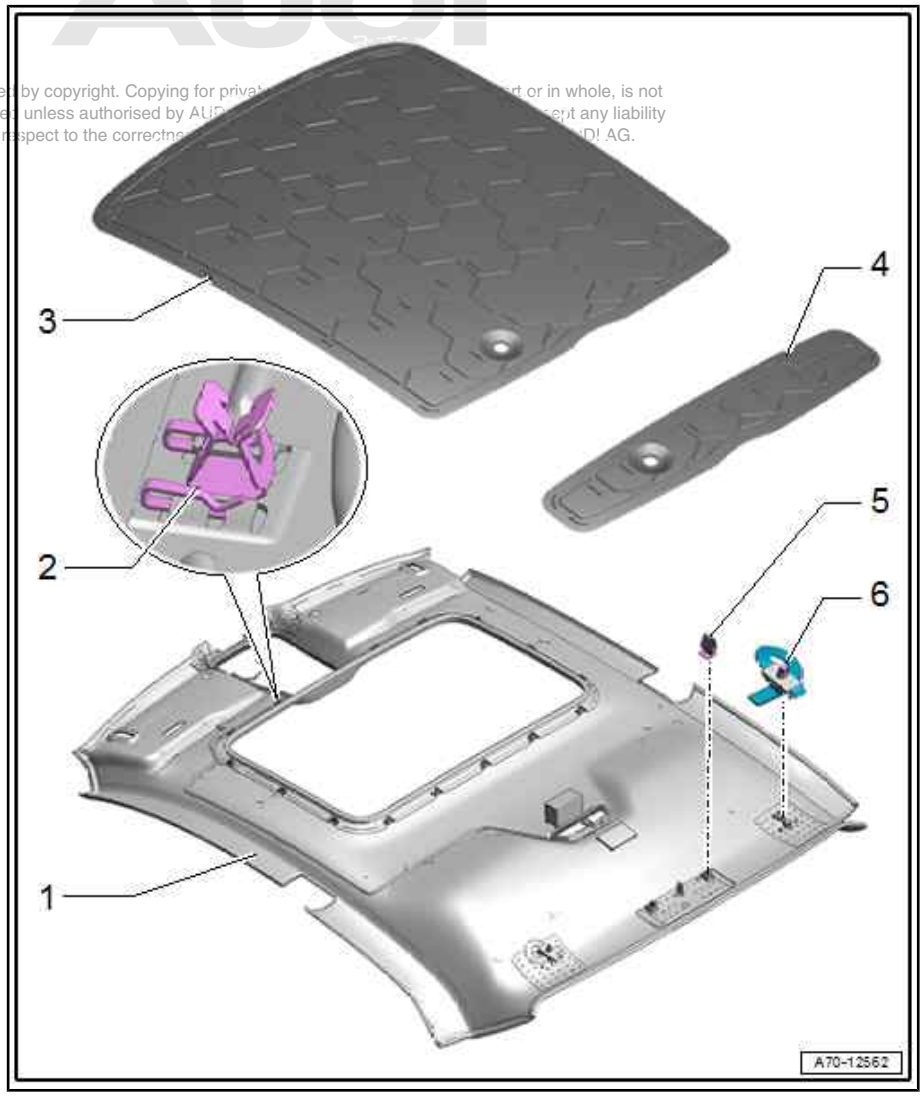
7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner

⇒ “7.1.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, A5 Coupé”, page 345

⇒ “7.1.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner, A5 Sportback”, page 346

7.1.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, A5 Coupé

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness



1 - Moulded headliner

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 346

2 - Clip

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ 15x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 352

4 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 352

5 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

6 - Tether with clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Renew clips with tether if damaged or deformed

7.1.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner, A5 Sportback

1 - Moulded headliner

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 350

2 - Clip

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ 15x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

3 - Roof reinforcement

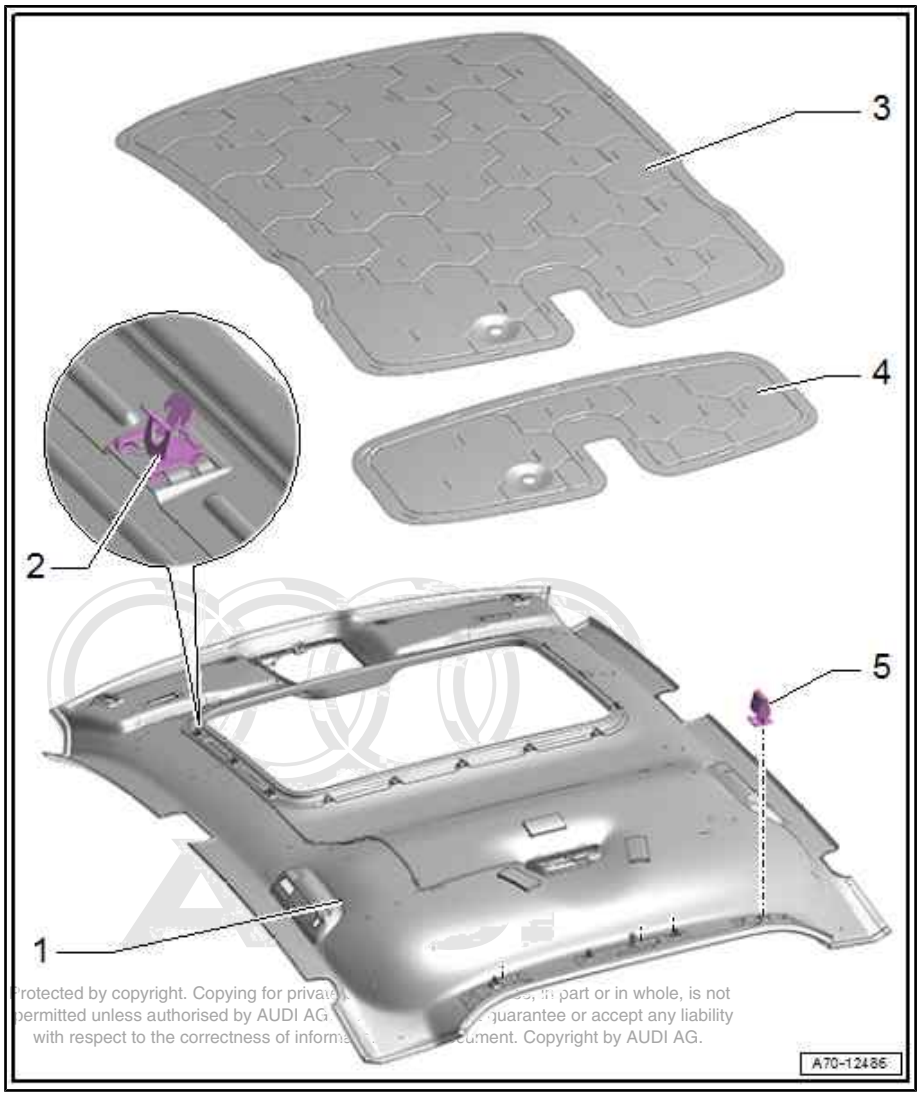
- ❑ For equipment version without sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 352

4 - Roof reinforcement

- ❑ For equipment version with sliding sunroof
- ❑ Attaching to body ⇒ page 352

5 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in moulded headliner
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed



Protected by copyright. Copying for private ... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG ... with respect to the correctness of inform... ...ument. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner

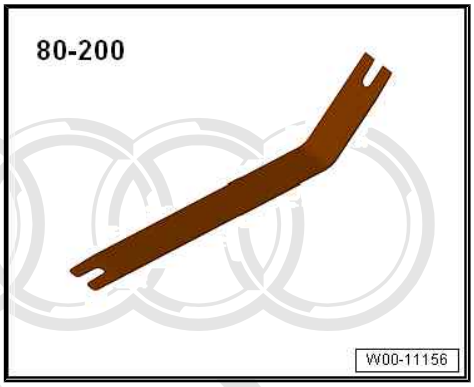
⇒ "7.2.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner - A5 Coupé", page 346

⇒ "7.2.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner - A5 Sportback", page 350

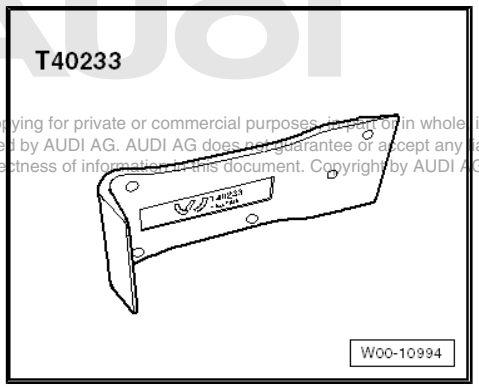
7.2.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner - A5 Coupé

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-

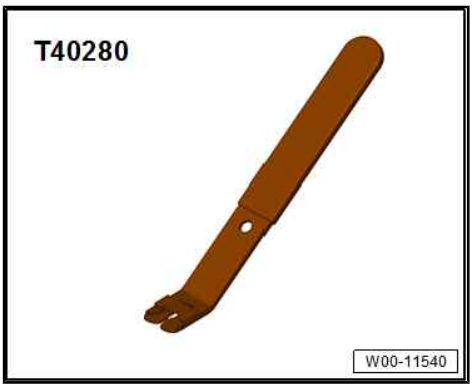


- Removal wedge - T40233-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal tool - T40280-



- Circlip pliers, 170 mm - VAS 5500- (commercially available, not shown)

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***

– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 276 .

– Remove B-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 283 .

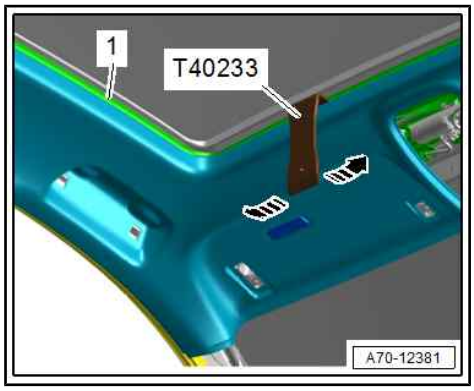
– Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 288 .

– Remove front roof module ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front) .

– Depending on equipment version: Remove cover for front camera ⇒ page 62 .
– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 35 .
– Remove vanity mirror light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing illuminated vanity mirror -W20- / -W14- .
– If fitted, remove grab handles ⇒ page 36 .
– Move steering wheel forwards and upwards as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

– Open sun blind.
– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.
– Insert removal wedge - T40233- between frame -1- for sunroof and moulded headliner.
– Release moulded headliner from frame for sunroof all round using removal wedge - T40233- -arrows-, as shown in illustration.



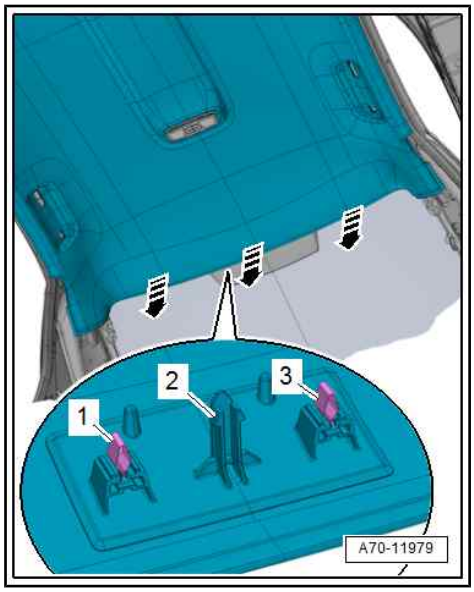
Continued for all vehicles:

– Move front seats as far back and down as possible and tilt backrests as far back as possible.
– Move moulded headliner clear in area of inner door seals.

Caution

- *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- *Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.*

– Unclip moulded headliner (rear centre) from clips -1 and 3- on body -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Unclip moulded headliner from body at rear at centring pin -2-.
– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 36 .

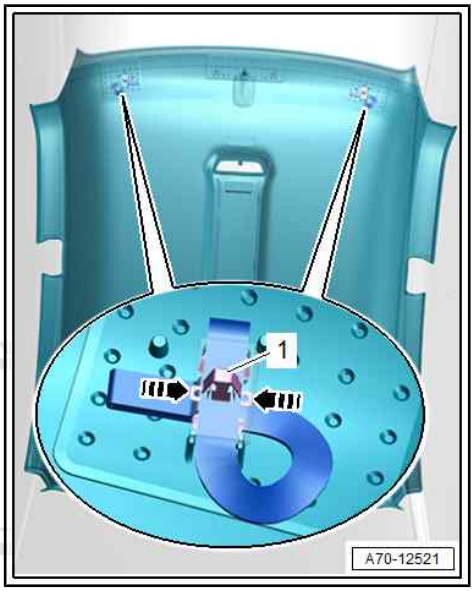


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Lower moulded headliner at front.

– Reach between moulded headliner and roof towards rear on both sides and unclip tethers for moulded headliner from body.

– To do so, compress fasteners for retaining clips -1- for tether -arrows- using circlip pliers, and pull out retaining clips.



If moulded headliner needs to be removed:

– Remove passenger side door ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 57 ; Door; Removing and installing door .

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 50 .

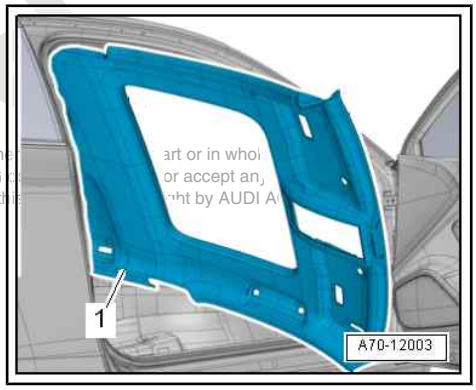
• A second mechanic is required for removing the moulded headliner.

• Take out moulded headliner through front passenger door.

– Guide moulded headliner out of vehicle by rotating and lowering it as necessary.

– Lower moulded headliner -1- at front on left side of vehicle, guide it out under steering wheel and turn it towards front passenger door.

– Take out moulded headliner through front passenger door, as shown.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG ... with respect to the correctness of information in thi... art or in whol... or accept an... ht by AUDI A...

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***

– Proceed in reverse order to install moulded headliner in vehicle.

– Clip tether for moulded headliner onto body at rear on both sides.

– Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.

– Install centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 36 .

– Fold over lip of inner door seals.

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

– First clip moulded headliner onto sunroof frame at sides, and then at front and rear.

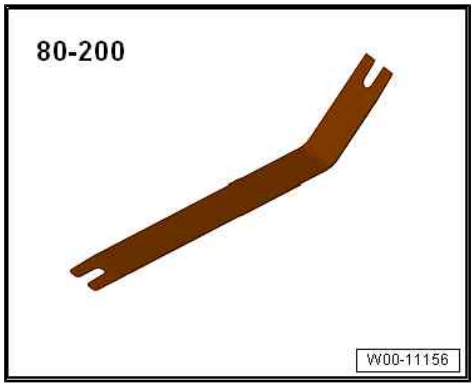
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “7.1.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner, A5 Coupé”, page 345

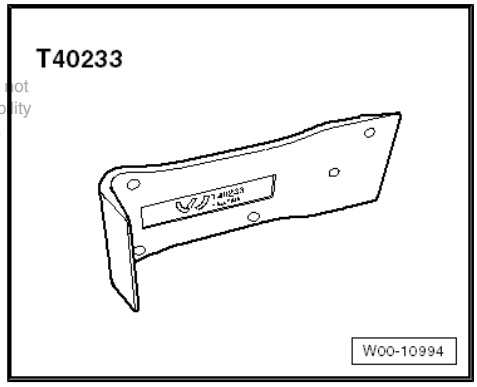
7.2.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner - A5 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

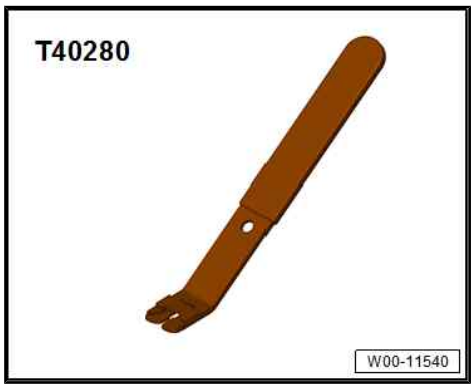
- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Removal wedge - T40233-



- Removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 276 .
– Remove B-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 285 .
– Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 290 .
– Remove D-pillar trim panels ⇒ page 291 .

– Remove front roof module ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front) .

– Depending on equipment version: Remove cover for front camera ⇒ page 62 .

– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 35 .

– Remove vanity mirror light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing illuminated vanity mirror - W20- / -W14- .

– Remove grab handles ⇒ page 36 .

– Move steering wheel forwards and upwards as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

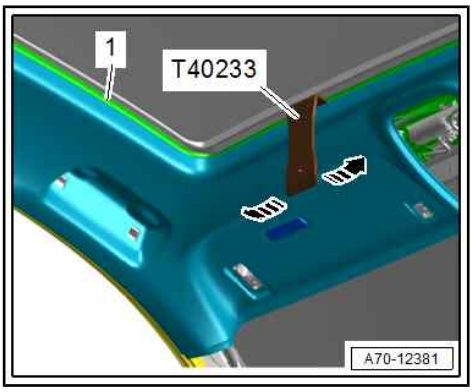
Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

– Open sun blind.

– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.

– Insert removal wedge - T40233- between frame -1- for sunroof and moulded headliner.

– Release moulded headliner from frame for sunroof all round using removal wedge - T40233- -arrows-, as shown in illustration.



Continued for all vehicles:

– Fold rear seat backrests towards rear.

– Move front seats as far back and down as possible and tilt backrests as far back as possible.

– Move moulded headliner clear in area of inner door seals.

Caution

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Risk of damage if incorrectly handled.

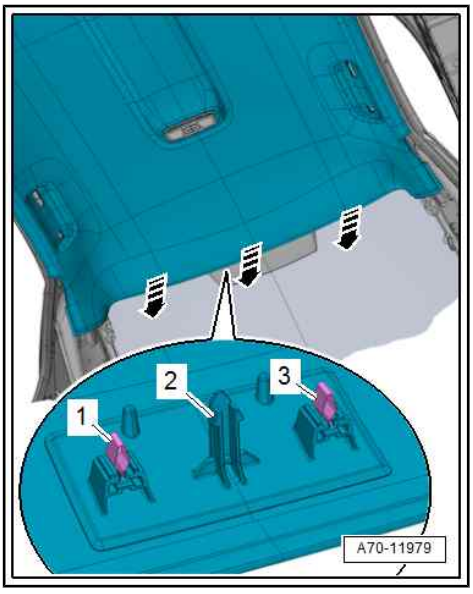
- ***The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.***
- ***Kinked moulded headliners must be renewed.***

– Unclip moulded headliner (rear) from clips -1 and 3- on body -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Unclip moulded headliner at centre from body at centring pin -2-.

– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 36 .

– Lower moulded headliner at front.



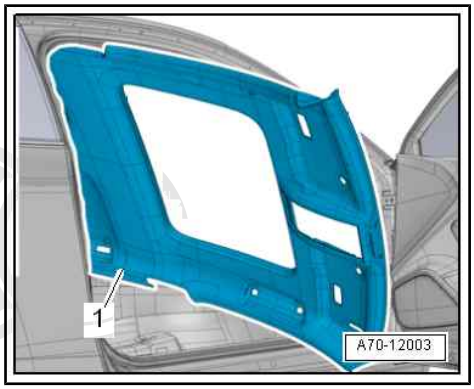
If moulded headliner needs to be removed:

– Remove passenger side door ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 57 ; Door; Removing and installing door .

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 50 .

- A second mechanic is required for removing the moulded headliner.
- Take out moulded headliner through front passenger door.

– Guide moulded headliner out of vehicle by rotating and lowering it as necessary (you will need to open rear left door).
– Lower moulded headliner -1- at front on left side of vehicle, guide it out under steering wheel and turn it towards front passenger door.
– Take out moulded headliner through front passenger door, as shown.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

– Proceed in reverse order to install moulded headliner in vehicle.
– Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.
– Install centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 36 .
– Fold over lip of inner door seals.

Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

– First clip moulded headliner onto sunroof frame at sides, and then at front and rear.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "7.1.2 Exploded view - moulded headliner, A5 Sportback", page 346

Audi
Reproduction or distribution for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7.3 Attaching roof reinforcement to body

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure

- Moulded headliner removed ⇒ page 346

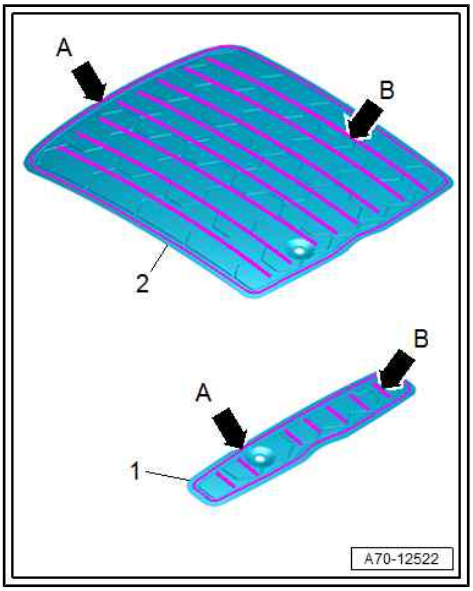
A5 Coupé:

– Apply adhesive beads -arrows- to roof reinforcements, as shown.

- Thickness of beads around outside -arrows A-: approx. 7 mm
- Thickness of support beads -arrows B-: approx. 5 mm
- Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcement.

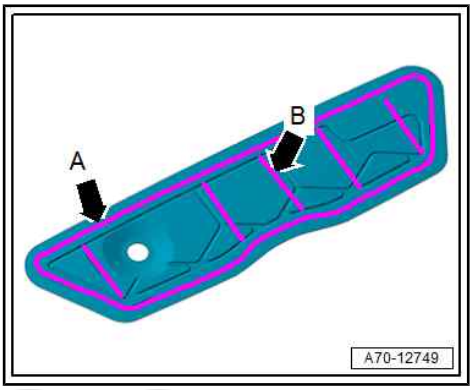
1 - Roof reinforcement for equipment version with sliding sunroof

2 - Roof reinforcement for equipment version without sliding sunroof



– Roof reinforcement on NAR version with sliding sunroof: Apply adhesive beads -arrows- onto roof reinforcements as shown.

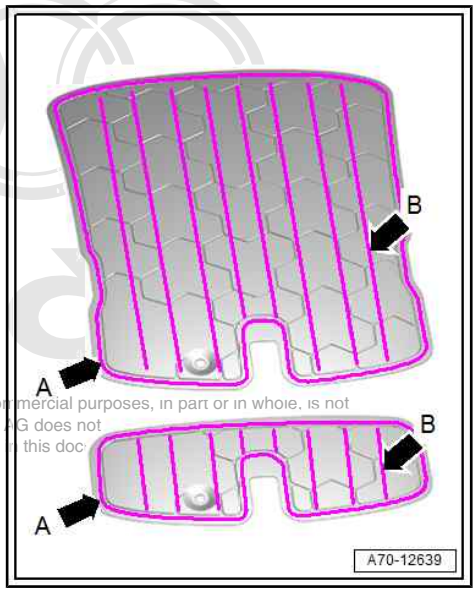
- Thickness of beads around outside -arrow A-: approx. 7 mm
- Thickness of support beads -arrow B-: approx. 5 mm
- Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcement.



A5 Sportback:

– Apply adhesive beads -arrows- to roof reinforcement sections, as shown in illustration.

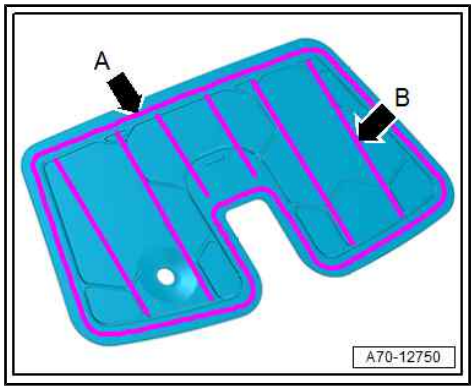
- Thickness of beads around outside -arrows A-: approx. 7 mm
- Thickness of support beads -arrows B-: approx. 5 mm
- Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcement.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

– Roof reinforcement on NAR version with sliding sunroof: Apply adhesive beads -arrows- onto roof reinforcements as shown.

- Thickness of beads around outside -arrow A-: approx. 7 mm
- Thickness of support beads -arrow B-: approx. 5 mm
- Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcement.



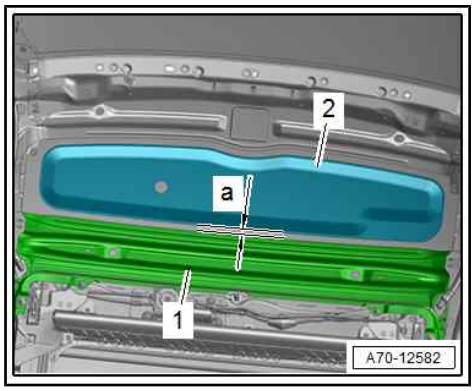
Equipment version with sliding sunroof:

– Position roof reinforcement -2- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -1-.

- Dimension -a- approx. 15 mm

– Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.

– Wipe off any surplus adhesive.



Equipment version without sunroof:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Position roof reinforcement -2- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -2-.

- Dimension -a- approx. 15 mm

– Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.

– Wipe off any surplus adhesive.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - moulded headliner”, page 345



8 Convertible roof compartment

⇒ “8.1 Overview of fitting locations - convertible roof compartment”, page 355

⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment tray”, page 357

⇒ “8.3 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment trim”, page 358

⇒ “8.4 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment tray”, page 359

⇒ “8.5 Removing and installing mounting bracket for convertible roof compartment tray”, page 360

⇒ “8.6 Removing and installing trim for convertible roof compartment tray”, page 361

⇒ “8.7 Removing and installing left motor for convertible roof box V433 ”, page 362

⇒ “8.8 Removing and installing side trim for convertible roof compartment”, page 363

⇒ “8.9 Removing and installing trim (centre) for convertible roof compartment”, page 365

Audi

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.1 Overview of fitting locations - convertible roof compartment

1 - Side trim for convertible roof compartment

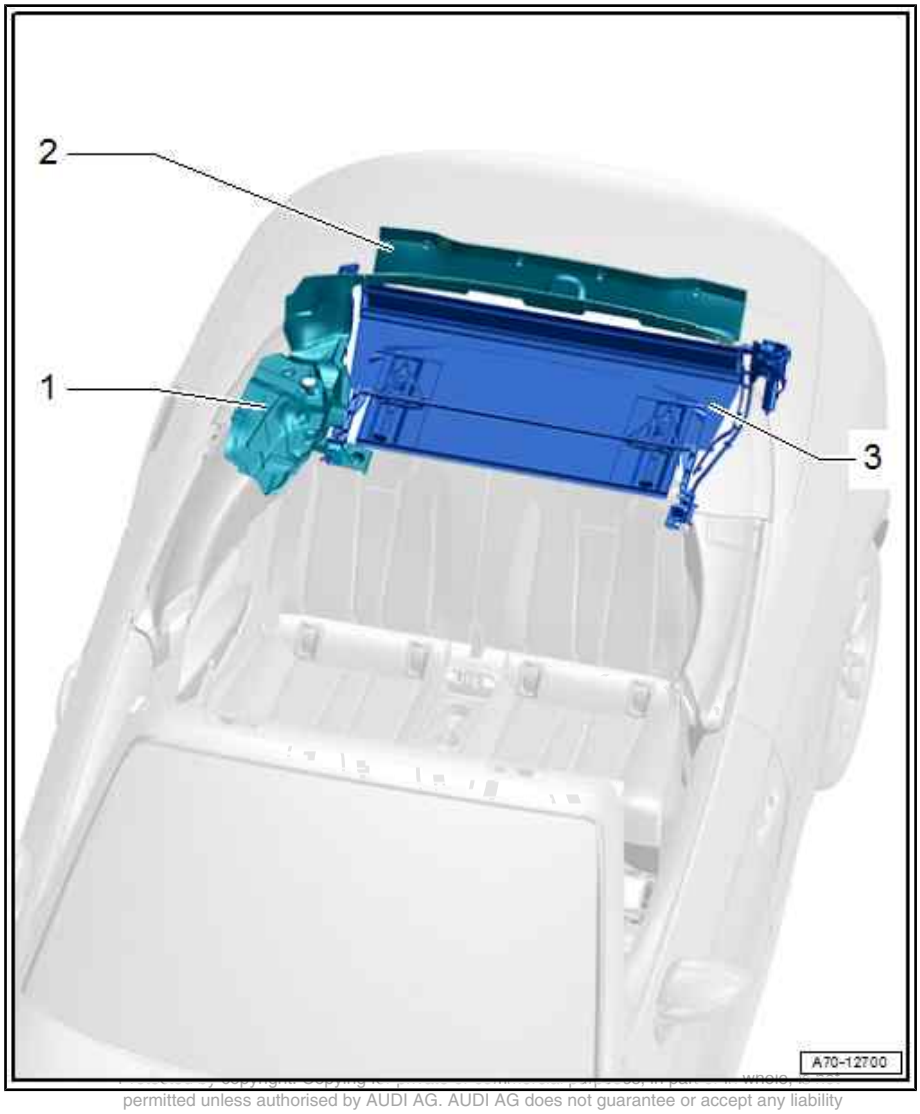
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 358

2 - Centre trim for convertible roof compartment

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 358

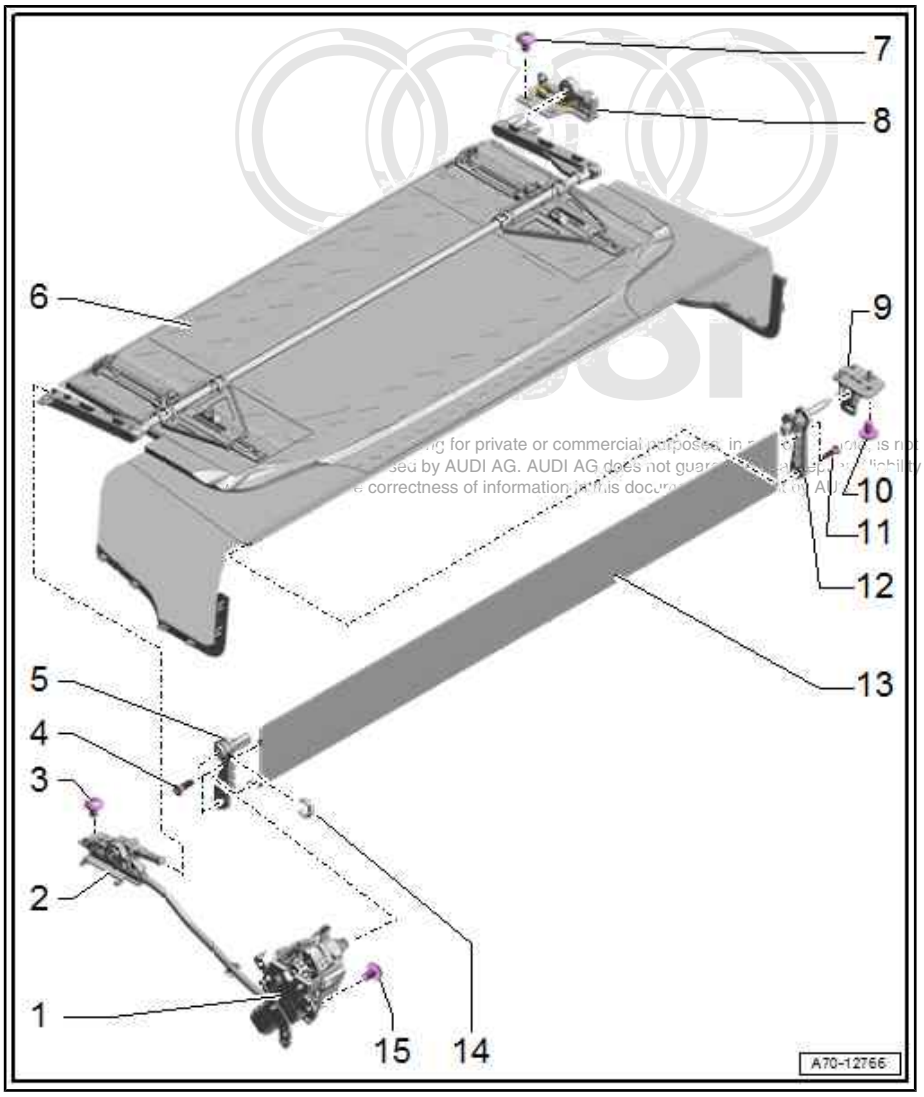
3 - Convertible roof compartment tray

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 357



permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment tray



1 - Left motor for convertible roof box - V433-

- With switch on left for convertible roof box, bottom - E897-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 362

2 - Mounting bracket (left-side) with lever

- Only available with left motor for convertible roof box - V433- -item 1-
- Removing and installing ⇒ “8.7 Removing and installing left motor for convertible roof box V433 ”, page 362
- Hook onto body

3 - Bolt

- 2x
- 8 Nm

4 - Bolt

- 2x
- Included in repair kit
- 1.8 Nm

5 - Mounting (left-side)

- For trim
- Included in repair kit
- Repairing, renewing mounting ⇒ “8.6 Removing and installing trim for convertible roof compartment tray”, page 361

6 - Convertible roof compartment tray

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 359

7 - Bolt

- 2x
- 8 Nm

8 - Mounting bracket (front, right-side)

- With switch on right for convertible roof box, bottom - E898-
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 360

9 - Mounting bracket (rear, right-side)

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 361

10 - Bolt

- 2x
- 8 Nm

11 - Bolt

- 2x
- Included in repair kit

- ❑ 1.8 Nm

12 - Mounting (right-side)

- ❑ For trim
- ❑ Included in repair kit
- ❑ Repairing, renewing mounting
  ⇒ “8.6 Removing and installing trim for convertible roof compartment tray”, page 361

13 - Trim

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment tray
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 361

14 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Remove using a small screwdriver

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 8 Nm

8.3 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment trim

1 - Side trim

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 363

2 - Fastener

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

3 - Fastener

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 A-

4 - Trim (centre)

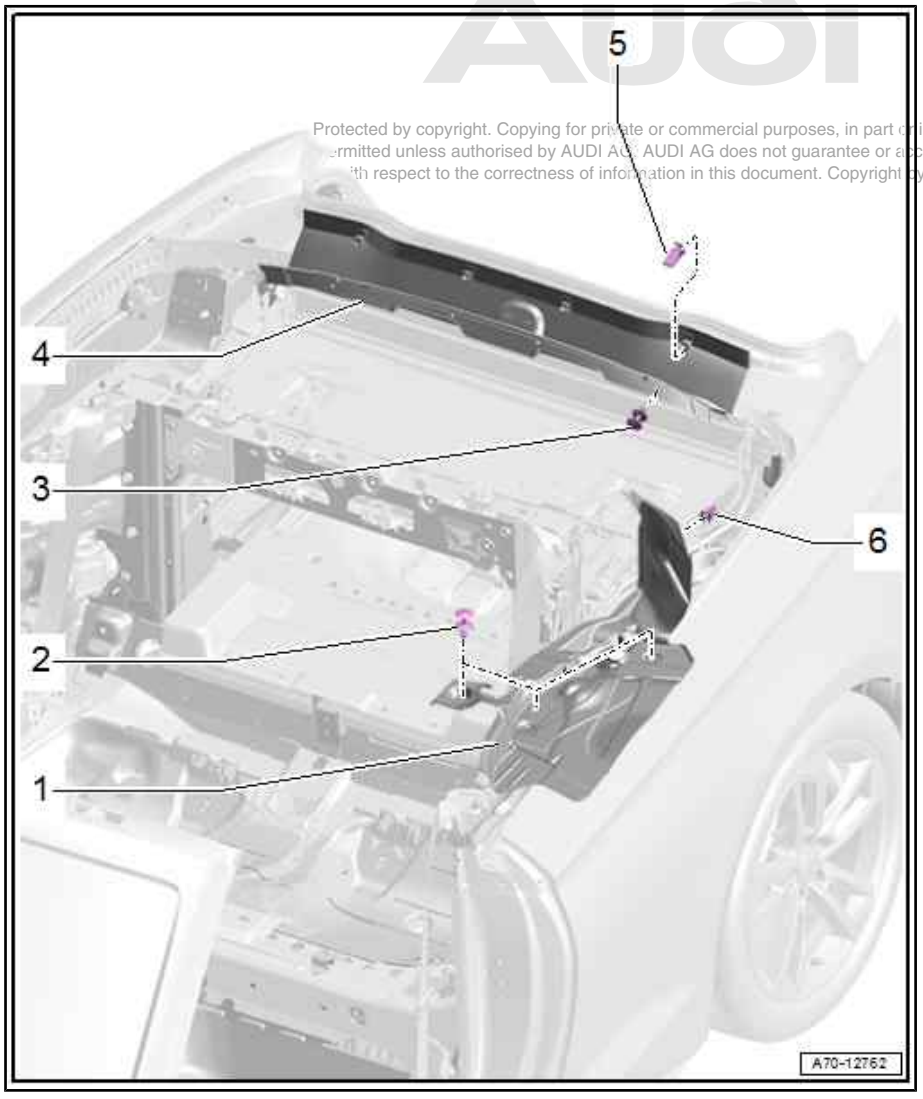
- ❑ For convertible roof compartment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 365

5 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- ❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

6 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ Renew clips if damaged or deformed

8.4 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment tray

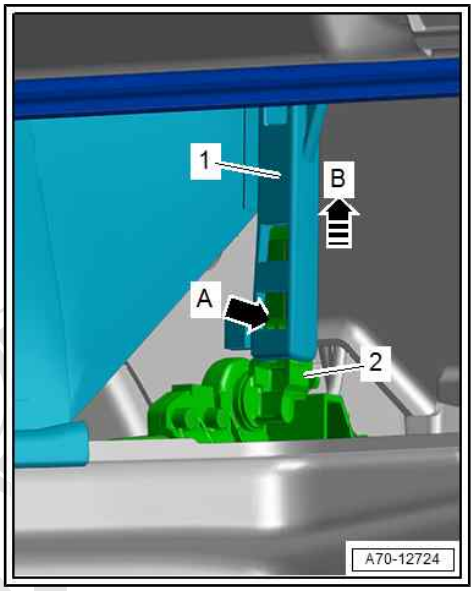
Removing

– Remove side trim for convertible roof compartment (passenger side) ⇒ page 363 .

– Close convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid.

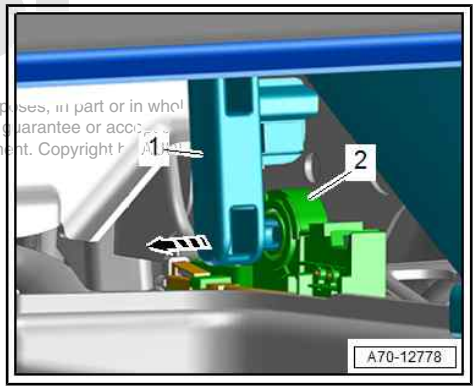
– Fold convertible roof compartment tray upwards; to do so, press button for convertible roof box operation - E896- .

– Release lever arm (front left) -1- for convertible roof compartment tray at retaining tab -arrow A- and pull it upwards -arrow B- off lever -2-.



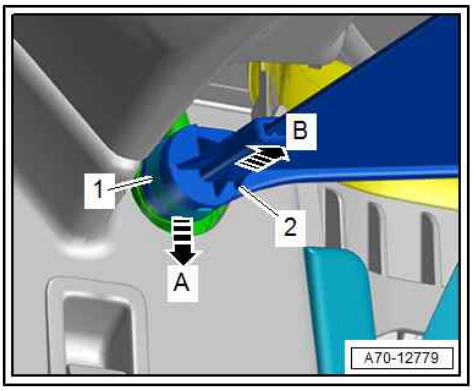
– Pull lever arm (right-side) -1- for convertible roof compartment tray out of mounting bracket -2- -arrow- and set down convertible roof compartment tray carefully.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

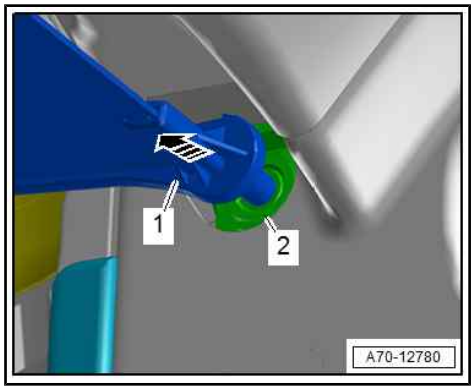


– Release securing clip -1- with a small screwdriver -arrow A- and detach.

– Pull trim -2- for convertible roof compartment tray off motor for convertible roof compartment tray -arrow B- by sliding it towards right.



– Pull trim -1- for convertible roof compartment tray out of mounting bracket (right-side) -2- -arrow-.
– Carefully disengage convertible roof compartment tray and take it out of vehicle.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment tray”, page 357

8.5 Removing and installing mounting bracket for convertible roof compartment tray

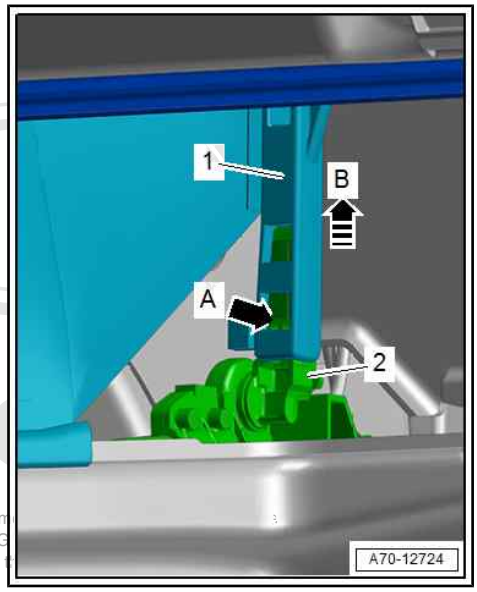
⇒ “8.5.1 Removing and installing mounting bracket (front) for convertible roof compartment tray”, page 360

⇒ “8.5.2 Removing and installing mounting bracket (rear) for convertible roof compartment tray”, page 361

8.5.1 Removing and installing mounting bracket (front) for convertible roof compartment tray

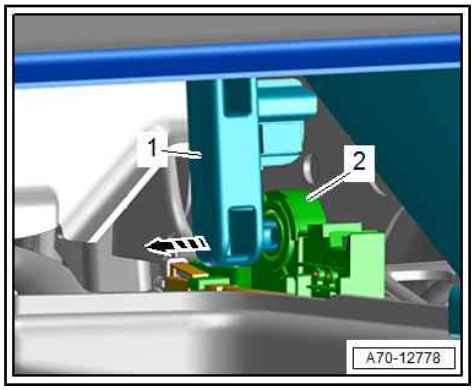
Removing

– Remove side trim for convertible roof compartment (passenger side) ⇒ page 363 .
– Release lever arm (front left) -1- for convertible roof compartment tray at retaining tab -arrow A- and pull it off lever -2- -arrow B-.

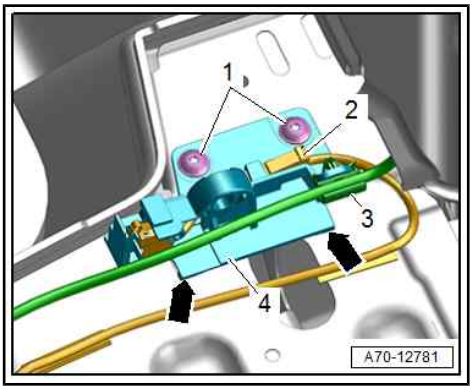


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in

– Pull lever arm (right-side) -1- for convertible roof compartment tray out of mounting bracket -2- -arrow- and set down convertible roof compartment tray carefully on one side.



– Unplug electrical connector -2- for switch on right for convertible roof box, bottom - E898- .
– Unclip retainer -3- for Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism from mounting bracket.
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Unhook mounting bracket -4- at locations indicated in illustration -arrows- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

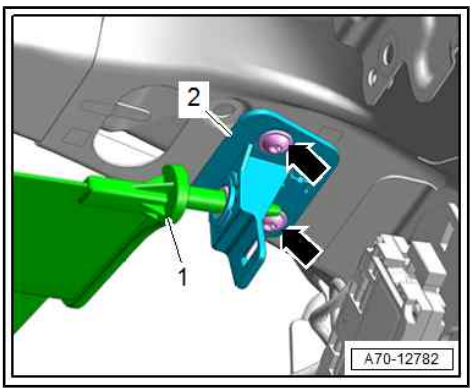
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment tray”, page 357

8.5.2 Removing and installing mounting bracket (rear) for convertible roof compartment tray

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim (passenger side) ⇒ page 335 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Remove mounting bracket -2- for convertible roof compartment tray from mounting.
– Pull mounting bracket off trim -1- for convertible roof compartment tray and remove.



Installing

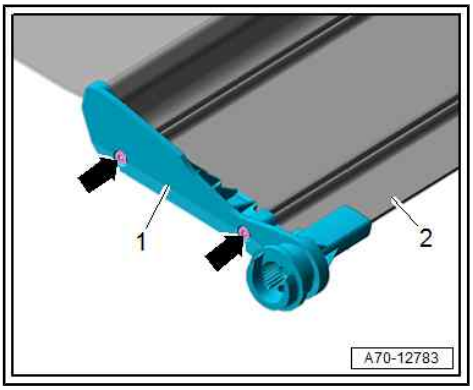
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment tray”, page 357

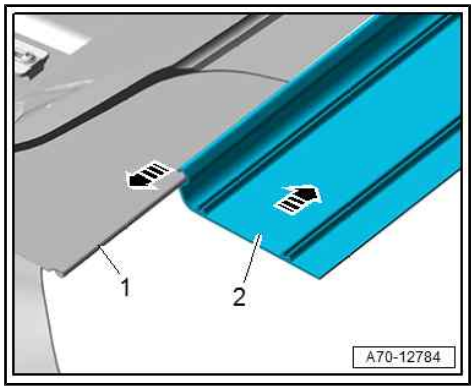
8.6 Removing and installing trim for convertible roof compartment tray

Removing

– Remove convertible roof compartment tray ⇒ page 359 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Pull mounting -1- off trim -2- for convertible roof compartment tray.



– Separate piping -1- for convertible roof compartment tray and trim -2- for convertible roof compartment tray from each other -arrows-.
– Remove trim for convertible roof compartment tray.



Installing

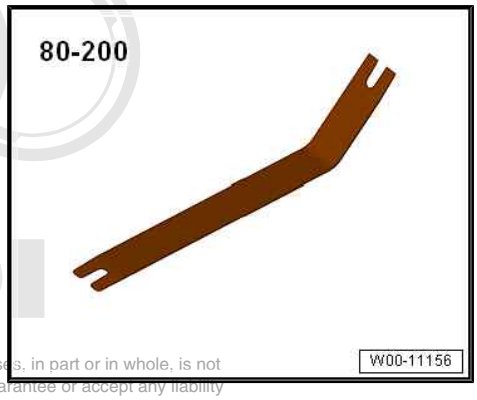
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "8.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment tray", page 357

8.7 Removing and installing left motor for convertible roof box - V433-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

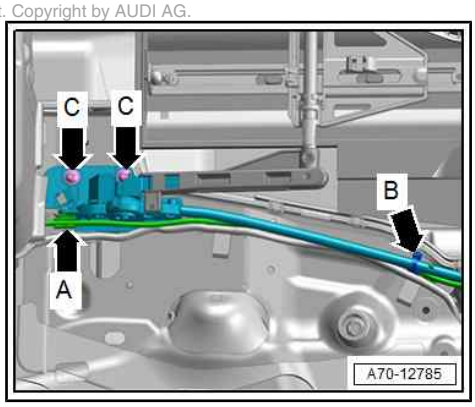
♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



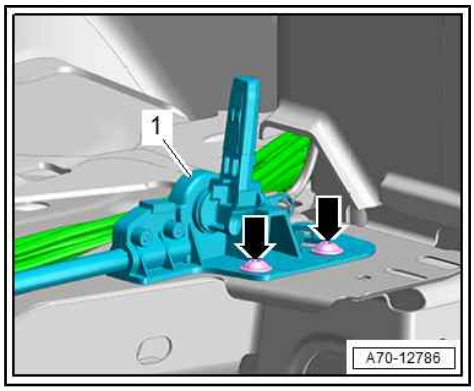
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

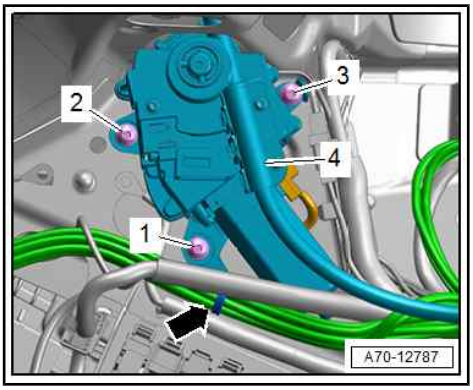
– Remove side trim for convertible roof compartment ⇒ page 363 .
– Unclip retainer -arrow A- for Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism from mounting bracket.
– Unclip bracket -arrow B- for motor for convertible roof compartment tray.
– Loosen bolts -arrows C-.
– Close convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid.
– Remove convertible roof compartment tray ⇒ page 359 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim (driver side) ⇒ page 335 .



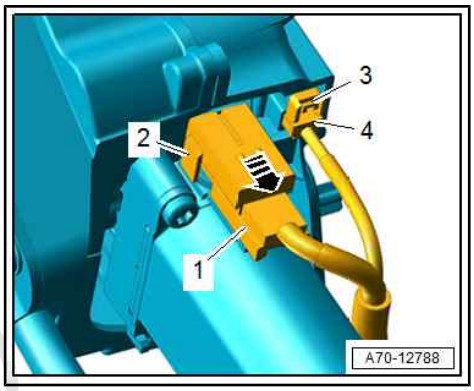
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Unhook mounting bracket -1- at body and move it clear.



– Unclip bracket -arrow- for hydraulic lines at motor for convertible roof compartment tray.
– Remove bolts -1, 2, 3-.
– Carefully detach motor -4- for convertible roof compartment tray from mountings on body.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- -arrow-; to do so, carefully release retaining tabs -2- on both sides of connector using a small screwdriver.
– Release connector locking element -3- with a small screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "8.2 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment tray", page 357

8.8 Removing and installing side trim for convertible roof compartment

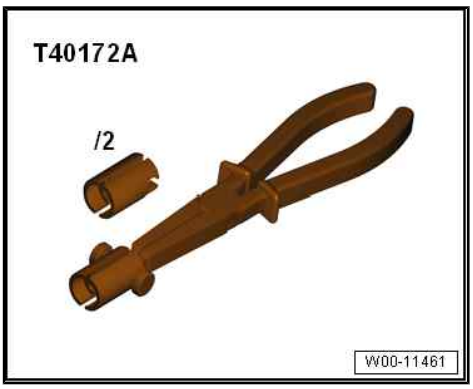
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

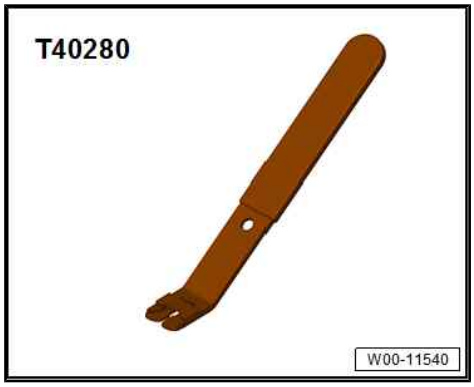


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



♦ Removal tool - T40280-

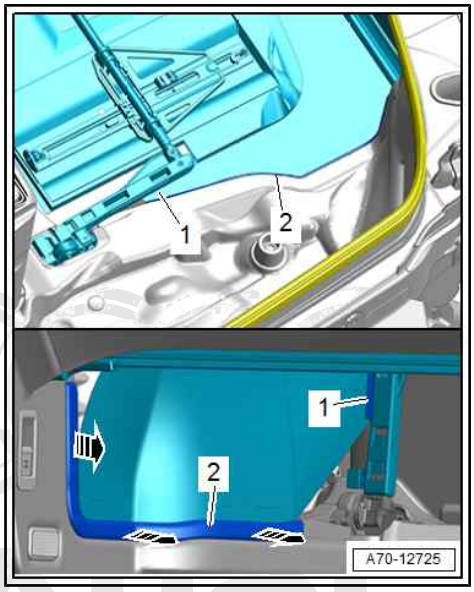


Removing

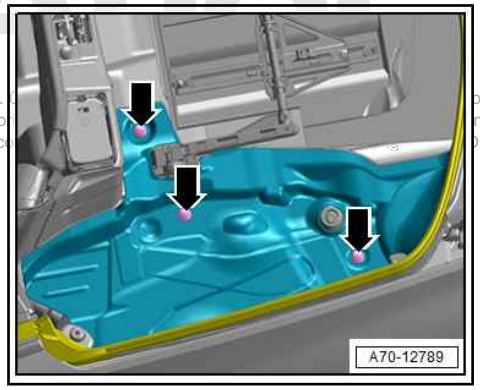
– Move convertible roof into service position ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 61 ; Convertible roof; Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid .

– Open convertible roof compartment tray at velcro strip -1-.

– Unclip fastening strip -2- for convertible roof compartment tray from trim for convertible roof compartment using removal wedge - 3409- -arrows-.



– Remove fasteners -arrows- using pliers - T40172 A- .

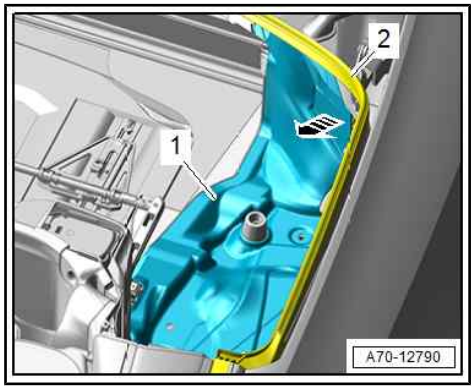


Protected by copyright. ... permitted unless autho ... with respect to the c ... ble, is not ... ny liability ... DI AG.

– Move trim -1- for convertible roof compartment clear in vicinity of convertible roof compartment seal -2-.

– Unclip trim for convertible roof compartment from body -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Disengage trim for convertible roof compartment and remove towards top.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

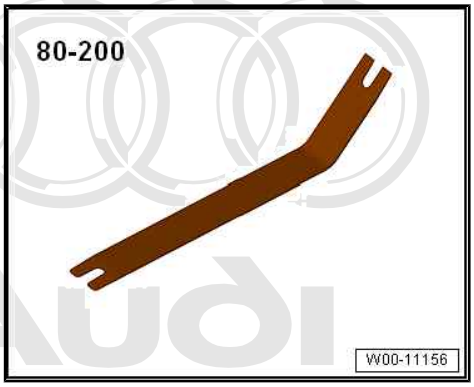
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “8.3 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment trim”, page 358

8.9 Removing and installing trim (centre) for convertible roof compartment

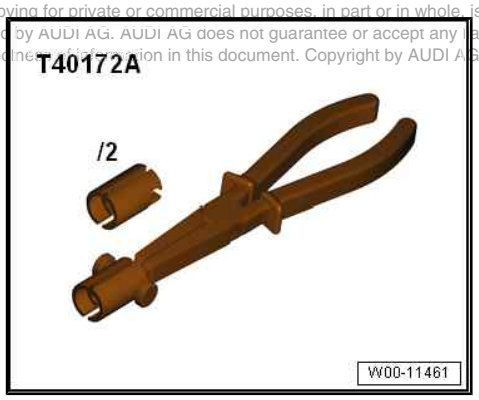
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-

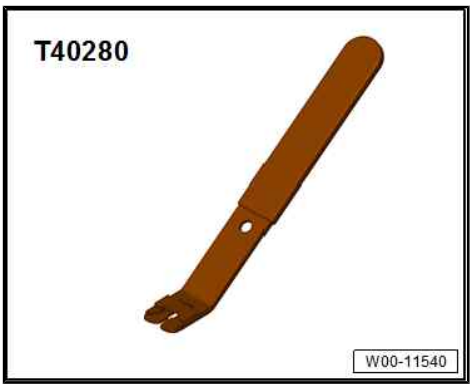


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Pliers - T40172 A-



- Removal tool - T40280-



Removing

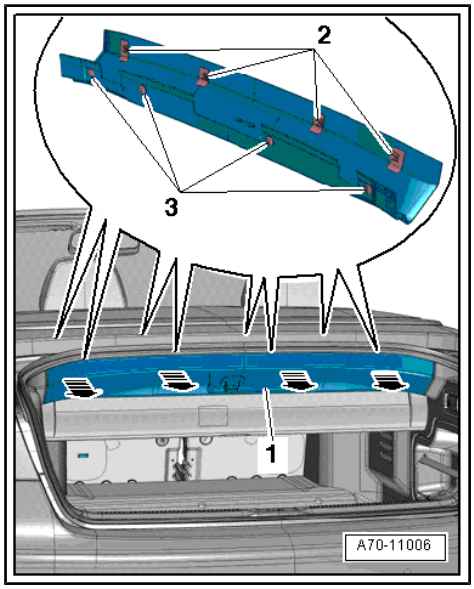
– Move convertible roof into service position ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 61 ; Convertible roof; Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid .

– Remove fasteners -3- using pliers - T40172 A- or removal lever - 80-200- .

– Close convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid.

– Press retaining clips -2- out of body one after the other -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Detach convertible roof compartment trim (rear) -1- downwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “8.3 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment trim”, page 358

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

72 – Seat frames

1 Overview - seat versions

⇒ “1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions”, page 367

⇒ “1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand”, page 370

1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions

⇒ “1.1.1 Overview - front seats”, page 367

⇒ “1.1.2 Overview - rear seats, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 369

⇒ “1.1.3 Overview - rear seats, A5 Cabriolet”, page 370

1.1.1 Overview - front seats

I - Standard seat

❑ Equipment:

- ♦ Manual longitudinal/height adjustment
- ♦ Manual backrest angle adjustment
- ♦ Manual height adjustment of head restraint
- ♦ A5 Coupé/Cabriolet: Manual backrest release mechanism/easy entry function

❑ Optional equipment:

- ♦ Electric longitudinal/height/rake adjustment
- ♦ Electric backrest angle adjustment
- ♦ Electric lumbar support adjustment
- ♦ Child seat anchors (passenger side)
- ♦ Luggage net
- ♦ Footwell light
- ♦ Memory function (driver seat)
- ♦ Seat heating
- ♦ Manual/electric height adjustment and manual depth adjustment of head restraint
- ♦ A5 Coupé/Cabriolet: Electric easy entry function
- ♦ Bracket for fire extinguisher



Copying for private or commercial ... in whole, is not ... sed by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does ... ept any liability ... correctness of information in this ... AUDI AG

- Pneumatic lumbar support with massage function
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 380

II - Sports seat

- Equipment:

- Manual longitudinal/height/rake/depth adjustment
- Manual backrest angle adjustment
- A5 Coupé/Cabriolet: Manual backrest release mechanism/easy entry function
- Manual height adjustment of head restraints
- Optional equipment:

- Electric longitudinal/height/rake adjustment
- Electric backrest angle adjustment
- Electric lumbar support adjustment
- Child seat anchors (passenger side)
- Luggage net
- Footwell light
- Memory function (driver seat)
- Seat heating
- Manual/electric height adjustment and manual depth adjustment of head restraint
- A5 Coupé/Cabriolet: Electric easy entry function
- Bracket for fire extinguisher
- Pneumatic lumbar support with massage function
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 380

III - Ventilated seat

- Same equipment as sports seat
- Same optional equipment as sports seat (without lumbar support with massage function), additionally with:

- Seat ventilation with heating
- A5 Cabriolet: Neck heating
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 380

IV - Super sports seat

- Equipment:

- Manual seat depth adjustment
- Electric longitudinal/height/rake adjustment
- Manual backrest release mechanism
- A5 Coupé/Cabriolet: Electric easy entry function
- Electric backrest angle adjustment
- Pneumatic lumbar support adjustment with massage function
- Pneumatic backrest bolster adjustment
- Integrated head restraint
  - Optional equipment:

- Child seat anchors (passenger side)
- Luggage net
- Memory function (driver seat)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Seat heating
- Bracket for fire extinguisher
- Footwell light
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 380

1.1.2 Overview - rear seats, A5 Coupé/Sportback

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

I - Rear seat with 2 seats

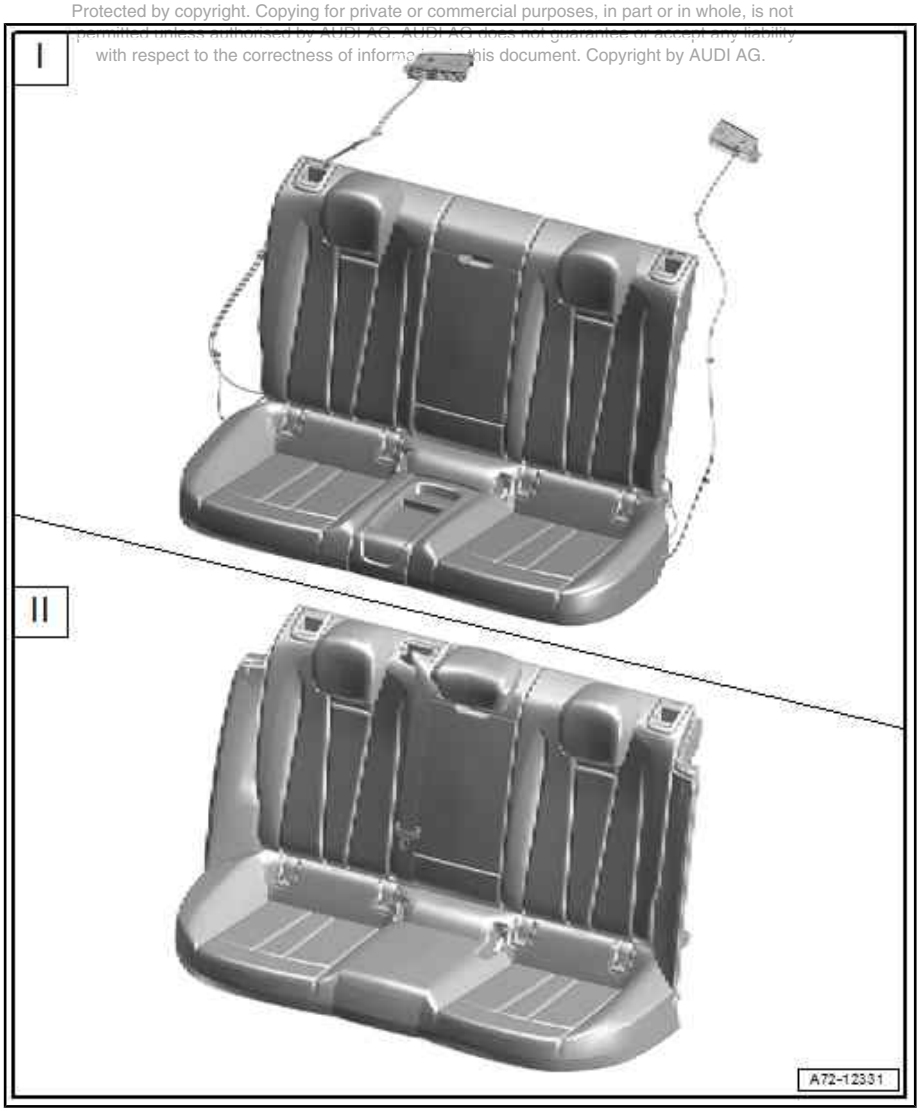
- Equipment:

- Folding backrest
- Child seat anchors for all seats
- Centre armrest
  - Optional equipment:
- Cup holder
- Tray
- Seat heating
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 460 , ⇒ page 466

II - Rear seat with 3 seats

- Equipment:

- Folding backrest
- Child seat anchor on outer seats
- Centre armrest
  - Optional equipment:
- Cup holder
- Side airbags
- Seat heating
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 462 , ⇒ page 467



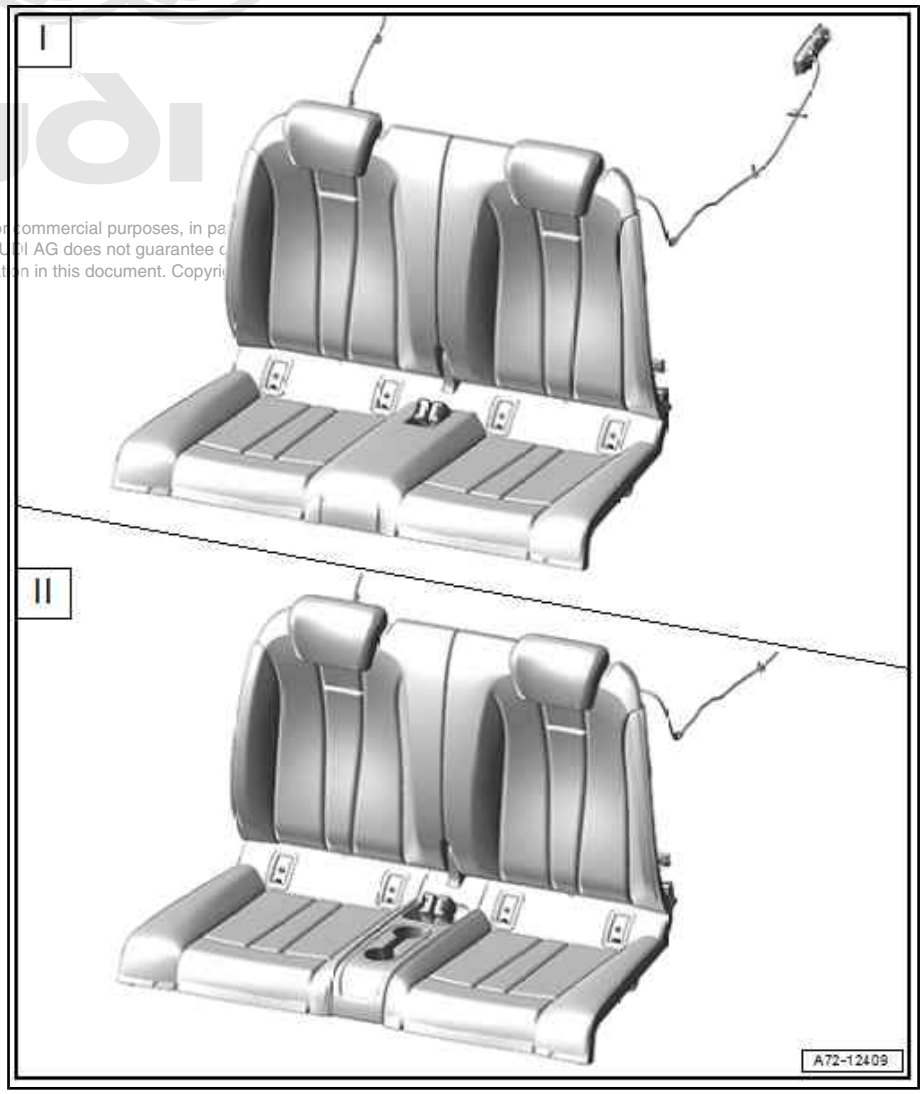
1.1.3 Overview - rear seats, A5 Cabriolet

I - Rear seat without tray

- ❑ Equipment:
- ♦ Folding backrest
- ♦ Child seat anchors for all seats
  - ❑ Optional equipment:
- ♦ Seat heating
  - ❑ Exploded view
    ⇒ page 463 ,
    ⇒ page 469

II - Rear seat with tray

- ❑ Equipment:
- ♦ Folding backrest
- ♦ Child seat anchors for all seats
- ♦ Tray/cup holders
  - ❑ Optional equipment:
- ♦ Seat heating
  - ❑ Exploded view
    ⇒ page 463 ,
    ⇒ page 469

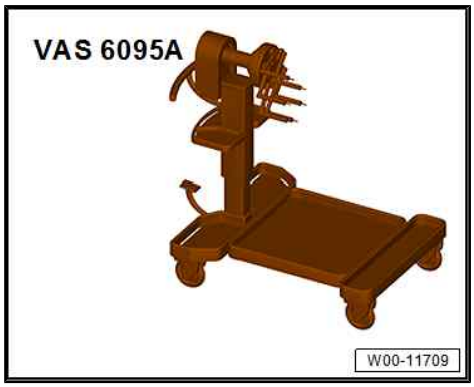


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee c
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri

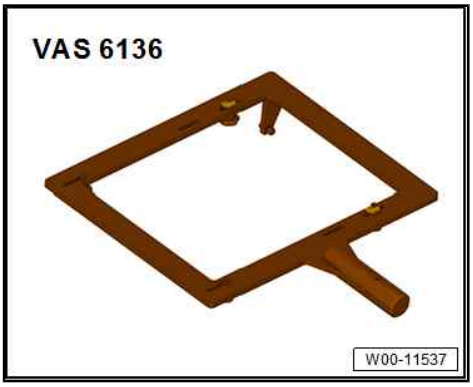
1.2 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095A-



♦ Seat repair stand - VAS 6136-



Procedure

- Seat removed from vehicle.

– Attach seat repair stand - VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095A- .

– Attach seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Front seats

⇒ “2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components”, page 373

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - front seat”, page 380

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system”, page 382

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest”, page 384

⇒ “2.5 Exploded view - head restraint”, page 389

⇒ “2.6 Exploded view - seat pan”, page 392

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing front seat”, page 399

⇒ “2.8 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter”, page 404

⇒ “2.9 Connecting and disconnecting modular wiring”, page 407

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment unit”, page 409

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit”, page 412

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit”, page 415

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit”, page 416

⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 422

⇒ “2.15 Removing and installing backrest fan”, page 431

⇒ “2.16 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 432

⇒ “2.17 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 436

⇒ “2.18 Dismantling and assembling seat pan”, page 438

⇒ “2.19 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit E470 / E471 ”, page 443

⇒ “2.20 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E663 / E664 ”, page 444

⇒ “2.21 Removing and installing massage function button E670 / E671 ”, page 445

⇒ “2.22 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism”, page 445

⇒ “2.23 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism”, page 446

⇒ “2.24 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 ”, page 455

⇒ “2.25 Removing and installing control unit for seat functions”, page 457

⇒ “2.26 Removing and installing seat cushion fan”, page 458

⇒ “2.27 Removing and installing slider”, page 459

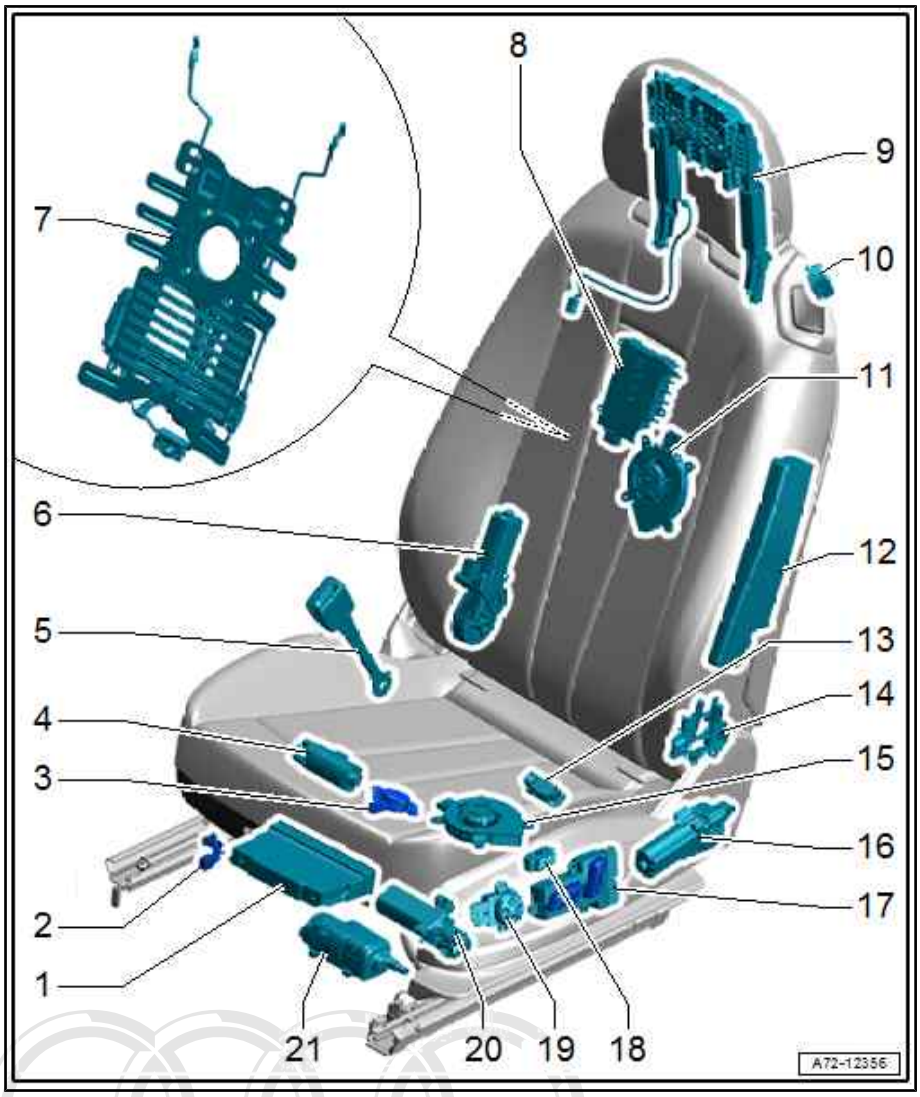
2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “2.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 374

⇒ “2.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, A5 Cabriolet”, page 377

2.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, A5 Coupé/Sportback



1 - Control unit for seat functions

- Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory - J136-
- Front passenger seat adjustment with memory control unit - J521-
  - Depending on equipment version: with integrated seat ventilation and seat heating
  - Removing and installing ⇒ page 457

2 - Seat position sensor

- Driver side seat position sensor - G553-
- Front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 191

3 - Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

- For front passenger seat only
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 194

4 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor

- Driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-
- Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
  - Integrated into lower seat pan frame; if defective, renew lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 410

5 - Belt switches

- Driver side belt switch - E24-
- Front passenger side belt switch - E25-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ page 117

6 - Backrest adjustment motor

- Driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-
- Front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 387

Audi
Any unauthorised use, copy for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

7 - Lumbar support

- ♦ Driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125-
- ♦ Driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-
- ♦ Front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126-
- ♦ Front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 384

8 - Valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment

- ♦ Valve block for driver seat and backrest bolster adjustment - V378-
- ♦ Valve block for front passenger seat and backrest bolster adjustment - V379-
  - ❑ For pneumatic system
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 500

9 - Head restraint

- ♦ Driver seat head restraint adjustment motor - V103-
- ♦ Front passenger seat head restraint adjustment motor - V104-
- ♦ Depending on version
- ♦ Exploded view ⇒ page 389

10 - Easy Entry button

- ♦ Easy entry button on driver side - E358-
- ♦ Easy entry button on front passenger side - E359-
  - ❑ A5 Coupé only

11 - Backrest fan

- ♦ Front left seat backrest fan 1 - V512-
- ♦ Front right seat backrest fan 1 - V516-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 431

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ With:
- ♦ Side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- ♦ Side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 148

13 - Footwell light (rear)

- ♦ Rear left footwell light - W45-
- ♦ Rear right footwell light - W46-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear footwell light -W45- / -W46-

14 - Microswitch for backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 452

15 - Seat cushion fans

- ♦ Front left seat cushion fan 1 - V514-
- ♦ Front right seat cushion fan 1 - V518-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 458

16 - Seat height adjustment motor

- ♦ Driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-
- ♦ Front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-

❑ Not available as a separate part; if defective, renew upper seat pan frame ⇒ page 413

17 - Seat adjustment operating unit

♦ Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-

♦ Front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 399

18 - Massage function button

♦ Driver seat massage function button - E670-

♦ Front passenger seat massage function button - E671-

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 445

19 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

♦ Switch module for driver seat - E663-

♦ Switch module for front passenger seat - E664-

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 399

20 - Seat rake adjustment motor

♦ Driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-

♦ Front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 398

21 - Lumbar support adjustment pump

♦ Driver seat lumbar support adjustment pump - V152-

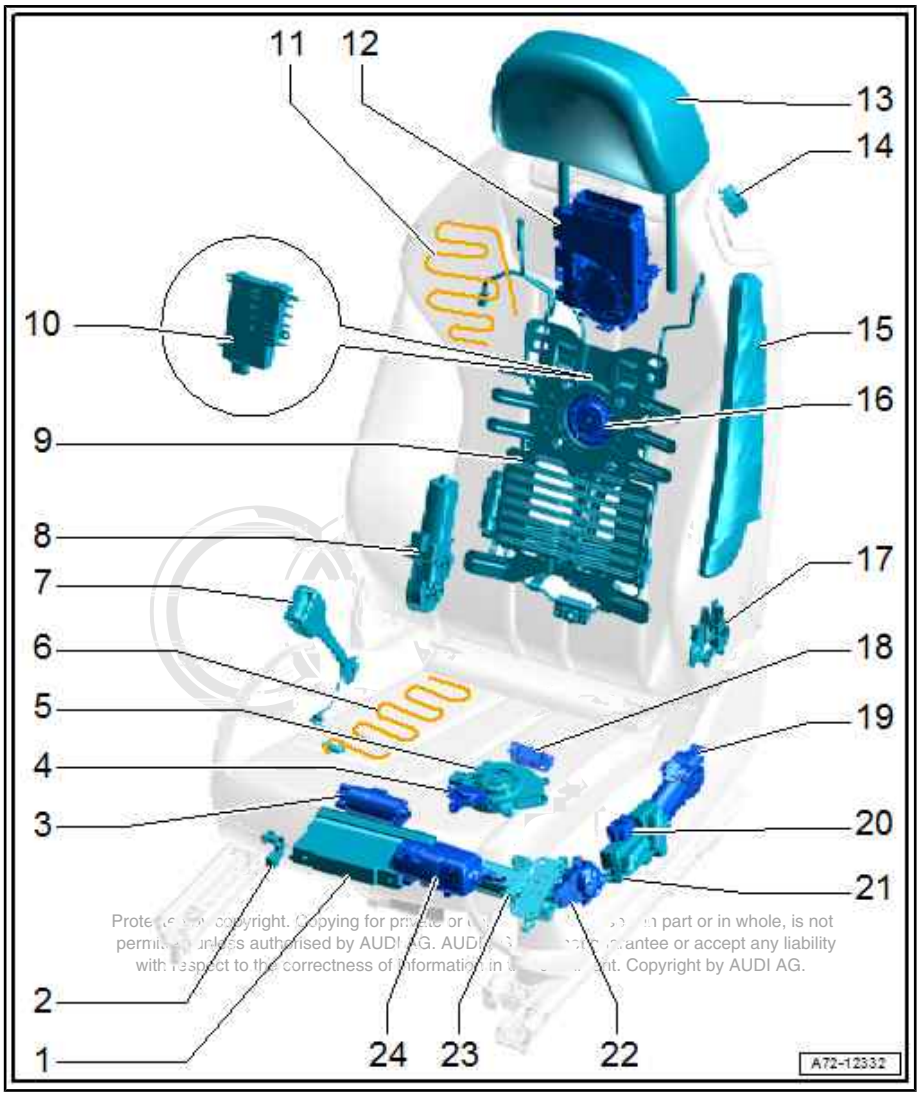
♦ Front passenger side lumbar support adjustment pump - V153-

❑ For pneumatic system

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 500

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Control unit for seat functions

- ♦ Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory - J136-
- ♦ Front passenger seat adjustment with memory control unit - J521-
  - ❑ Depending on equipment version: with integrated seat ventilation and seat heating
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 457

2 - Seat position sensor

- ♦ Driver side seat position sensor - G553-
- ♦ Front passenger side seat position sensor - G554-
  - ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 191

3 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor

- ♦ Driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28-
- ♦ Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V31-
  - ❑ Integrated into lower seat pan frame; if defective, renew lower seat pan frame ⇒ page 410

4 - Seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) - G128-

- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 194

5 - Seat cushion fans

- ♦ Front left seat cushion fan 1 - V514-
- ♦ Front right seat cushion fan 1 - V518-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 458

6 - Seat heating element

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 520

7 - Belt switches

- ♦ Driver side belt switch - E24-
- ♦ Front passenger side belt switch - E25-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 117

8 - Backrest adjustment motor

- ♦ Driver seat backrest adjustment motor - V45-

- Front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor - V46-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 387

9 - Lumbar support

- Driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V125-
- Driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V129-
- Front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor - V126-
- Front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor - V130-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 384

10 - Valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment

- Valve block for driver seat and backrest bolster adjustment - V378-
- Valve block for front passenger seat and backrest bolster adjustment - V379-
  - For pneumatic system
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 500

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Backrest heating element

- Exploded view ⇒ page 520

12 - Neck heating

- Blower for left neck heating - V450-
- Blower for right neck heating - V451-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 388

13 - Head restraint

- Driver seat head restraint adjustment motor - V103-
- Front passenger seat head restraint adjustment motor - V104-
- Depending on version
- Exploded view ⇒ page 389

14 - Easy Entry button

- Easy entry button on driver side - E358-
- Easy entry button on front passenger side - E359-

15 - Side airbag (front)

- With:

- Side airbag igniter on driver side - N199-
- Side airbag igniter on front passenger side - N200-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 148

16 - Backrest fan

- Front left seat backrest fan 1 - V512-
- Front right seat backrest fan 1 - V516-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ page 431

17 - Microswitch for backrest

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 452

18 - Footwell light (rear)

- Rear left footwell light - W45-
- Rear right footwell light - W46-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing rear footwell light -W45- / -W46-

19 - Seat height adjustment motor

- Driver seat height adjustment motor - V245-
- Front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
  - Not available as a separate part; if defective, renew upper seat pan frame ⇒ page 413

20 - Massage function button

- Driver seat massage function button - E670-
- Front passenger seat massage function button - E671-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ page 445

21 - Seat adjustment operating unit

- Driver seat adjustment operating unit - E470-
- Front passenger seat adjustment operating unit - E471-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 399

22 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- Switch module for driver seat - E663-
- Switch module for front passenger seat - E664-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 399

23 - Seat rake adjustment motor

- Driver seat rake adjustment motor - V243-
- Front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 398

24 - Lumbar support adjustment pump

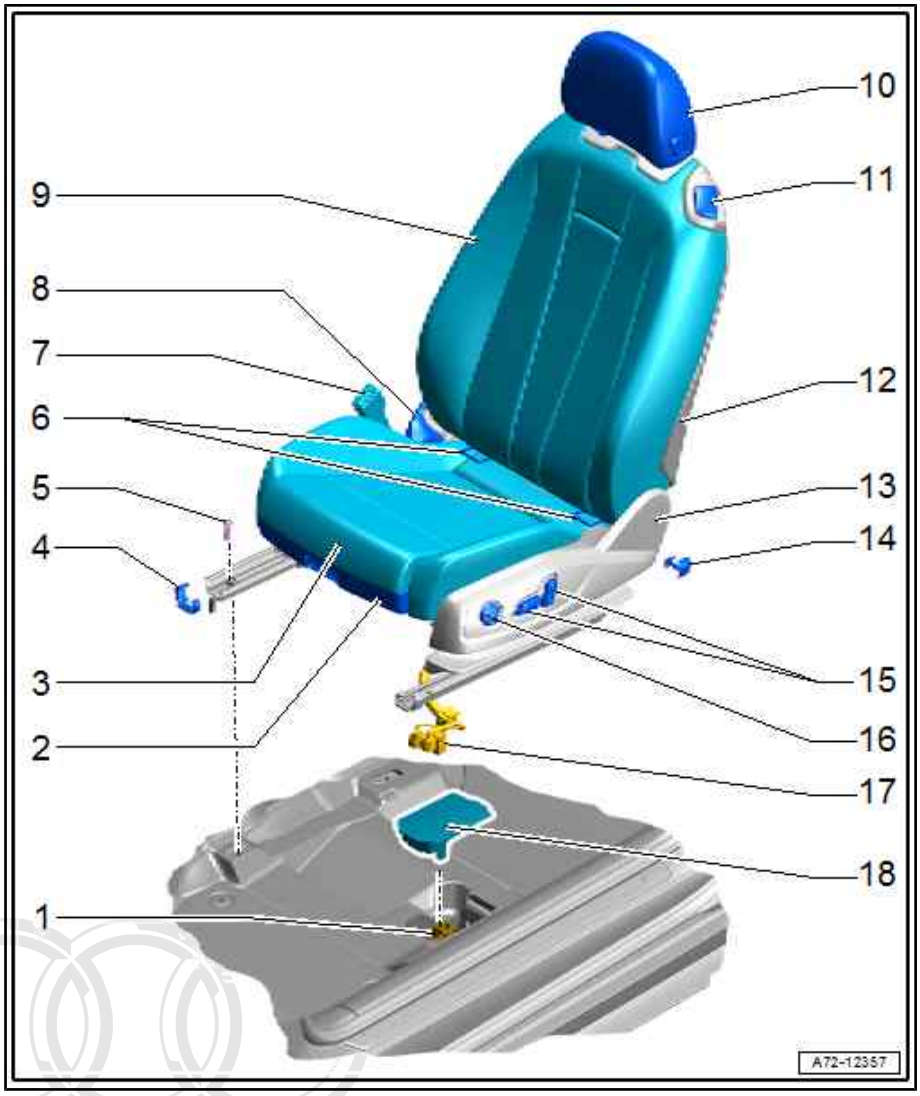
- Driver seat lumbar support adjustment pump - V152-
- Front passenger side lumbar support adjustment pump - V153-
  - For pneumatic system
  - Exploded view ⇒ page 500

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Exploded view - front seat

Note

The illustration shows the sports seat as an example.



1 - Connector point

- ❑ Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

2 - Seat trim (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 392

3 - Seat pan

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 392

4 - Cover (front)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 438

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing front seat ⇒ page 399
- ❑ 50 Nm

6 - Child seat anchor

- ❑ For front passenger seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 120

7 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 88

8 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 392

9 - Backrest

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 384

10 - Head restraint

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 389

11 - Backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system

- ❑ A5 Coupé/Cabriolet only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 382

12 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 384

13 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 392

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 438

15 - Seat adjustment operating unit

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 399

16 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 399

17 - Electrical connector

- ❑ With corrugated tube for modular wire routing
- ❑ Connecting and disconnecting modular wiring ⇒ page 407

18 - Cover

- ❑ For connector point

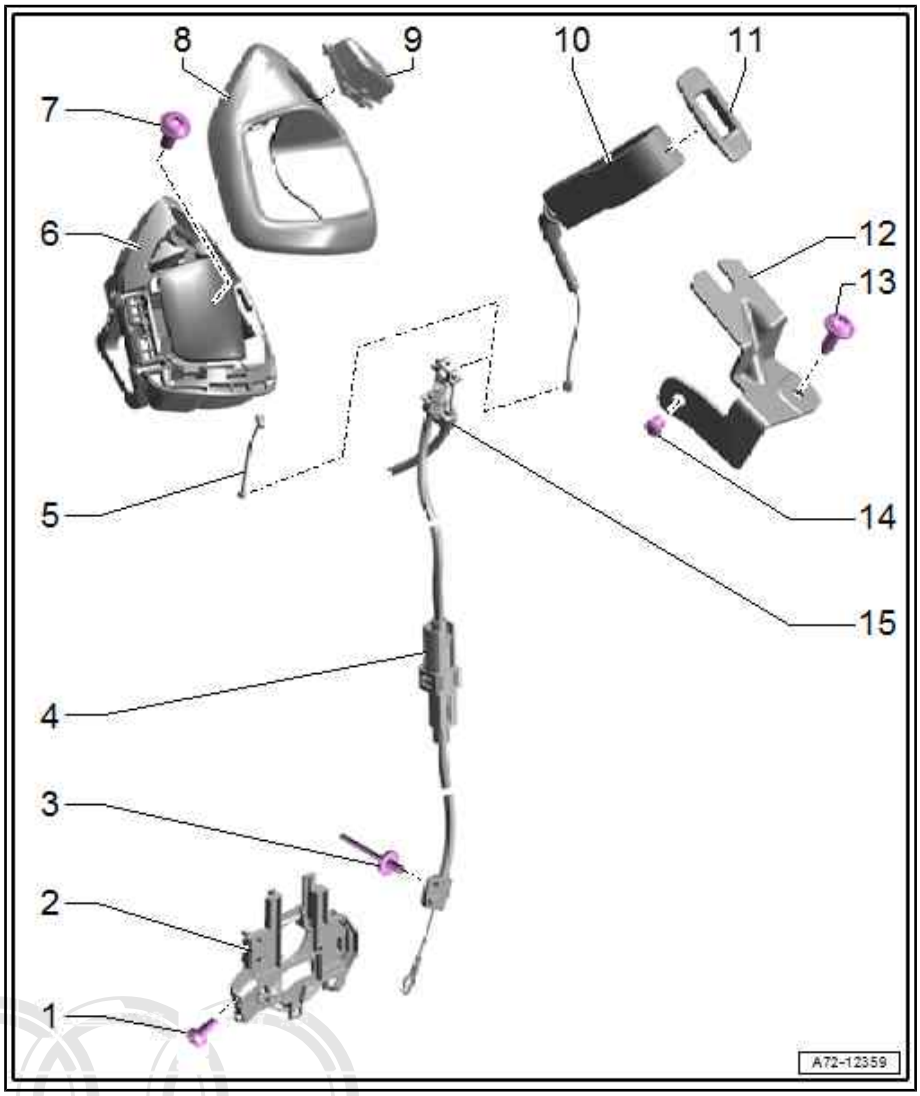
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system

⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism”, page 382

⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - Easy Entry system, manual”, page 383

2.3.1 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

2 - Microswitch for backrest

- ❑ For seat with electric adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 452

3 - Rivet

- ❑ 2x

4 - Bowden cable mounting

- ❑ Clip onto outer backrest frame

5 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For standard/sports seat

6 - Backrest release handle

- ❑ For standard/sports seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.23.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism”, page 446

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

8 - Trim for backrest release mechanism

- ❑ For standard/sports seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 445
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

9 - Easy Entry button

- ❑ For seat with electric adjustment

10 - Pull strap for backrest release mechanism

- ❑ For super sports seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446

11 - Trim for backrest release mechanism

- ❑ For super sports seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 445
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Bracket

- ❑ For pull strap
- ❑ For super sports seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446

13 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm

14 - Fastener

15 - Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism

- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Clip onto outer backrest frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446

2.3.2 Exploded view - Easy Entry system, manual

1 - Seat longitudinal adjuster

- ❑ Integrated into lower seat pan frame

2 - Slider

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 459

3 - Easy Entry system

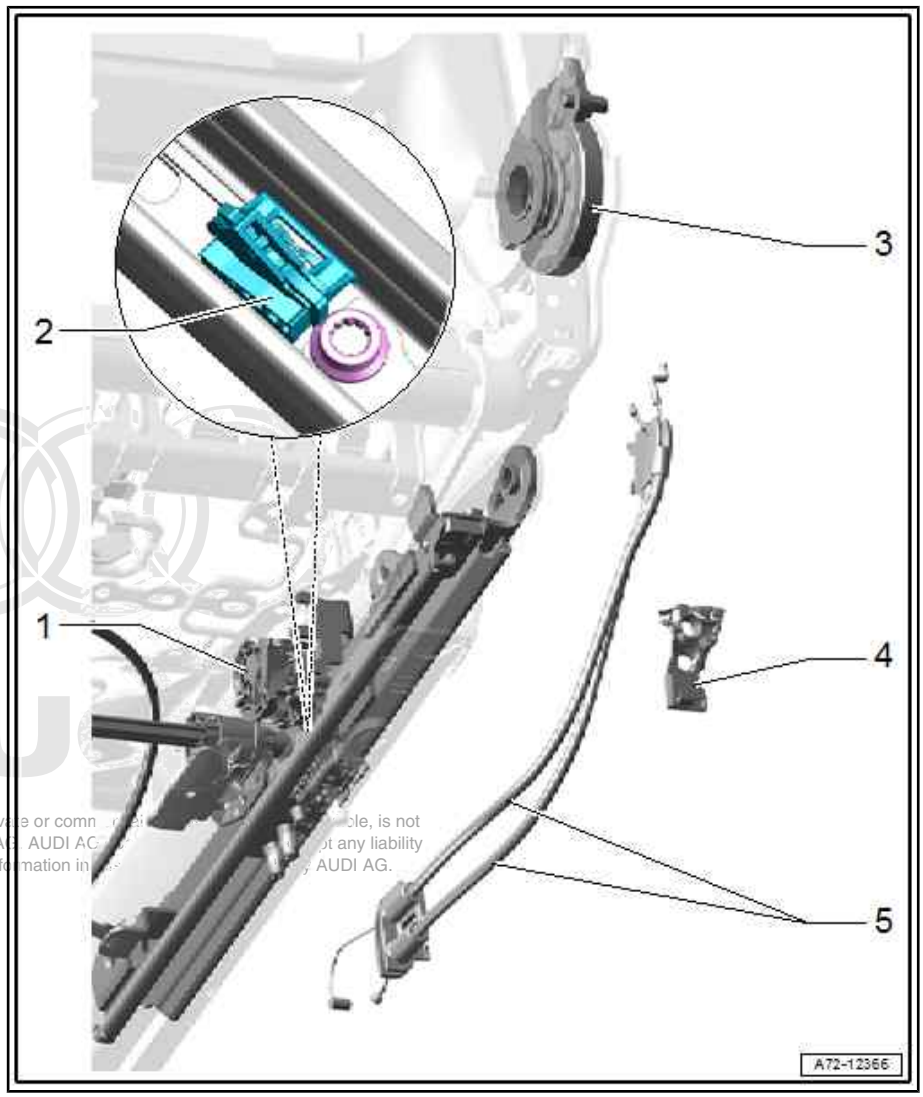
- ❑ Integrated into outer backrest frame

4 - Guide

- ❑ For Bowden cable
- ❑ Clip into seat pan

5 - Bowden cables for Easy Entry system

- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 449



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not make any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

2.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest

⇒ “2.4.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support”, page 384

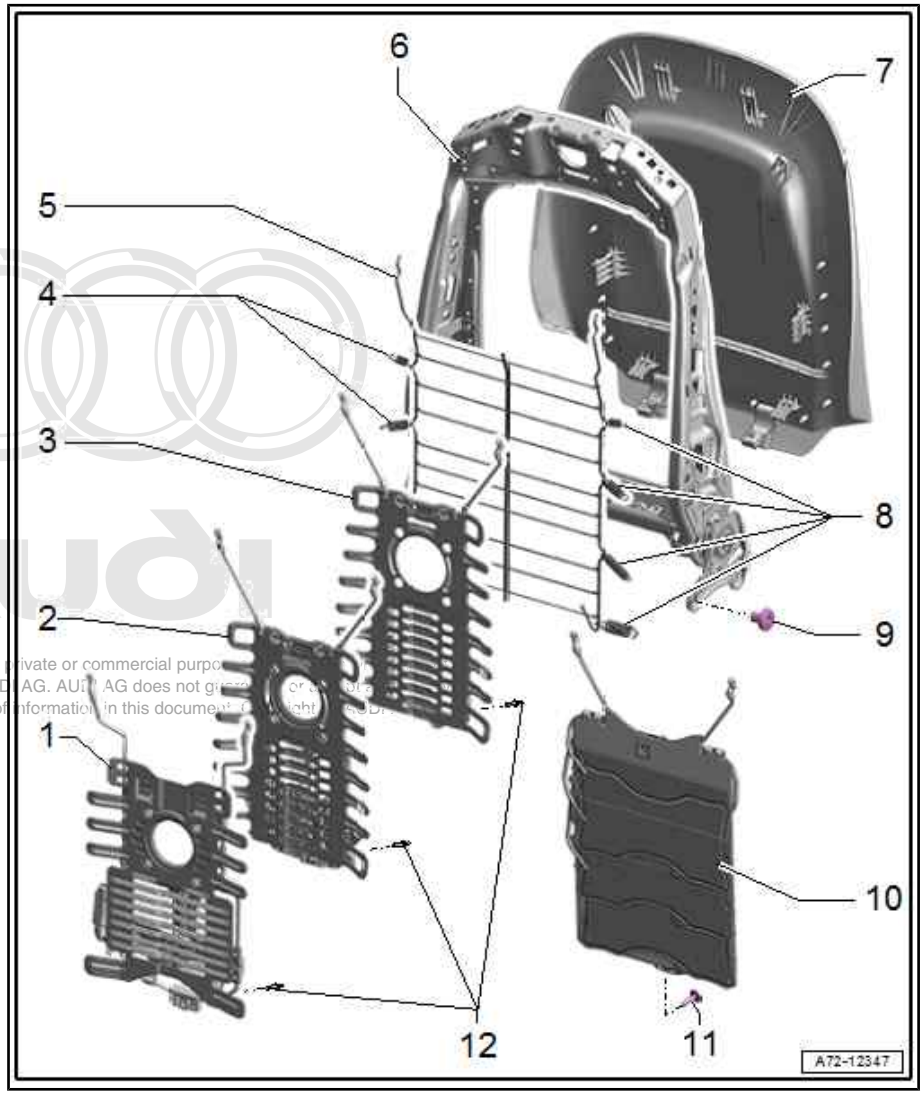
⇒ “2.4.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest cover panel, super sports seat”, page 385

⇒ “2.4.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, super sports seat”, page 386

⇒ “2.4.4 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor”, page 387

⇒ “2.4.5 Exploded view - front seat backrest, neck heating”, page 388

2.4.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support



1 - Electromechanical lumbar support

- ❑ Manufactured by Brose
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455

2 - Electromechanical lumbar support

- ❑ Manufactured by Schukra
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455

3 - Fixed lumbar support

- ❑ Without motors
- ❑ For equipment versions with electric backrest adjuster and without lumbar support
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455

4 - Extension springs

- ❑ For spring mat
- ❑ Note different lengths

5 - Spring mat

- ❑ For equipment versions with manual backrest adjuster and without lumbar support
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 429

6 - Backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 422

7 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing:

◆ Standard/sports seat ⇒ page 423

◆ Super sports seat ⇒ page 425

- ❑ Check that it is locked in place correctly after installation

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not give... with respect to the correctness of information in this document...

8 - Extension springs

- ❑ For spring mat
- ❑ Note different lengths

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 33 Nm

10 - Pneumatic lumbar support

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 508

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 11 (page 500)

12 - Rivet

2.4.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest cover panel, super sports seat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 6.5 Nm

2 - Side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.14.3 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat”, page 425

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 6.5 Nm

4 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 425
- ❑ Hook in at outer backrest frame (bottom) and press onto side trim until it engages audibly

5 - Bolt

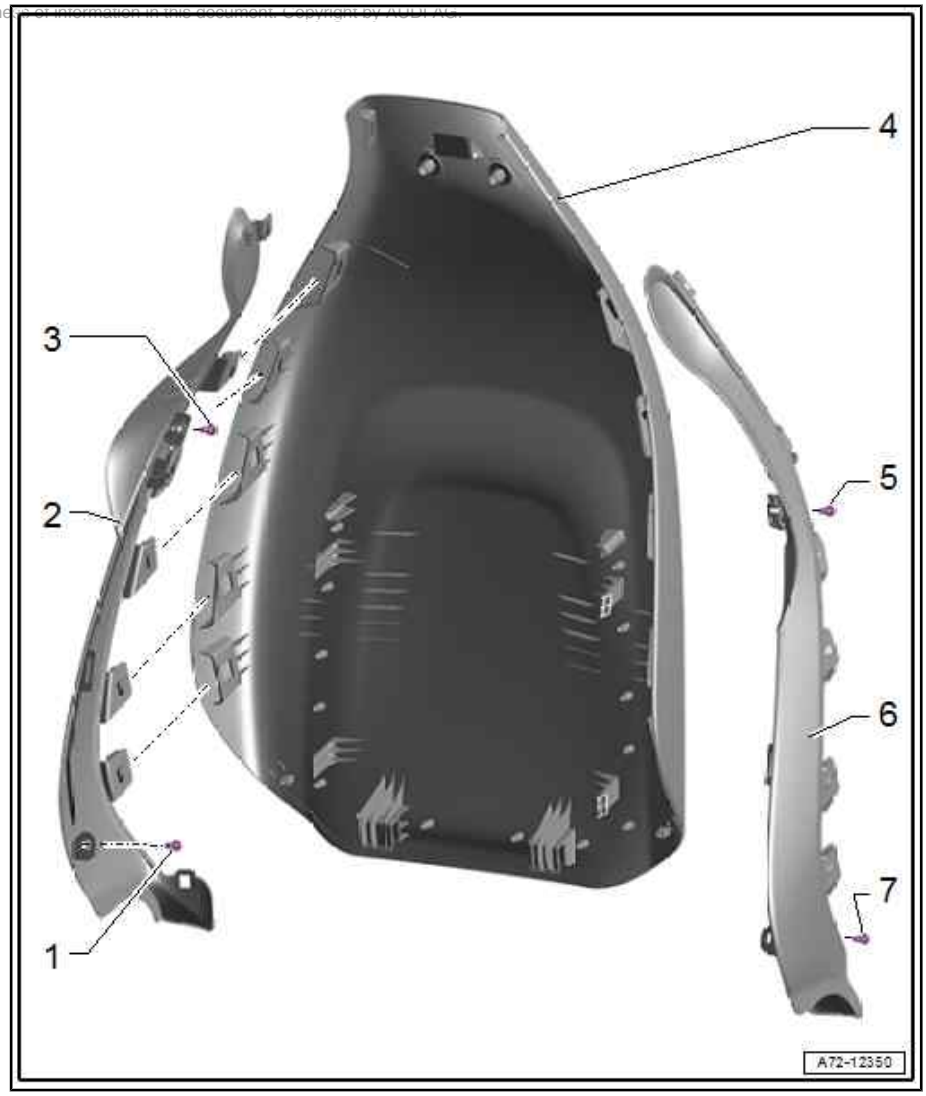
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

6 - Side trim

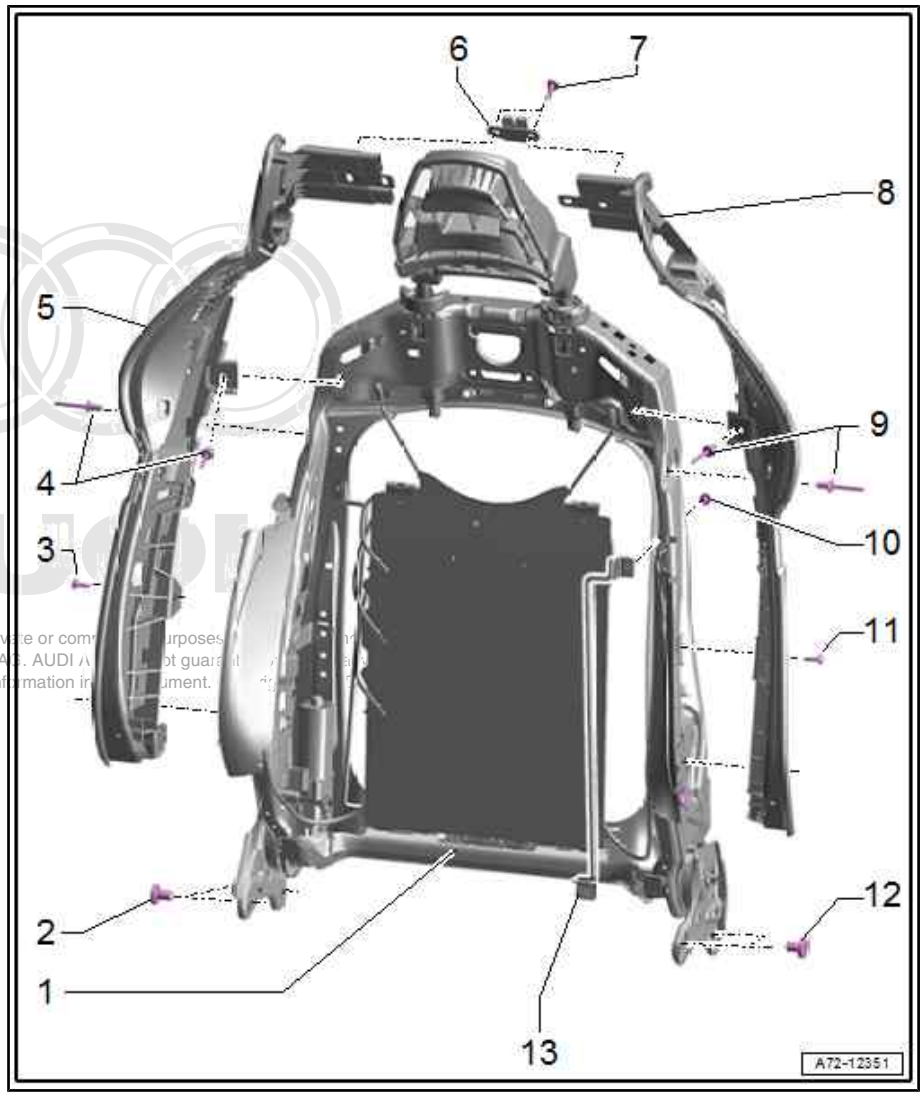
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.14.3 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat”, page 425

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 6.5 Nm



2.4.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, super sports seat



1 - Backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 422

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 9 (page 385)

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 5 Nm

4 - Rivet
- ❑ 3x

5 - Side bolster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 426

6 - Arrester
- ❑ For backrest cover panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.14.3 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat”, page 425

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

8 - Side bolster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 426

9 - Rivet
- ❑ 3x

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

11 - Bolt
- ❑ 5 Nm

12 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 9 (page 385)

13 - Upholstery wire
- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.4.4 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor

1 - Adjusting shaft

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 7.5 Nm

3 - Backrest adjustment motor

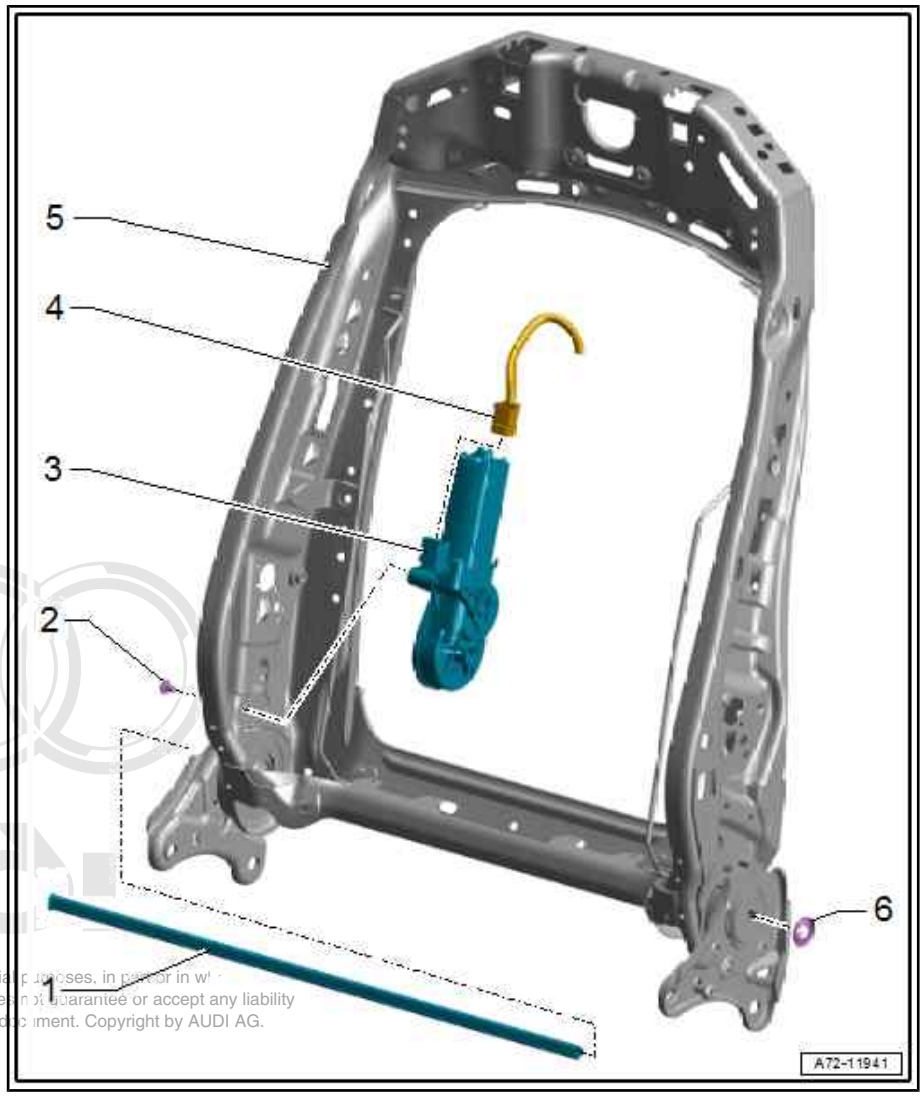
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 417

4 - Electrical connector

5 - Outer backrest frame

6 - Clamping washer

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Press onto adjuster shaft so that there is at least 1.0 mm of clearance



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.5 Exploded view - front seat backrest, neck heating

1 - Neck heating

- ◆ Blower for left neck heating - V450-
- ◆ Blower for right neck heating - V451-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 431
  - ❑ Engage in outer backrest frame

2 - Air duct

- ❑ Clipped into neck heating
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

3 - Head restraint trim

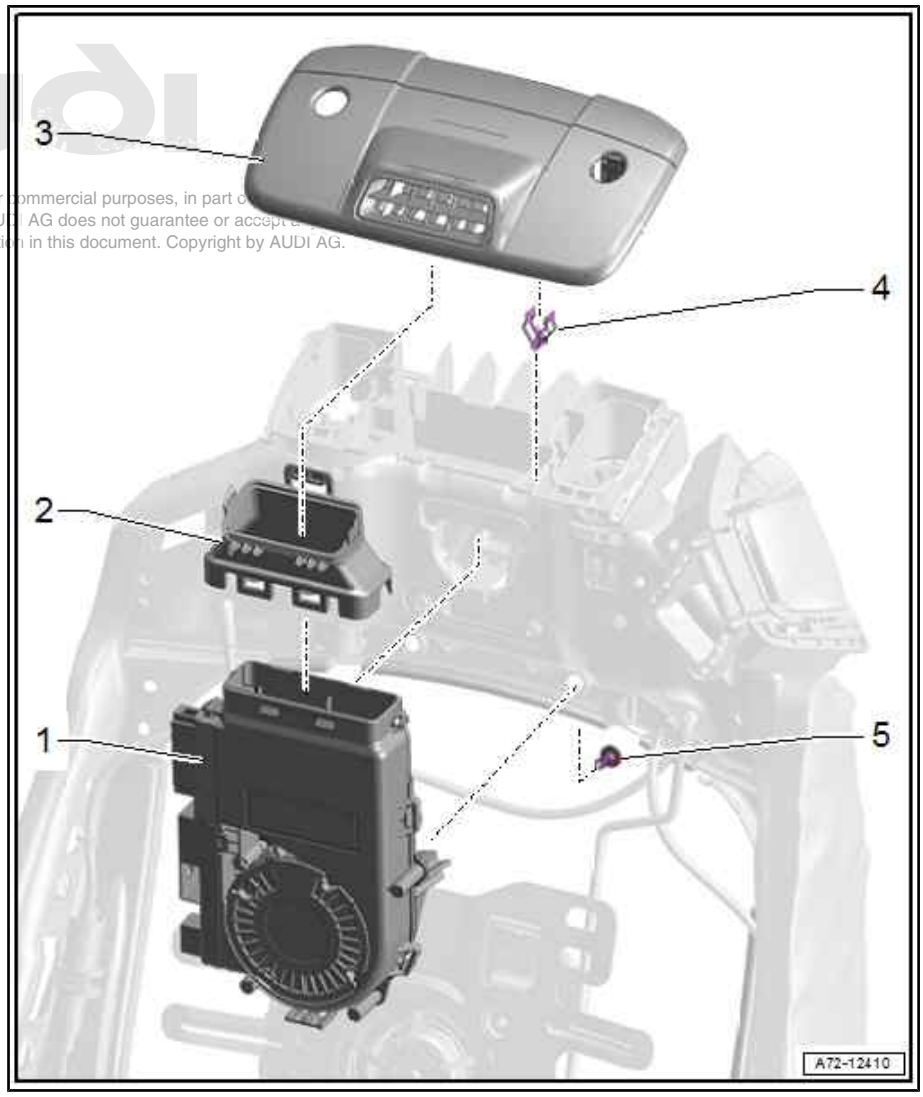
- ❑ With vent for neck heating
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.16 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 432
- ❑ Clipped onto frame
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Retaining clips

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in head restraint trim

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

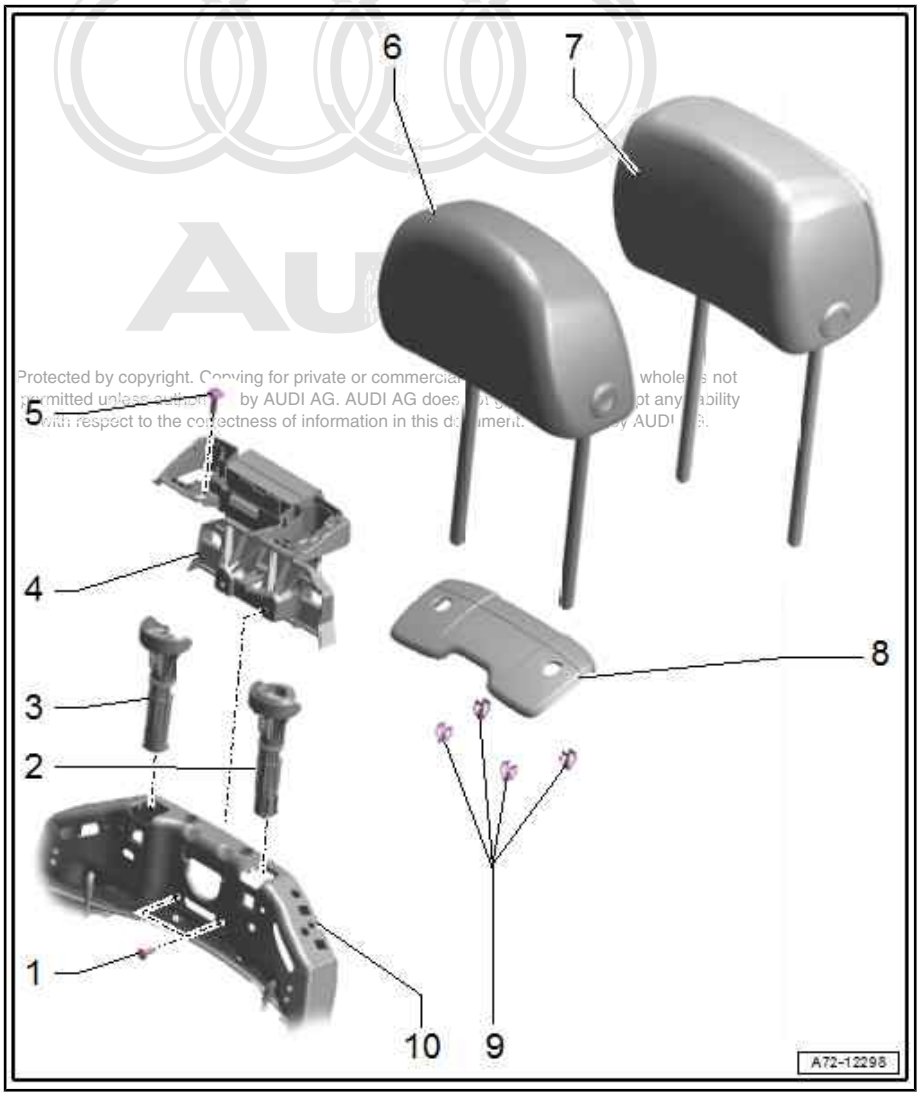
2.5 Exploded view - head restraint

⇒ “2.5.1 Exploded view - head restraint with height and depth adjustment”, page 389

⇒ “2.5.2 Exploded view - head restraint with height and angle adjustment”, page 390

⇒ “2.5.3 Exploded view - head restraint, super sports seat”, page 391

2.5.1 Exploded view - head restraint with height and depth adjustment



1 - Bolt

- 2x
- 2.8 Nm

2 - Head restraint guide (left-side)

- With release ring for head restraint
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 436
- Press on until all three retaining catches engage fully in outer backrest frame

3 - Head restraint guide (right-side)

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 436
- Press on until all three retaining catches engage fully in outer backrest frame

4 - Frame

- Removing and installing ⇒ “2.17 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 436

5 - Bolt

- 2x
- Version with Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system only
- 2.8 Nm

6 - Head restraint

- Manual/electric height adjustment
- Cannot be dismantled
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 432
- Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

7 - Head restraint

- Manual/electric height adjustment
- Manual depth adjustment
- Cannot be dismantled
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 432
- Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

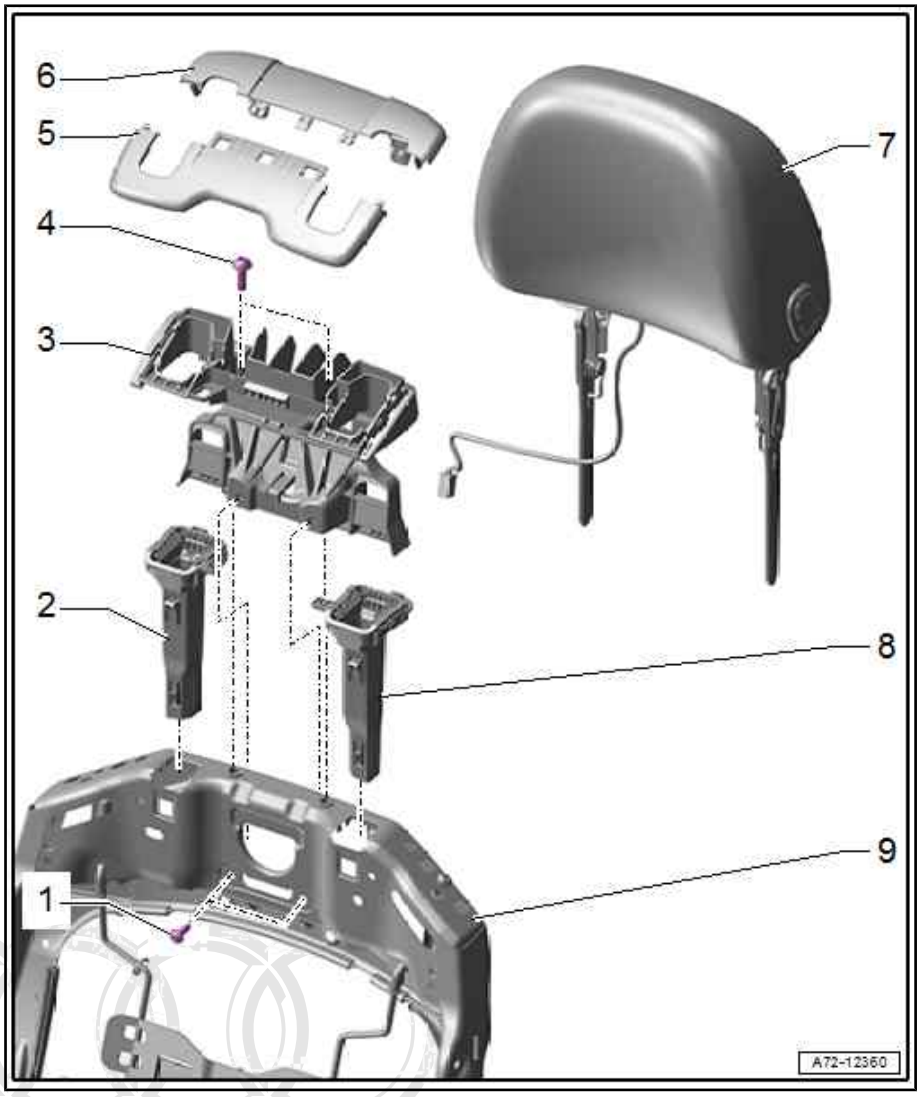
8 - Trim

- ❑ For head restraint
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 432

9 - Retaining clips

10 - Outer backrest frame

2.5.2 Exploded view - head restraint with height and angle adjustment



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.8 Nm

2 - Head restraint guide (right-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 437
- ❑ Press on until all three retaining catches engage fully in outer backrest frame

3 - Frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.17.2 Removing and installing head restraint guide - head restraint with height and angle adjustment”, page 437

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Version with Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system only
- ❑ 2.8 Nm

5 - Trim panel (front)

- ❑ For head restraint
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.16.2 Removing and installing head restraint with height and angle adjustment”, page 433

6 - Trim (rear)

- ❑ For head restraint
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.16.2 Removing and installing head restraint with height and angle adjustment”, page 433

7 - Head restraint

- ❑ Manual/electric height adjustment
- ❑ Manual angle adjustment
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 433
- ❑ Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

8 - Head restraint guide (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 437
- ❑ Press on until all three retaining catches engage fully in outer backrest frame

Data privacy notice: Any use of this Service for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this Service and any copyright owned by third parties is property of their owners. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Outer backrest frame

2.5.3 Exploded view - head restraint, super sports seat

1 - Outer backrest frame

2 - Head restraint guide (right-side)

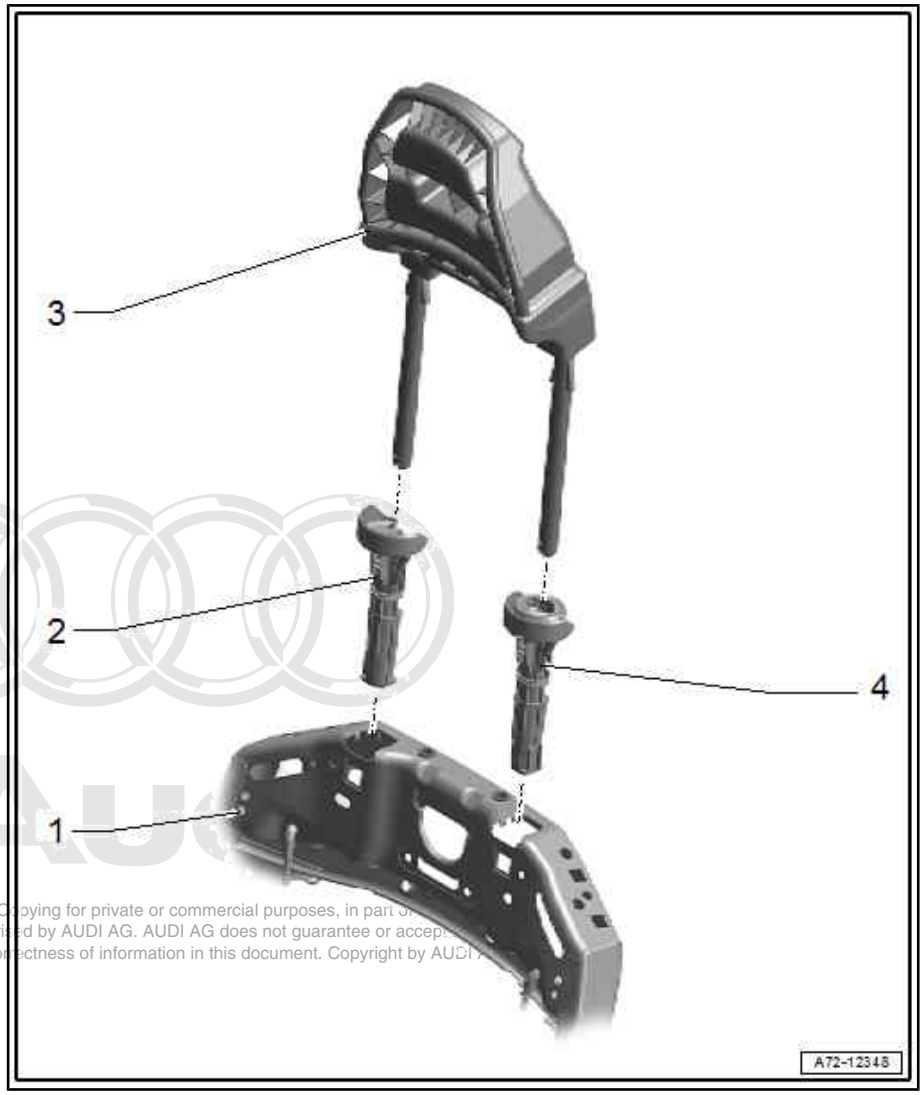
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 436
- ❑ Press on until all three retaining catches engage fully in outer backrest frame

3 - Head restraint

- ❑ Integrated; cannot be adjusted
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 434
- ❑ Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

4 - Head restraint guide (left-side)

- ❑ With release ring for head restraint
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 436
- ❑ Press on until all three retaining catches engage fully in outer backrest frame



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

2.6 Exploded view - seat pan

⇒ “2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, trim”, page 392

⇒ “2.6.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat without seat depth adjustment”, page 394

⇒ “2.6.3 Exploded view - seat pan, seat with seat depth adjustment”, page 395

⇒ “2.6.4 Exploded view - seat pan, fire extinguisher”, page 396

⇒ “2.6.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster/seat height adjuster (electric)”, page 397

⇒ “2.6.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster”, page 398

⇒ “2.6.7 Exploded view - seat pan, electric seat adjustment actuators/switches”, page 399

2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, trim

1 - Seat side trim (sill side)
- ❑ For manually adjustable seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 439
- ❑ Press onto bracket and seat trim (front) until it engages audibly

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

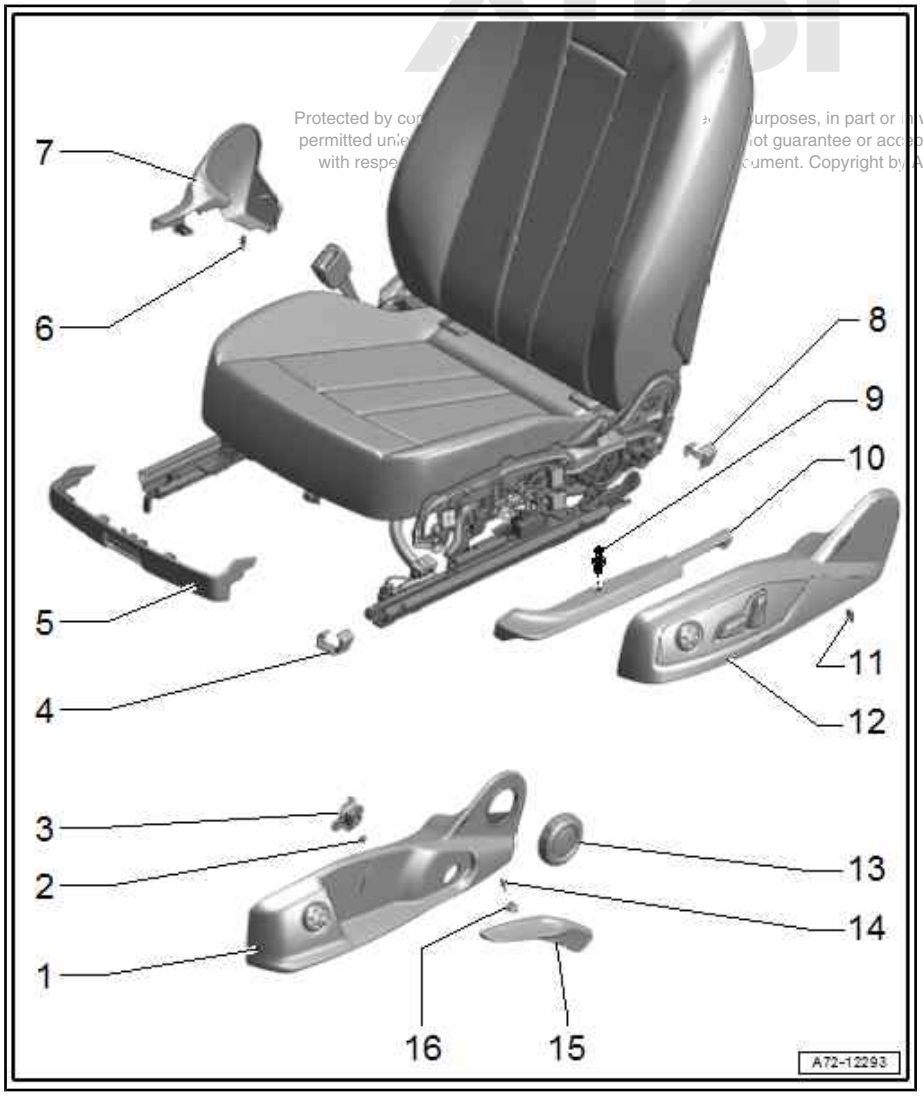
3 - Adapter
- ❑ For manual seat height adjustment lever
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.11.1 Removing and installing seat height adjuster”, page 412

4 - Cover (front)
- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 438
- ❑ Slide on carefully until it engages audibly

5 - Seat trim (front)
- ❑ For equipment versions with seat depth adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 441
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

6 - Fastener

7 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 441



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Cover (rear)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 438
- ❑ Slide on carefully until it engages audibly

9 - Fastener

10 - Cover (centre)

- ❑ For seat rail
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 438

11 - Fastener

12 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ For seat with electric adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 439
- ❑ Press onto bracket and seat trim (front) until it engages audibly

13 - Hand wheel

- ❑ For manual backrest adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 416
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

14 - Fastener

15 - Lever

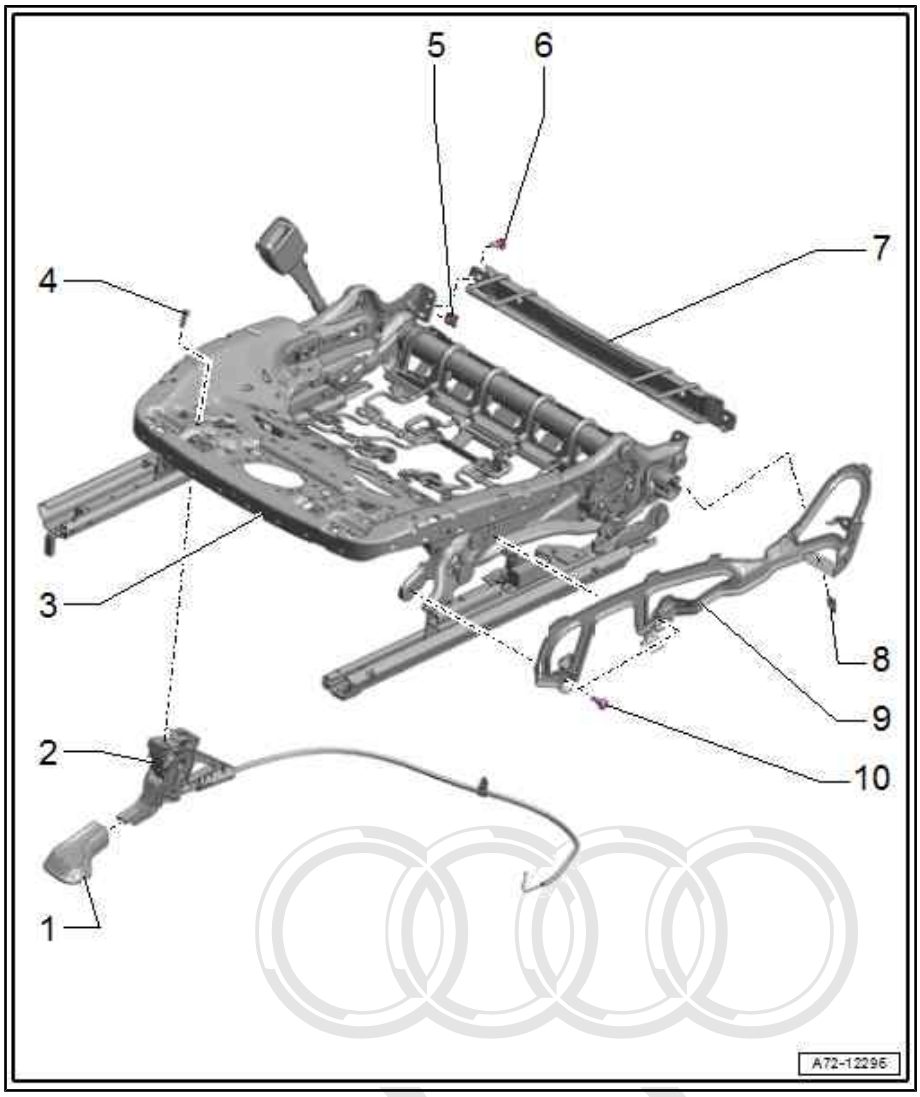
- ❑ For manual seat height adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 412
- ❑ Before pressing on, check whether retaining spring -item 16- is inserted in seat height adjuster shaft

16 - Retaining spring

- ❑ For manual seat height adjustment lever

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat without seat depth adjustment



1 - Handle

- For manual seat longitudinal adjustment
- Renew after removing
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 409

2 - Bowden cable

- For manual seat longitudinal adjustment
- Forms a joint unit with lever
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 409

3 - Seat pan

- Upper and lower frames cannot be separated
- When renewing, fit electrical and electronic components and wiring removed earlier in new seat pan

4 - Bolt

- 2x
- 3.5 Nm

5 - Speed nut

- 2x
- Inserted in seat pan
- Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

6 - Bolt

- 2x
- Tightening torque ⇒ Item 4 (page 120)

7 - Child seat anchor

- Equipment version, only on front passenger seat
- Bolted to seat pan
- Checking after an accident ⇒ page 14
- Renew child seat anchor if damaged or deformed
- Exploded view ⇒ page 120

8 - Fastener

9 - Bracket

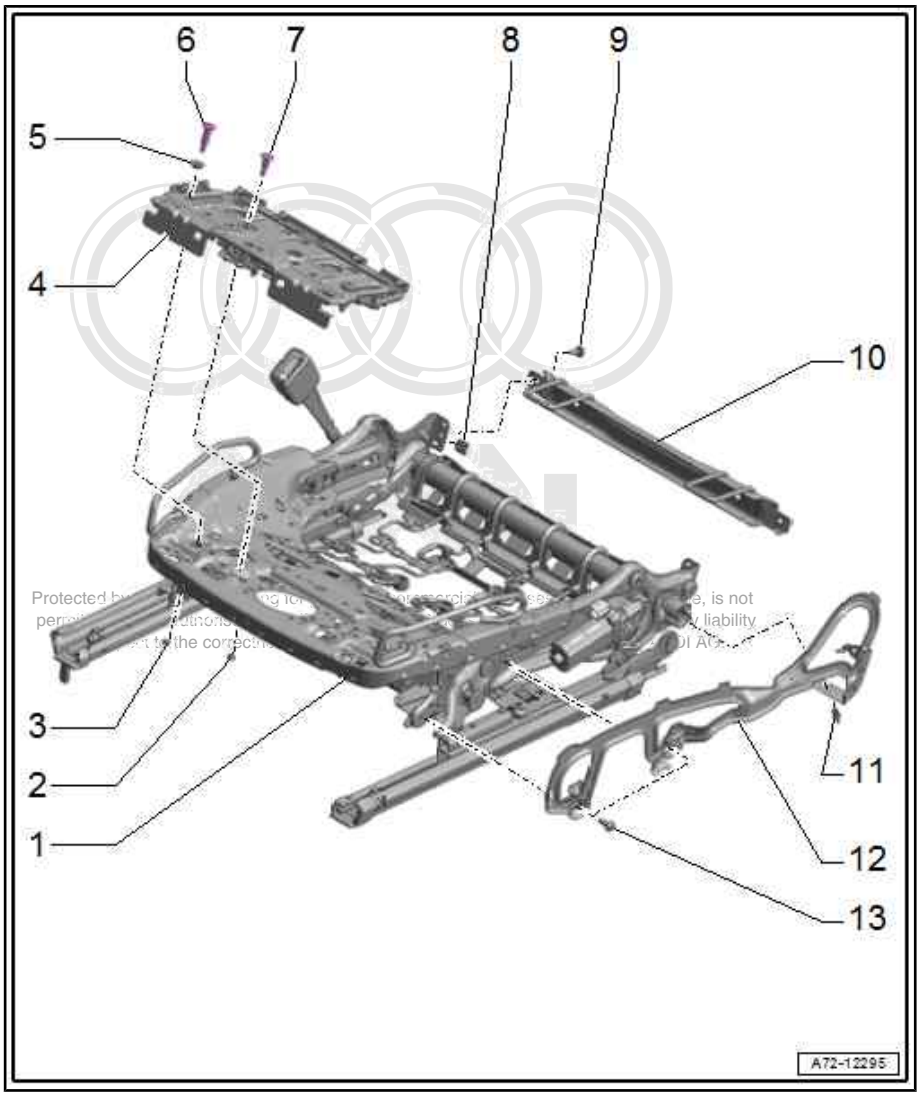
- For seat side trim (sill side)
- Removing and installing ⇒ “2.18.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side)”, page 439

10 - Bolt

- 2x
- 7.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6.3 Exploded view - seat pan, seat with seat depth adjustment



1 - Seat pan

2 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

3 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

4 - Seat depth adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 442

5 - Sleeve
- ❑ 2x

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x

8 - Speed nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Inserted in seat pan
- ❑ Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 4 (page 120)

10 - Child seat anchor/cross-piece - super sports seat
- ❑ Child seat anchor: equipment version, only on front passenger seat
- ❑ Bolted to seat pan
- ❑ Child seat anchor: checking after an accident ⇒ page 14
- ❑ Renew child seat anchor if damaged or deformed
- ❑ Exploded view - child seat anchors ⇒ page 120

11 - Fastener

12 - Bracket
- ❑ For seat side trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.18.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side)”, page 439

13 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

2.6.4 Exploded view - seat pan, fire extinguisher

1 - Fire extinguisher

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

3 - Mounting for fire extinguisher

4 - Bracket

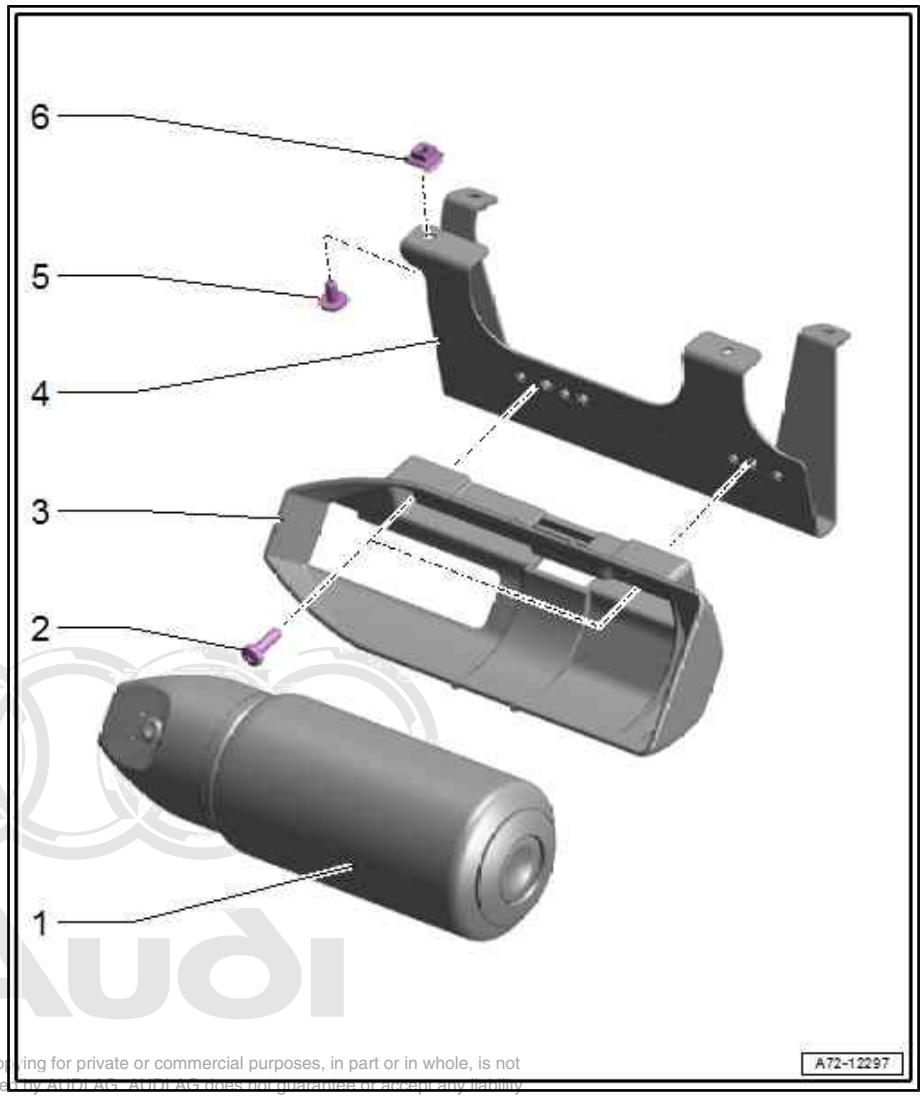
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 443

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

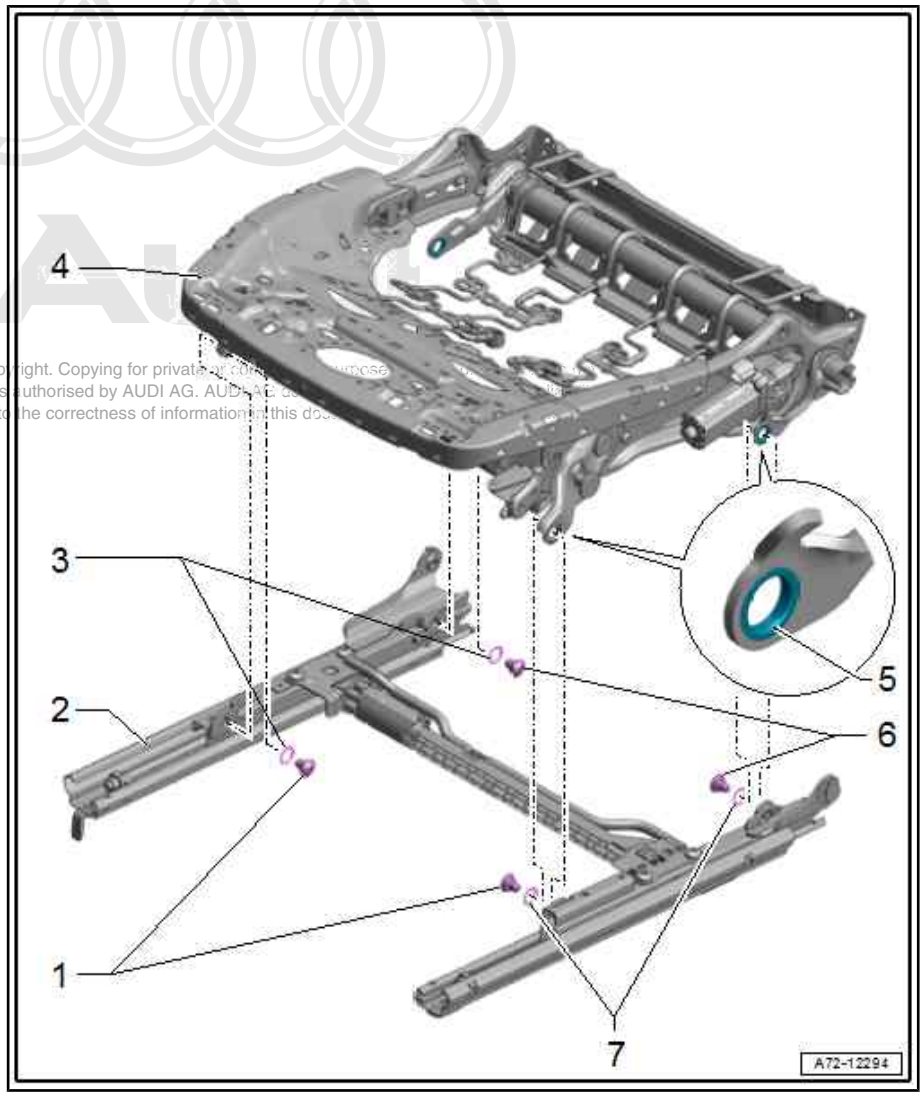
6 - Speed nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Inserted in seat pan
- ❑ Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster/seat height adjuster (electric)



1 - Bolts

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 22 Nm

2 - Lower seat pan frame

- ❑ With seat longitudinal adjustment motor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 410

3 - Thrust washers

- ❑ Not re-installed after removal

4 - Upper seat pan frame

- ❑ With seat height adjustment motor
- ❑ When renewing, fit electrical and electronic components and wiring removed earlier in new upper frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 413

5 - Bush

6 - Bolts

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 22 Nm

7 - Thrust washers

- ❑ Not re-installed after removal

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.6.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 10 Nm

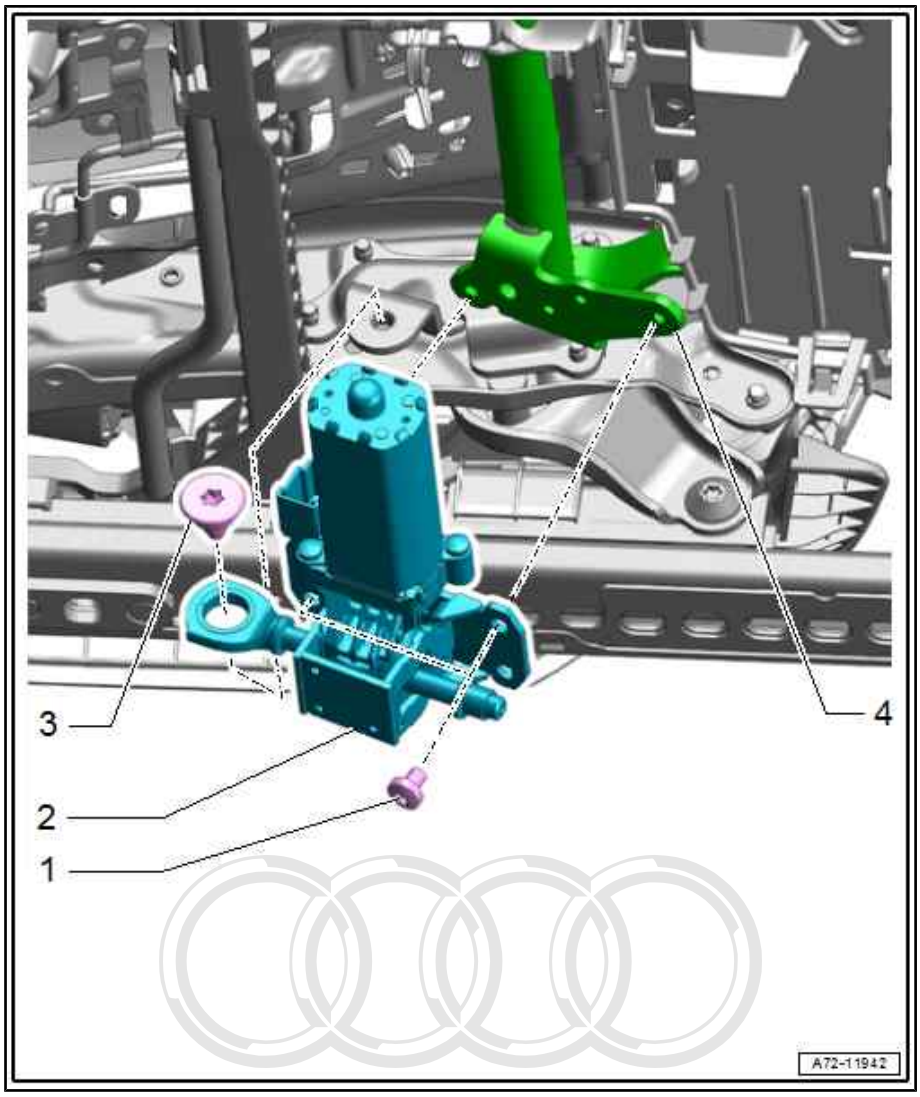
2 - Seat rake adjustment motor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 415

3 - Bolt

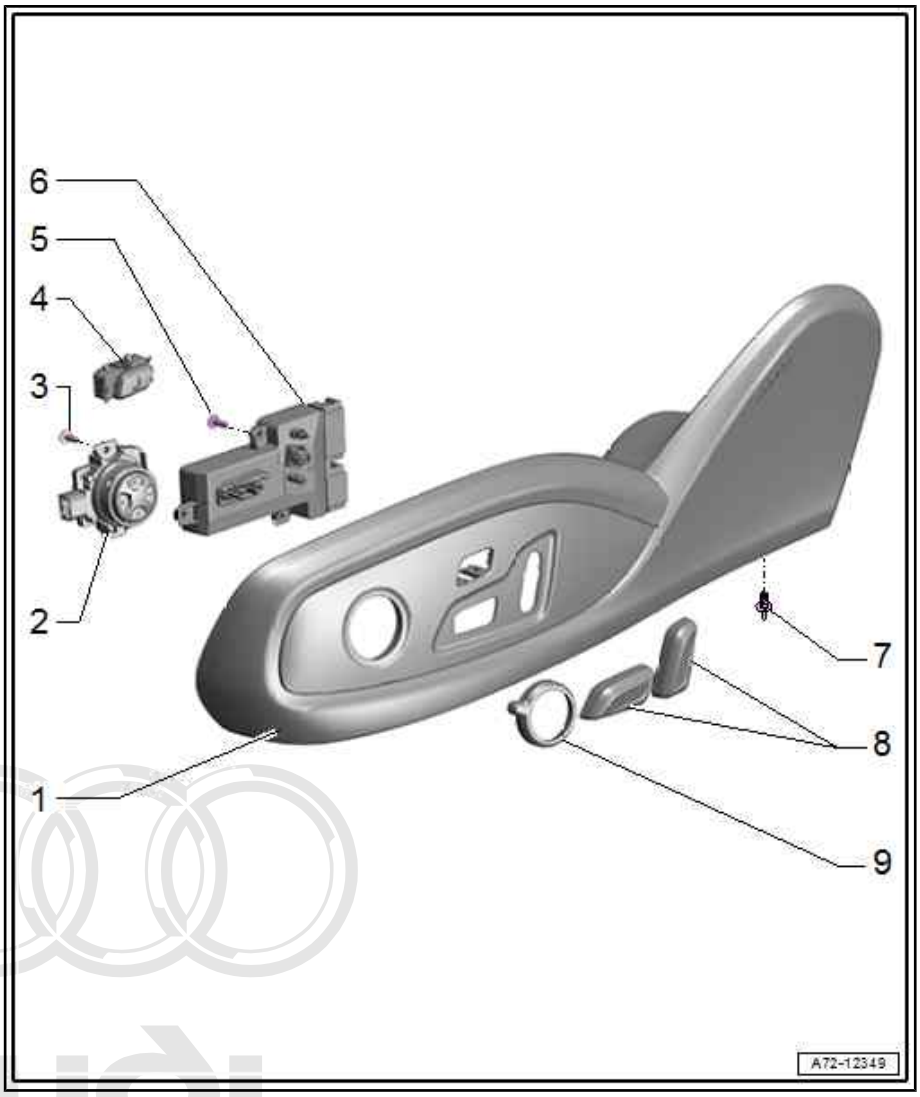
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 20 Nm

4 - Adjusting shaft



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6.7 Exploded view - seat pan, electric seat adjustment actuators/switches



1 - Seat side trim (sill side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 439

2 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 0.4 Nm

4 - Massage function button

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 445
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 0.4 Nm

6 - Seat adjustment operating unit

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 443

7 - Fastener

8 - Actuator

- ❑ For seat and backrest adjustment
- ❑ Clipped on
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.19 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit E470 / E471 ”, page 443
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Rocker

- ❑ For switch module
- ❑ Clipped on; insert lugs in grooves at switch module and press on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.20 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E663 / E664 ”, page 444

2.7 Removing and installing front seat

⇒ “2.7.1 Removing and installing front seat”, page 399

⇒ “2.7.2 Removing front seat if seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective”, page 402

2.7.1 Removing and installing front seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Protector - VAS 871 001- (not illustrated)

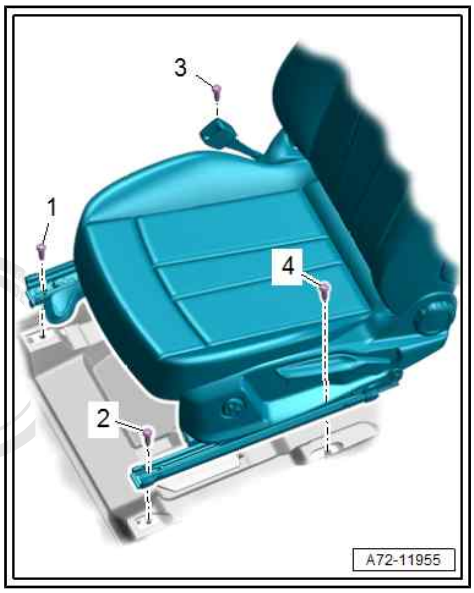
Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Move head restraint to lowest possible position.
– A5 Sportback: Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 113 .
– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
– Remove bolts -3 and 4- from rear of seat rail.
– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
– Remove bolts -1 and 2- from front of seat rail.
– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



WARNING

Risk of malfunctions due to electrostatic discharge.

- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

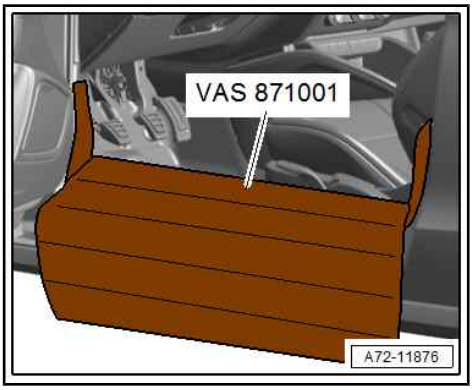
– Unplug electrical connectors from connector point in floor and plug in airbag adapter - VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 404 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Before lifting out front seat, attach protector - VAS 871 001- as shown in illustration to protect sill panel trim.

• A second mechanic is required for removing the front seat.

– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.



Note

Equipment version with seat position sensor: Take care not to damage the seat position sensor when setting the seat down.

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Equipment version with seat position sensor: Check seat position sensor for damage.*
- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*

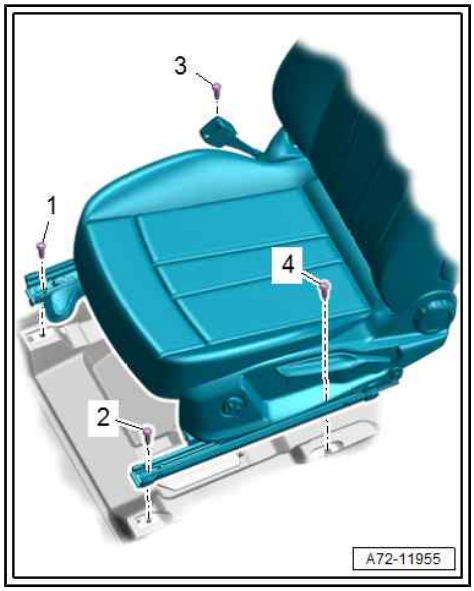
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With the help of a second mechanic, lift front seat into vehicle and position correctly.

• Front seat with manual adjustment: Seat rails of seat longitudinal adjuster must engage so that they are parallel.

– Tighten bolts (front) in sequence -1, 2-.

– Detach airbag adapter - VAS 6282- and plug connector in at connector point in floor ⇒ page 404 .



WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- ***If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.***

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Tighten bolts (rear) in sequence -3, 4-.



Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - front seat", page 380

Protected by copyright. Copying ... part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AU... guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of ... document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.7.2 Removing front seat if seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Protector - VAS 871 001- (not illustrated)

Checking seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31-

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

Note

To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the electrical/electronic components and wiring before removing the front seat any further.

– Perform the following checks:

♦ Check fuse ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

♦ Check voltage at connector point and perform Fault Finding if necessary ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

♦ Check voltage at seat longitudinal adjustment motor ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

♦ Check voltage at seat adjustment operating unit and perform Fault Finding if necessary ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– If fuse is defective, it must be renewed ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– Repair or renew wire if there is no voltage ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

– If operating unit -E470- / -E471- is defective, it must be renewed ⇒ page 443 .

– If control unit -J136- / -J521- is defective, it must be renewed ⇒ page 457 (not always fitted).

– If seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective, lower seat pan frame must be renewed ⇒ page 410 .

Removing if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- /-V31- is defective

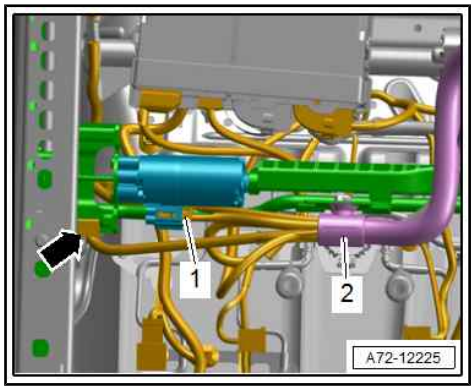
Audi A5 2016 ➢ , Audi A5 Cabriolet 2017 ➢ , Audi A5 Sportback 2017 ➢ , is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

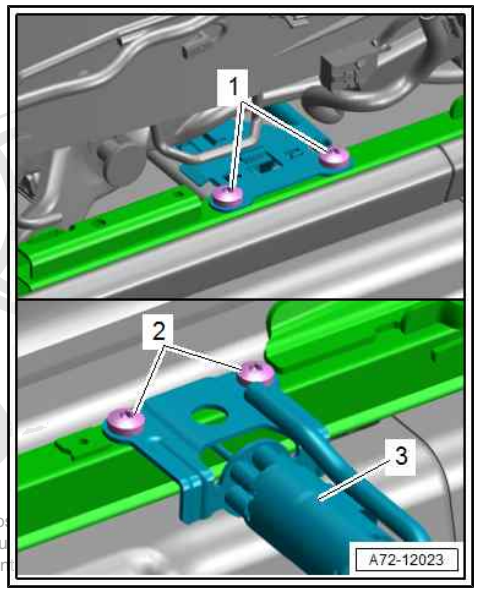
Risk of malfunctions due to electrostatic discharge.

- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Unplug electrical connectors from connector point in floor and plug in airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ page 404 .
– Remove seat rail cover (centre) ⇒ page 438 .
– A5 Sportback: Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 113 .
– Unclip retainer (rear) -2- for wire routing from seat pan using a screwdriver.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- from seat longitudinal adjustment motor.
– Move electrical wiring clear -arrow-.

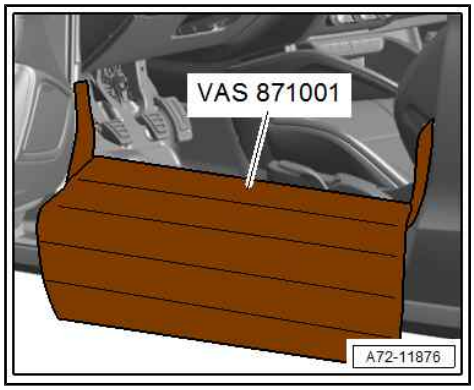


– Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- and detach defective seat longitudinal adjustment motor -3- with bracket.
– Remove accessible bolts for seat rails.
– Push front seat towards front/rear and unscrew accessible bolts for seat rails.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documer

– Before lifting out front seat, attach protector - VAS 871 001- as shown in illustration to protect sill panel trim.



Note

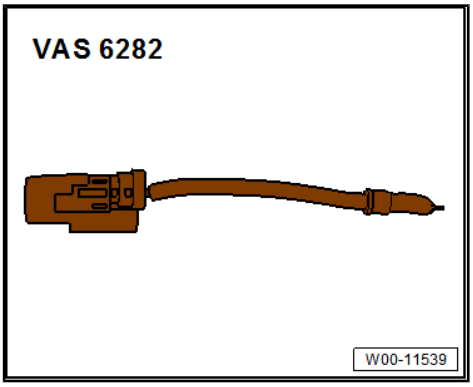
A second mechanic is required for removing the front seat.

– Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.
– Renew lower seat pan frame with seat longitudinal adjustment motor ⇒ page 410 .

2.8 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Airbag adapter - VAS 6282-



Unplugging airbag connector

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

– Fold up cover in floor covering.

WARNING

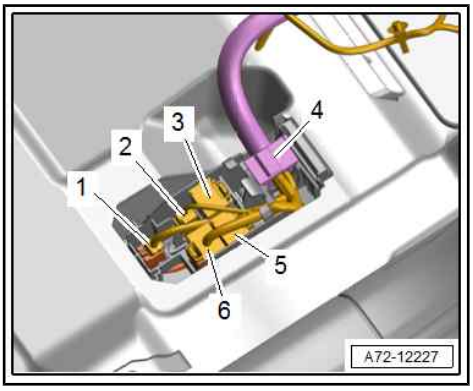
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Unclip cable retainer -4-.

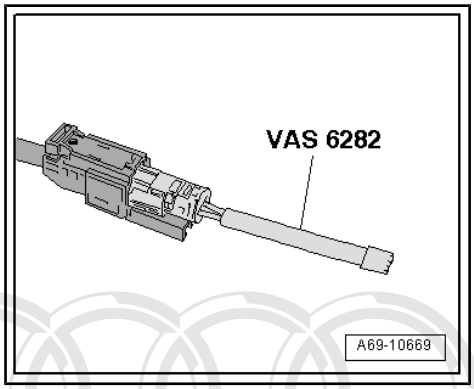
– Release retaining tab and unplug electrical connector -2- for side airbag at connector point.

– If necessary, unplug remaining electrical connectors -1, 3, 5, 6-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connection for side airbag.



Caution

Risk of airbags being triggered accidentally due to electrostatic discharge.

- *Leave airbag adapter - VAS 6282- connected to seat until seat has been re-installed.*

Note

Make sure airbag adapter engages properly.

Plugging in airbag connector

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Plug in airbag connectors in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.*
- *Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.*

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

2.9 Connecting and disconnecting modular wiring

Removing individual wire

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

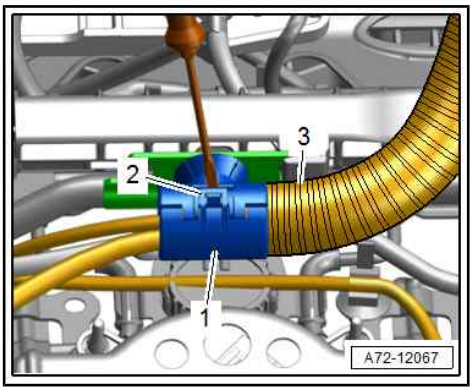
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

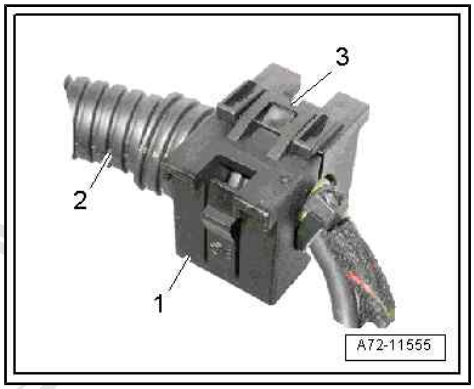
– Using a screwdriver, open cable retainer (rear) -1- for wire routing at seat pan and release retaining hook -2-.

– Detach corrugated tube -3- from cable retainer.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release retaining hook -3- and open cable retainer (front) -1- with a screwdriver.
– Detach cable retainer from corrugated tube -2-.
– Separate two halves of corrugated tube.
– To remove an individual wire, sever the corresponding cable tie (if necessary).



Note

When renewing a defective wire, refer to ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors; Repairing electrical wiring harnesses and electrical connectors .

– Cut through cable tie and remove individual wire.

Installing individual wires

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Take care not to twist any wires when bunching and inserting the individual wires.

Note

- *Re-attach all cable ties, cable retainers and retaining clips at the same locations when re-installing.*
- *Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - front seat", page 380

2.10 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment unit

⇒ "2.10.1 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle", page 409

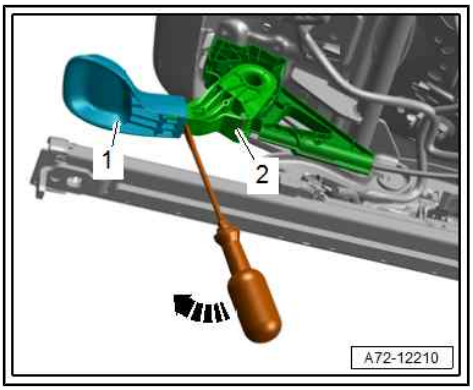
⇒ "2.10.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment", page 409

⇒ "2.10.3 Removing and installing lower frame, seat longitudinal adjustment motor", page 410

2.10.1 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



– Unbolt front seat and tilt it towards rear with electrical wiring connected ⇒ page 399 .
– To release handle, insert flat-bladed screwdriver between handle -1- and handle mounting -2-.
– Press seat longitudinal adjustment handle off handle mounting -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat without seat depth adjustment", page 394

2.10.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment

Removing

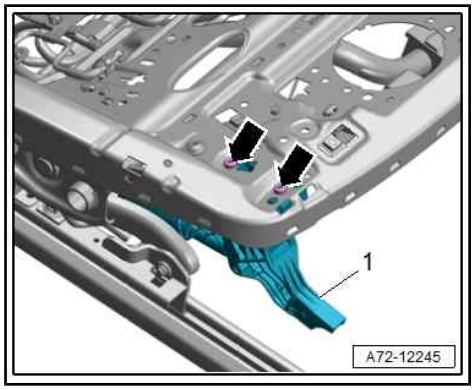
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

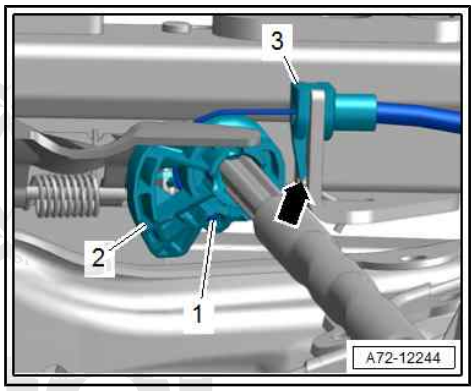
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .
– Remove seat pan cover and padding around bolted connection ⇒ page 522 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach lever -1- with Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment from seat pan.
– Unclip Bowden cable for seat depth adjustment from seat pan at bottom.



– Release retaining hook -arrow- and disengage support bracket -3- for Bowden cable from bracket on seat pan.
– Disengage Bowden cable -1- at release lever -2- for seat longitudinal adjustment and detach.



Installing

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.6.2 Exploded view - seat pan, seat without seat depth adjustment”, page 394

2.10.3 Removing and installing lower frame, seat longitudinal adjustment motor

Note

The seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28- / -V31- is integrated into the lower seat pan frame and cannot be renewed separately.

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– If possible, move front seat to topmost position in order to minimise pre-tension of torsion bar.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

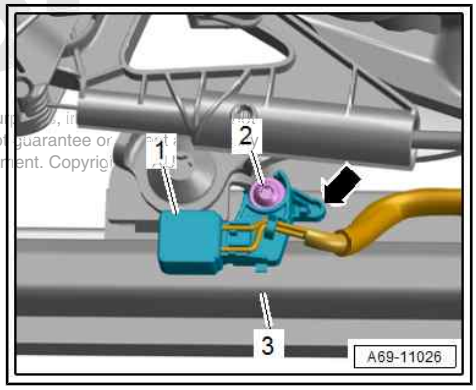
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

– Remove seat rail covers (front and rear) ⇒ page 438 .

– Remove seat rail cover (centre) ⇒ page 438 .

– Unscrew bolt -2- and unclip and disengage seat position sensor -1- from lower seat pan frame -3- -arrow-.

– Unbolt belt buckle (front) from seat rail (tunnel side) and move it to one side with wire connected ⇒ page 117.

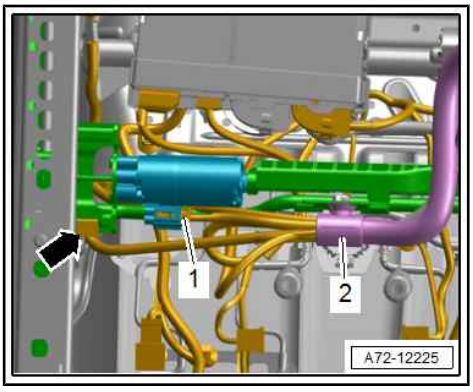


– Unclip retainer (rear) -2- for wire routing from seat pan using a screwdriver.

– Unplug electrical connector -1- from seat longitudinal adjustment motor.

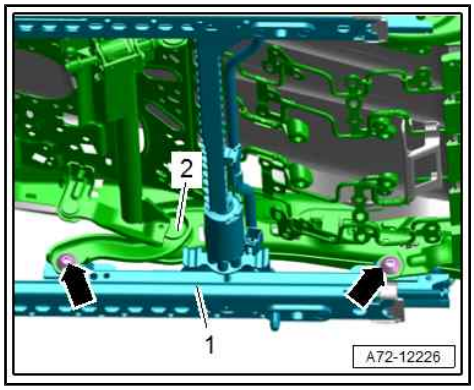
– Move electrical wiring clear -arrow-.

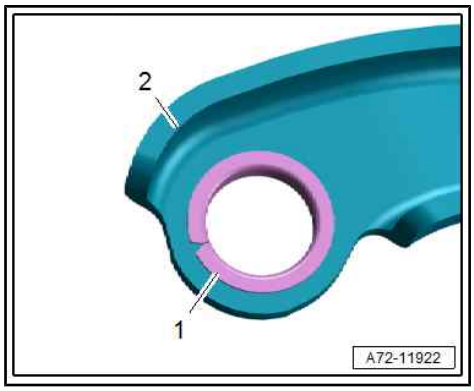
– Support upper seat pan frame with backrest so that it cannot fall or be damaged when detaching lower frame.



Audi
Copyright AUDI AG. Reproduction, copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -arrows- at back and front on both sides.
– Detach upper seat pan frame -2- with backrest from lower frame -1- and place on a clean surface.





Caution

Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

Installing

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster/seat height adjuster (electric)", page 397

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.11 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

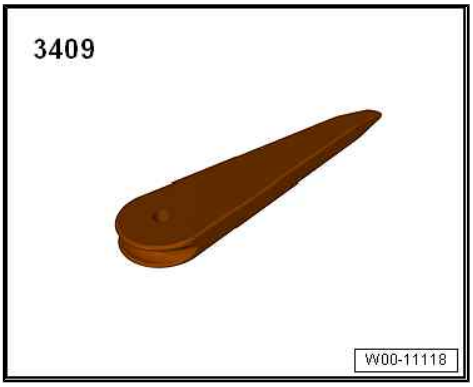
⇒ "2.11.1 Removing and installing seat height adjuster", page 412

⇒ "2.11.2 Removing and installing upper frame, seat height adjustment motor", page 413

2.11.1 Removing and installing seat height adjuster

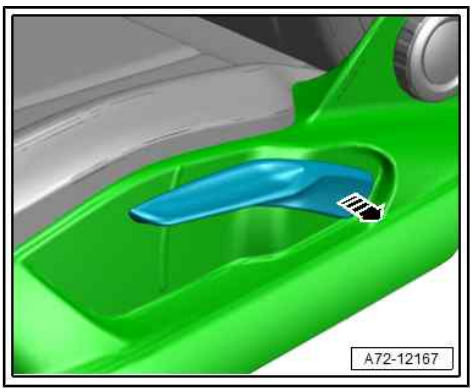
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

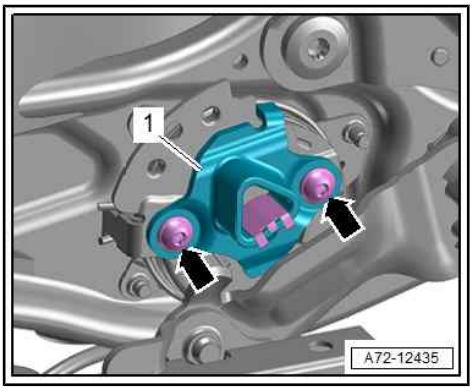
– Remove seat height adjuster from seat towards one side -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Otherwise this copy is only for private use. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To remove adapter -1- for seat height adjustment, remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .

– Remove bolts -arrows- and detach adapter.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, trim”, page 392

2.11.2 Removing and installing upper frame, seat height adjustment motor

Note

♦ *The seat height adjustment motor -V245- / -V246- is integrated into the upper seat pan frame and cannot be renewed separately.*

♦ *When renewing, fit electrical and electronic components and wiring removed earlier in new upper frame.*

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– If possible, move front seat to topmost position in order to minimise pre-tension of torsion bar.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 422 .

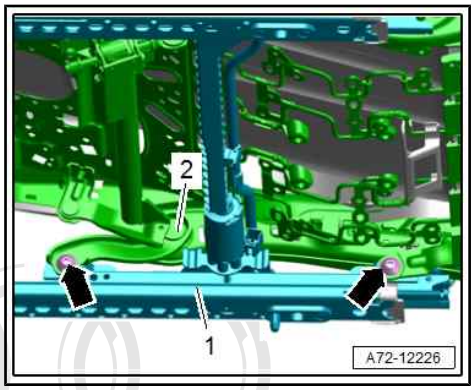
– Remove padding ⇒ page 522 .

– Remove seat depth adjuster ⇒ page 442 .

– Remove seat rake adjuster ⇒ page 415 .

– Remove bolts -arrows- at back and front on both sides.

– Detach upper seat pan frame -2- from lower frame -1- and place on a clean surface.

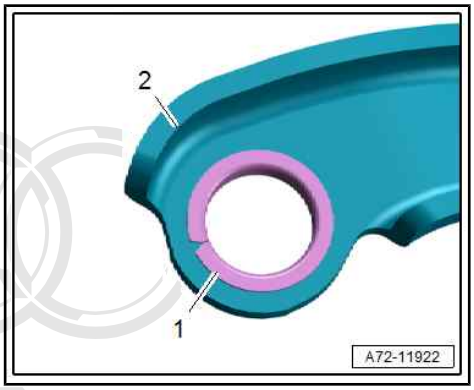


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).

- *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*



Installing

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

The reproduction, distribution and commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– If renewing upper seat pan frame, install attachments from old upper seat pan frame.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.5 Exploded view - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster/seat height adjuster (electric)", page 397

2.12 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit

Removing

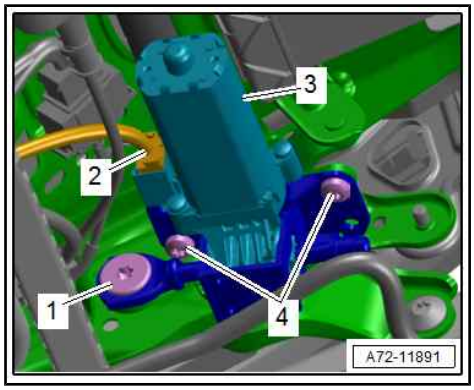
– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

– Unbolt front seat and tilt it towards rear with electrical wiring connected ⇒ page 399 .

Caution

Risk of damage to bush in pivot point (bolted connection -1- between adjustment spindle and seat pan).

- *The bush cannot be renewed using workshop equipment.*
- *The relevant components must be renewed if the bush is damaged.*



– Unscrew bolt -1- for adjustment spindle of seat rake adjustment motor.

– Unplug electrical connector -2- at seat rake adjustment motor.

– Remove bolts -4- and detach seat rake adjustment motor -3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.6.6 Exploded view - seat pan, seat rake adjuster”, page 398

2.13 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit

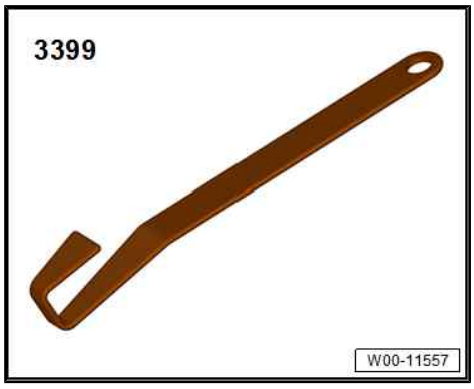
⇒ “2.13.1 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob”, page 416

⇒ “2.13.2 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor V45 / V46 ”, page 417

2.13.1 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Assembly tool - 3399-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

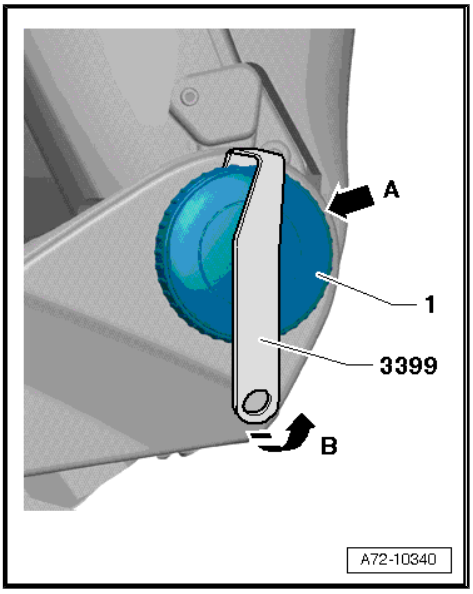
– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Turn backrest adjuster knob -1- until detent is visible from rear -arrow A-. Use a torch if necessary.

– Hook assembly tool - 3399- into detent and prise off adjuster knob -arrow B-.

– Turn backrest adjuster knob a further 120 ° and repeat procedure.

– Detach backrest adjuster knob.



Installing

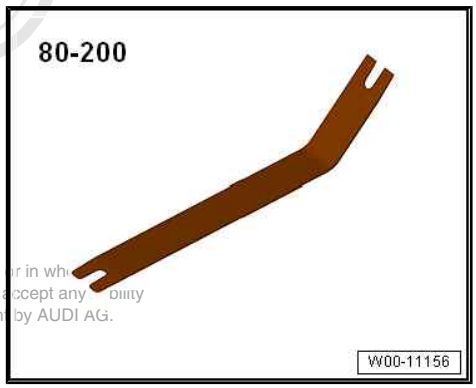
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, trim", page 392

2.13.2 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor -V45- / -V46-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 3*** ***.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

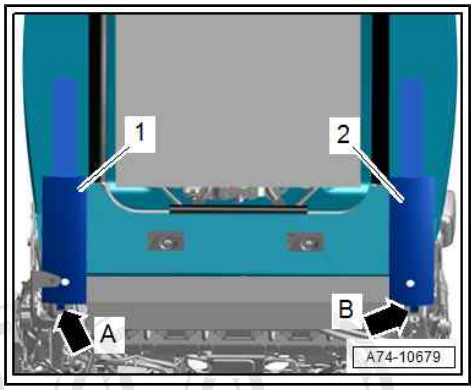
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 441 .

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .

Standard/sports seat:

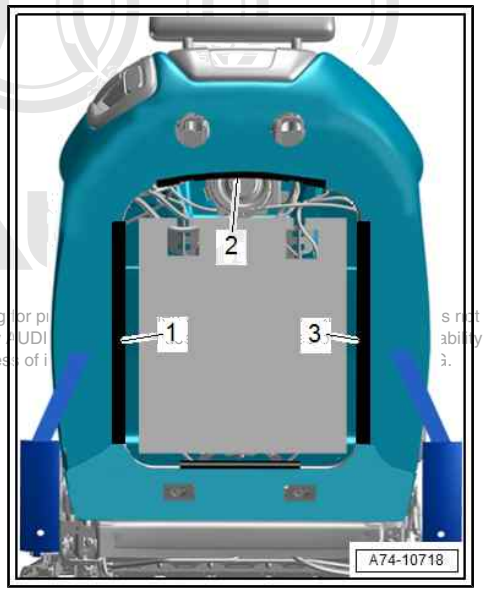
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 423 .

– Disengage covers -1, 2- for backrest fitting at outer backrest frame -arrows A, B-.



– Disengage piping -1, 3- on sides of outer backrest frame.

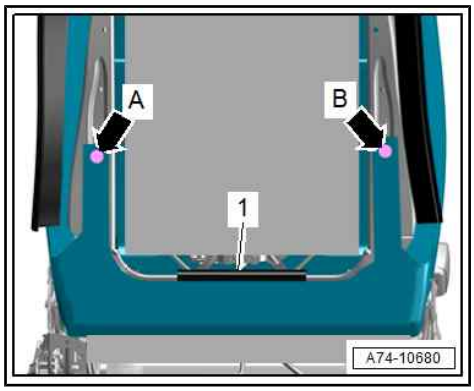
– Disengage piping -2- at top centre of outer backrest frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for pr
permitted unless authorised by AUDI
with respect to the correctness of i
s not
ability
.

– Remove clips -arrows A, B- at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Disengage piping -1- at bottom centre of outer backrest frame.



Super sports seat:

– Remove backrest cover panel and side trim ⇒ page 425 .

– Remove clips -arrows- at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80-200- .

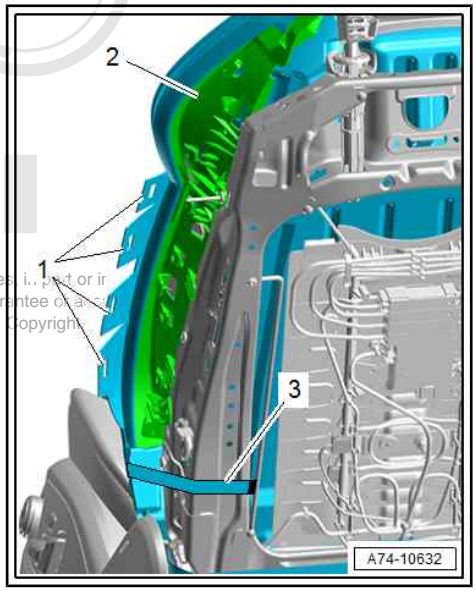
– Disengage piping -1- at bottom of outer backrest frame.

– Disengage piping -2- at bracket on outer backrest frame.



– Disengage lugs -1- on padding and cover (tunnel side) from retaining hooks on side bolster -2-.

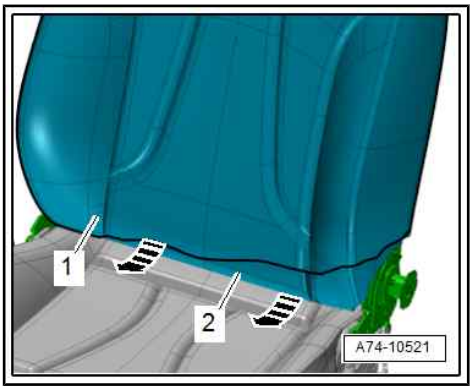
– Disengage coupling hook -3- on cover (tunnel side) on outer backrest frame.



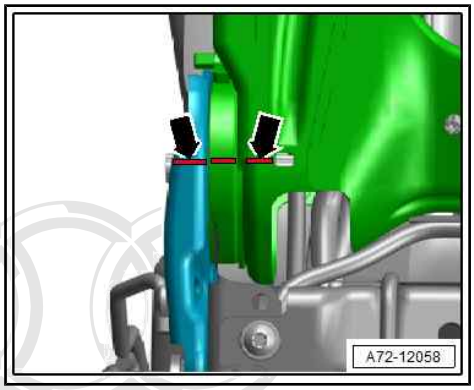
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. ©copyright

All seat versions (continued):

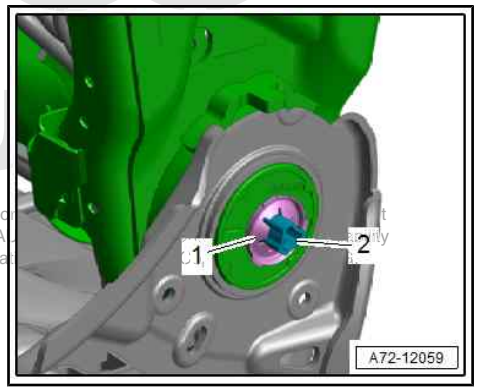
– Unfasten cover -1- with padding -2- from outer backrest frame and carefully pull it out under backrest towards front -arrows-.



– Mark angular position of backrest fitting to outer backrest frame (both sides) in colour -arrows-.

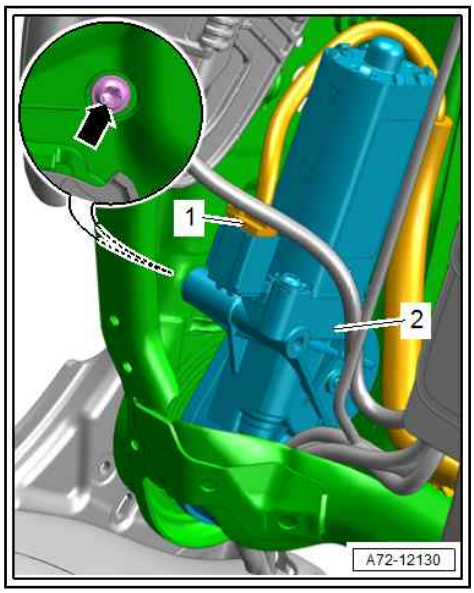


– Break and remove clamping washer -1-.
– Push adjuster shaft -2- out of outer backrest frame towards opposite side.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of

– Unscrew bolt -arrow- and remove backrest adjustment motor -2-.
– After removing backrest adjustment motor, unplug electrical connector -1- from motor.



Installing

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

– Check position of outer backrest frame and fitting on both sides.

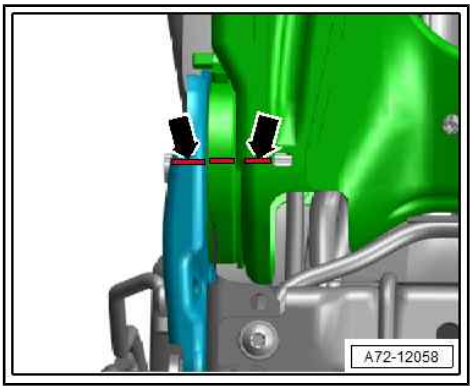
• The outer backrest frame must be in the position marked before removal (on both sides) -arrows-.

– Adjust position if necessary.

– First slide adjuster shaft through fitting (tunnel side) as far as mounting in backrest adjustment motor.

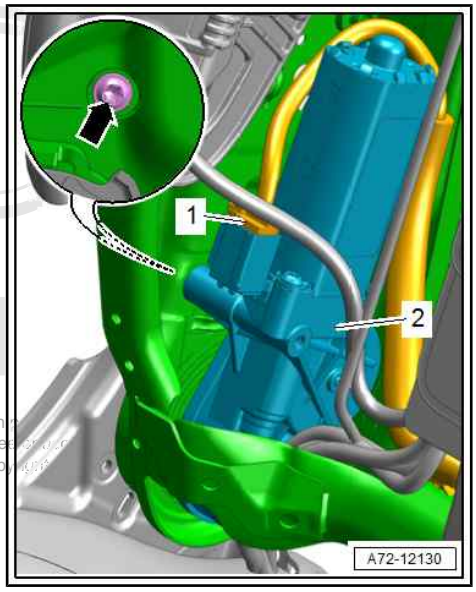
– Check that profiles of inserted adjuster shaft and mounting in backrest adjustment motor are in line.

– If this is not the case, connect an external 12 V power supply to backrest adjustment motor and rotate mounting until profiles of shaft and mounting are in line.



– Push adjuster shaft through mounting in backrest adjustment motor -2- and fitting (sill side) as far as stop.

– Tighten bolt -arrow- for backrest adjustment motor.



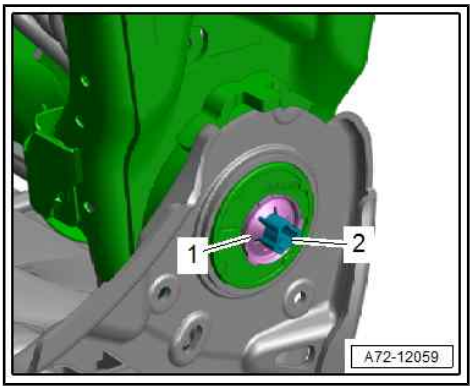
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop

– Press new clamping washer -1- onto adjuster shaft -2- so that there is at least 1.0 mm of clearance.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.4.4 Exploded view - front backrest adjustment motor”, page 387



2.14 Removing and installing front seat backrest

⇒ “2.14.1 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 422

⇒ “2.14.2 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - standard/sports seat”, page 423

⇒ “2.14.3 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat”, page 425

⇒ “2.14.4 Removing and installing side bolster”, page 426

⇒ “2.14.5 Removing and installing spring mat”, page 429

⇒ “2.14.6 Removing and installing blower for neck heating V450 / V451 ”, page 431

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.14.1 Removing and installing front seat backrest

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 441 .

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) and bracket ⇒ page 439 .

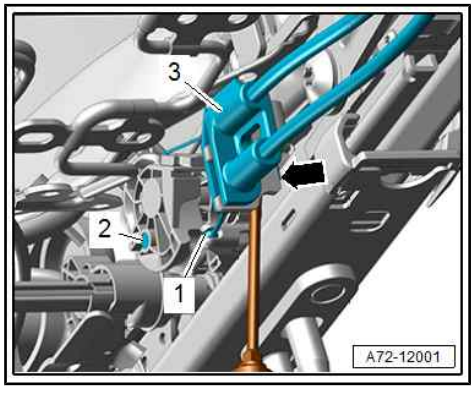
– Unplug electrical connectors of wiring harnesses to backrest and move clear disconnected wiring harnesses ⇒ page 407 .

Note

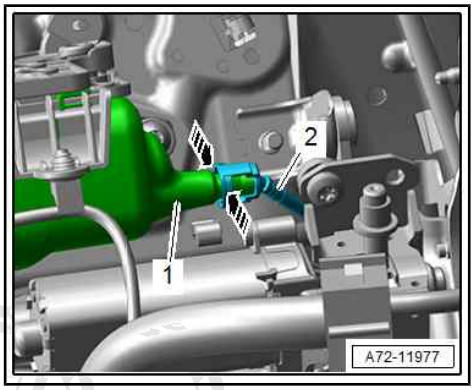
There is a continuous wiring harness between the connector point and the side airbag.

– Depending on equipment version: Release fastener -arrow- using a small screwdriver and at the same time detach Bowden cable -3- for Easy Entry system from bracket.

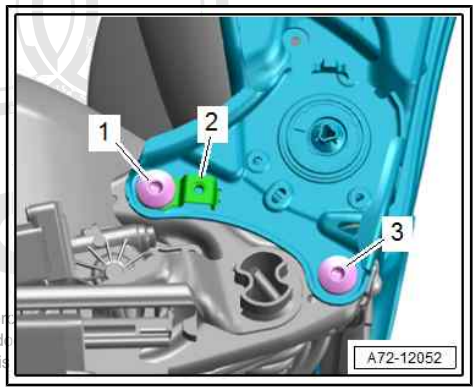
– Disengage ends of Bowden cable -1, 2- and move Bowden cable clear.



– Depending on equipment version: Press release ring -arrows- and disconnect pneumatic line -2- from pump -1-.
– Move pneumatic line clear.



– Unscrew bolts -1 and 3- (left and right) from backrest fitting.
– Detach backrest from seat pan (to do so, carefully guide out electrical wiring harnesses).



Installing

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in this

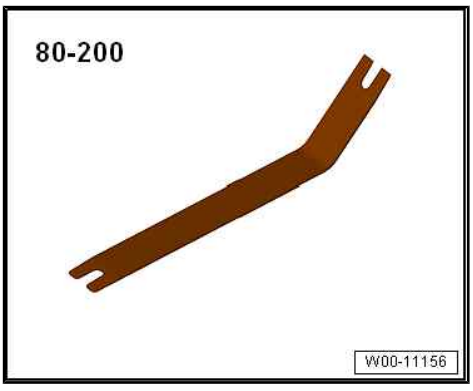
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.4.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support", page 384

2.14.2 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - standard/sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

– Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.

– Fold down backrest.

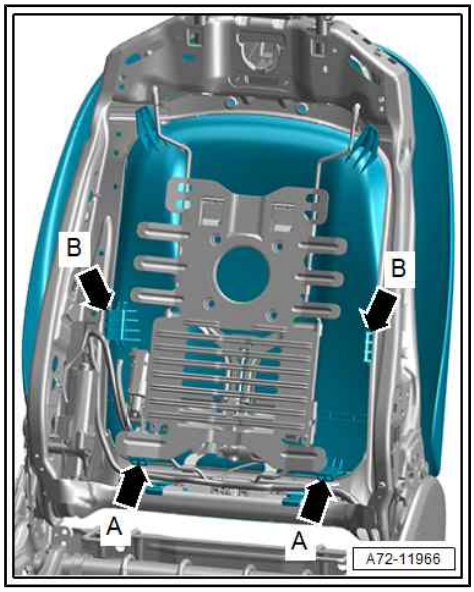
– Take hold of bottom edge of backrest cover panel with both hands, pull it firmly upwards and at the same time pull it out of catches towards rear -arrows-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– This should disengage lower retaining hooks -arrows A- from outer backrest frame; also use removal lever - 80-200- if necessary.

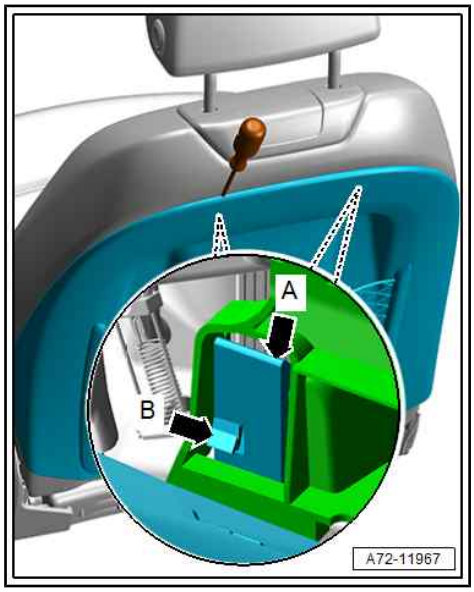
– Pull backrest cover panel firmly towards rear; this will disengage hooks at sides -arrows B- from outer backrest frame.



– Insert flat-bladed screwdriver between padding and cover, as shown in illustration.

– Press padding to one side, disengage retaining hook -arrow A- and catch -arrow B- using a screwdriver, and at the same time pull backrest cover panel downwards out of catches.

– Repeat procedure for retaining hook on opposite side.



– Pull backrest cover panel downwards out of catches on outer backrest frame -arrows- and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.4.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support”, page 384

2.14.3 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat

Note

Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

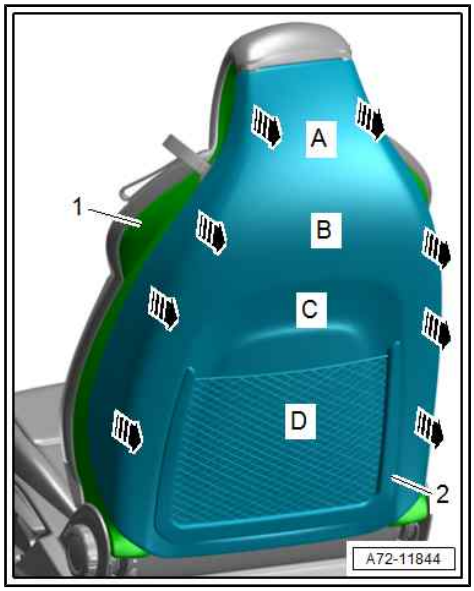
– Move front seat as far forwards and down as possible and fold backrest down.

Caution

Risk of damage to side trim.

- *Counterhold side trim when removing and installing as it can be damaged quite easily.*

– Starting at top, unclip backrest cover panel -2- from side trim -1- -arrows A ... D-; to do so, pull backrest cover panel and at the same time counterhold side trim.



Note

If it is difficult to detach, release fasteners with wedge - T10383- .

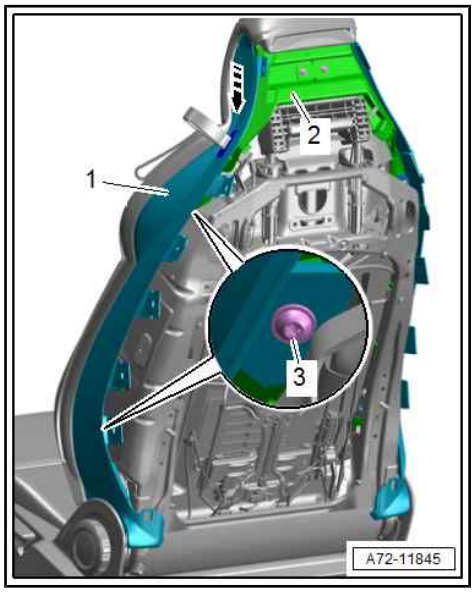
– Disengage backrest cover panel at head restraint from arresters and remove.

Removing side trim:

– Remove bolts -3-.

Note

If bolts -3- cannot be unscrewed, loosen guide plate for side airbag ⇒ page 154 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull side trim -1- downwards off side bolster -2- -arrow- and detach.

– Press release catch and unplug electrical connector.

Installing

– Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.

- It should not be possible to pull backrest cover panel off at sides, bottom and top.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

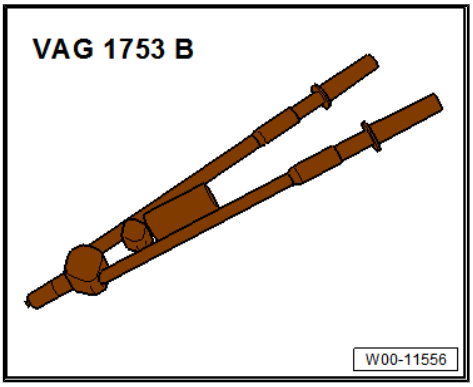
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.4.2 Exploded view - front seat backrest cover panel, super sports seat", page 385

2.14.4 Removing and installing side bolster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Electric drill
- Safety goggles

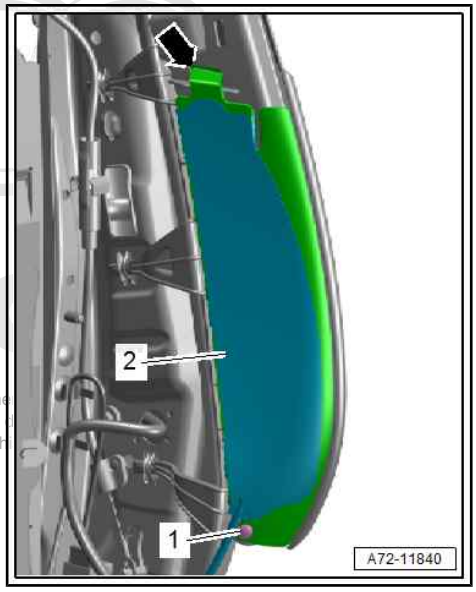
Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

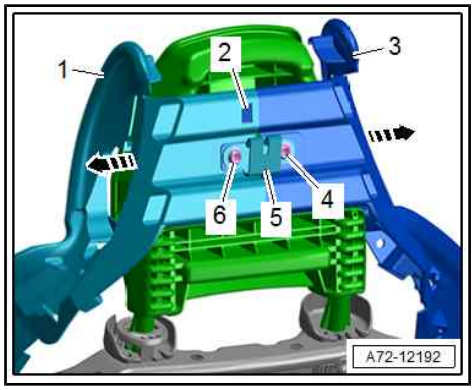
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .
– Remove backrest cover panel and side trim ⇒ page 425 .
– Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ page 532 .
– Detach clip -1-.
– Swivel air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster -2- upwards and pull it out of connector -arrow-.
– Move backrest bolster adjuster to one side with pneumatic line connected.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in th

– Remove bolts -4, 6- and detach arrester -5-.
– Detach side bolsters -1, 3-; to do so, release fastener -2- using a screwdriver and pull side bolsters carefully apart -arrows-.

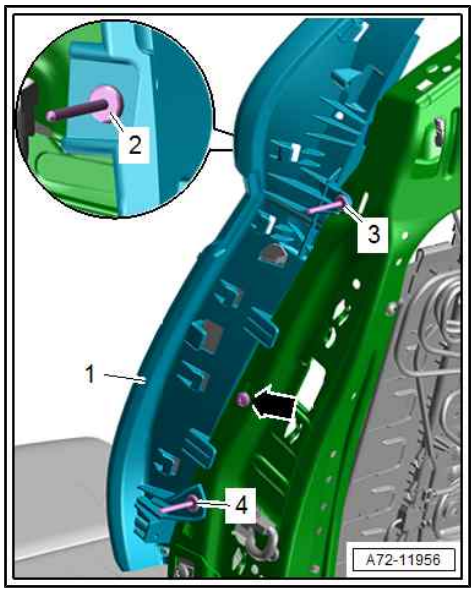


WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivets -2, 3, 4-.
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Disengage side bolster -1- from outer backrest frame and detach.



Installing

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.4.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, super sports seat", page 386

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.14.5 Removing and installing spring mat

Removing

WARNING

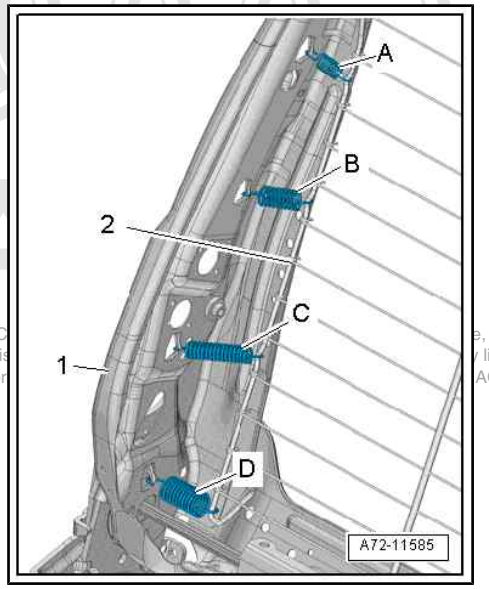
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .
– Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ page 529 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage extension springs -A ... D- at outer backrest frame -1-.



Note

You can also leave the extension springs -A ... D- attached to the outer backrest frame -1- and disengage the spring mat -2- directly at the extension springs.

– Swivel spring mat -2- forwards.
– Pull spring mat out of openings in outer backrest frame.

Protected by copyright. C
d unless authoris
with respect to the cor
e, is not
liability
AG.

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Attach tension springs as shown in illustration.

Note

Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on.***
- ***Before connecting the battery, make sure there is no one in the vehicle.***

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

WARNING

Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.

- *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Note

If the airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.4 Exploded view - front seat backrest", page 384

2.14.6 Removing and installing blower for neck heating -V450- / -V451-

Removing

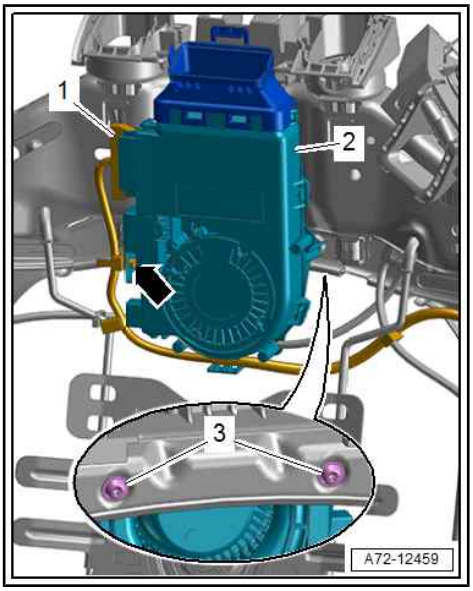
– Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ page 529 .

– Press release catch and unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Unclip retainer -arrow- for wire and move wire clear.

– Remove bolts -3-.

– Disengage neck heating blower -2- from outer backrest frame and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.4.5 Exploded view - front seat backrest, neck heating", page 388

2.15 Removing and installing backrest fan

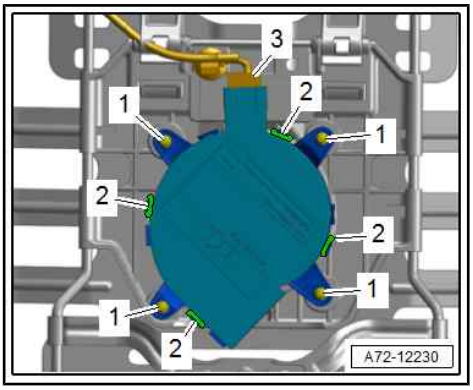
Removing

• Backrest cover panel removed ⇒ page 423

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Disengage tabs -2- from backrest fan.

– Spray silicone-free lubricant onto rubber studs -1- of flexible mounting for fan and detach fan from rubber studs.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.16 Removing and installing head restraint

⇒ “2.16.1 Removing and installing head restraint with height and depth adjustment”, page 432

⇒ “2.16.2 Removing and installing head restraint with height and angle adjustment”, page 433

⇒ “2.16.3 Removing and installing head restraint - super sports seat”, page 434

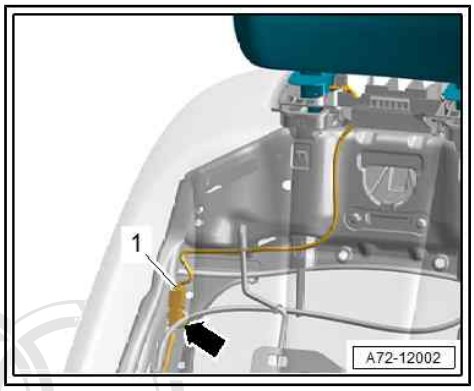
2.16.1 Removing and installing head restraint with height and depth adjustment

Removing

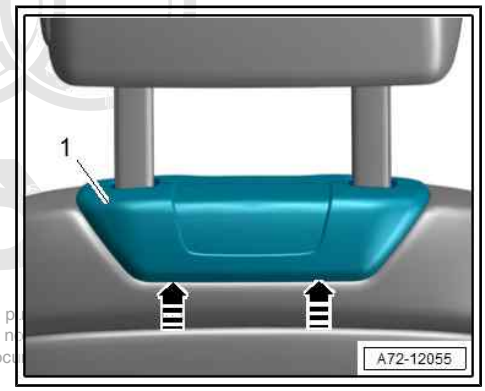
– Fully raise head restraint.

– Equipment version with electric adjustment: Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 423 .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- for head restraint at bracket -arrow- and move electrical wire clear.



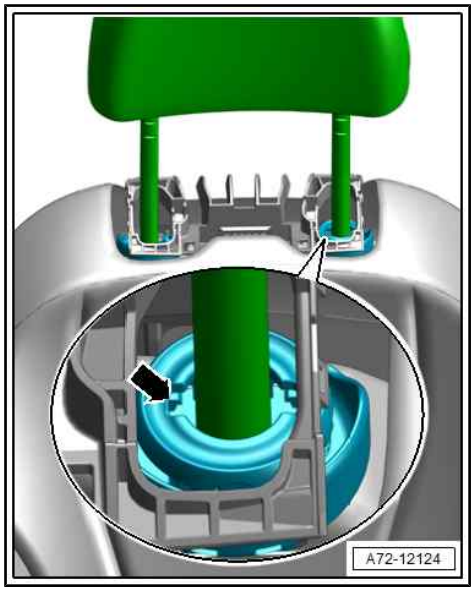
– Take hold of bottom edge of cover (rear) -1- and press it upwards out of fasteners -arrows-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

– Tilt backrest towards rear.

– Slide trim upwards, press down release ring -arrow- on head restraint guide (left-side) and at the same time pull head restraint upwards and out.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.5.1 Exploded view - head restraint with height and depth adjustment”, page 389

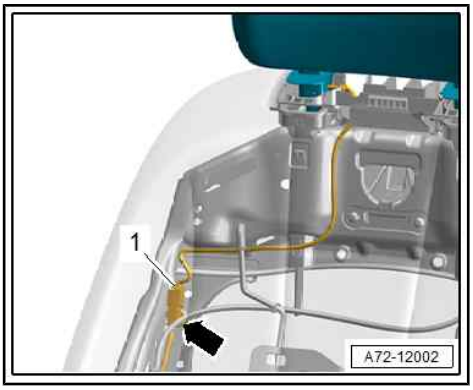
2.16.2 Removing and installing head restraint with height and angle adjustment

Removing

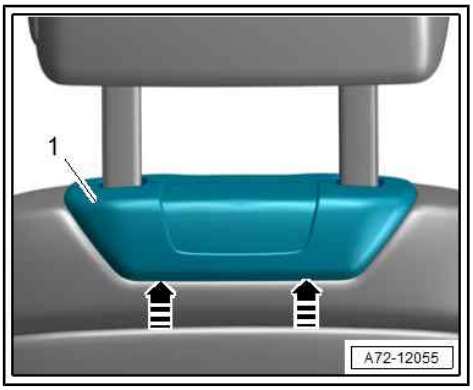
– Fully raise head restraint and move it to front position.

– Equipment version with electric adjustment: Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 423 .

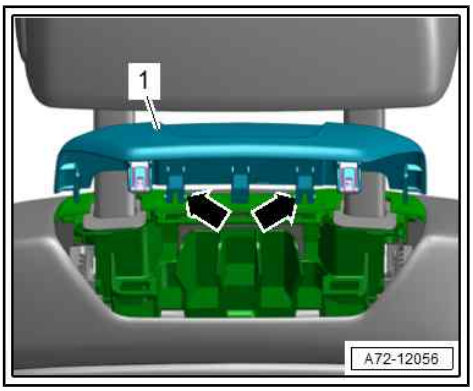
– Unplug electrical connector -1- for head restraint at bracket -arrow- and move electrical wire clear.



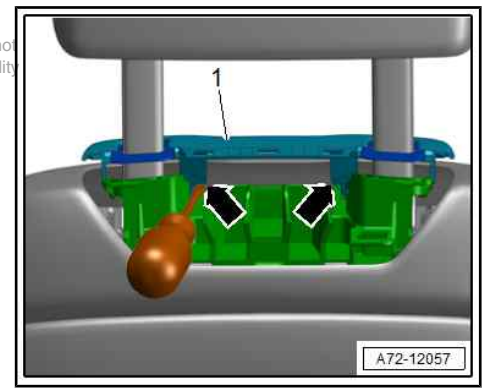
– Take hold of bottom edge of cover (rear) -1- and slide it upwards out of fasteners -arrows-.



– Fold trim (rear) -1- upwards and disengage retaining hooks -arrows- from cover (front).



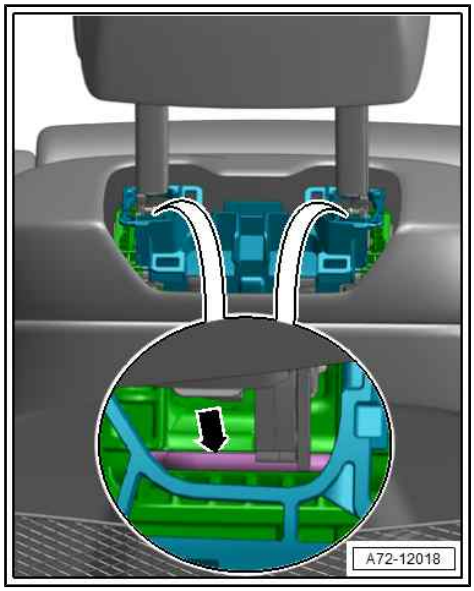
– Release trim (front) -1- at both fasteners -arrows- using a small screwdriver and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tilt backrest towards rear.

– Slide trim covers upwards, disengage retaining springs -arrow- on both head restraint guides (working alternately) and at the same time pull base of head restraint upwards.



Installing

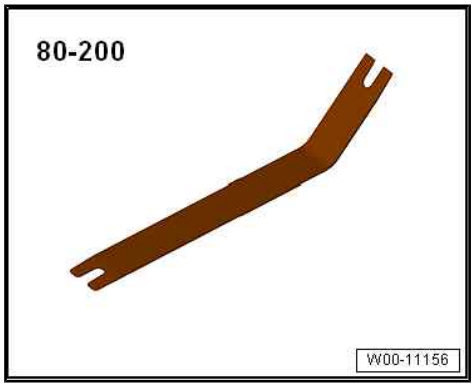
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.2 Exploded view - head restraint with height and angle adjustment", page 390

2.16.3 Removing and installing head restraint - super sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

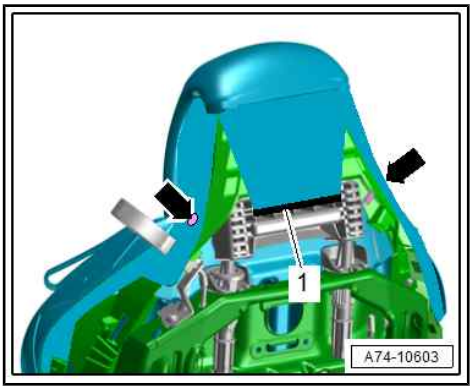
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

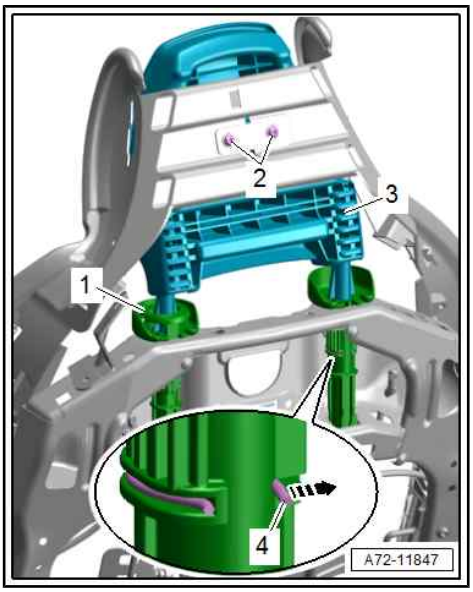
– Remove backrest cover panel and side trim ⇒ page 425 .

– Remove clips -arrows- from side bolster using removal lever -80-200- .
– Disengage fastening strip -1- for cover from head restraint.
– Press cover and padding to one side in vicinity of head restraint.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolts -2- and separate side bolsters carefully from each other at top.
– Working alternately on both head restraint guides, pull head restraint out of fastener.
– To do so, press release button -1- down and at the same time pull head restraint upwards.
– Press retaining spring -4- at head restraint guide in direction of -arrow- and at the same time pull head restraint out of fastener.
– Pull head restraint -3- out of head restraint guides and detach.



Installing

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.5.3 Exploded view - head restraint, super sports seat”, page 391 ,
⇒ “2.4.3 Exploded view - front seat backrest, super sports seat”, page 386

2.17 Removing and installing head restraint guide

⇒ “2.17.1 Removing and installing head restraint guide with height and depth adjustment”, page 436

⇒ “2.17.2 Removing and installing head restraint guide - head restraint with height and angle adjustment”, page 437

⇒ “2.17.3 Removing and installing head restraint guide - super sports seat”, page 437

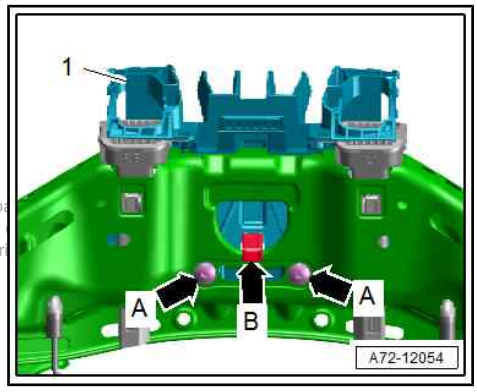
2.17.1 Removing and installing head restraint guide with height and depth adjustment

Removing

– Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ page 529 .

– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system and move it clear.

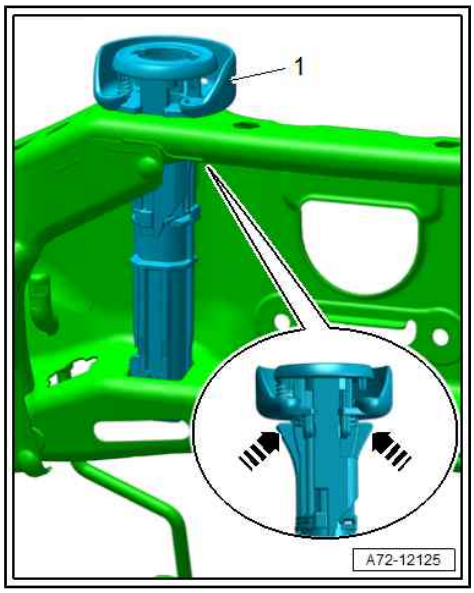
– A5 Cabriolet (depending on equipment version): Remove neck heating blower ⇒ page 431 .



– Remove bolts -arrows A-.

– Unhook frame -1- from retaining hook -arrow B- on outer backrest frame and detach.

Translation © copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri



– Press retaining catches down simultaneously -arrows-.

– Pull head restraint guide -1- out upwards.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “2.5.1 Exploded view - head restraint with height and depth adjustment”, page 389

2.17.2 Removing and installing head restraint guide - head restraint with height and angle adjustment

Removing

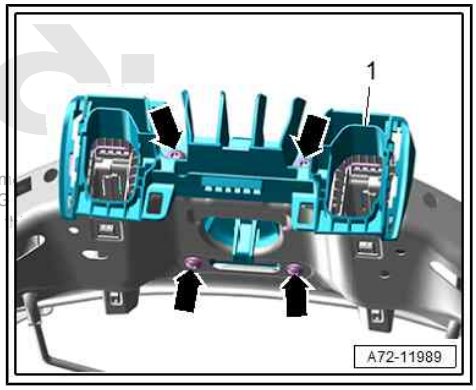
– Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ page 529 .

– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system and move it clear.

– A5 Cabriolet (depending on equipment version): Remove neck heating blower ⇒ page 431 .

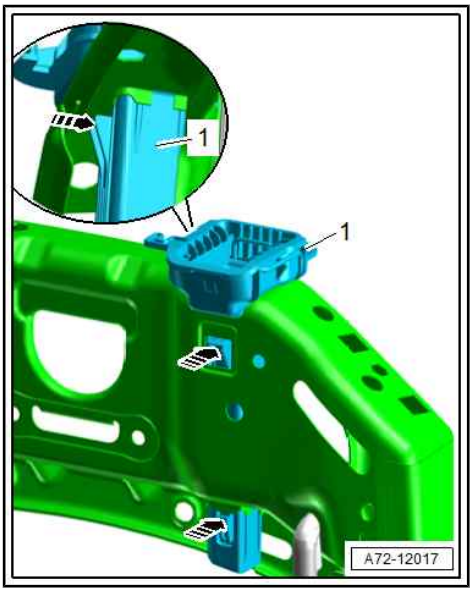
– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Unhook frame -1- from retaining hook on outer backrest frame and detach.



– Press retaining catches down simultaneously -arrows-.

– Pull head restraint guide -1- out upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.2 Exploded view - head restraint with height and angle adjustment", page 390

2.17.3 Removing and installing head restraint guide - super sports seat

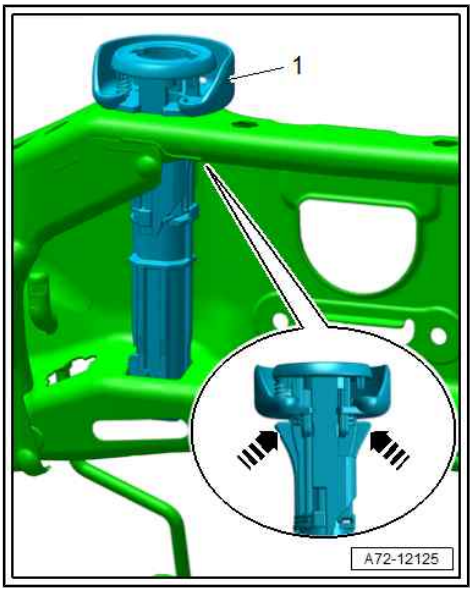
Removing

– Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ page 532 .

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 434 .

– Press retaining catches down simultaneously -arrows-.

– Pull head restraint guide -1- out upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.5.3 Exploded view - head restraint, super sports seat", page 391

2.18 Dismantling and assembling seat pan

⇒ “2.18.1 Removing and installing seat rail cover (front and rear)”, page 438

⇒ “2.18.2 Removing and installing seat rail cover (centre)”, page 438

⇒ “2.18.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side)”, page 439

⇒ “2.18.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (tunnel side)”, page 441

⇒ “2.18.5 Removing and installing seat trim (front)”, page 441

⇒ “2.18.6 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster”, page 442

⇒ “2.18.7 Removing and installing bracket for fire extinguisher”, page 443

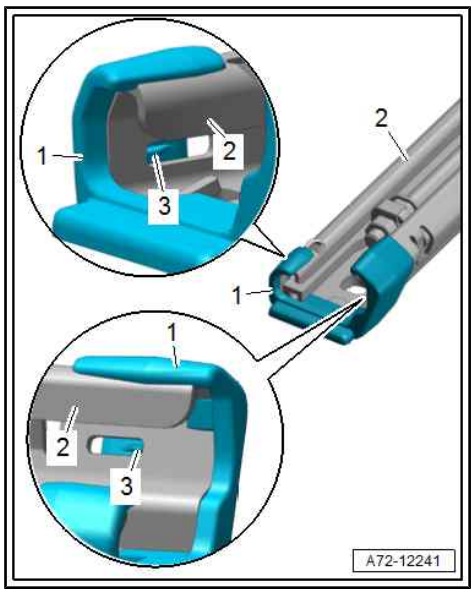
2.18.1 Removing and installing seat rail cover (front and rear)

Removing

– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

> **Caution**
>
> *Risk of damaging seat rail cover*
>
> ♦ *Proceed very carefully when removing and installing.*

– Pull cover -1- off seat rail -2-; to do so, carefully release retaining tabs -3- at seat rail using a screwdriver.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, trim”, page 392

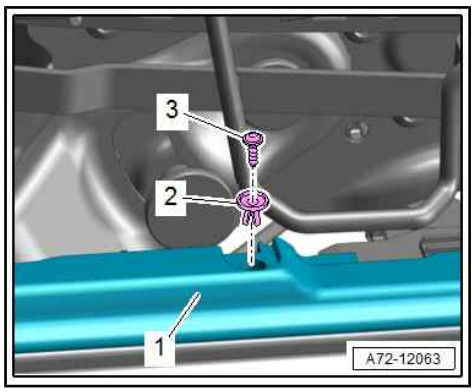
2.18.2 Removing and installing seat rail cover (centre)

Removing

– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

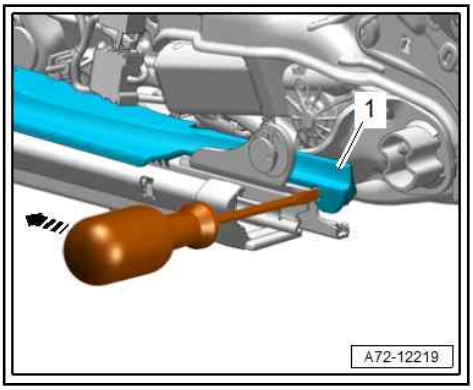
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .

– Remove bolt/stud -3- and detach fastener -2- from seat rail cover (centre) -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Carefully release retaining hook on rear of seat rail using a screwdriver -arrow-.
– Slide seat rail cover (centre) -1- in direction of travel and remove cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, trim", page 392

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this copy. © AUDI AG.

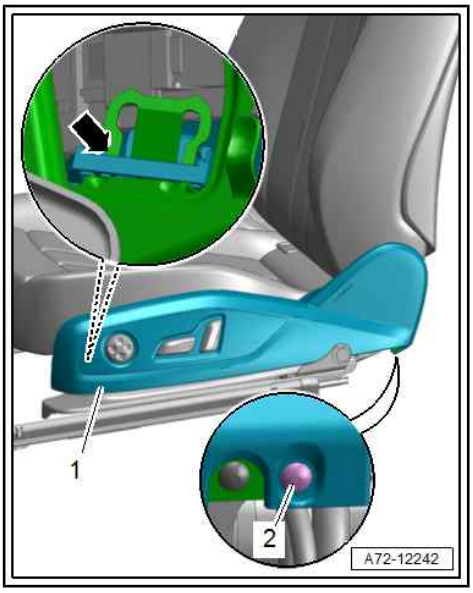
2.18.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side)

Removing

– Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

Standard/sports seat:

– Depending on equipment version: Remove backrest adjuster knob ⇒ page 416 .
– Depending on equipment version: Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ page 412 .
– Remove spreader rivet -2-.
– Disengage bracket (front) -arrow- on inside at seat side trim, release retaining hook with a screwdriver and detach seat side trim.
– Detach seat side trim -1- upwards.

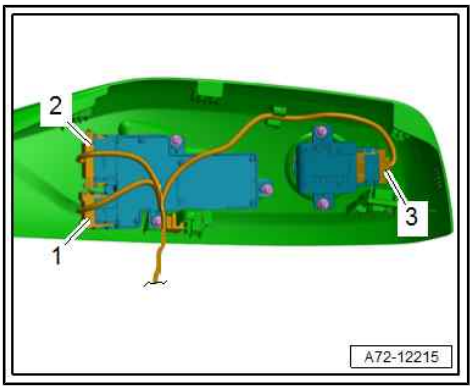


– Depending on equipment version: Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors:

1, 2 - Seat adjustment operating unit -E470- / -E471-

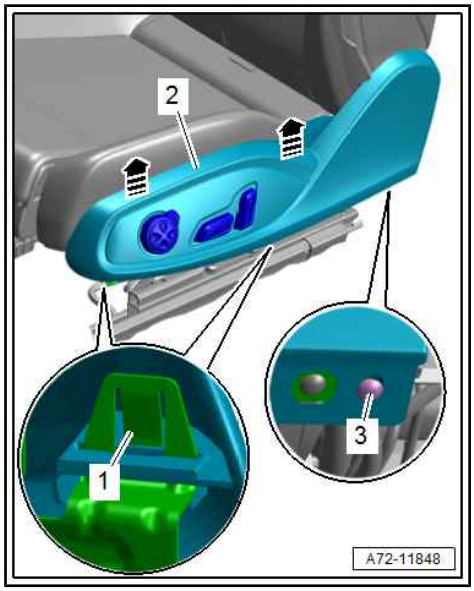
3 - Lumbar support adjustment switch -E663- / -E664-

– Move electrical wiring harness clear.
– Detach seat side trim (sill side).



Super sports seat:

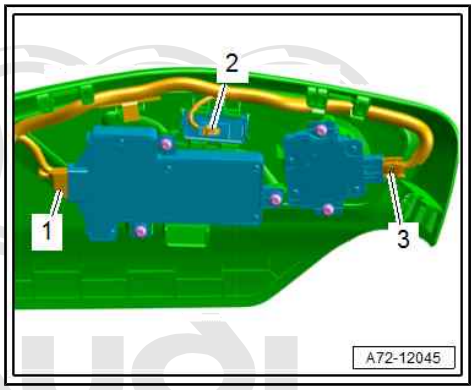
– Remove spreader rivet -3- on seat side trim (sill side).
– Release retaining hook -1- with a screwdriver and detach seat side trim.
– Pull seat side trim -2- upwards off brackets -arrows-.
– Disengage seat side trim (sill side) at rear of backrest fitting and at seat pan.



– Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors:

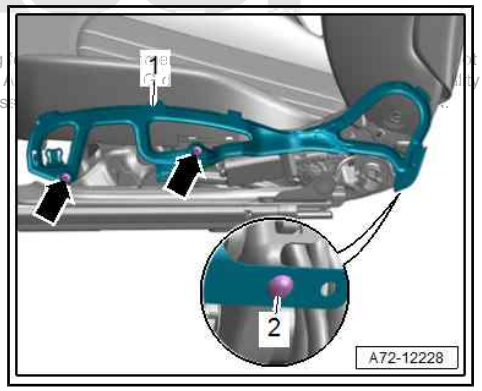
1 - Seat adjustment operating unit -E470- / -E471-
2 - Massage function button -E670- / -E671-
3 - Lumbar support adjustment switch -E663- / -E664-

– Move electrical wiring harness clear.
– Detach seat side trim (sill side).



Removing bracket for seat side trim (sill side)

– Remove spreader rivet -2-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach bracket -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by Audi with respect to the correctness

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

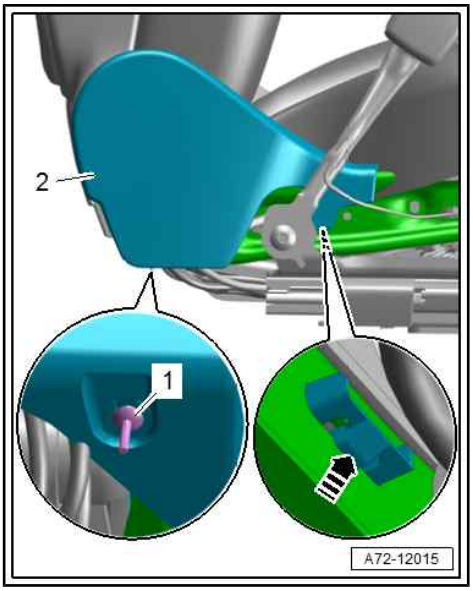
Note

Make sure that electrical connectors are pressed on as far as they will go and engage audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, trim”, page 392

2.18.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (tunnel side)

Removing



– Unbolt front seat and tilt it towards front with electrical wiring connected ⇒ page 399 .
– Remove spreader rivet -1-.
– Press down retaining catch -arrow- on inside of seat rail.
– Disengage seat side trim (tunnel side) -2- at rear of backrest fitting and at seat pan.
– Detach seat side trim (tunnel side).

Installing

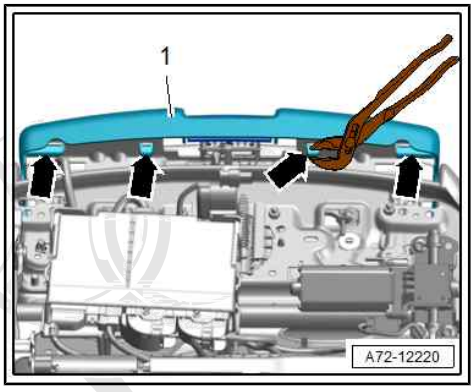
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, trim”, page 392

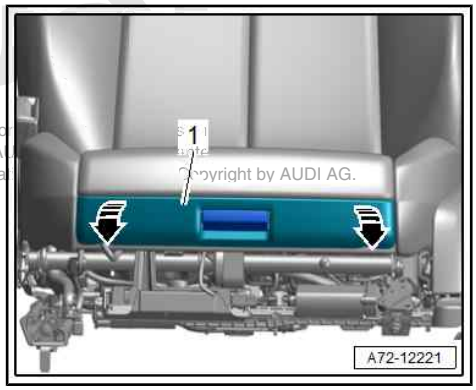
2.18.5 Removing and installing seat trim (front)

Removing

– Extend seat depth adjuster towards front.
– Unbolt front seat and tilt it towards rear with electrical wiring connected ⇒ page 399 .
– If fitted, remove bracket for fire extinguisher ⇒ page 443 .
– Release retaining hooks -arrows- at seat trim (front) -1-.



– Disengage seat trim (front) -1- downwards -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.6.1 Exploded view - seat pan, trim”, page 392

Protected by copyright. Copying for private o
with respect to the correctness of informa
Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.18.6 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hook - T40207-

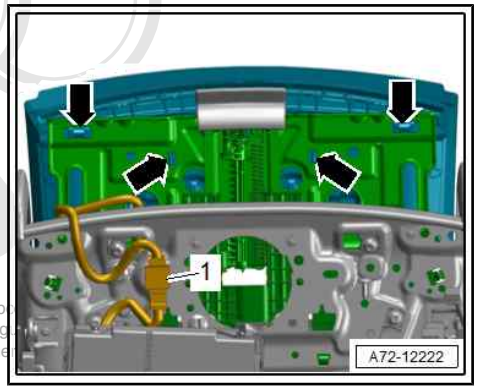


Removing

– Remove seat trim (front) ⇒ page 441 .

– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -1-.

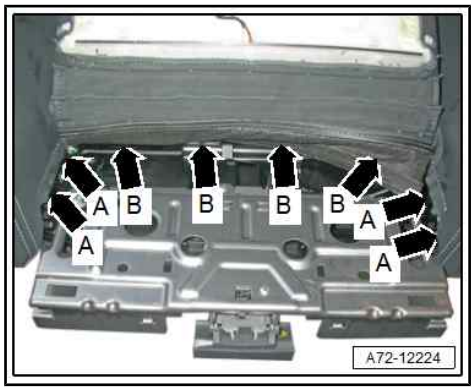
– Release retaining hooks -arrows- and fold retaining plate with padding and cover towards rear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

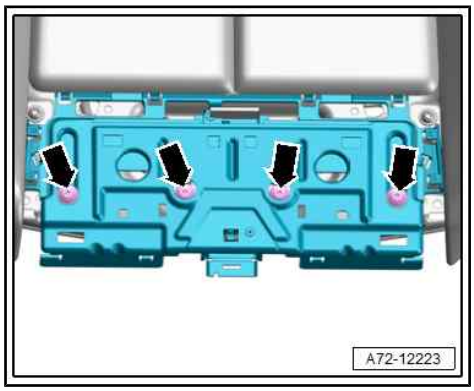
– Disengage contour wire from hooks -arrows A- on both sides.

– Disengage fastening strip of cover from hooks -arrows B- using hook - T40207- .

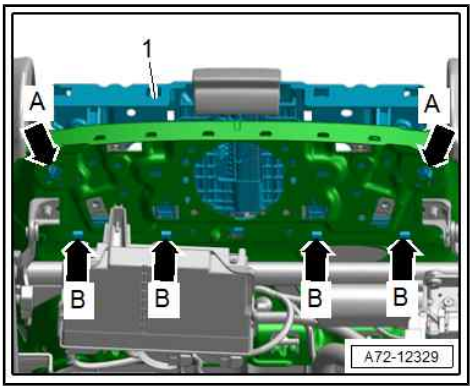


– Move seat depth adjuster back again so that bolt heads -arrows- are accessible.

– Remove bolts (counterhold nuts at bottom).



– Unclip seat depth adjuster -1- at retaining tabs -arrows A- and pull upwards off seat pan.
– Disengage seat depth adjuster from seat pan at lugs -arrows B-.



Installing

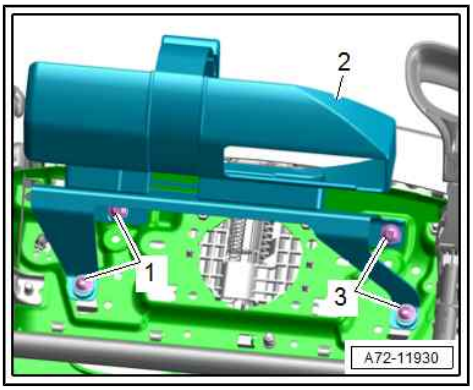
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.3 Exploded view - seat pan, seat with seat depth adjustment", page 395

2.18.7 Removing and installing bracket for fire extinguisher

Removing

– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
– Take fire extinguisher out of bracket.
– Remove bolts -1, 3-.
– Detach bracket -2- for fire extinguisher from upper seat pan frame.



Installing

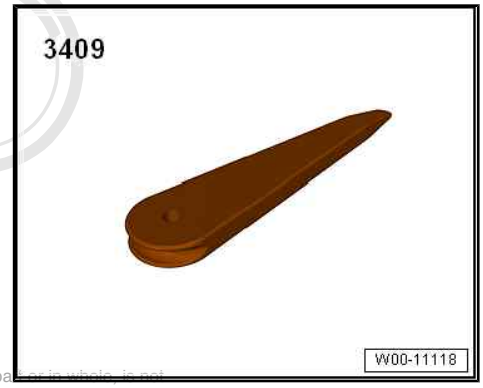
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.4 Exploded view - seat pan, fire extinguisher", page 396

2.19 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit -E470- / -E471-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

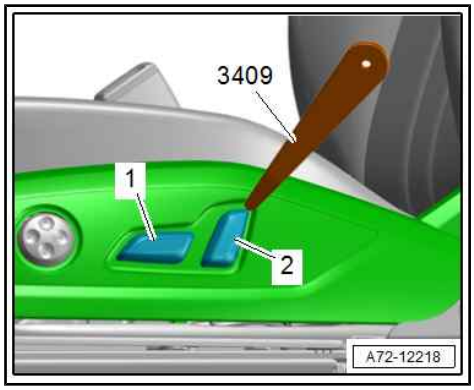


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

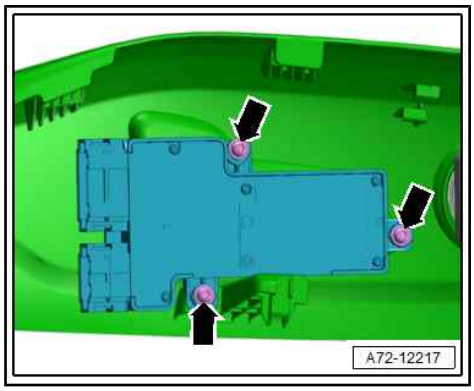
– Carefully prise actuators -1, 2- off fastener using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .



– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach operating unit from seat side trim (sill side).



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

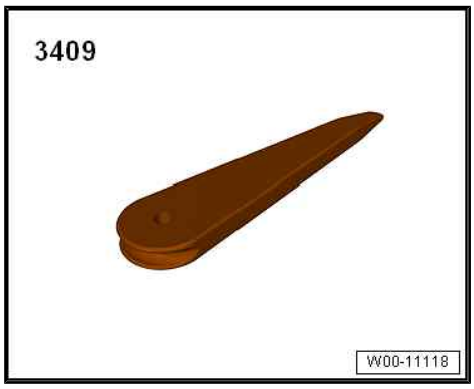
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.7 Exploded view - seat pan, electric seat adjustment actuators/switches", page 399

2.20 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch -E663- / -E664-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

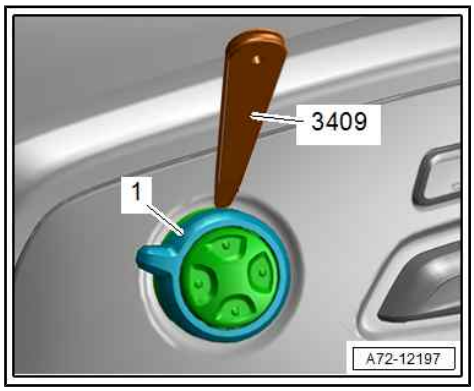
♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



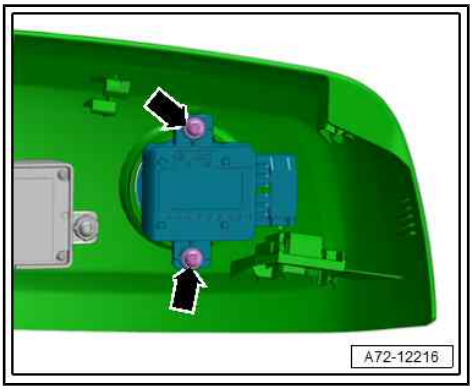
Removing

– If fitted, carefully unclip rocker -1- from switch module using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach switch module.

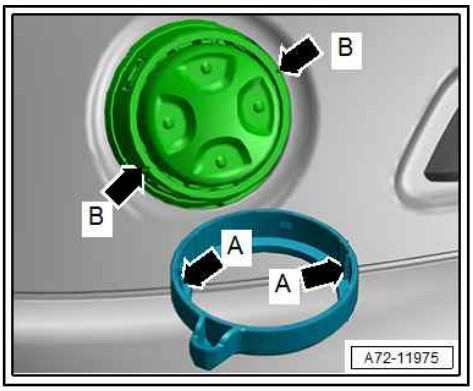


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert lugs -arrows A- of rocker in grooves -arrows B- at switch module and press on until rocker engages audibly.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.7 Exploded view - seat pan, electric seat adjustment actuators/switches", page 399

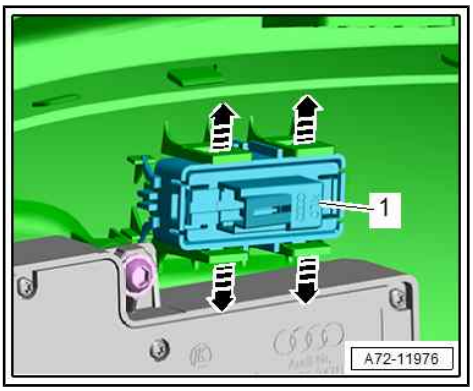


2.21 Removing and installing massage function button -E670- / -E671-

Removing

– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .

– Press massage function button -1- out of trim and detach. To do so, release fasteners -arrows-.



Installing

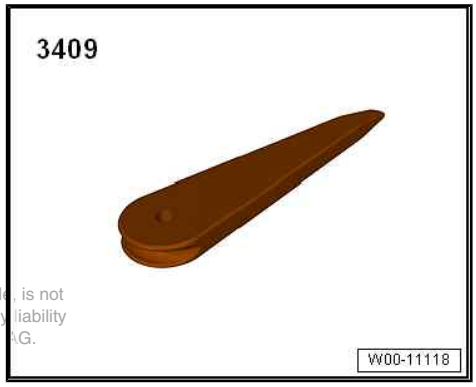
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.6.7 Exploded view - seat pan, electric seat adjustment actuators/switches", page 399

2.22 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

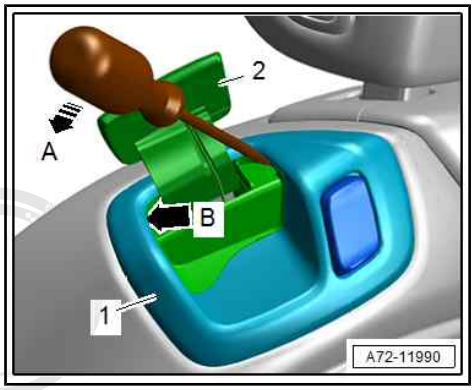
Removing (standard/sports seat)

– Pull operating lever -2- upwards and hold.

– Insert flat-bladed screwdriver between trim -1- and operating lever, as shown in illustration.

– Release retaining hook (right-side) -arrow A-.

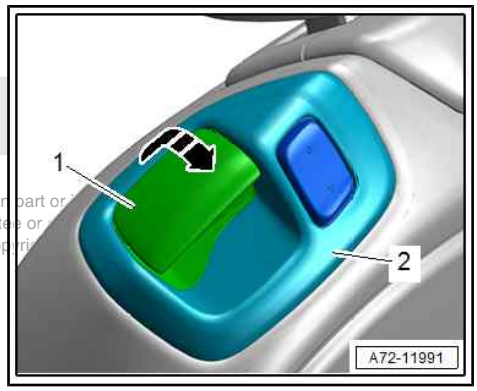
– Repeat procedure for opposite retaining hook (left-side) -arrow B-.



– Move operating lever -1- back to rest position.

– Disengage trim -2- -arrow- above operating lever by hand; if necessary, press against opposite side.

– If fitted, unplug electrical connector for switch for Easy Entry system.

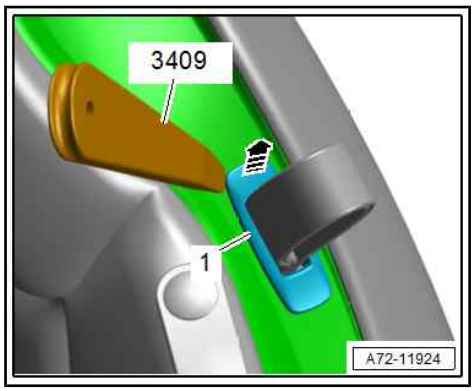


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri

Removing (super sports seat)

– Starting at top, unclip trim -1- for backrest release mechanism -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Pull trim off upwards, guide at pull strap and detach.



Installing

– Pull operating lever slightly up, guide trim over operating lever and engage rear detent in backrest release mechanism.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system”, page 382

2.23 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism

⇒ “2.23.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism”, page 446

⇒ “2.23.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for Easy Entry system”, page 449

⇒ “2.23.3 Removing and installing microswitch for backrest adjustment”, page 452

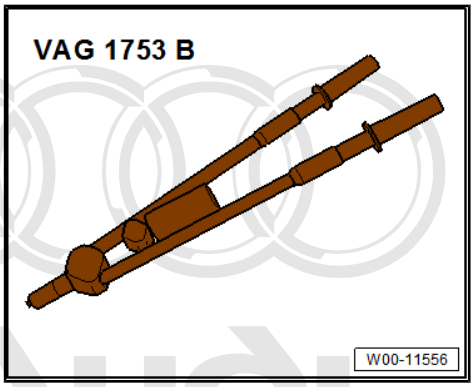
2.23.1 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism

Note

The Bowden cables (left and right) cannot be renewed separately.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Drill
- Safety goggles

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

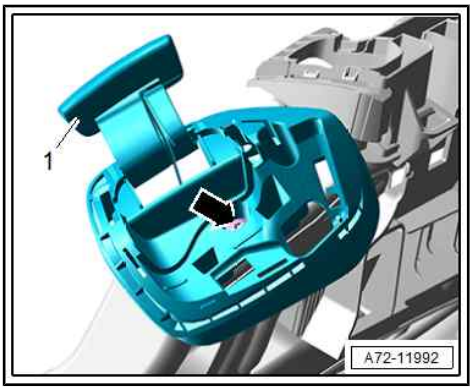
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

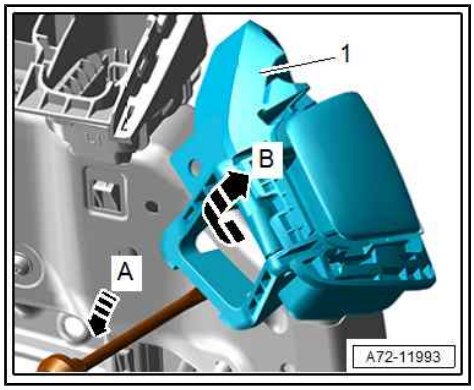
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .
– Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ page 445 .
– Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ page 529 .

Standard/sports seat:

– Pull operating lever -1- upwards and hold.
– Remove bolt -arrow-.



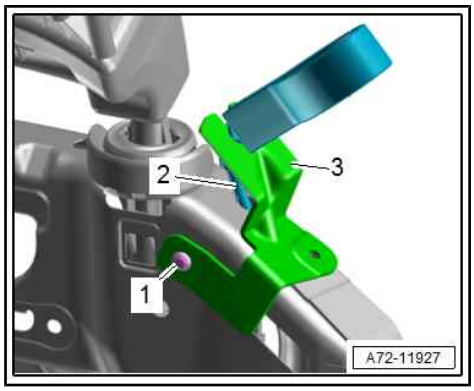
– Disengage retaining hook using a screwdriver -arrow A-, pull backrest release handle -1- out of catches towards front and detach upwards -arrow B-.



Super sports seat:

– Disengage support bracket -2- from bracket, disengage pull strap from Bowden cable and detach.

– Remove spreader rivet -1- and remove bracket -3- for backrest release mechanism.



All seat versions (continued):

Note

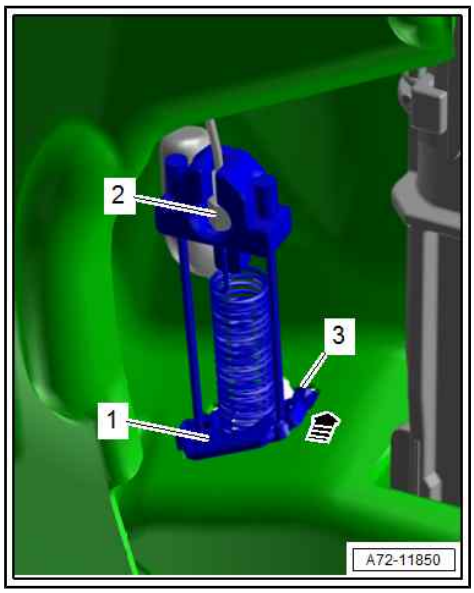
It is not necessary to remove the spring mat, lumbar support or lumbar support air cushion when removing and installing the Bowden cables.

– Disengage Bowden cable -2- for backrest release mechanism.

– Unclip Bowden cable support bracket -1- from outer backrest frame.

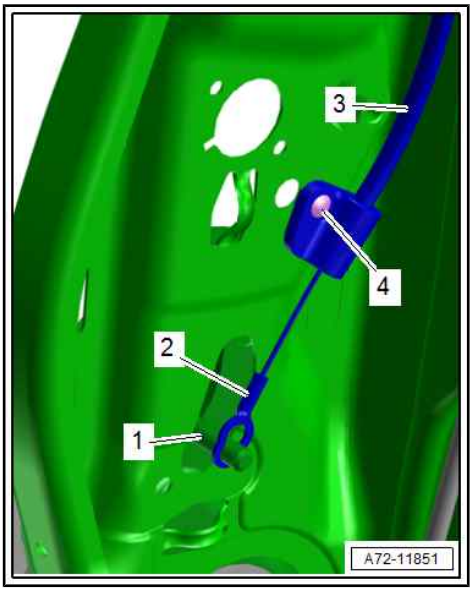
– Alternately press down retaining tabs -3- on both sides with a screwdriver and at the same time push Bowden cable forwards in direction of -arrow-.

– Guide out Bowden cable downwards through opening for support in outer backrest frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Use pliers to disengage eyelet -2- from pin -1- for backrest release mechanism.



WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivet -4- and detach bracket from outer backrest frame.

– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

– Cut through cable ties and take Bowden cables -3- out of outer backrest frame.

Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

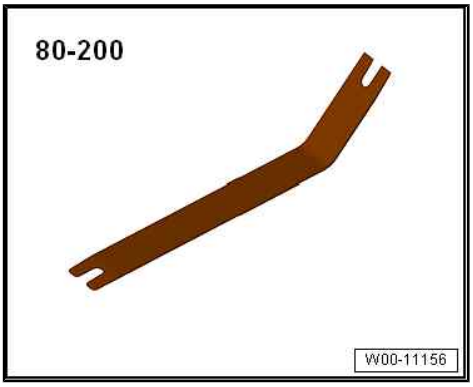
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.3 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system", page 382

2.23.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for Easy Entry system

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

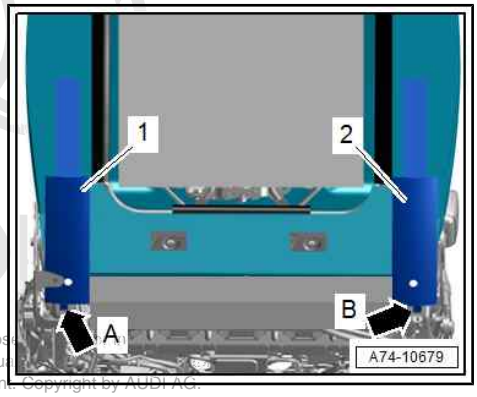
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 441 .

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 423 .

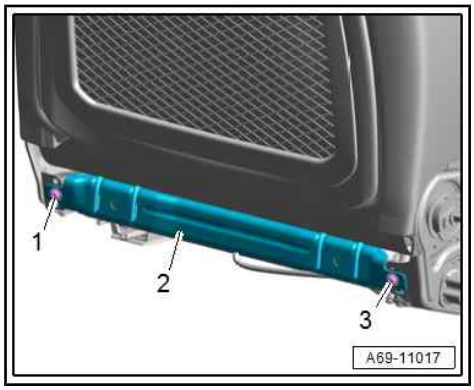
– Disengage cover -2- for backrest fitting (tunnel side) at outer backrest frame -arrow B-.



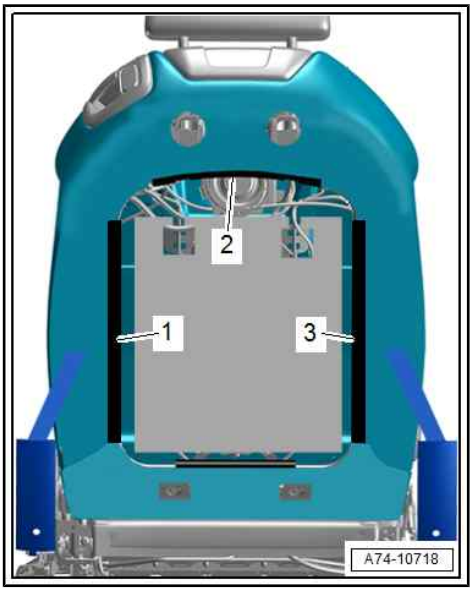
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If fitted, unscrew bolts -1, 3- and detach cross-piece/child seat anchor -2- from front seat.

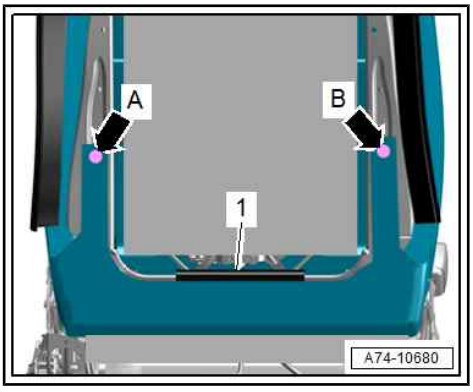
– Before doing so, remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .



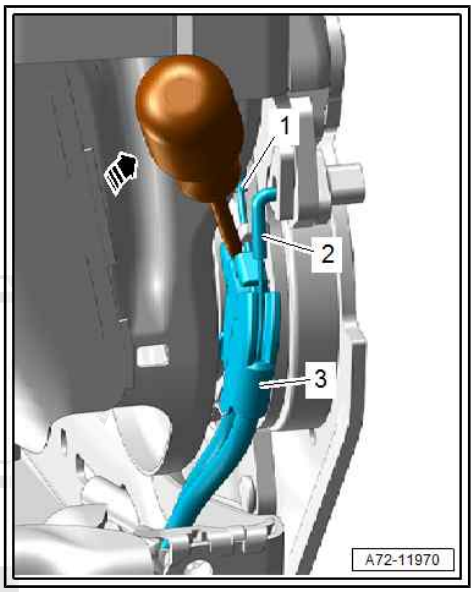
– Disengage piping -3- on tunnel side of outer backrest frame.



– Remove clip -arrow B- (tunnel side) at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Disengage piping -1- at bottom centre of outer backrest frame.



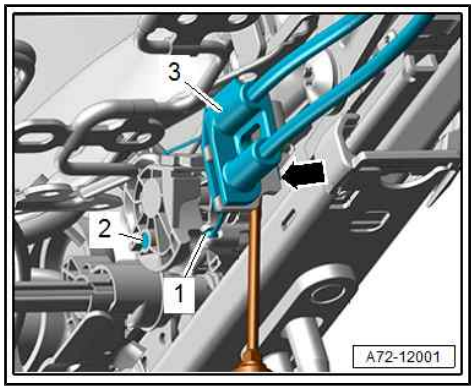
– Release fastener -arrow- using a small screwdriver and at the same time detach Bowden cable -3- from bracket.
– Disengage ends of Bowden cable -1, 2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release fastener -arrow- using a small screwdriver and at the same time detach Bowden cable -3- from bracket.

– Disengage ends of Bowden cable -1, 2- and remove Bowden cable.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

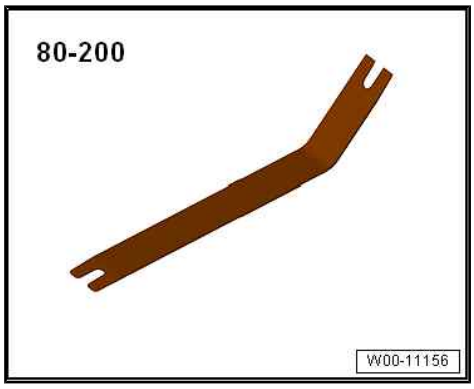
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system", page 382

2.23.3 Removing and installing microswitch for backrest adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

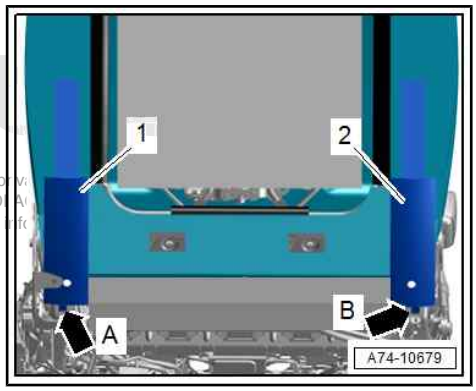
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 441 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .

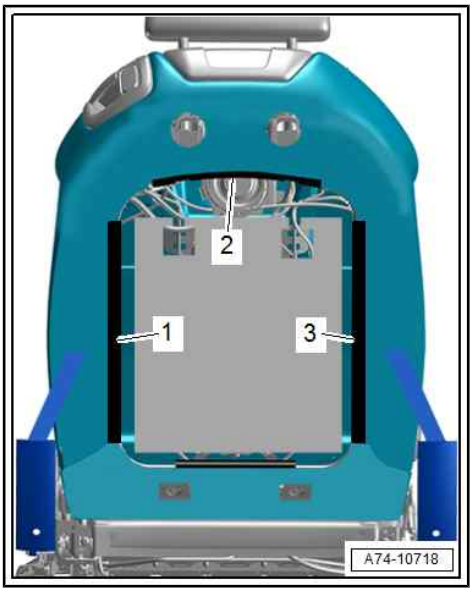
Standard/sports seat:

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 423 .
– Disengage covers -1, 2- for backrest fitting at outer backrest frame -arrows A, B-.

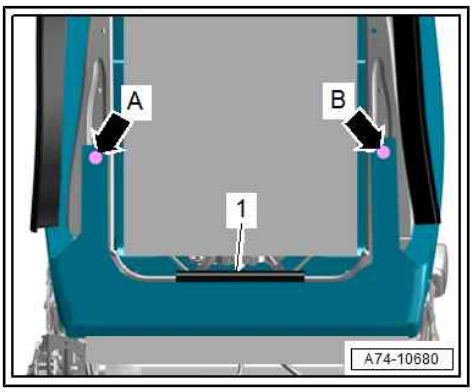
Protected by copyright. Copying for priv
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of inf



– Disengage piping -1, 3- on sides of outer backrest frame.
– Disengage piping -2- at top centre of outer backrest frame.



– Remove clips -arrows A, B- at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Disengage piping -1- at bottom centre of outer backrest frame.



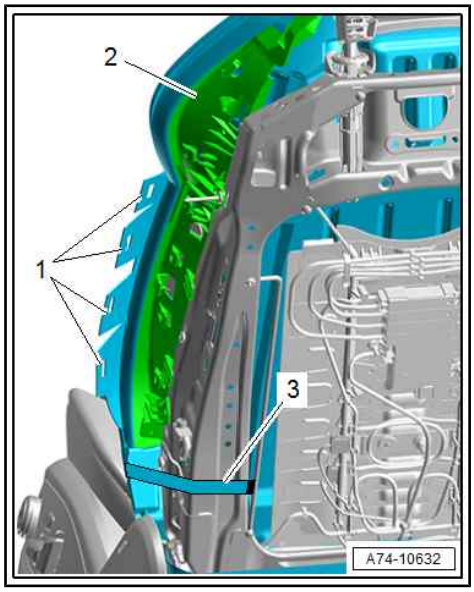
Super sports seat:

– Remove backrest cover panel and side trim ⇒ page 425 .
– Remove clips -arrows- at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Disengage piping -1- at bottom of outer backrest frame.
– Disengage piping -2- at bracket on outer backrest frame.



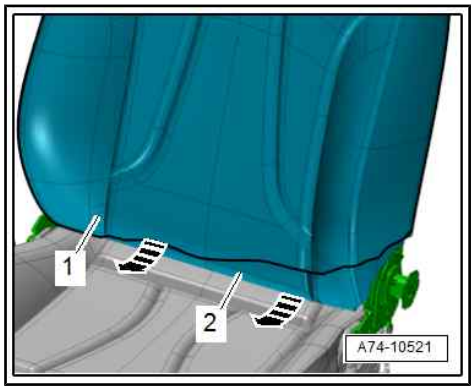
– Disengage lugs -1- on padding and cover from retaining hooks on side bolster -2-.
– Disengage coupling hook -3- for cover from outer backrest frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

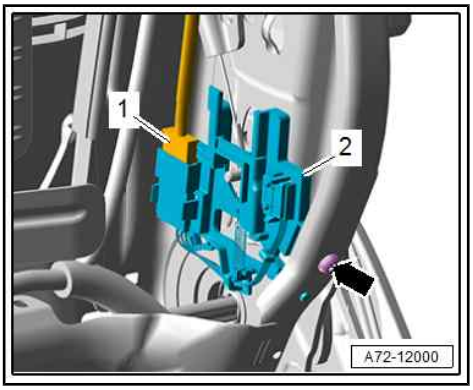


All seat versions (continued):

– Unfasten cover -1- with padding -2- from outer backrest frame and carefully pull it out under backrest towards front -arrows-.



– In area of microswitch, carefully pull padding as far as possible towards front.
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Disengage microswitch -2- for backrest adjustment and remove.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

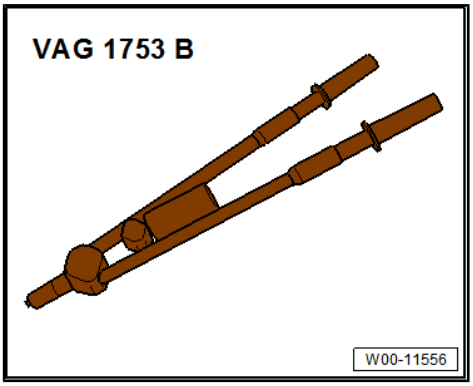
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system”, page 382

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.24 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor -V125- / -V126- / -V129- / -V130-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- Electric drill
- Safety goggles

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

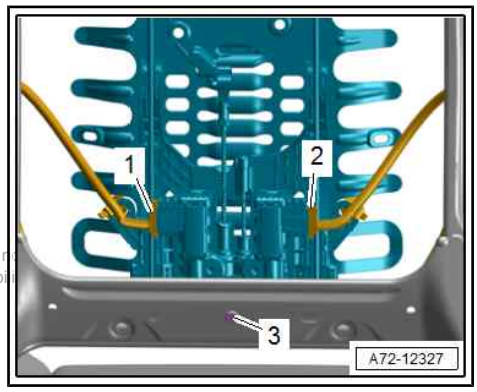
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

– Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ page 529 .

Lumbar support manufactured by Schukra:

– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2- at longitudinal and height adjustment motors of lumbar support.

– Cut through cable ties and move wiring harness clear at lumbar support.



WARNING

Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

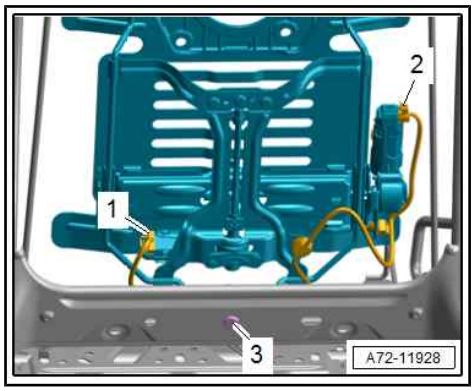
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Drill out rivet -3-.

Lumbar support manufactured by Brose:

– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2- at longitudinal and height adjustment motors of lumbar support.

– Cut through cable ties and move wiring harness clear at lumbar support.



WARNING

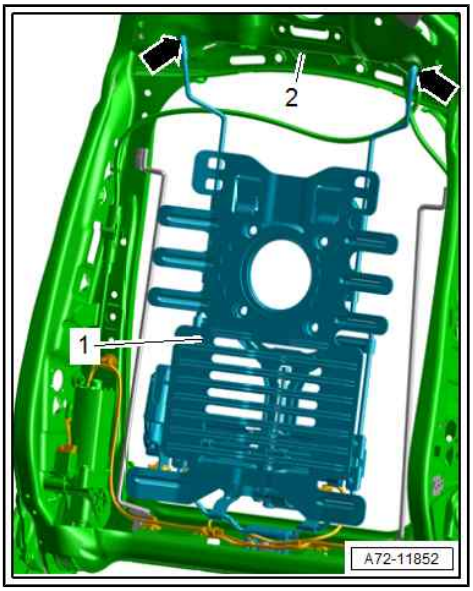
Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivet -3-.

All versions (continued):

– Swivel lumbar support -1- out of outer backrest frame at bottom (towards front), disengage from top of outer backrest frame -2- -arrows- and detach.



Installing

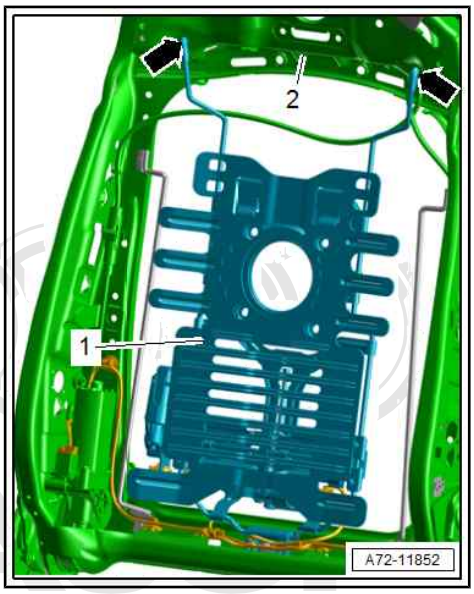
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

– Engage lumbar support -1- at top of outer backrest frame -2- -arrows-, swivel to rear at bottom and insert in outer backrest frame.

– Rivet lumbar support to outer backrest frame.



The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.4.1 Exploded view - front seat backrest, lumbar support", page 384

2.25 Removing and installing control unit for seat functions

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

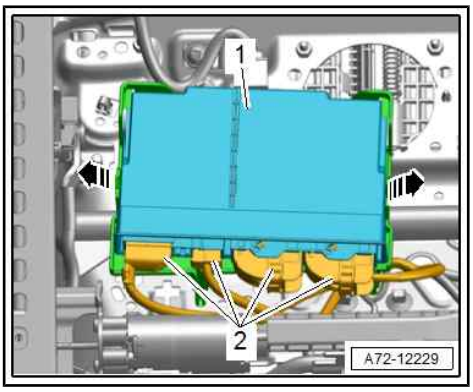
– Switch off ignition.

– Unbolt front seat and tilt it towards rear with electrical wiring connected ⇒ page 399 .

– Release retaining tabs -arrows-.

– Detach control unit -1- from bracket.

– Release catch and unplug electrical connectors -2-.

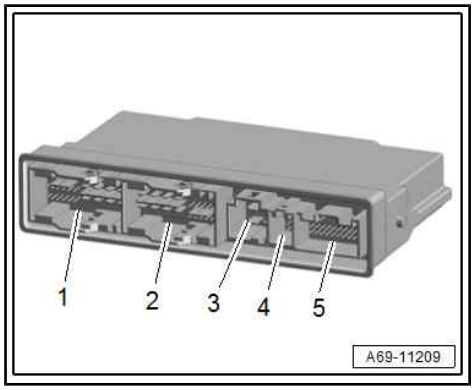


Installing

– If control unit has been renewed, make sure to plug in the electrical connectors in the correct order.

– First plug in electrical connector -5- (coding connector) and then the remaining connectors -1 … 4-.

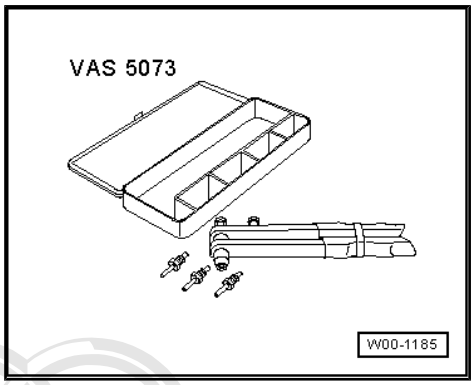
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



2.26 Removing and installing seat cushion fan

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pop rivet nut pliers - VAS 5073-



♦ Small grinder (commercially available)

♦ Safety goggles

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

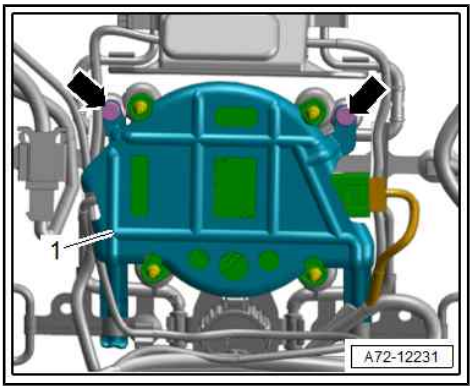
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

WARNING

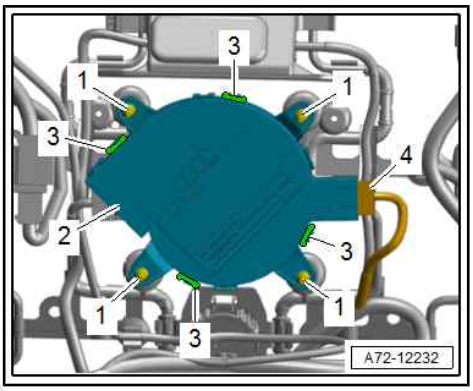
Risk of eye injuries.

- *Put on safety goggles.*

– Carefully cut off pop rivets -arrows- using small grinder.
– Detach cover -1- for fan.



– Unplug electrical connector -4-.
– Disengage tabs -3- from seat cushion fan.
– Spray silicone-free lubricant onto rubber studs -1- of flexible mounting for fan and detach fan -2- from rubber studs.



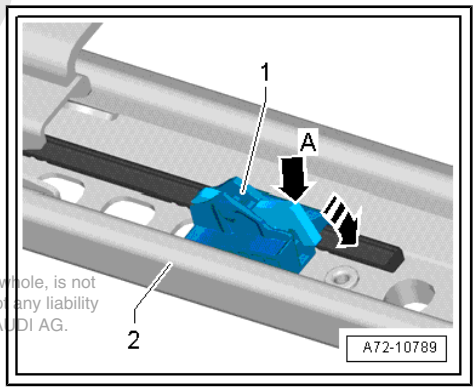
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.27 Removing and installing slider

Removing

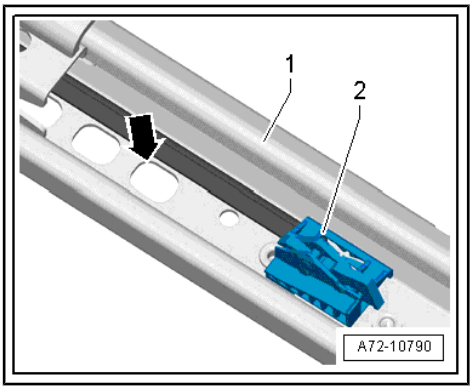
– Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
– Release backrest, fold it down towards front and at the same time move front seat as far forwards as possible.
– Remove bolt from rear of seat rail (tunnel side) ⇒ page 399 .
– Press rocker -arrow A- of slider in direction of -arrow- and pull slider towards rear.
– Lift slider -1- slightly at rear with a screwdriver and pull it out of seat rail -2- towards rear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

– If slider has been renewed, clean part of seat rail surrounding slider to remove remnants of old slider.
– Insert slider -2- in seat rail -1-.
– Lock slider in rearmost detent hole -arrow-.



Note

The slider does not have to be adjusted.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.3 Exploded view - backrest release mechanism and Easy Entry system", page 382

3 Rear seats

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 460

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide”, page 464

⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest”, page 466

⇒ “3.4 Exploded view - locking mechanism”, page 470

⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 472

⇒ “3.6 Exploded view - backrest remote release mechanism”, page 473

⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats”, page 473

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing tray”, page 475

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing head restraint”, page 475

⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing head restraint guide”, page 476

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 480

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism”, page 484

⇒ “3.13 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest”, page 486

⇒ “3.14 Removing and installing lock cylinder”, page 488

⇒ “3.15 Removing and installing outer bearing sleeve”, page 489

⇒ “3.16 Removing and installing inner pivot pin”, page 490

⇒ “3.17 Removing and installing trim for rear seat backrest (centre)”, page 490

⇒ “3.18 Removing and installing padding cover for rear seat backrest (centre)”, page 491

⇒ “3.19 Removing and installing trim for rear seat backrest locking mechanism”, page 492

⇒ “3.20 Removing and installing centre bracket”, page 493

⇒ “3.21 Removing and installing centre armrest”, page 493

⇒ “3.22 Removing and installing backrest remote release mechanism”, page 495

3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats

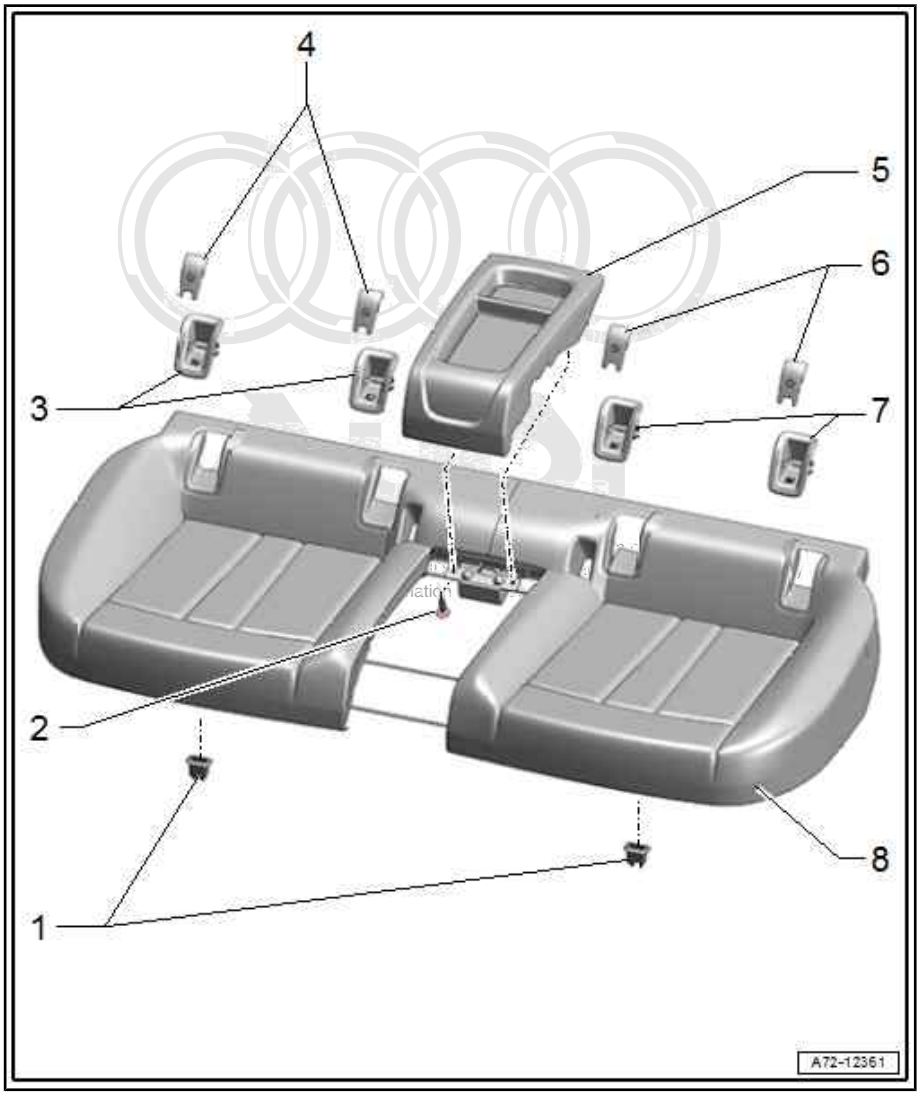
⇒ “3.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats, rear seat with 2 seats”, page 460

⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats, rear seat with 3 seats”, page 462

⇒ “3.1.3 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats, A5 Cabriolet”, page 463

3.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats, rear seat with 2 seats

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Retainers

- ❑ For securing seat bench
- ❑ Clipped into vehicle floor
- ❑ Always renew after removing seat bench

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.8 Nm

3 - Guides

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Must be seated firmly in anchor

4 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

5 - Tray

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 475

6 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

7 - Guides

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Must be seated firmly in anchor

8 - Seat bench

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473
- ❑ Shown with tray in illustration
- ❑ Seat frame must engage correctly in mountings

3.1.2 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats, rear seat with 3 seats

1 - Retainers

- ❑ For securing seat bench
- ❑ Clipped into vehicle floor
- ❑ Always renew after removing seat bench

2 - Seat bench

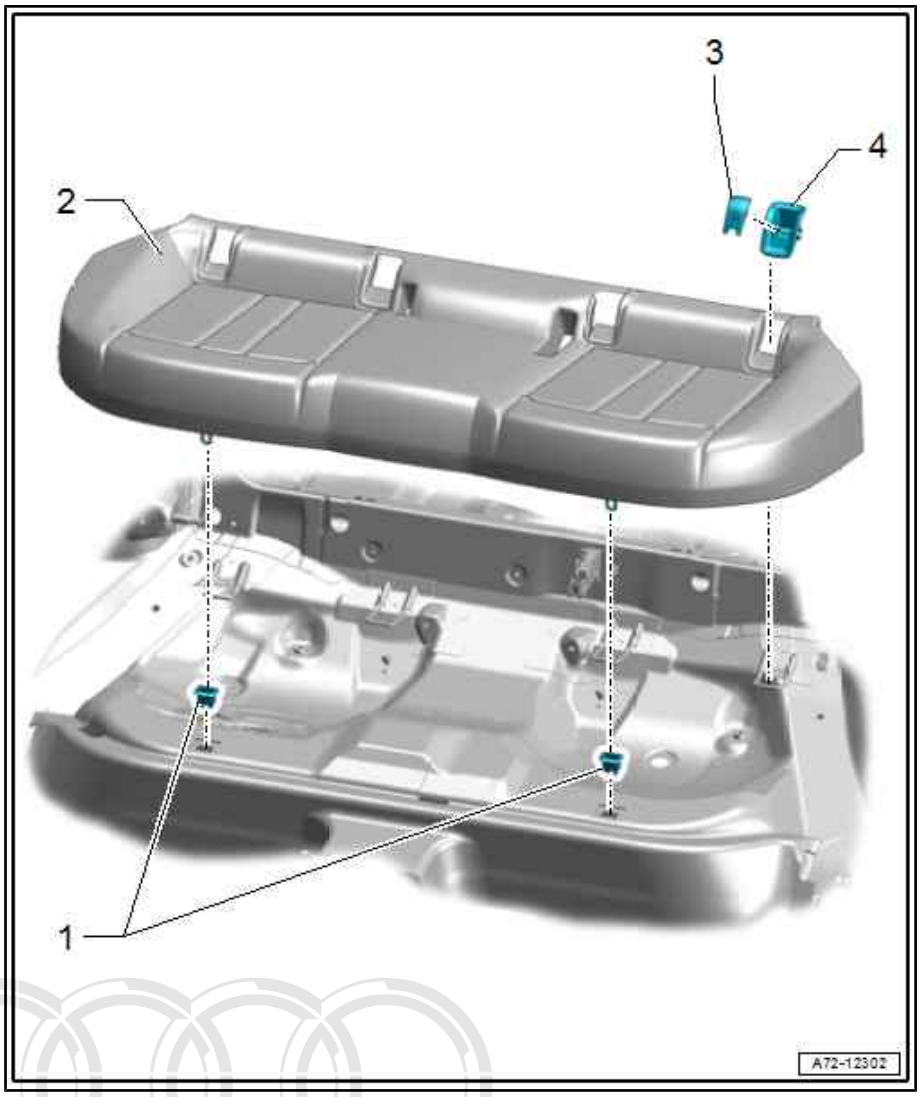
- ❑ With moulded section
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473
- ❑ Must engage correctly in mountings

3 - Lid

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

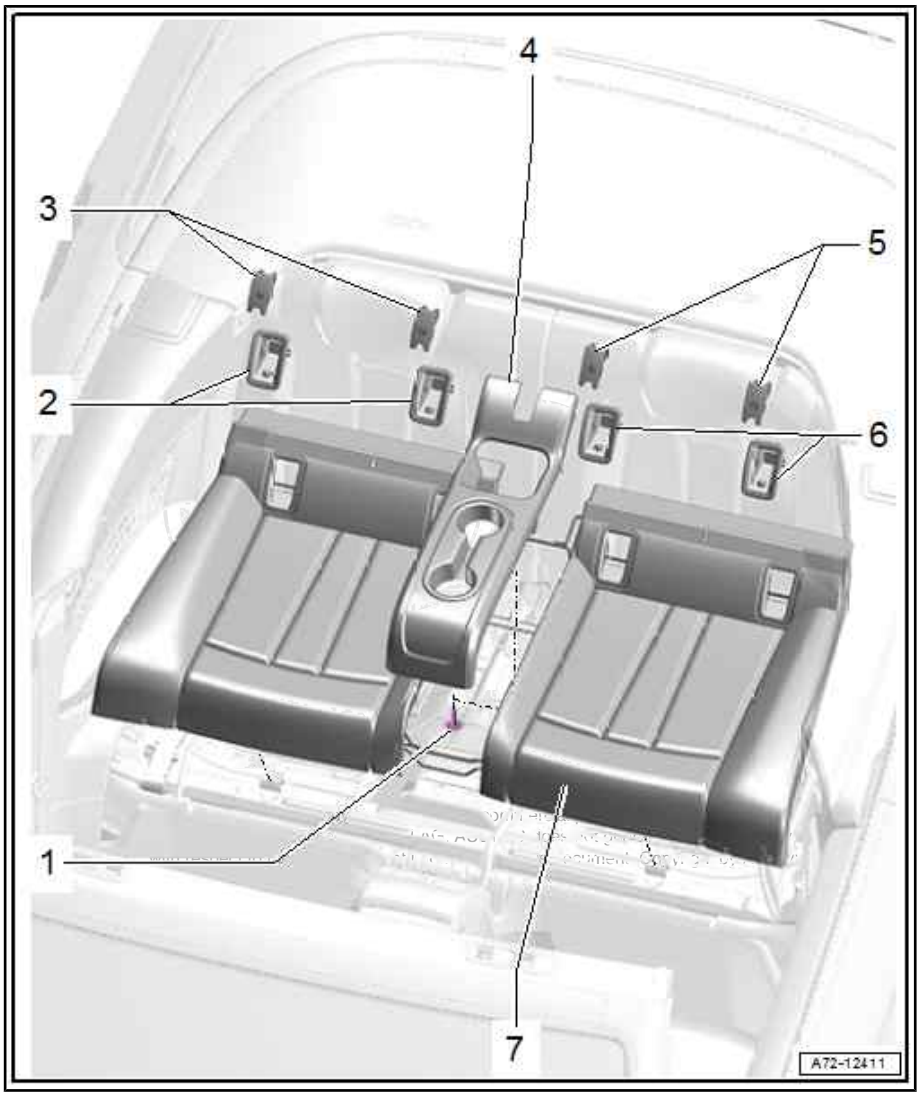
4 - Guide

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Must be seated firmly in anchor



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.3 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.8 Nm

2 - Guides

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Must be seated firmly in anchor

3 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

4 - Tray

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 475

5 - Cover

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

6 - Guides

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123
- ❑ Must be seated firmly in anchor

7 - Seat bench

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473
- ❑ Shown with tray in illustration
- ❑ Seat frame must engage correctly in mountings

3.2 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide

⇒ “3.2.1 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 464

⇒ “3.2.2 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, A5 Cabriolet”, page 465

3.2.1 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, A5 Coupé/Sportback

1 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ Right-side: with retaining clip
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 476
- ❑ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting at head restraint frame
- ❑ Slide in until retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame

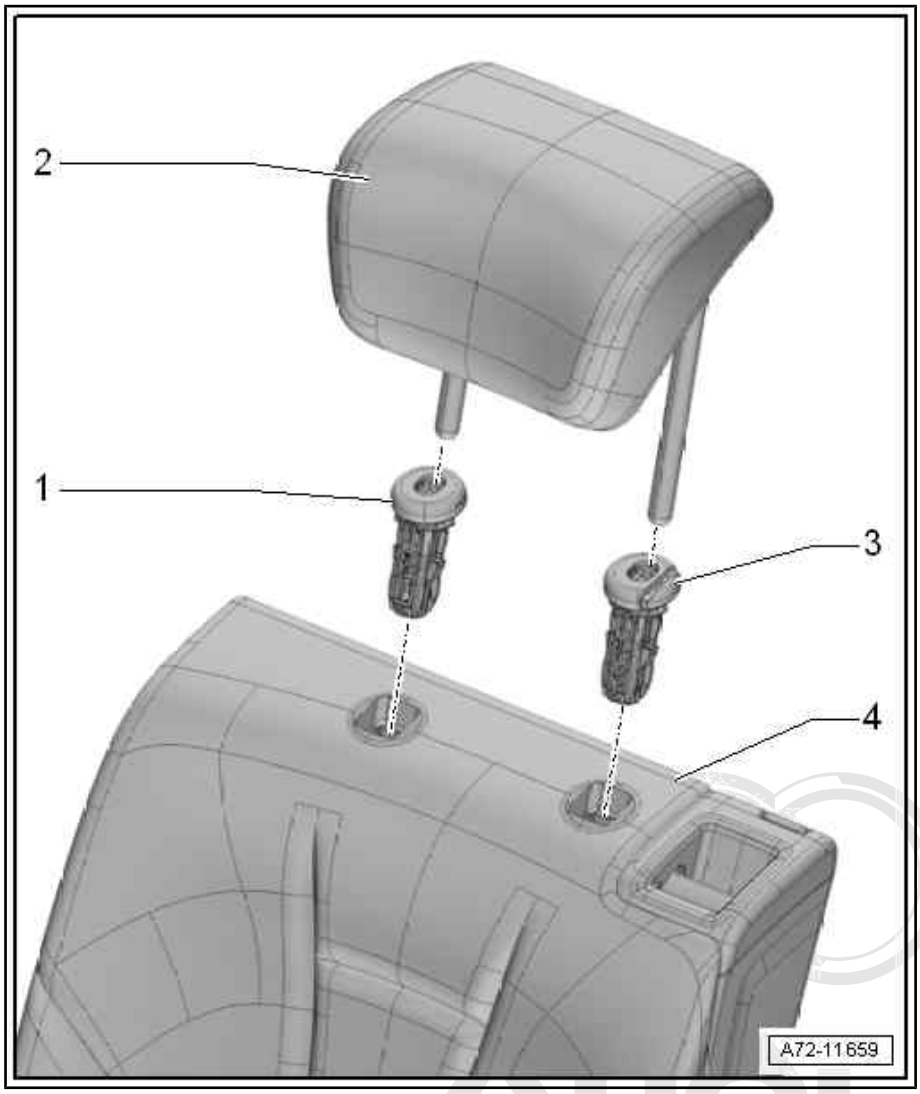
2 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 475
- ❑ Must be locked in head restraint guides

3 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ Left-side: with button for adjusting height of head restraint
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 476
- ❑ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting at head restraint frame
- ❑ Slide in until retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame

4 - Rear seat backrest



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2.2 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, A5 Cabriolet

1 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ Right-side: with retaining clip
- ❑ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 478
- ❑ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting at head restraint frame
- ❑ Slide in until retaining tabs engage properly

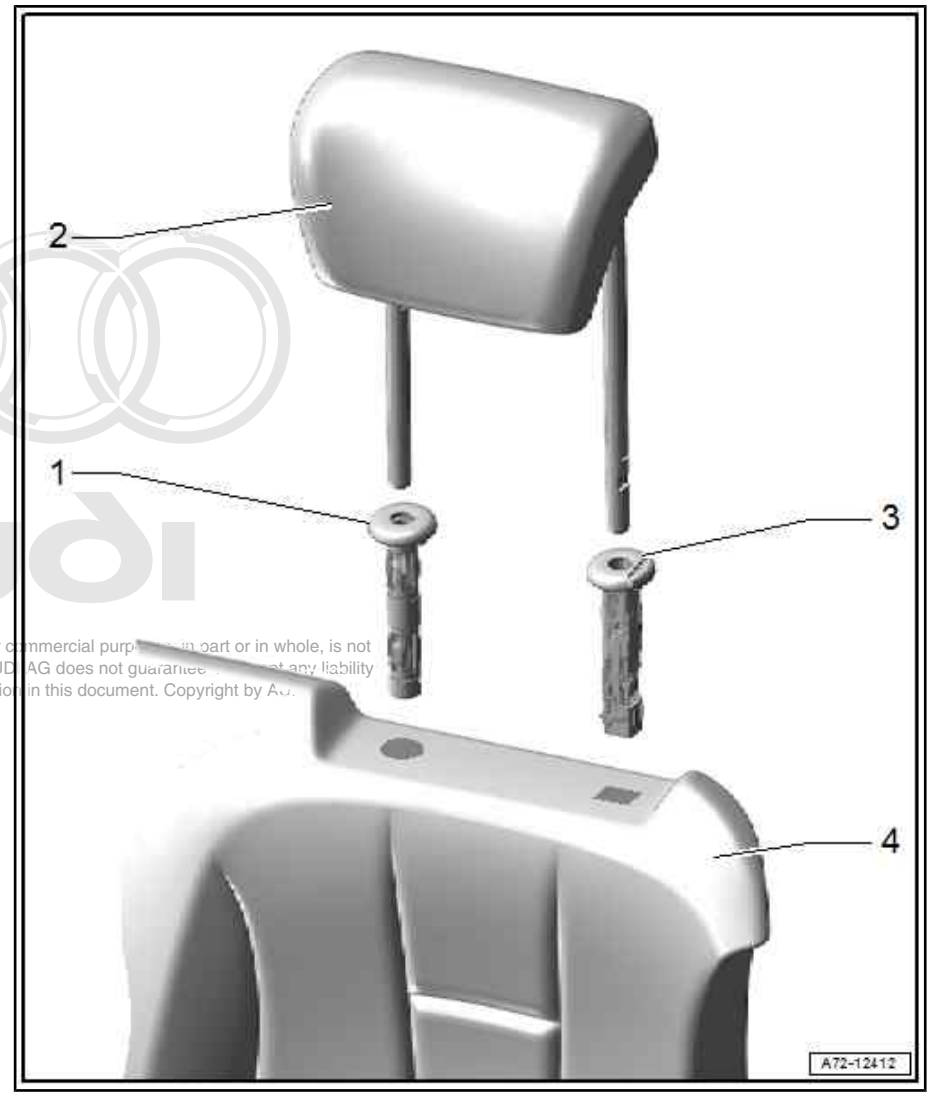
2 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 475
- ❑ Must be locked in head restraint guides

3 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ Left-side: with button for adjusting height of head restraint
- ❑ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 478
- ❑ Guide lug must engage in recess of mounting at head restraint frame
- ❑ Slide in until retaining tabs engage properly

4 - Rear seat backrest



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest

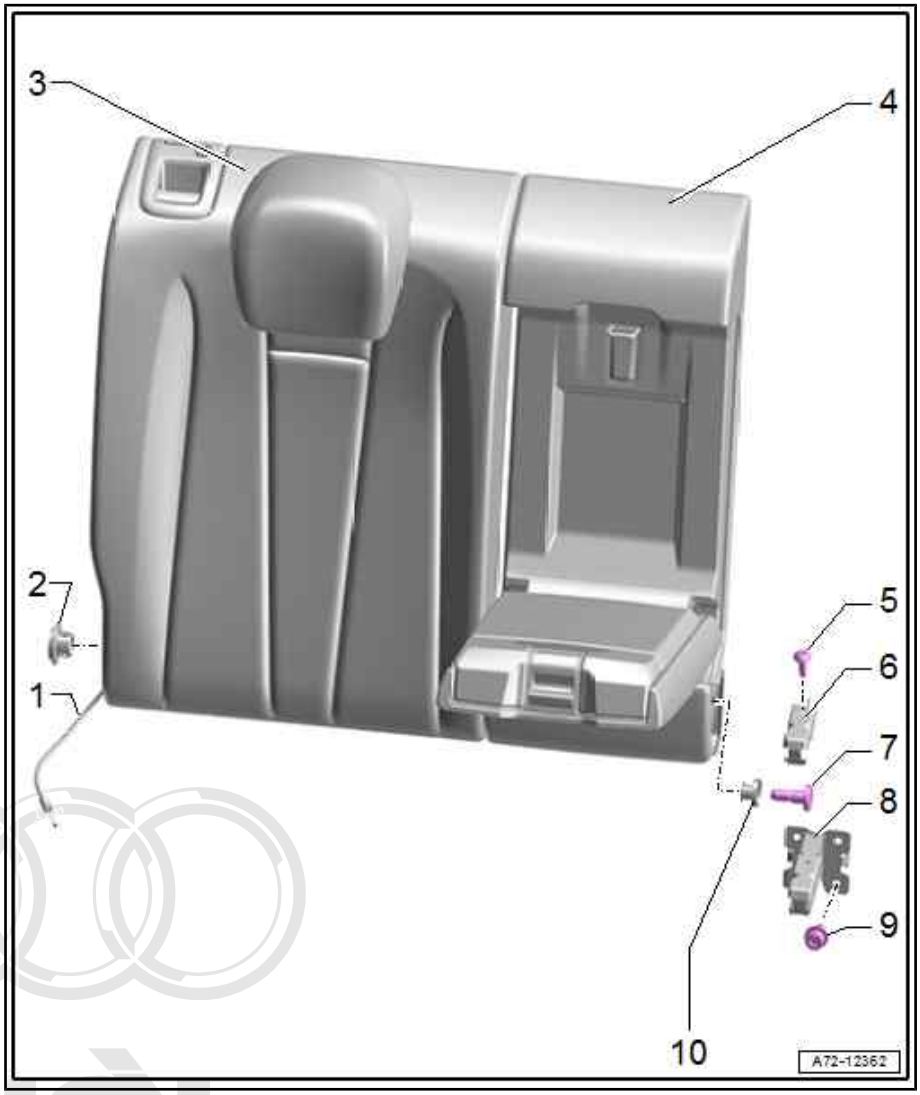
⇒ “3.3.1 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, rear seat with 2 seats”, page 466

⇒ “3.3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, rear seat with 3 seats”, page 467

⇒ “3.3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest (centre), rear seat with 3 seats”, page 468

⇒ “3.3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, A5 Cabriolet”, page 469

3.3.1 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, rear seat with 2 seats



1 - Bowden cable

- For backrest remote release mechanism

2 - Outer bearing sleeve

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 489
- Insert in outer backrest frame and press on as far as stop

3 - Rear seat backrest (right-side)

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 480

4 - Rear seat backrest (centre)

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 481

5 - Bolt

- 8 Nm

6 - Retaining clip

- For centre bracket
- Removing and installing ⇒ “3.20 Removing and installing centre bracket”, page 493

7 - Inner pivot pin

- 15 Nm
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 490

8 - Centre bracket

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 493

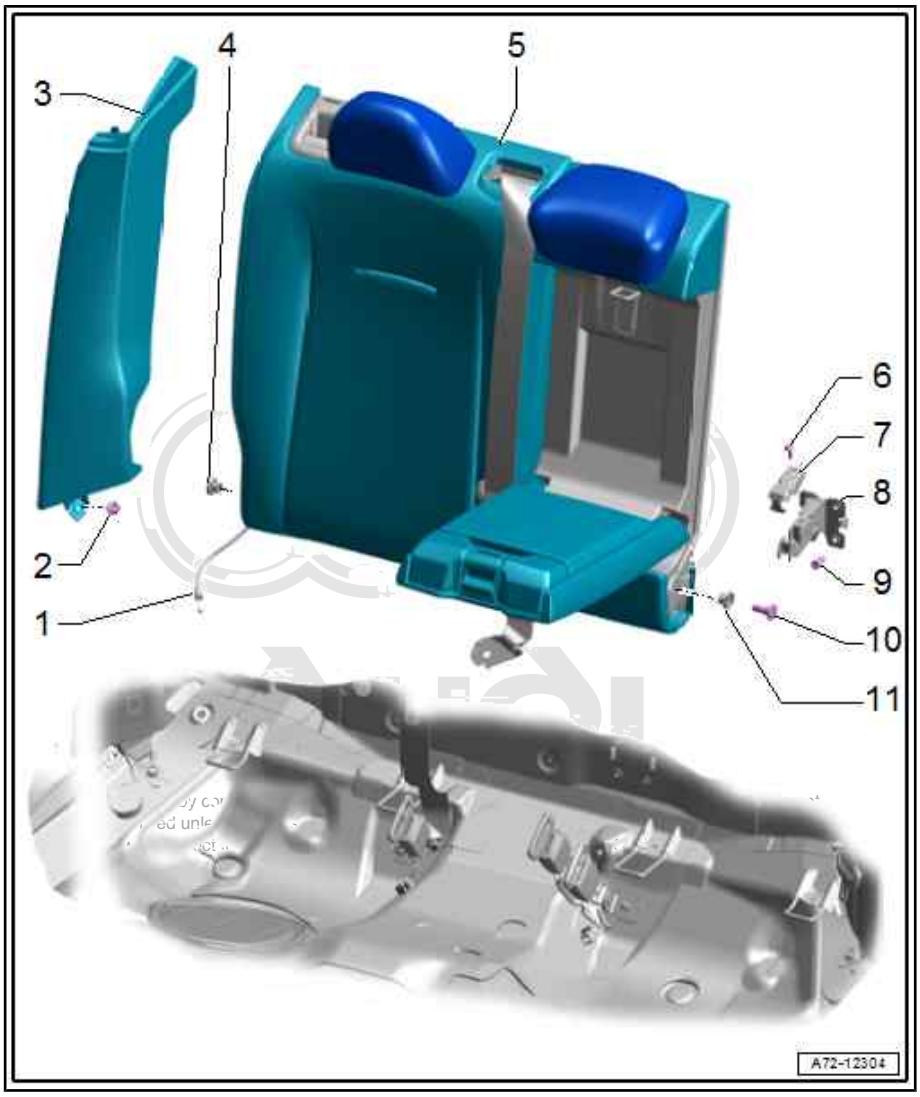
9 - Bolt

- 4x
- 20 Nm

10 - Inner bearing sleeve

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, rear seat with 3 seats



1 - Not fitted

2 - Nut

- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Side padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 552

4 - Outer bearing sleeve

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 489
- ❑ Insert in outer backrest frame and press on as far as stop

5 - Rear seat backrest (right-side) with rear seat backrest (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 480

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Retaining clip

- ❑ For centre bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.20 Removing and installing centre bracket”, page 493

8 - Centre bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 493

9 - Bolt

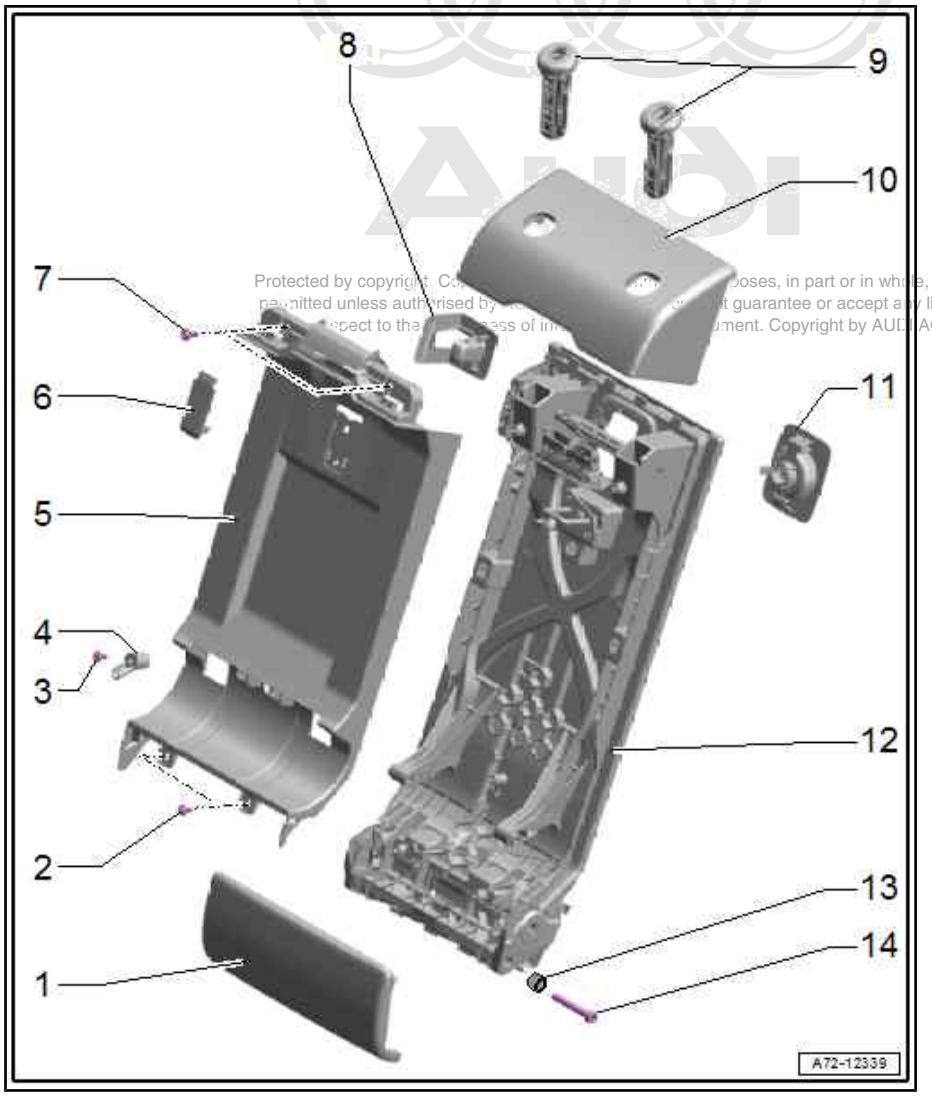
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 20 Nm

10 - Inner pivot pin

- ❑ 15 Nm
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 490

11 - Inner bearing sleeve

3.3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest (centre), rear seat with 3 seats



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Intermediate padding

- ❑ Detach downwards
- ❑ Engage at rear seat backrest and press on until it engages

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

4 - Stop

5 - Trim for rear seat backrest (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 490

6 - Trim

- ❑ For striker for centre armrest

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

8 - Trim

- ❑ For rear seat backrest locking mechanism
- ❑ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 492

9 - Head restraint guides

- ❑ Rear seat with 3 seats only
- ❑ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 477

10 - Padding cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 491

11 - Rotary lock

- ❑ For rear seat backrest (centre)
- ❑ Remove before unclipping padding cover -item 9-

12 - Rear seat backrest (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 481

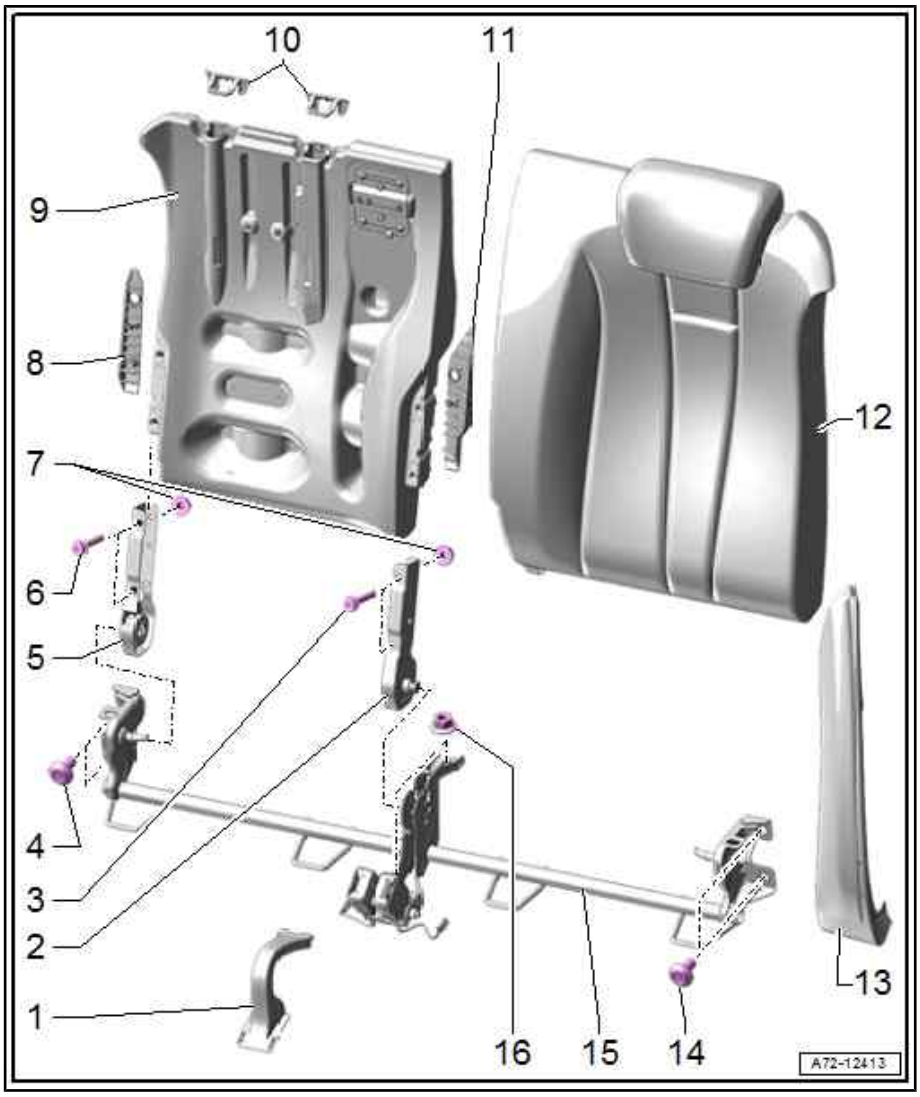
13 - Bearing sleeve

- ❑ If installed

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm

3.3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.11.3 Removing and installing rear seat backrest - A5 Cabriolet”, page 482
- ❑ Clipped into backrest frame

2 - Inner backrest fitting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 483

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 32 Nm

5 - Outer backrest fitting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 483

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x

7 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 6.6 Nm

8 - Outer filler piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.11.4 Removing and installing backrest pan/backrest fitting - A5 Cabriolet”, page 483

9 - Backrest pan
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 483

10 - Top filler pieces

11 - Inner filler piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.11.4 Removing and installing backrest pan/backrest fitting - A5 Cabriolet”, page 483

12 - Rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 482

13 - Side padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 553

14 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 32 Nm

15 - Backrest frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 484

16 - Nut
- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

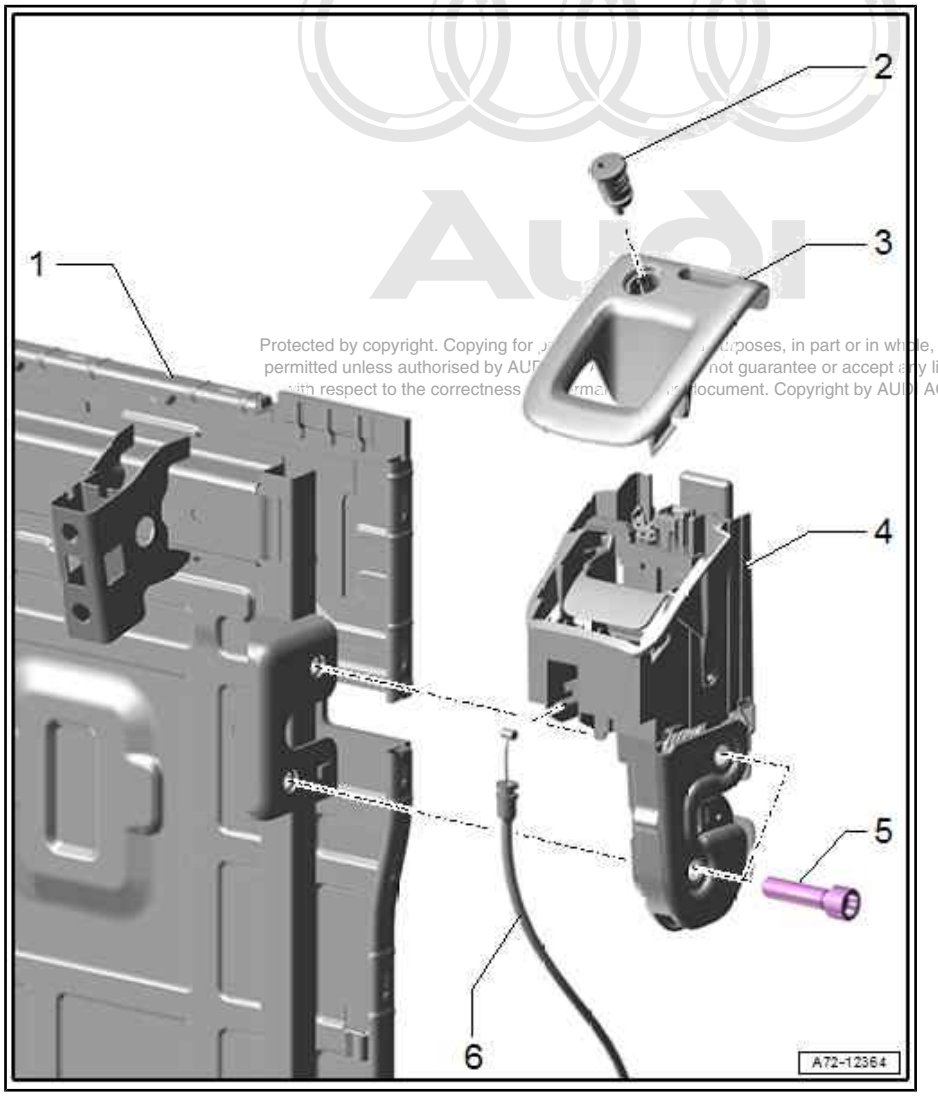
- ❑ 45 Nm

3.4 Exploded view - locking mechanism

⇒ “3.4.1 Exploded view - locking mechanism, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 470

⇒ “3.4.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism, A5 Cabriolet”, page 471

3.4.1 Exploded view - locking mechanism, A5 Coupé/Sportback



Protected by copyright. Copying for ... purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI ... not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness ... document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Outer backrest frame

- ❑ For rear seat backrest (left-side)
- ❑ Outer backrest frame (right-side) with mounting for rear seat backrest (centre)

2 - Lock cylinder

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 488
- ❑ Remove protective cap before installing lock cylinder

3 - Trim

- ❑ For locking mechanism and lock cylinder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 484
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

4 - Locking mechanism

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 486

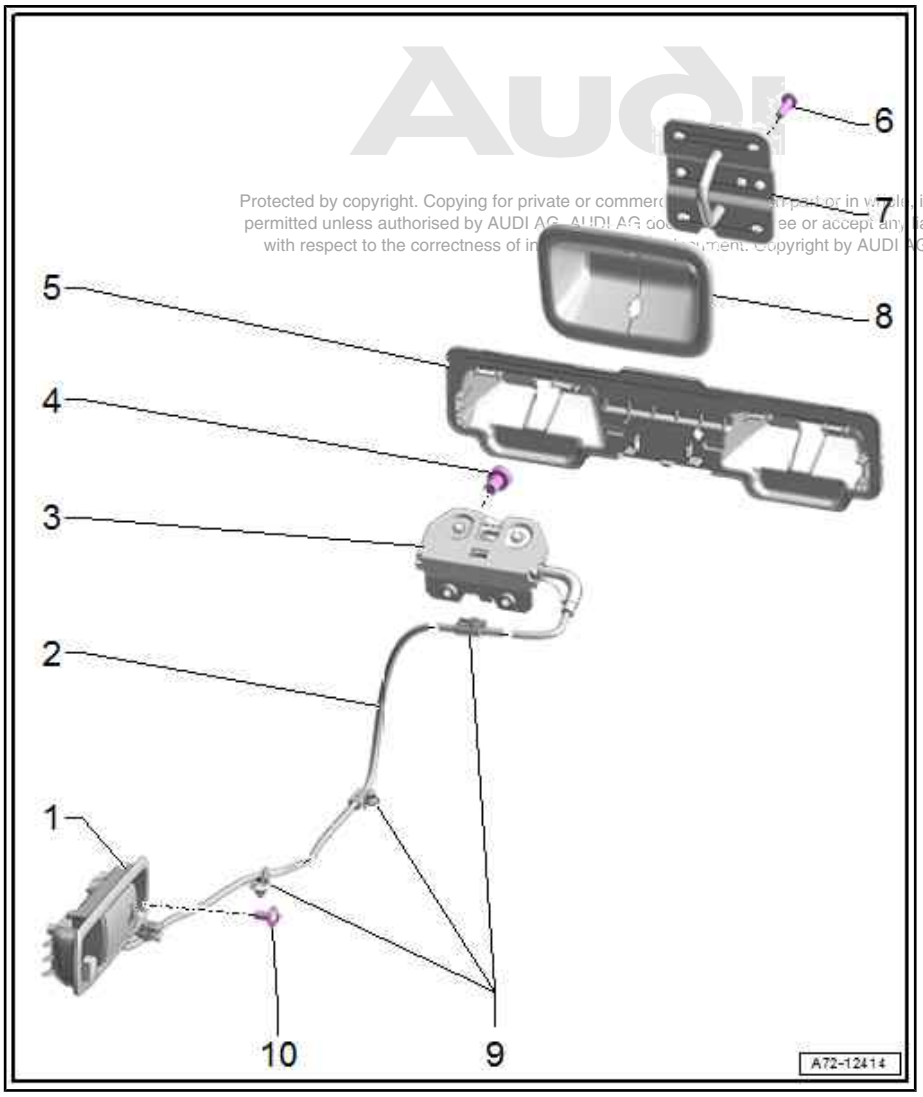
5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 25 Nm

6 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For backrest remote release mechanism
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

3.4.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism, A5 Cabriolet



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Backrest remote release mechanism

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ Only available together with -items 2 and 3-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 498

2 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For backrest remote release mechanism
- ❑ Only available together with -items 1 and 3-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.22.3 Removing and installing backrest remote release mechanism with Bowden cable - A5 Cabriolet”, page 498

3 - Locking mechanism

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ Only available together with -items 1 and 2-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 485

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 18.5 Nm

5 - Trim for locking mechanism

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 485
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

7 - Retaining clip

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 488

8 - Trim for retaining clip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 485
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly

9 - Bracket

- ❑ For Bowden cable
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Clipped into body

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest

1 - Cup holder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 494
- ❑ Insert and press on until it engages audibly

2 - Lining for cup holder

- ❑ Different shape on left and right

3 - Centre armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 493

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 5 Nm

5 - Hinge pin

6 - Hinge trim

7 - Rear seat backrest (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 481

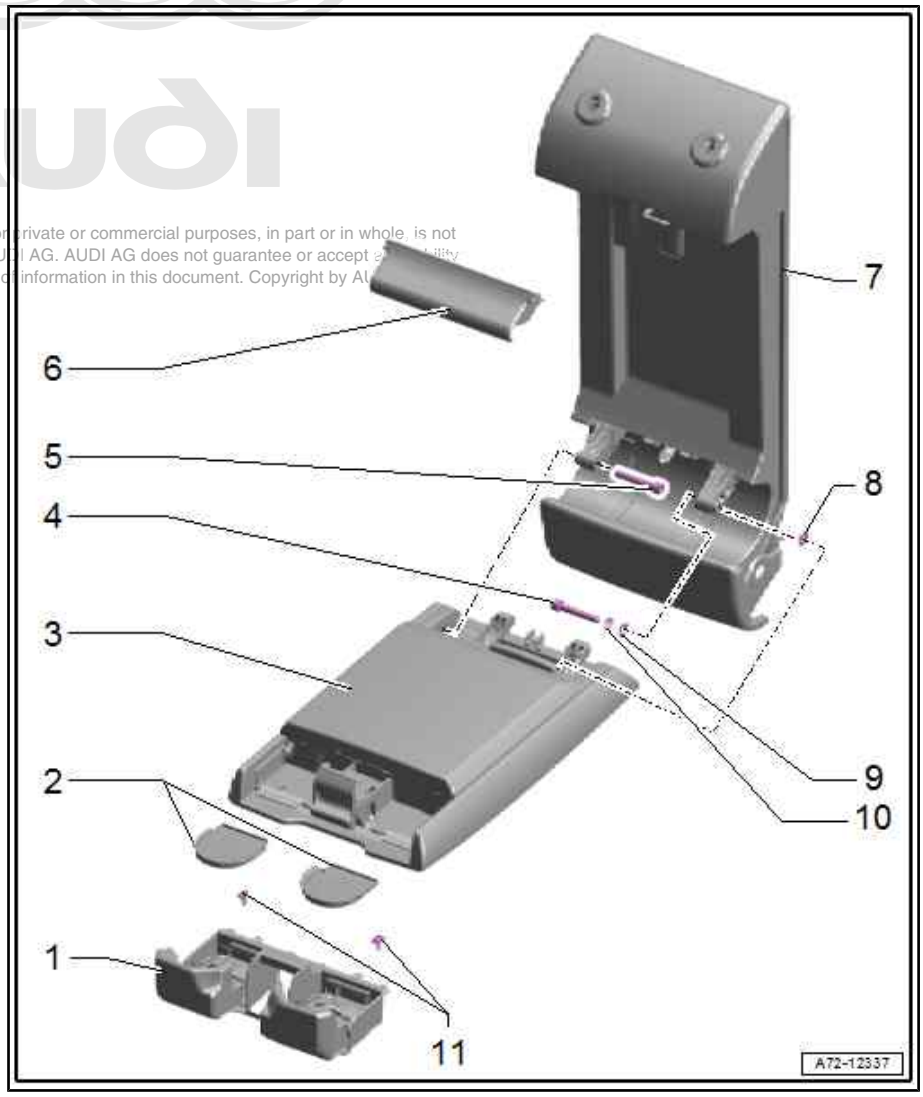
8 - Thrust washer

9 - Thrust washer

10 - Washer

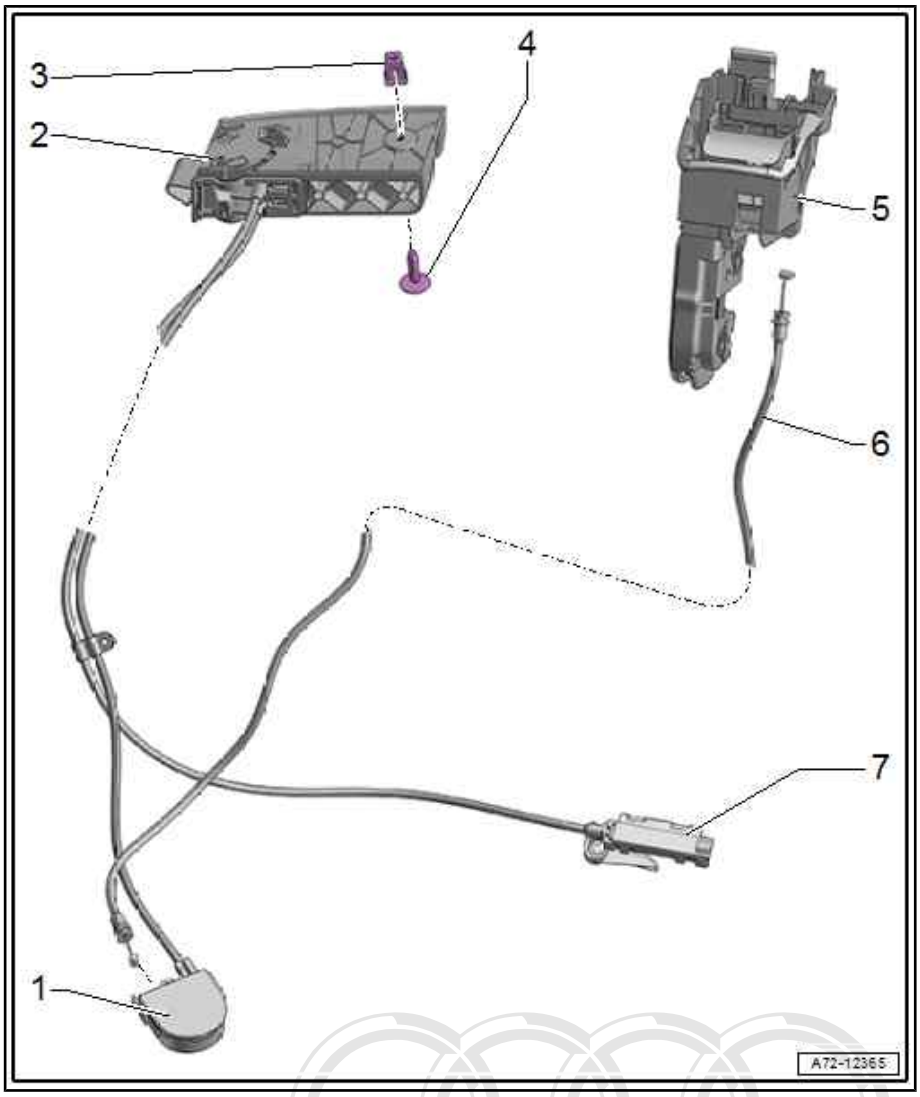
11 - Bolts

- ❑ 3.5 Nm



The reproduction, editing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.6 Exploded view - backrest remote release mechanism



1 - Connector point

- ❑ With Bowden cable for outer rear seat backrest
- ❑ Clipped onto vehicle floor underneath seat bench

2 - Backrest remote release mechanism

- ❑ In luggage compartment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 495

3 - Expanding nut

- ❑ Clip into body

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

5 - Locking mechanism

- ❑ For rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 486

6 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For locking mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “3.13.1 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest - A5 Coupé/ Sportback”, page 486

7 - Connector point

- ❑ With Bowden cable for centre rear seat backrest
- ❑ Clipped onto vehicle floor underneath seat bench

3.7 Removing and installing seat bench/individual seats

Removing

– Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.

– Unclip guides for child seat anchor (4x) from anchors ⇒ page 123 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A5 Coupé/Sportback:

– Reach underneath frame -2- of seat bench -1- on one side with both hands.

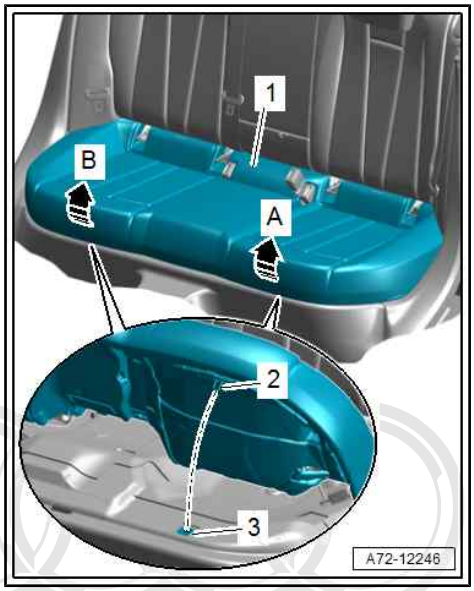
– Using both hands, pull seat bench firmly and abruptly upwards -arrow A- to disengage seat frame from mounting (front) -3-.

– Repeat procedure on opposite side of seat bench -arrow B-.

– Press side of seat bench towards rear to disengage seat frame from mounting.

– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connectors for seat heating.

– Take out seat bench.



A5 Cabriolet:

– Reach underneath seat bench frame -1- on one side with both hands.

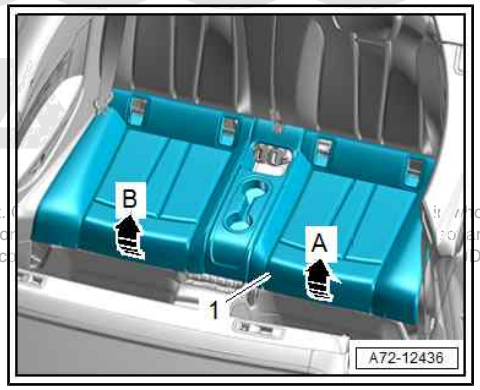
– Using both hands, pull seat bench firmly and abruptly upwards -arrow A- to disengage seat frame from mounting (front).

– Repeat procedure on opposite side of seat bench -arrow B-.

– Fold front of seat bench upwards and disengage at backrest frame.

– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connectors for seat heating.

– Take out seat bench.



Protected by copyright. ... permitted unless author... ... to the c... ...ole, is not ...any liability ...DI AG.

Installing

– Fit seat bench and engage seat frame in backrest frame.

– Press seat bench downwards into mountings until it engages audibly.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

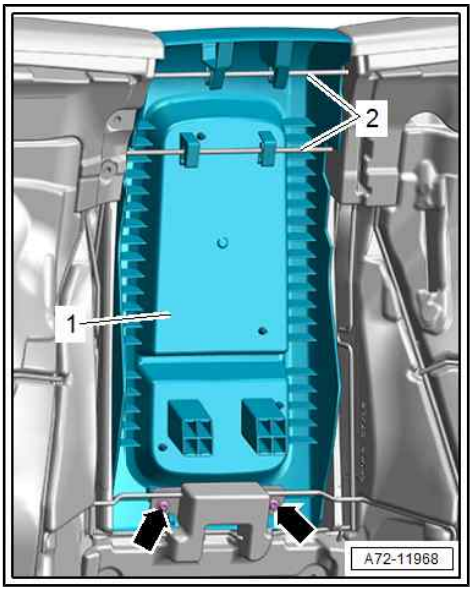
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 460

3.8 Removing and installing tray

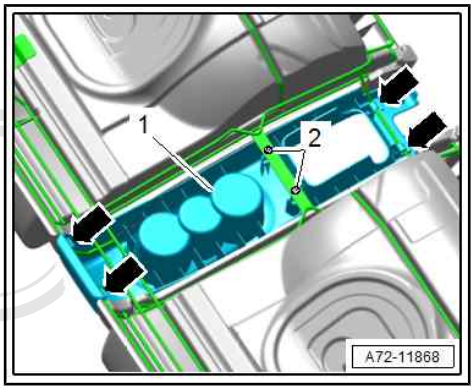
Removing - A5 Coupé/Sportback

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Unclip tray -1- at seat bench frame -2- and remove.



Removing - A5 Cabriolet

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Unclip storage compartment -1- from fasteners -arrows- on seat frame and detach.



Installing

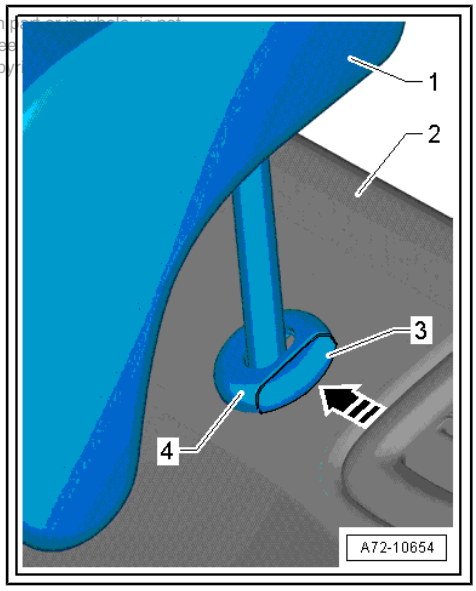
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - seat bench/individual seats”, page 460

3.9 Removing and installing head restraint

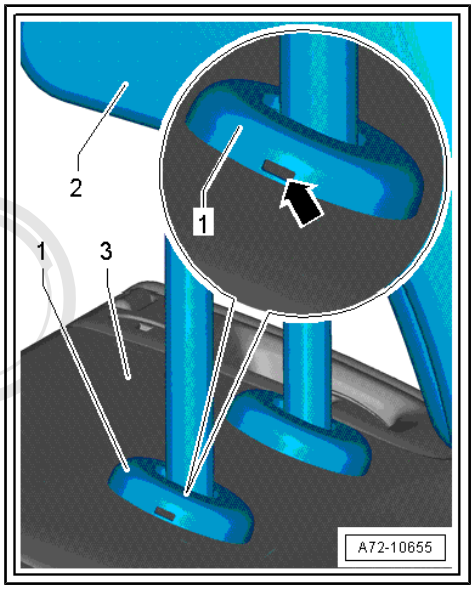
Removing

– Press release button -3- for height adjustment at head restraint guide -4- -arrow- and at the same time pull head restraint -1- as far as possible out of rear seat backrest -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright

– Use a small flat screwdriver to press locking spring as far as it will go in opening -arrow- of head restraint guide -1-.
– At the same time, pull head restraint -2- out of rear seat backrest -3- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide”, page 464

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.10 Removing and installing head restraint guide

⇒ “3.10.1 Removing and installing head restraint guide for rear seat backrest (outer) - A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 476

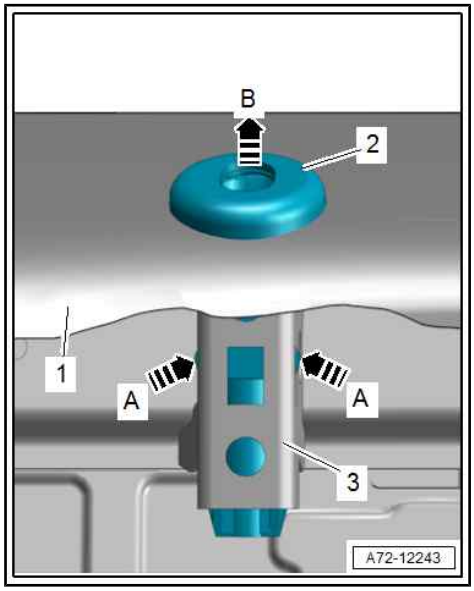
⇒ “3.10.2 Removing and installing head restraint guide for rear seat backrest (centre) - rear seat with 3 seats”, page 477

⇒ “3.10.3 Removing and installing head restraint guide - A5 Cabriolet”, page 478

3.10.1 Removing and installing head restraint guide for rear seat backrest (outer) - A5 Coupé/Sportback

Removing

– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 475 .
– Detach cover and padding from outer backrest frame ⇒ page 548 .
– Fold cover and padding -1- upwards until head restraint post -3- with head restraint guide -2- is visible.
– Press in retaining tabs of head restraint guide with pliers -arrows A- and at the same time pull head restraint guide out of outer backrest frame -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.2.1 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 464

3.10.2 Removing and installing head restraint guide for rear seat backrest (centre) - rear seat with 3 seats

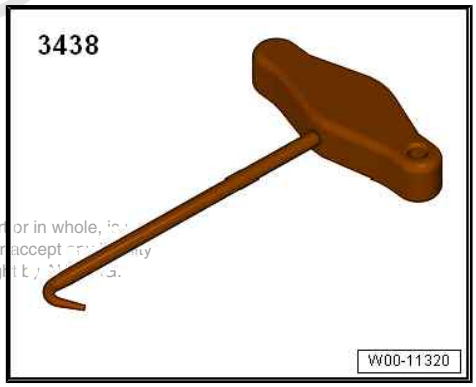
Note

The head restraint guide cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

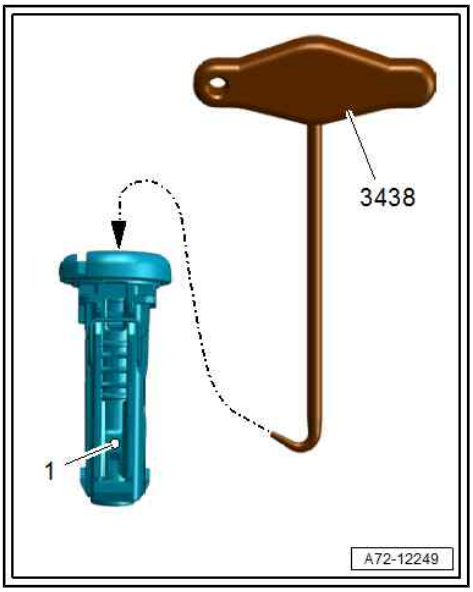
- Hook - 3438-



Removing

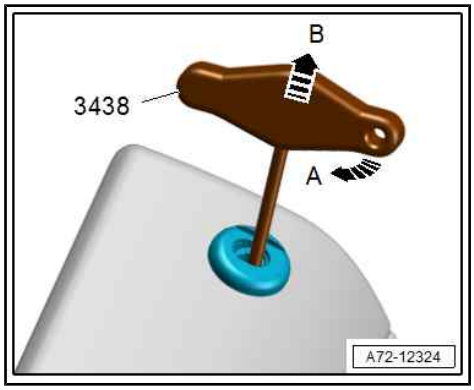
– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 475 .

– Guide hook - 3438- into head restraint guide -arrow- from above and insert in opening -1- on retaining catch.



– Turn hook - 3438- 90° -arrow A-.

• Hook must not slip out of opening.



Note

Turning the hook causes the retaining catch to be bent away to one side, i.e. it is no longer engaged.

– Pull head restraint guide out of backrest using hook -arrow B-.

Installing

– Insert head restraint guide and press into mountings until retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest (centre), rear seat with 3 seats”, page 468

3.10.3 Removing and installing head restraint guide - A5 Cabriolet

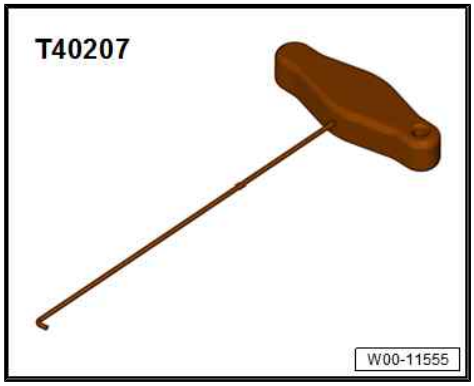
Note

The head restraint guide cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hook - T40207-



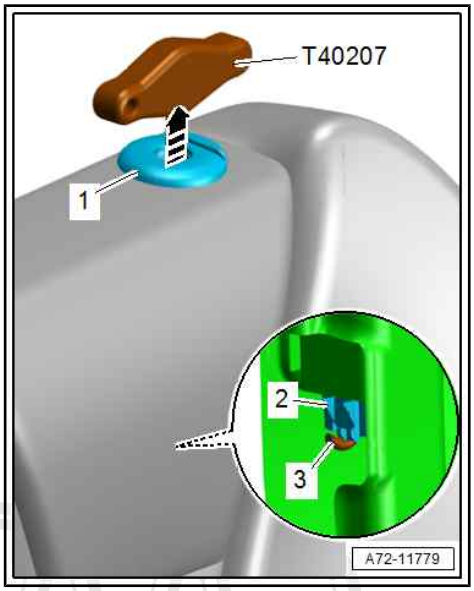
Removing

– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 475 .

Head restraint guide with release button:

– Attach hook - T40207- to retaining tab -2- of head restraint guide (hook -3- should point to centre of backrest).

– Release retaining tab of head restraint guide by pulling hook - T40207- and simultaneously pulling head restraint guide -1- out of backrest pan -arrow-.



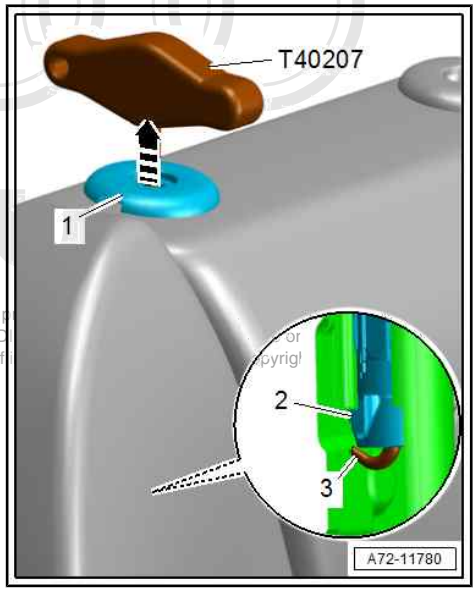
Note

Considerable force is required to pull the head restraint guide out of the backrest pan.

Head restraint guide without release button:

– Attach hook - T40207- to retaining tab -2- of head restraint guide (hook -3- should point towards rear).

– Release retaining tab of head restraint guide by pulling hook - T40207- and simultaneously pulling head restraint guide -1- out of backrest pan -arrow-.



Note

Considerable force is required to pull the head restraint guide out of the backrest pan.

Protected by copyright. Copying for p
with respect to the correctness of

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "3.2.2 Exploded view - head restraint and head restraint guide, A5 Cabriolet", page 465

3.11 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

⇒ “3.11.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest (outer) - A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 480

⇒ “3.11.2 Removing and installing rear seat backrest (centre) - A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 481

⇒ “3.11.3 Removing and installing rear seat backrest - A5 Cabriolet”, page 482

⇒ “3.11.4 Removing and installing backrest pan/backrest fitting - A5 Cabriolet”, page 483

⇒ “3.11.5 Removing and installing backrest frame - A5 Cabriolet”, page 484

3.11.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest (outer) - A5 Coupé/Sportback

Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

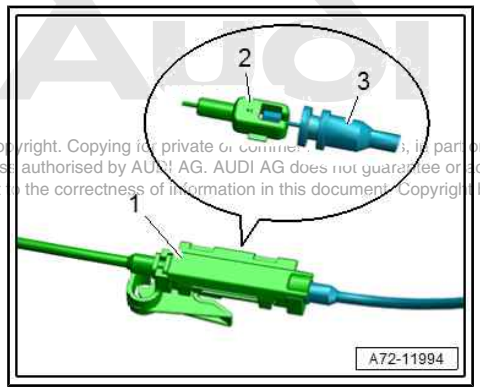
– Rear seat backrest (right-side) on vehicles with rear seat with 3 seats: Remove centre belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 118 .

Equipment version with backrest remote release mechanism:

– Rear seat backrest (right-side) with rear seat backrest (centre): Unclip connector point -1- for Bowden cable for rear seat backrest (centre) from vehicle body.

– Open cover for connector point and disengage Bowden cable support bracket -3- at connector point.

– Disengage Bowden cable nipple from mounting -2-.

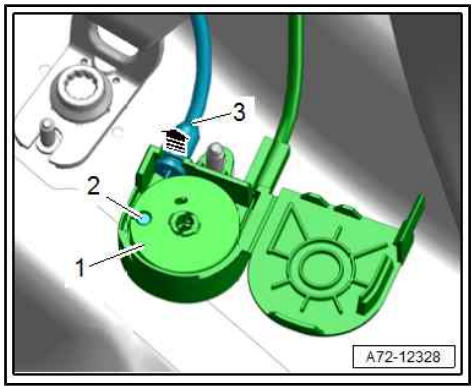


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

Risk of malfunctions.

- *When removing and installing the Bowden cable, do NOT take the idler roller -1- out of the connector point.*



– Open cover for connector point.

– Disengage Bowden cable support bracket -3- from mounting on connector point -arrow-.

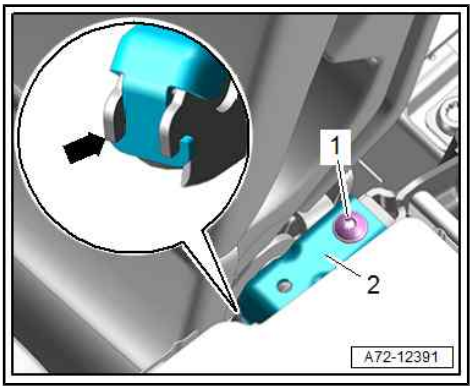
– Disengage nipple -2- of Bowden cable from idler roller -1-.

Continued for all vehicles:

– Fold down rear seat backrests.

– Remove bolt -1-.

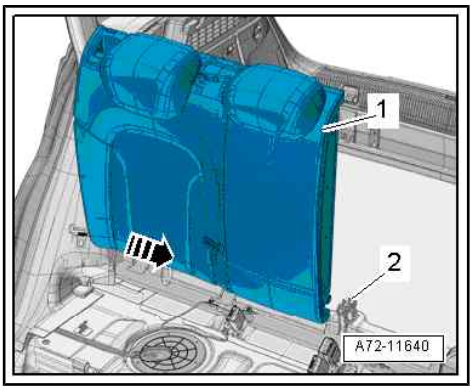
– Swivel retaining clip -2- forwards and at the same time disengage it downwards from centre bracket -arrow-.



– Fold rear seat backrest -1- down towards front slightly.

– Lift rear seat backrest out of centre bracket -2-.

– Pull rear seat backrest out of outer mounting towards centre of vehicle -arrow-.



Note

If this is difficult, remove centre bracket ⇒ page 493 .

– Take backrest out of vehicle.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 466

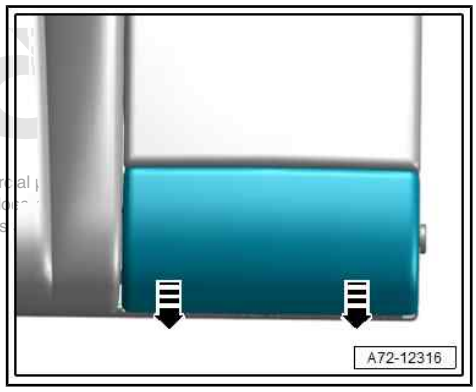
3.11.2 Removing and installing rear seat backrest (centre) - A5 Coupé/Sportback

Removing

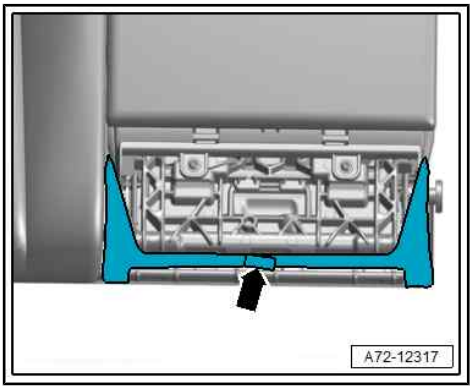
– Remove rear seat backrest (right-side) ⇒ page 480 .

– Detach intermediate padding -arrows- downwards.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this



– Release velcro strip -arrow- for fabric trim.



– Disengage coupling hook -3- for fabric trim.
– Disengage fabric trim at mounting pin -2-.
– Unscrew bolt -1- and remove together with mounting bush.
– Bend metal tab -4- for draw-in piping to one side -arrow-.
– Move Bowden cable clear.
– Lift rear seat backrest (centre) out of hinge pins and at the same time pull draw-in piping out of guide.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest (centre), rear seat with 3 seats", page 468

3.11.3 Removing and installing rear seat backrest - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Protector - VAS 871 001- (not illustrated)

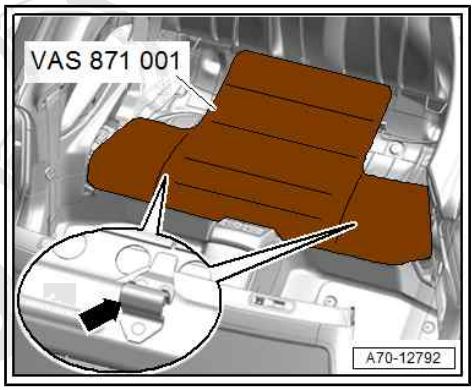
Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

Caution

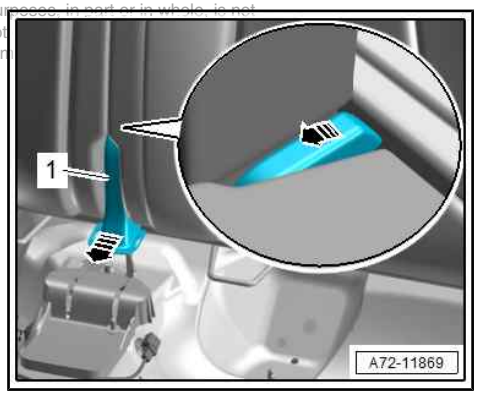
Risk of damage to rear seat backrests.

♦ *To avoid damaging the cover and padding, the front mountings -arrow- for seat bench must be covered using the protector - VAS 871 001- .*

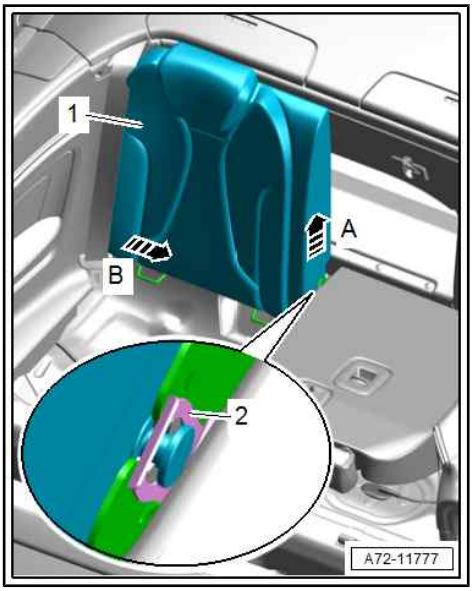


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
reproduction or distribution of this document does not
use of this document

– Detach cover -1- for centre bracket towards front -arrows- from centre bracket; to do so, release rear seat backrests and tilt them forwards slightly.



– Fold down rear seat backrests.
– Release securing clip -2- on centre bracket using a screwdriver.
– At the same time, lift rear seat backrest -1- out of centre bracket -arrow A-.
– Pull rear seat backrest out of outer mounting towards centre of vehicle -arrow B- and remove from vehicle.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, A5 Cabriolet", page 469

3.11.4 Removing and installing backrest pan/ backrest fitting - A5 Cabriolet

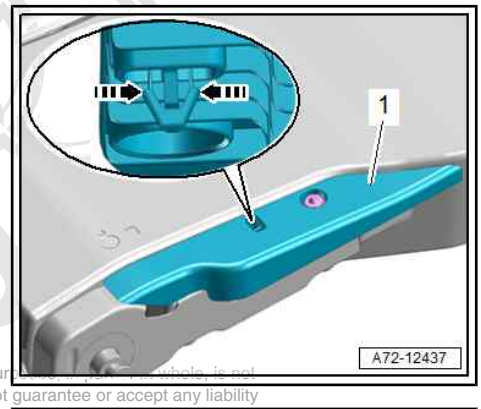
Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 482 .
– Detach padding from rear seat backrest in area of backrest fitting ⇒ page 549 .

Caution

Risk of damage to filler piece.

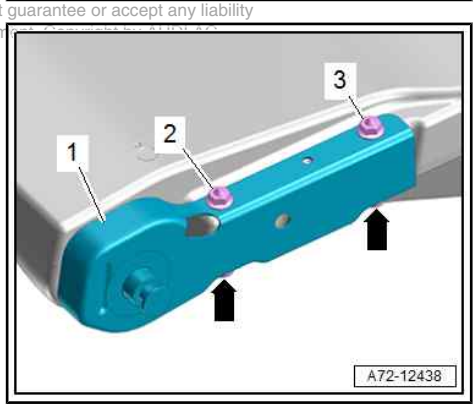
- *Proceed very carefully when unclipping and clipping in.*



– Remove filler piece -1-; to do so, insert a small flat-bladed screwdriver into opening and disengage retaining tabs -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew nuts -2, 3- and remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach backrest fitting -1- from backrest pan.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, A5 Cabriolet", page 469

3.11.5 Removing and installing backrest frame - A5 Cabriolet

Removing

– Remove rear seat backrests ⇒ page 482 .

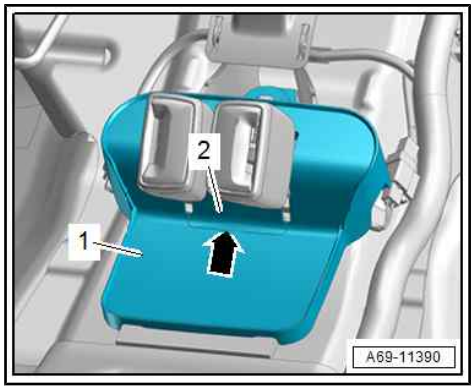
– Remove side padding ⇒ page 553 .

– Unfasten tab -2- on cover for belt buckle at fastener -arrow-.

– Slide tab through underneath belt buckles and upwards.

– Disengage cover -1- for belt buckle and detach it upwards over belt buckles.

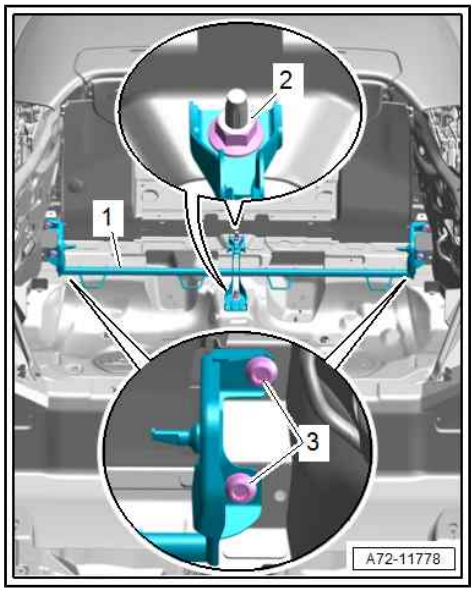
– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors for belt switch.



– Unscrew bolts -3- (left and right) for backrest frame.

– Remove nuts -2- for backrest frame.

– Disengage backrest frame -1- from stud and take it out of vehicle.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “3.3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, A5 Cabriolet”, page 469

Audi

For private use only. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.12 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism

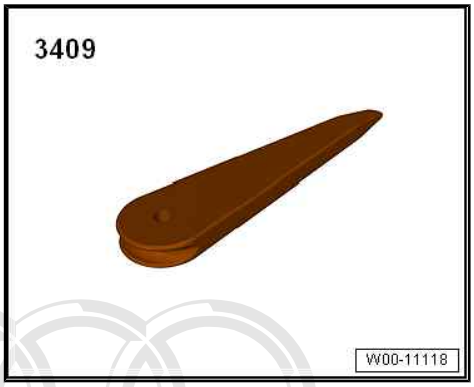
⇒ “3.12.1 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism - A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 484

⇒ “3.12.2 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism - A5 Cabriolet”, page 485

3.12.1 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism - A5 Coupé/Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

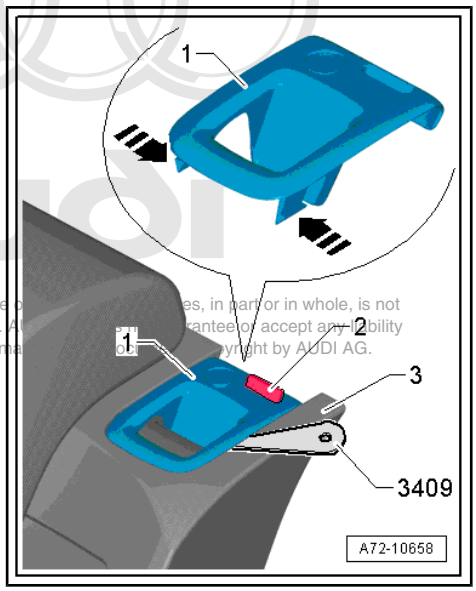
– Release rear seat backrest.

– Depending on vehicle equipment, make sure button -2- (indicator) is in »top« position.

– Using removal wedge - 3409- , press fasteners in direction of -arrows- on both sides of trim.

– At the same time lift trim -1- off rear seat backrest -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private ... es, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. A... rantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of inform... yright by AUDI AG.



– Lift trim -1- at front as far as possible off rear seat backrest.

– Use a flat screwdriver to prise catch -arrow- at rear of trim out of locking mechanism.

– Lift trim off rear seat backrest.

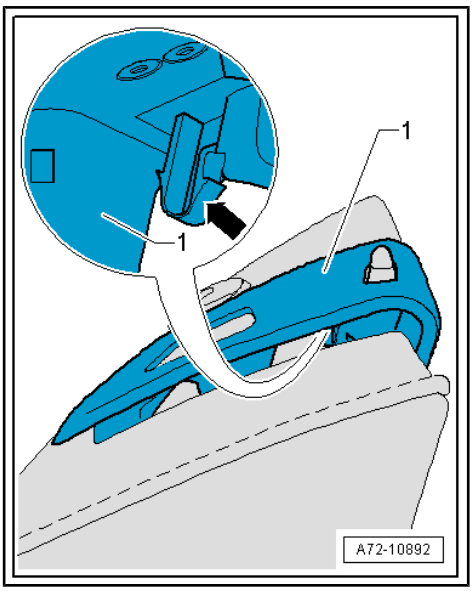
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure button moves freely after installing trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

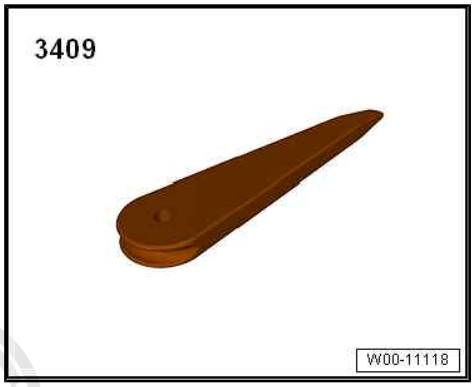
⇒ “3.4.1 Exploded view - locking mechanism, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 470



3.12.2 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

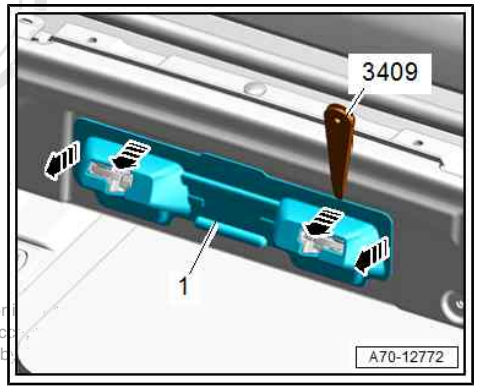
- Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing trim for locking mechanism

– Release rear seat backrests.

– Unclip trim -1- for locking mechanism from back panel -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .

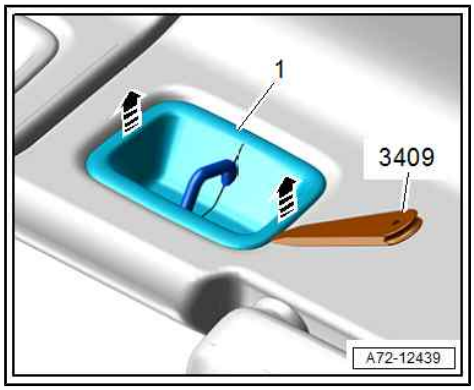


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b

Removing trim for retaining clip

– Release rear seat backrest.

– Unclip trim -1- for retaining clip from backrest -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.4.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism, A5 Cabriolet”, page 471

3.13 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest

⇒ “3.13.1 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest - A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 486

⇒ “3.13.2 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest - A5 Cabriolet”, page 487

⇒ “3.13.3 Removing and installing retaining clip for rear seat backrest - A5 Cabriolet”, page 488

3.13.1 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest - A5 Coupé/ Sportback

Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 480 .

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 475 .

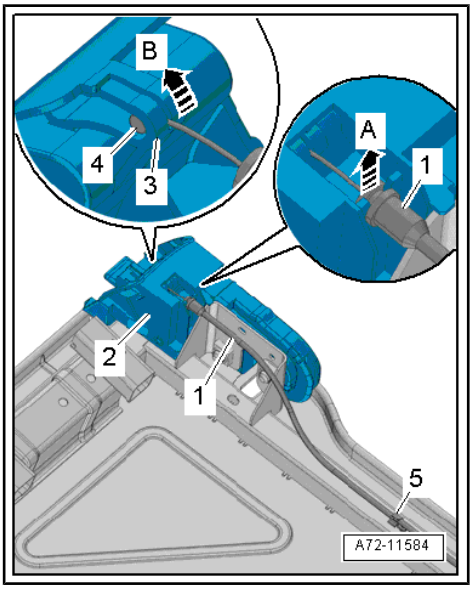
– Remove padding from rear seat backrest in area of locking mechanism ⇒ page 548 .

Equipment version with backrest remote release mechanism:

– Unclip Bowden cable -1- at bracket -5- on rear seat backrest.

– Disengage Bowden cable at locking mechanism -2- -arrow A-.

– Disengage nipple -4- of Bowden cable from release handle -3- -arrow B- and detach Bowden cable.



Continued for all vehicles:

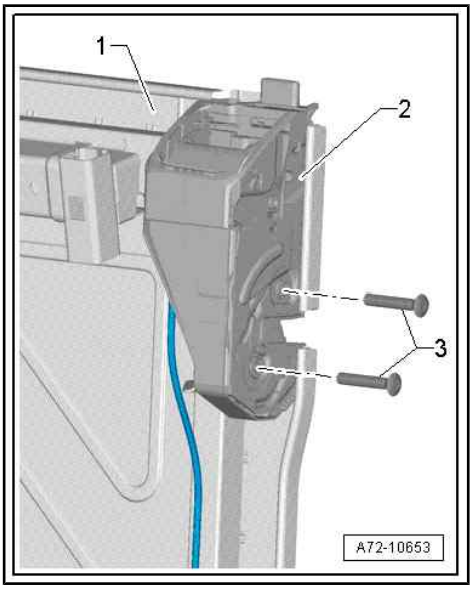
– Remove bolts -3-.

– Detach locking mechanism -2- from outer backrest frame -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.4.1 Exploded view - locking mechanism, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 470



3.13.2 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest - A5 Cabriolet

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

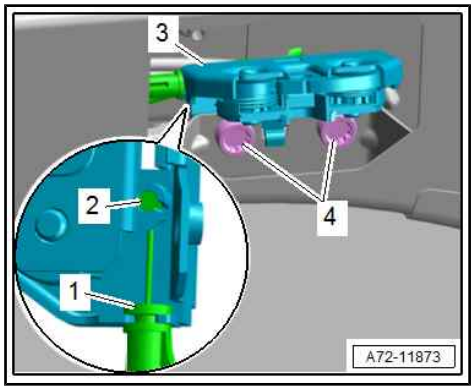
– Open convertible roof.

– Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ page 485 .

– Remove bolts -4-.

– Detach locking mechanism -3- for rear seat backrest.

– Unclip Bowden cable -1- from locking mechanism and disengage end of cable -2- from lever.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.4.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism, A5 Cabriolet”, page 471

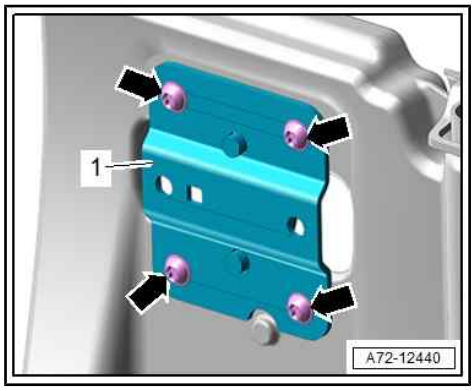
3.13.3 Removing and installing retaining clip for rear seat backrest - A5 Cabriolet

Removing

– Detach padding from rear seat backrest ⇒ page 549 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach retaining clip -1- from backrest.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.4.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism, A5 Cabriolet”, page 471

3.14 Removing and installing lock cylinder

Removing

– Remove trim for locking mechanism with lock cylinder ⇒ page 484 .

– Make sure indicator is in »top« position.

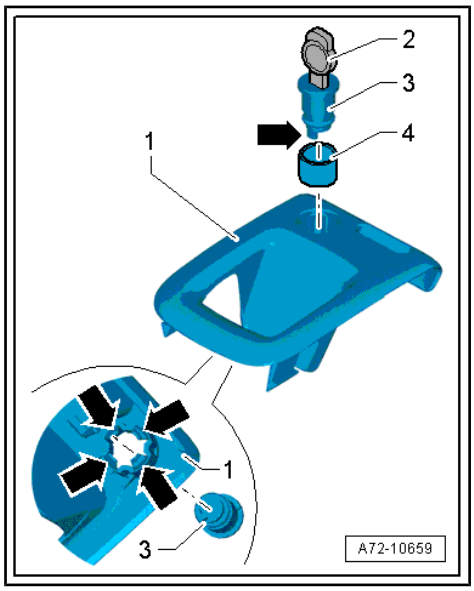
Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to lock cylinder.

- ***Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted; this will ensure that tumblers and springs do not fall out.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release catches (4x) -bottom arrows- and press lock cylinder -3- with key -2- out of trim -1-.

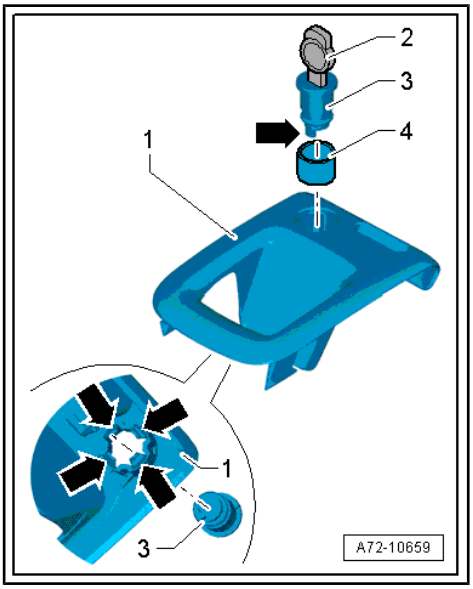


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Observe correct installation position.

– Properly insert key -2- in new lock cylinder.
– Pull protective cap -4- off new lock cylinder -3-.
– Insert lock cylinder -3- in trim -1-, observing correct installation position of lug -top arrow-.
• Trim for rear seat backrest (left-side): Lug at lock cylinder faces towards rear (as seen in direction of travel).
• Trim for rear seat backrest (right-side): Lug at lock cylinder faces towards front (as seen in direction of travel).
• In addition, lock cylinder must engage properly with retaining tabs -bottom arrows-.



Note

The illustration shows the trim with lock cylinder (left-side) as an example.

– Install trim with lock cylinder in rear seat backrest ⇒ page 484 .
– Turn key 90° (anti-clockwise).
– Lock backrest in position.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.4.1 Exploded view - locking mechanism, A5 Coupé/Sportback", page 470

3.15 Removing and installing outer bearing sleeve

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

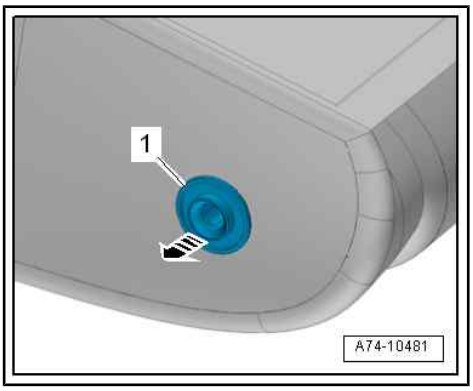
Removing

– Remove backrest ⇒ page 480 .
– Unclip bearing sleeve -1- from backrest; take care not to damage cover.

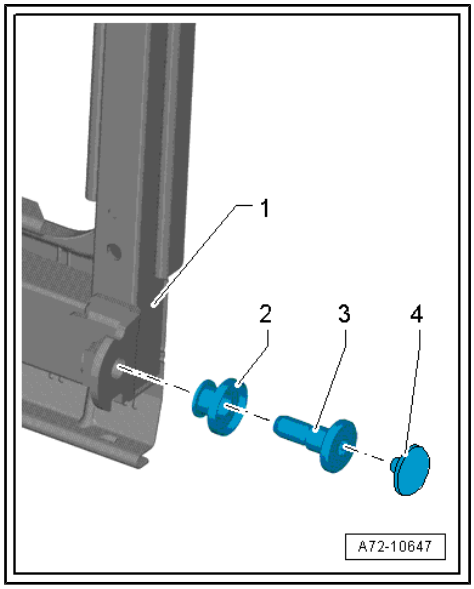
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 466



3.16 Removing and installing inner pivot pin



Removing

– Remove backrest from centre bracket ⇒ page 493 .

– Detach abrasion guard -4- and remove pivot pin -3- from outer backrest frame -1-.

– Detach bearing sleeve -2- from pivot pin.

Note

For greater clarity the padding and cover are not shown in the illustration.

Installing

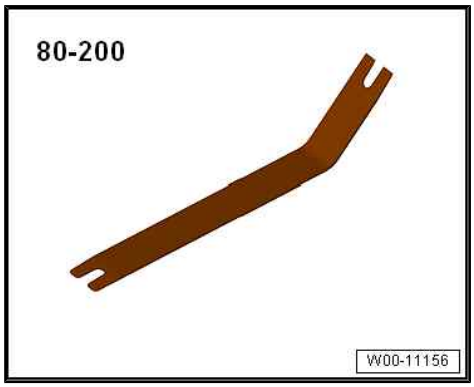
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest", page 466

3.17 Removing and installing trim for rear seat backrest (centre)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-

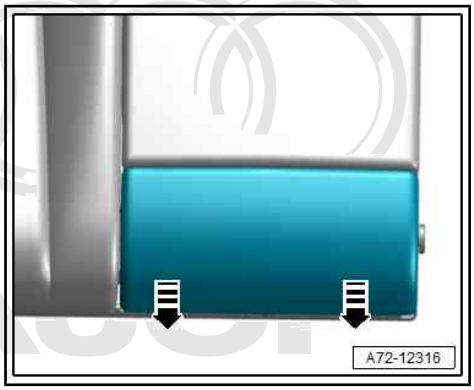


Removing

– Remove centre armrest ⇒ page 493 .

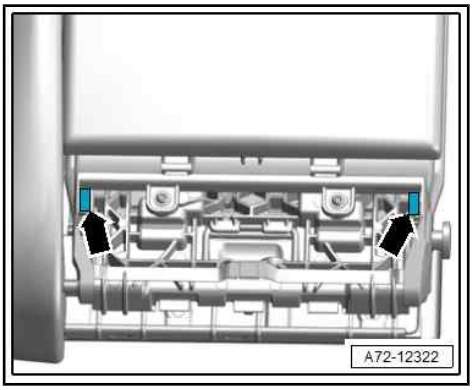
– Remove padding cover for rear seat backrest (centre) ⇒ page 491 .

– Detach intermediate padding -arrows- downwards.

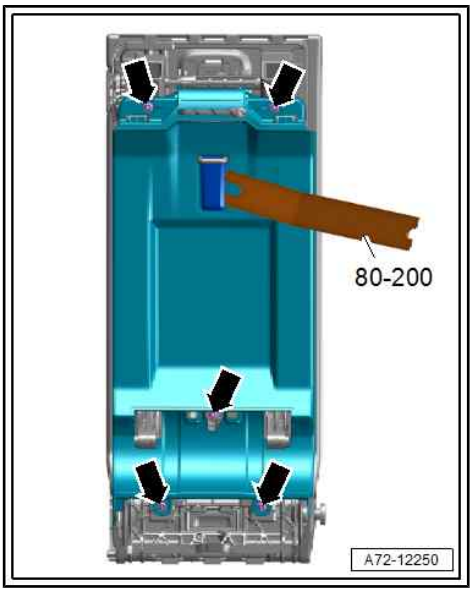


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage piping for fabric trim from trim -arrows-.



– Unclip trim for lock bracket using removal wedge - 80-200- .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Carefully disengage trim for rear seat backrest (centre) from operating lever -arrow- while lifting it out.

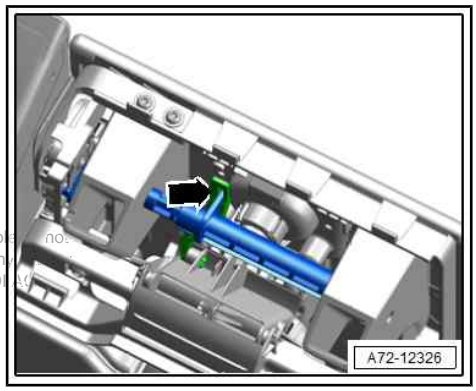
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “3.3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest (centre), rear seat with 3 seats”, page 468

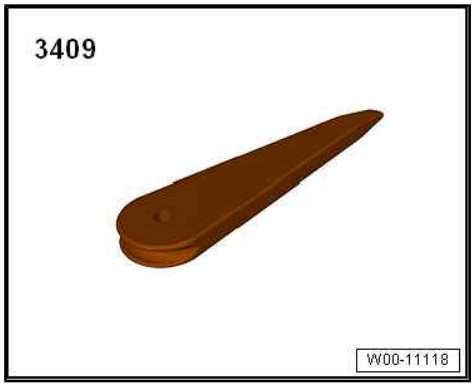
Copyright by AUDI AG. ... reproduction, duplication or publication in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



3.18 Removing and installing padding cover for rear seat backrest (centre)

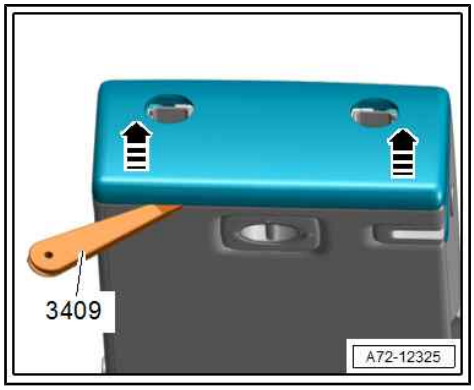
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

– Carefully unclip padding cover upwards from rear seat backrest (centre) -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Audi AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “3.3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest (centre), rear seat with 3 seats”, page 468

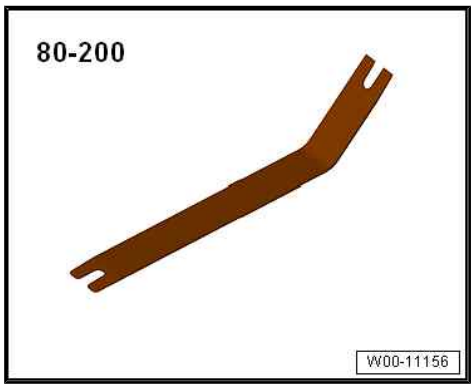
3.19 Removing and installing trim for rear seat backrest locking mechanism

Note

The trim cannot be removed without damaging it irreparably.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

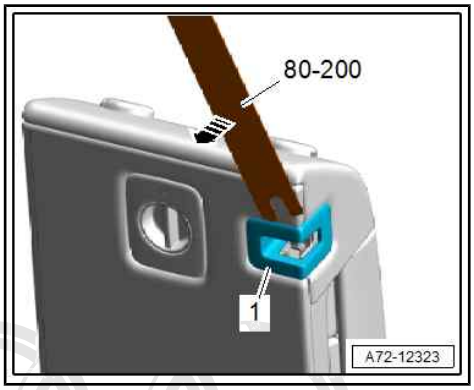
♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Press trim -1- off using removal lever - 80-200- -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest (centre), rear seat with 3 seats”, page 468

3.20 Removing and installing centre bracket

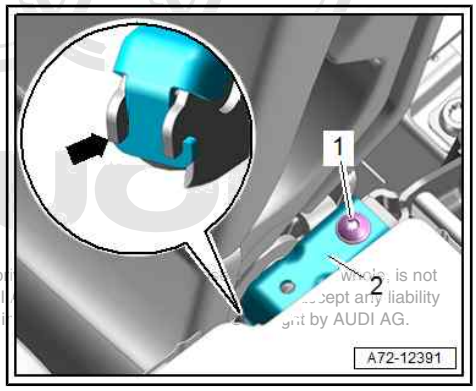
Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

– Fold down rear seat backrests.

– Remove bolt -1-.

– Swivel retaining clip -2- forwards and at the same time disengage it downwards from centre bracket -arrow-.



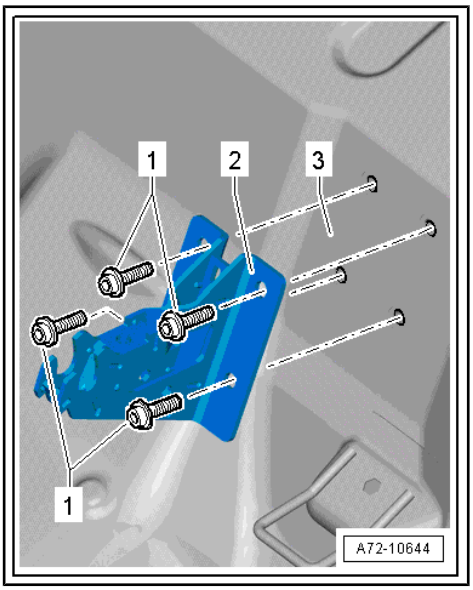
Protected by copyright. Copying for pr... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI... cept any liability with respect to the correctness of i... by AUDI AG.

Note

It is sufficient to disengage the rear seat backrest from the mountings.

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Detach centre bracket -2- from underbody -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest”, page 466

3.21 Removing and installing centre armrest

⇒ “3.21.1 Removing and installing centre armrest”, page 493

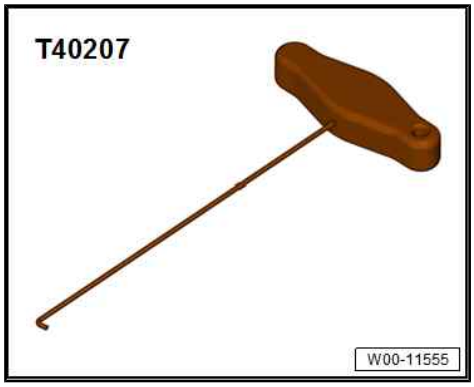
⇒ “3.21.2 Removing and installing cup holder in centre armrest”, page 494

3.21.1 Removing and installing centre armrest

Removing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

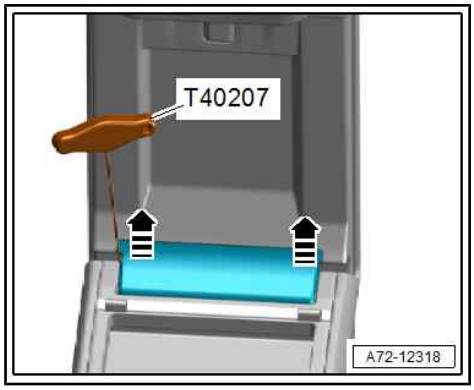
- Hook - T40207-



Removing

– Open centre armrest.

– On left and right, detach hinge trim -arrows- using hook - T40207- .



– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach washer and thrust washers.

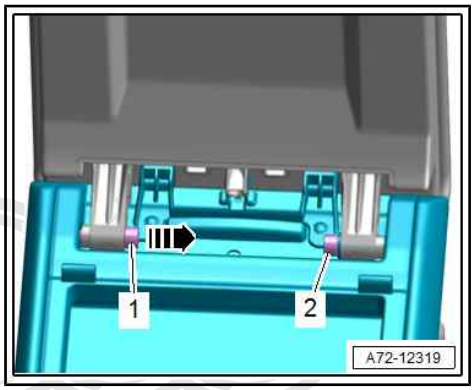
– Detach hinged pin -1- in direction of -arrow-; use removal lever - 80-200- if necessary.

– Remove centre armrest.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 472

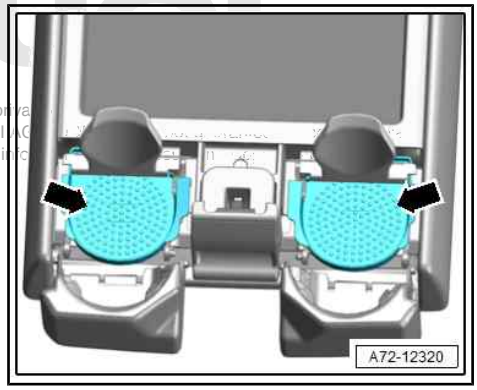


3.21.2 Removing and installing cup holder in centre armrest

Removing

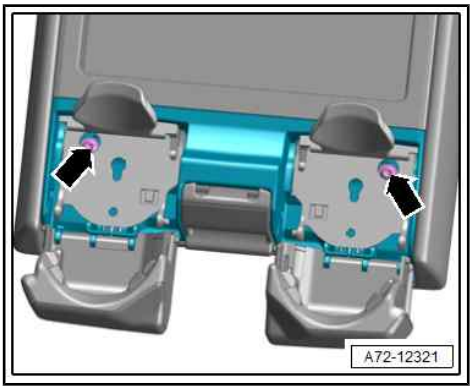
– Press lining -arrows- slightly towards rear on both sides and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for priva
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of in



– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Pull cup holder slightly towards front and pivot out over release mechanism.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - centre armrest”, page 472

3.22 Removing and installing backrest remote release mechanism

⇒ “3.22.1 Removing and installing backrest remote release mechanism - A5 Coupé”, page 495

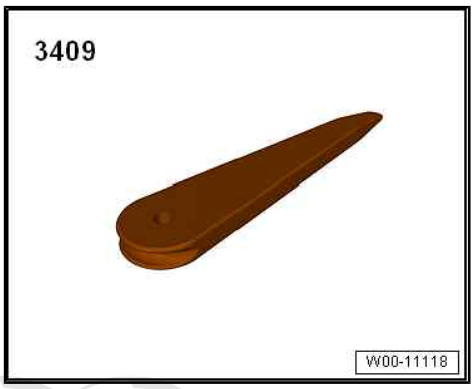
⇒ “3.22.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for backrest remote release mechanism - A5 Coupé”, page 497

⇒ “3.22.3 Removing and installing backrest remote release mechanism with Bowden cable - A5 Cabriolet”, page 498

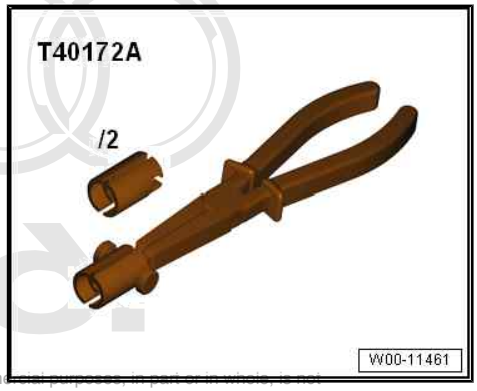
3.22.1 Removing and installing backrest remote release mechanism - A5 Coupé

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



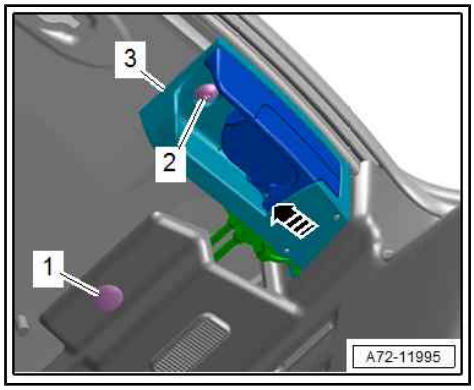
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove fastener -1- using pliers - T40172 A- .

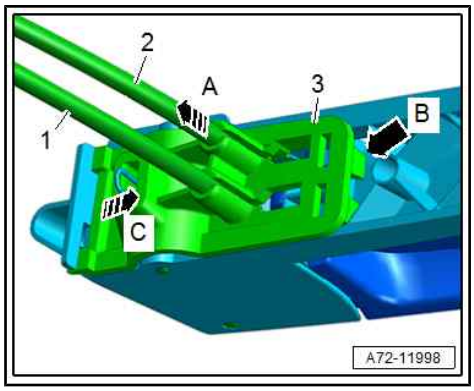
– Remove bolt -2-.

– Pull backrest remote release mechanism -3- in direction of -arrow- out of mounting on vehicle body and unclip it from luggage compartment side trim.

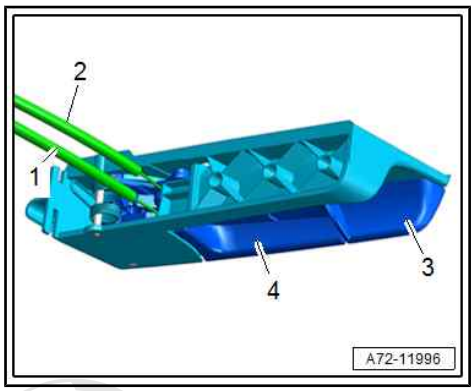


– Pull Bowden cable -1, 2- out of mounting -3- in direction of -arrow A- and disengage.

– Release mounting at fasteners -arrow B- and pull it off backrest remote release mechanism -arrow C-.

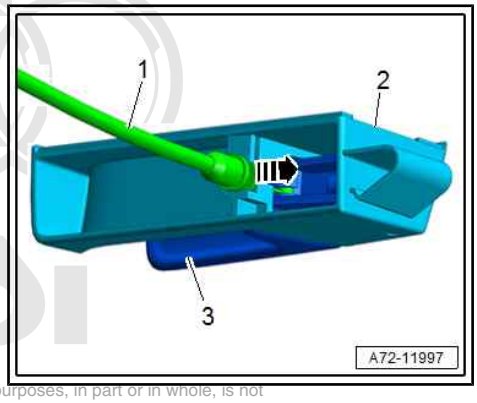


– Disengage Bowden cable nipple -1, 2- from mounting on release lever -3, 4-.



– Backrest remote release mechanism (left-side): Disengage Bowden cable support bracket -1- from mounting on backrest remote release mechanism -2- -arrow-.

– Pivot Bowden cable in direction of -arrow- and disengage Bowden cable nipple from mounting on release lever -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ “3.6 Exploded view - backrest remote release mechanism”, page 473

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

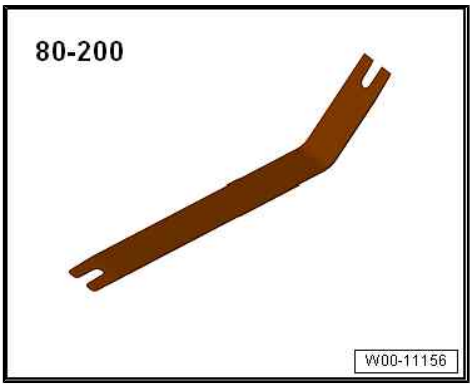
3.22.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for backrest remote release mechanism - A5 Coupé

Note

The procedure for the Bowden cable (right-side) is described as an example.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-

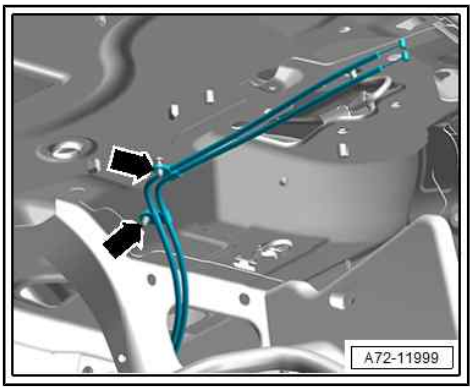


Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 293 .

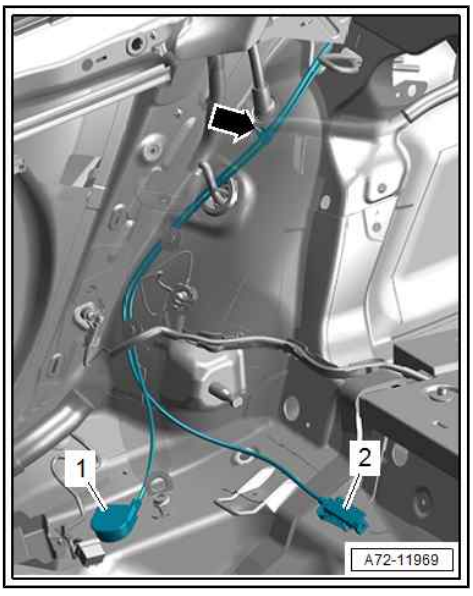
– Remove backrest remote release mechanism ⇒ page 495 .

– Move Bowden cables clear -arrows-.



– Unclip connector point -1, 2- for Bowden cable for rear seat backrest from body.

– Move Bowden cables clear -arrows- and pull them out towards front.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

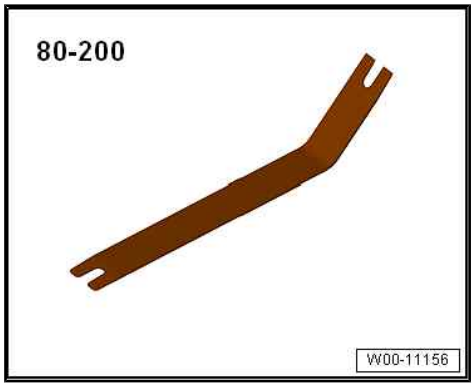
Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.6 Exploded view - backrest remote release mechanism", page 473

3.22.3 Removing and installing backrest remote release mechanism with Bowden cable - A5 Cabriolet

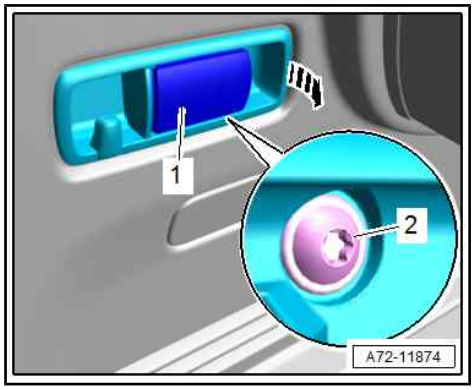
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-

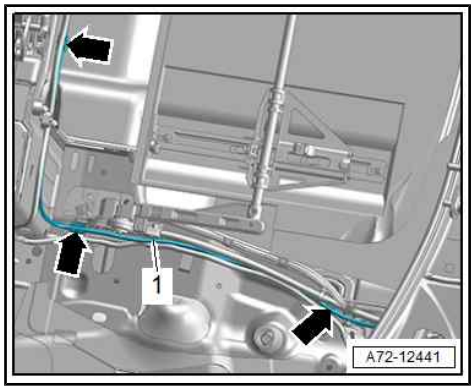


Removing

- Pull lever -1- and release rear seat backrest.
- While still pulling lever, remove bolt -2-.
- Prise backrest remote release mechanism out of luggage compartment side trim -arrow- and disengage Bowden cable.
- Unclip Bowden cable retainer from luggage compartment side trim with a screwdriver.
- Remove side trim for convertible roof compartment ⇒ page 363 .
- Remove back panel trim (rear section) ⇒ page 301 .
- Remove locking mechanism for rear seat backrest ⇒ page 487 .



- Unclip Bowden cable -1- from retainers -arrows-/unclip retainers using removal lever - 80-200- and cut through cable ties.
- Pull out and detach Bowden cable.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "3.4.2 Exploded view - locking mechanism, A5 Cabriolet", page 471

Audi A5 2016 ➢ , Audi A5 Cabriolet 2017 ➢ , Audi A5 Sportback 2017 ➢
General body repairs, interior - Edition 09.2017
Printing or duplication of this document is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Front seat pneumatic system

⇒ “4.1 Connection diagram - pneumatic system”, page 499

⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - pneumatic system”, page 500

⇒ “4.3 Checking pneumatic system”, page 501

⇒ “4.4 Severing and connecting pneumatic lines”, page 507

⇒ “4.5 Servicing pneumatic lines”, page 508

⇒ “4.6 Removing and installing air cushion for lumbar support”, page 508

⇒ “4.7 Removing and installing air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster”, page 510

⇒ “4.8 Removing and installing valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment V378 / V379 ”, page 511

⇒ “4.9 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment pump V152 / V153 ”, page 513

4.1 Connection diagram - pneumatic system

1 - Lumbar support adjustment pump

- ♦ Driver seat lumbar support adjustment pump - V152-
- ♦ Front passenger side lumbar support adjustment pump - V153-

2 - Air cushion (bottom)

- ❑ For lumbar support

3 - Air cushion (centre)

- ❑ For lumbar support

4 - Air cushion (top)

- ❑ For lumbar support

5 - Valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment

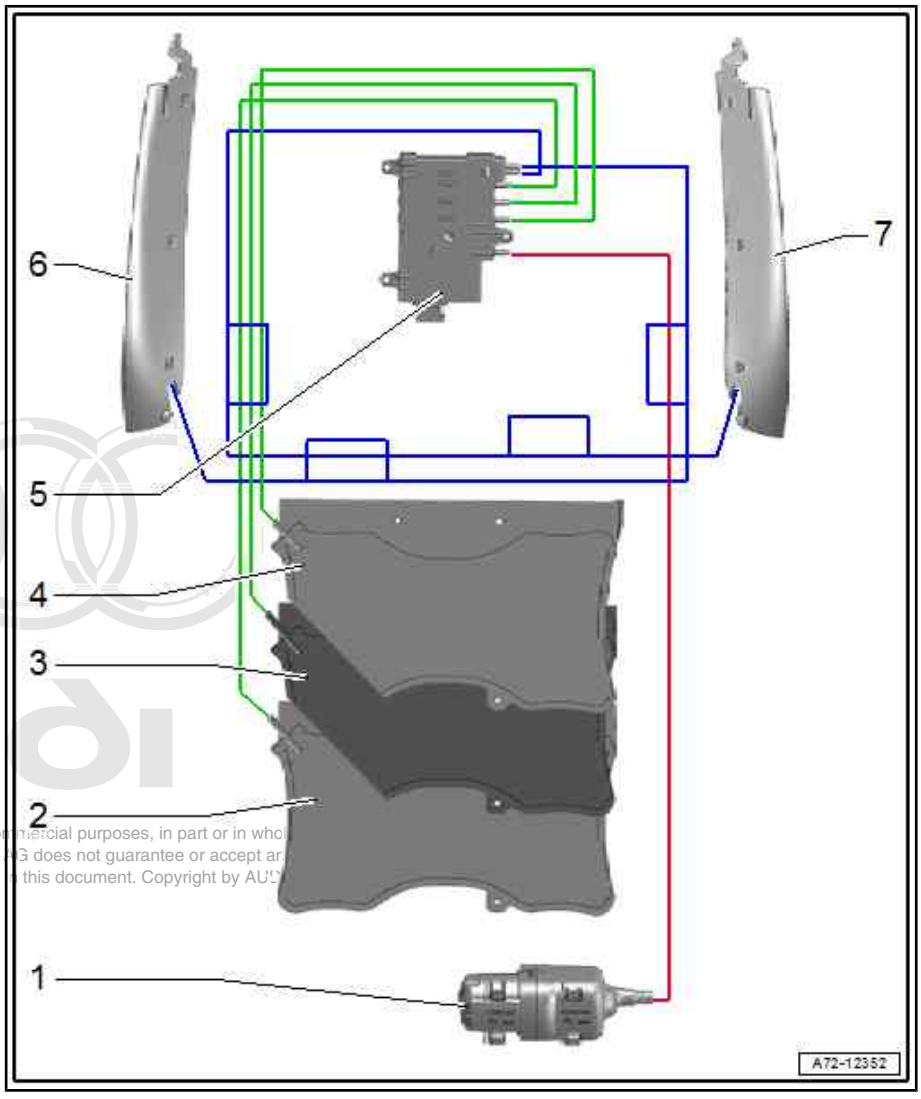
- ♦ Valve block for driver seat and backrest bolster adjustment - V378-
- ♦ Valve block for front passenger seat and backrest bolster adjustment - V379-

6 - Air cushion (right-side)

- ❑ For backrest bolster adjuster
- ❑ Super sports seat only

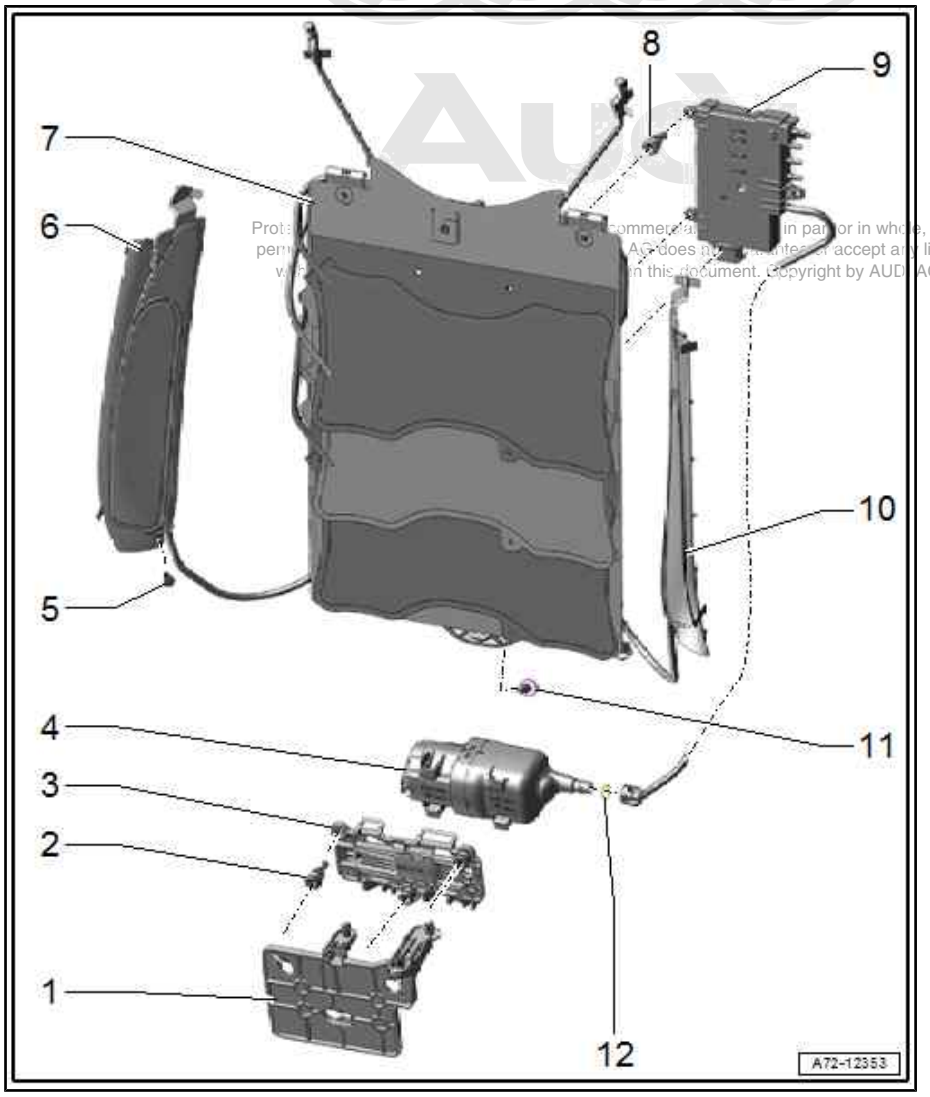
7 - Air cushion (left-side)

- ❑ For backrest bolster adjuster
- ❑ Super sports seat only



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.2 Exploded view - pneumatic system



1 - Bracket
- ❑ Clip into seat pan

2 - Rubber mounting
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Engage in bracket

3 - Bracket
- ❑ For pneumatic system pump

4 - Lumbar support adjustment pump
- ❑ Clip into bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 513

5 - Clip
- ❑ Renew after removing

6 - Air cushion (right-side)
- ❑ For backrest bolster adjuster
- ❑ Super sports seat only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 510

7 - Lumbar support with air cushion
- ❑ For lumbar support
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 508

8 - Rubber mounting
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Engage in lumbar support and valve block

9 - Valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 511

10 - Air cushion (left-side)
- ❑ For backrest bolster adjuster
- ❑ Super sports seat only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 510

11 - Bolt
- ❑ 6.5 Nm

12 - O-ring
- ❑ Renew after removing

Protected by copyright. Commercial use or in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.3 Checking pneumatic system

⇒ "4.3.1 Preparation for leak test for lumbar support air cushions", page 501

⇒ "4.3.2 Preparation for leak test for lumbar support adjustment pump V152 / V153 and pressure line", page 502

⇒ "4.3.3 Preparation for leak test for backrest bolster adjuster", page 505

4.3.1 Preparation for leak test for lumbar support air cushions

Note

- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to replace the defective lumbar support air cushion with the pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 499*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester (not illustrated)
- Pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A- (not illustrated)

Procedure

- Backrest cover panel removed ⇒ page 422

– Before severing pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Sever pneumatic lines to relevant air cushion of lumbar support at the following point ⇒ page 507 :

1 - Pneumatic line to air cushion (top)

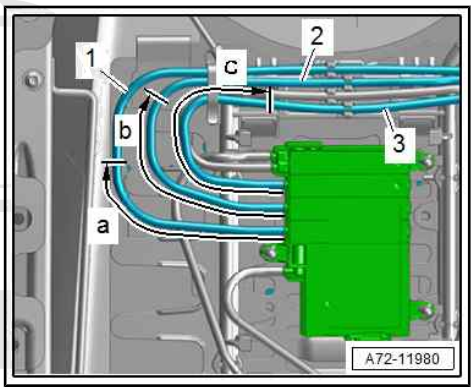
- -a- = 100 mm

2 - Pneumatic line to air cushion (centre)

- -b- = 100 mm

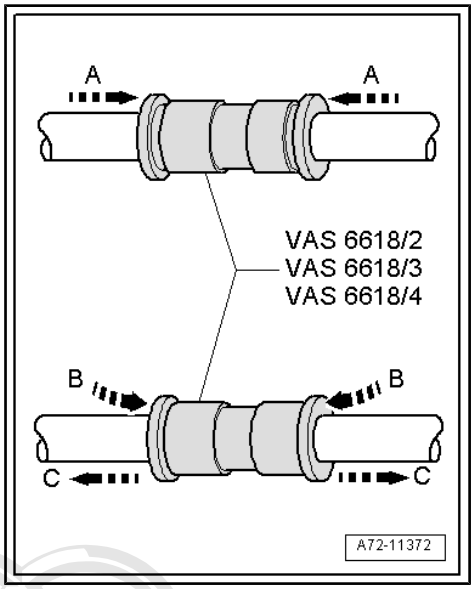
3 - Pneumatic line to air cushion (bottom)

- -c- = 100 mm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

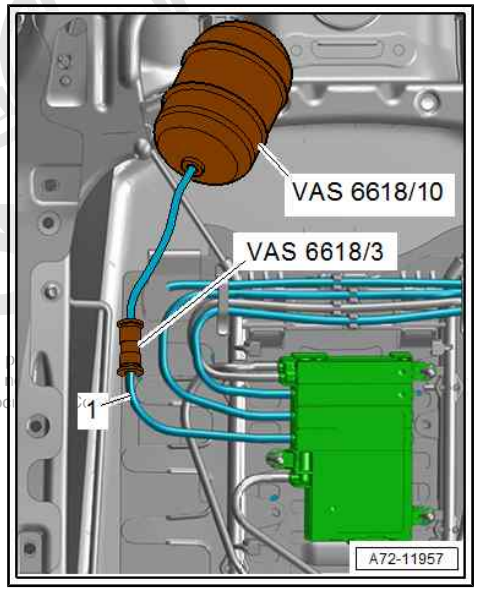
– To connect pneumatic lines, attach connecting sleeves from -VAS 6618- to pneumatic lines.



Note

- *To connect pneumatic lines, insert lines in connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/2- from both sides -arrows A-.*
- *To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.*

– Connect pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- to pneumatic line -1- going to lumbar support air cushion.



Note

The illustration shows the pneumatic line to the lumbar support air cushion (top) as an example.

– Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test ⇒ page 507 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do

4.3.2 Preparation for leak test for lumbar support adjustment pump -V152- / -V153- and pressure line

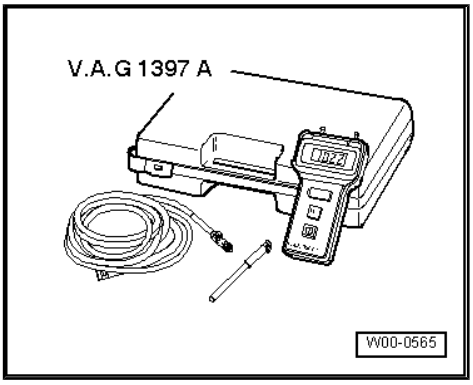
Note

- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 499*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester (not illustrated)

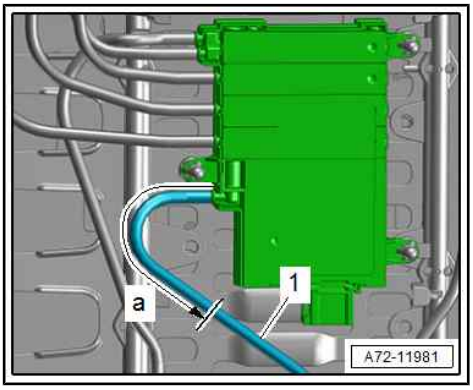
♦ Turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A-



♦ Pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A- (not illustrated)

Procedure

In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to the pneumatic line from the lumbar support adjustment pump -V152- / -V153- .

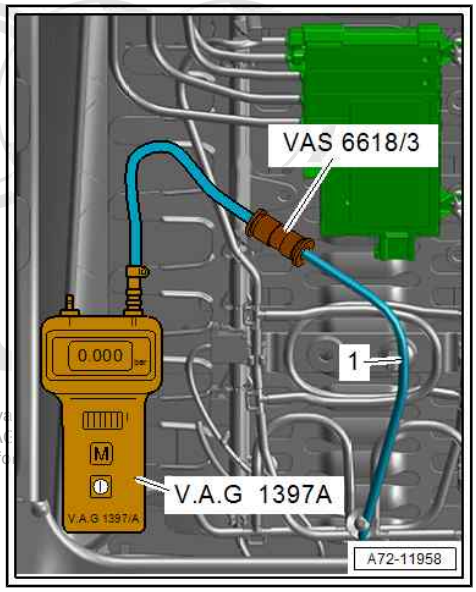


• Backrest cover panel removed ⇒ page 422

– Sever pneumatic line -1- to lumbar support adjustment pump -V152- / -V153- at the following point ⇒ page 507 :

♦ -a- = 80 mm

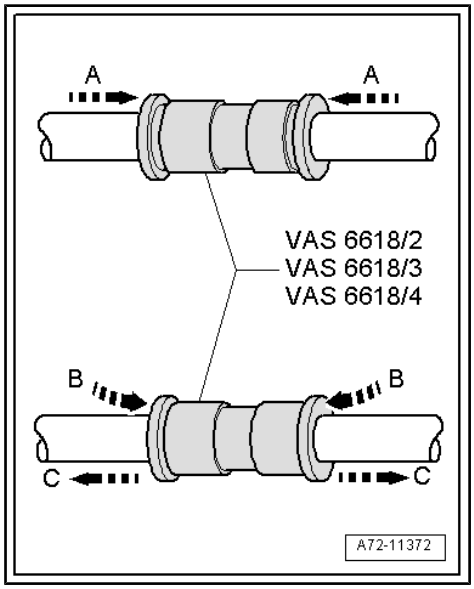
– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -1- from pump using hose sections and adapters from -VAS 6618- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for priva
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of info

Note

- *To connect pneumatic lines, insert lines in connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/3- from both sides -arrows A-.*
- *To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.*



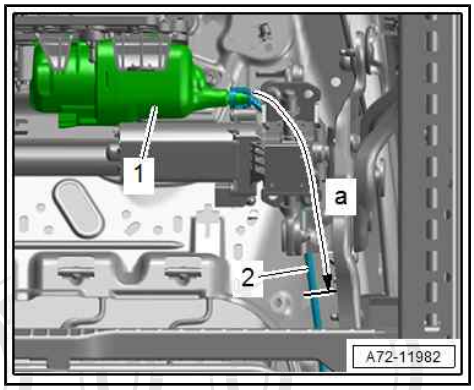
In one of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- directly to the pump.

- Front seat in vehicle unbolted and tilted towards rear with electrical connectors plugged in ⇒ page 399

– Disconnect pneumatic line at pump and move it clear ⇒ page 513 .

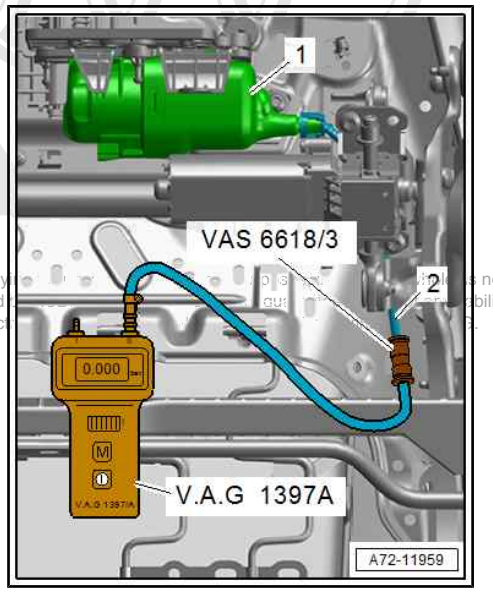
– Sever pneumatic line -2- from pump -1- at the following point ⇒ page 507 :

♦ -a- = 160 mm



– Connect turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -2- of pump -1- using hose sections and adapters from -VAS 6618- .

– Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test ⇒ page 507 .



Protected by copyright. Copy... permitted unless authorised... with respect to the correct...

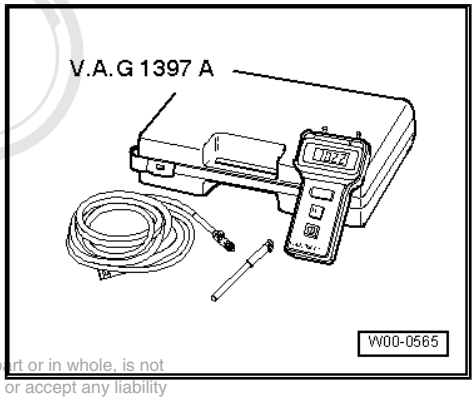
4.3.3 Preparation for leak test for backrest bolster adjuster

Note

- *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the front seat, are described in the following.*
- *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ page 499*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Vehicle diagnostic tester (not illustrated)
- Turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Pneumatic repair set - VAS 6618 A- (not illustrated)

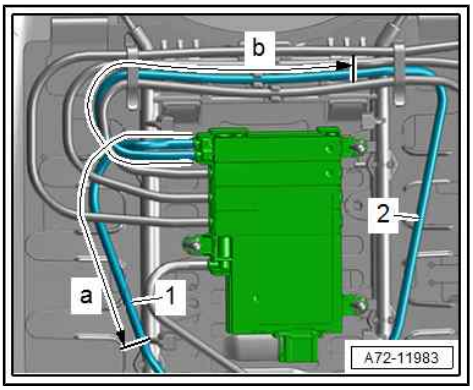
Procedure

- Backrest cover panel removed ⇒ page 425

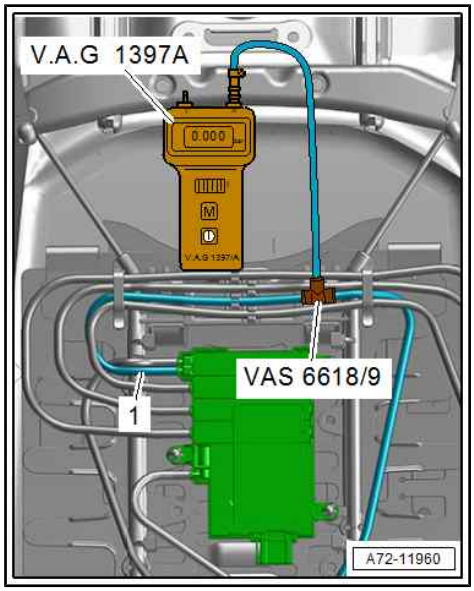
– Before severing pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen.

– Sever pneumatic line -2- to air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (left-side) ⇒ page 507 at the following point:

- -b- = 200 mm



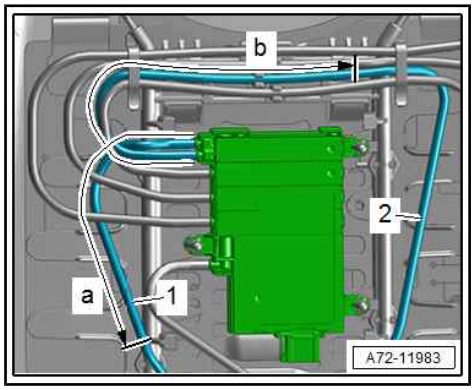
– Join up turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- in pneumatic line -1- leading to air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (left-side) using hose sections and adapters from -VAS 6618- .



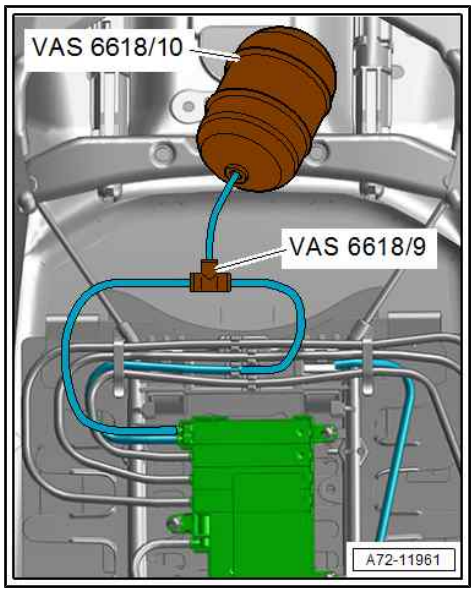
In another of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the pneumatic line -2- for the backrest bolster adjuster (left-side) and the pneumatic line for the backrest bolster adjuster (right-side) and to connect both pneumatic lines to the pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .

– Sever pneumatic line -1- to air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (right-side) at the following point ⇒ page 507 :

♦ -a- = 200 mm



– Connect pneumatic line for backrest bolster adjuster (both sides) using hose sections and adapters from -VAS 6618- and connect it to pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- .

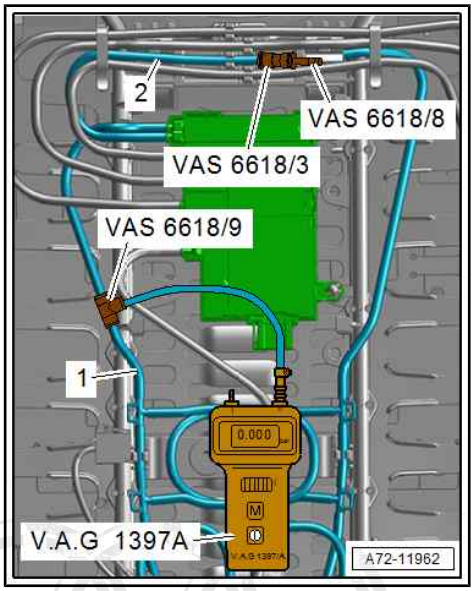


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

In another of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the pneumatic line -2- for the backrest bolster adjuster (left-side) using the hose sections and adapters from -VAS 6618- .

– Join up turbocharger tester - V.A.G 1397A- in pneumatic line -1- leading to air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (right-side) using hose sections and adapters from -VAS 6618- .

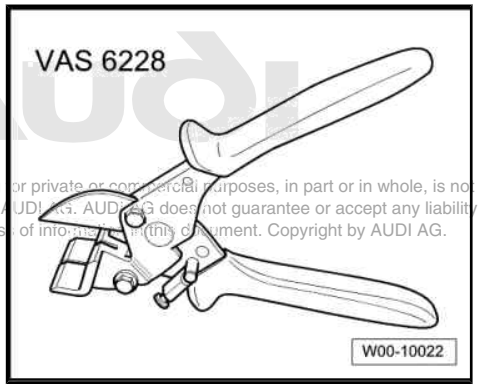
– Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test ⇒ page 507 .



4.4 Severing and connecting pneumatic lines

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Cutting pliers - VAS 6228-

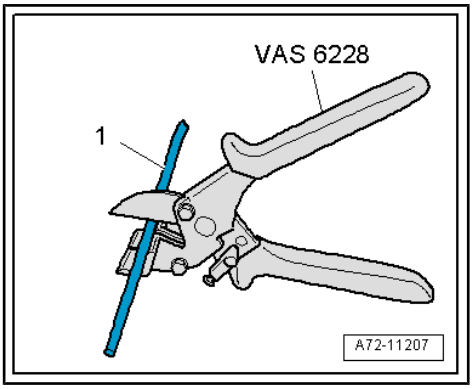


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ 2x pliers -VAS 6618/1- (not illustrated)

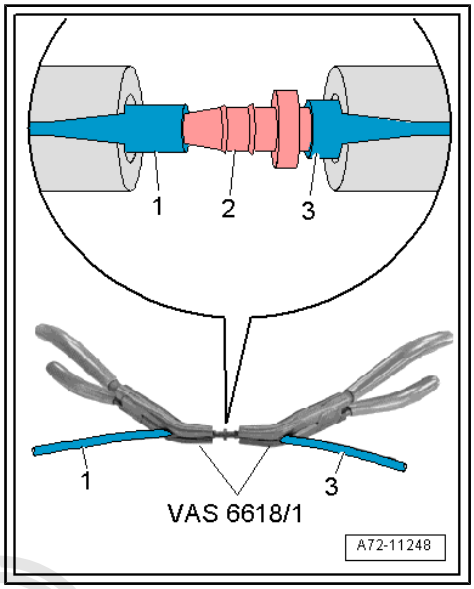
Severing pneumatic line

– Apply cutting pliers - VAS 6228- at right angle and cut through pneumatic line -1-.



Connecting pneumatic line

– Slide pneumatic lines -1- and -3- onto line connector -2- from both sides using pliers -VAS 6618/1- ; for line connector, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .



4.5 Servicing pneumatic lines

- A repair set containing pneumatic lines and line connectors is available for repairing pneumatic lines ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Pneumatic lines must not be detached directly at the components. Always separate and connect pneumatic lines as described in this manual.
- Genuine replacement parts are supplied with short line sections which are connected to the pneumatic lines with line connectors.
- Protect pneumatic lines and line connectors against contamination.
- It is NOT permissible to heat pneumatic lines when connecting them to the line connectors.
- It is NOT permissible to use lubricant when connecting the pneumatic lines to the line connectors.
- After the repair, the serviced pneumatic line should be just as long as the line was previously (tolerance: ± 10 mm).
- Contamination at the joints can lead to leaks. Therefore it is important to make sure that the pneumatic system and test instruments are clean when performing tests.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.6 Removing and installing air cushion for lumbar support

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

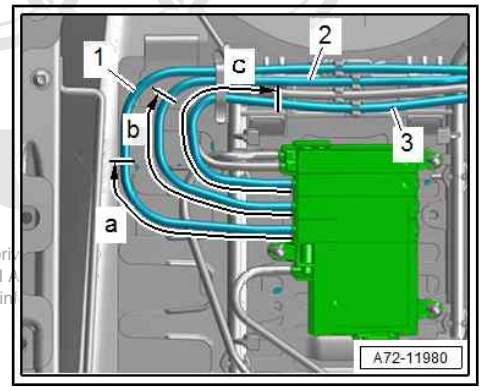
– Mark pneumatic lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen at cutting point for re-installation.

– Sever pneumatic lines -1, 2, 3- to air cushion of lumbar support at the following point ⇒ page 507 :

♦ -a- = 100 mm

♦ -b- = 100 mm

♦ -c- = 100 mm



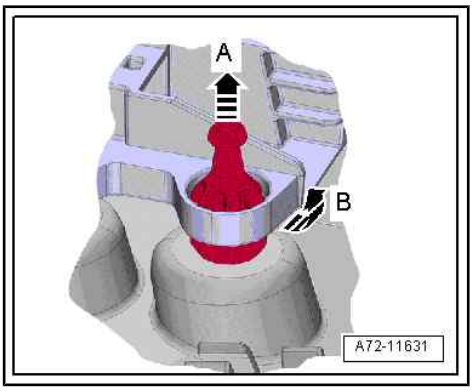
Protected by copyright. Copying for pri
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of in

– Remove valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment from rubber mounting.

– To do so, stretch rubber mounting -arrow A- and at the same time pull off valve block -arrow B-.

– Repeat procedure at other rubber mountings.

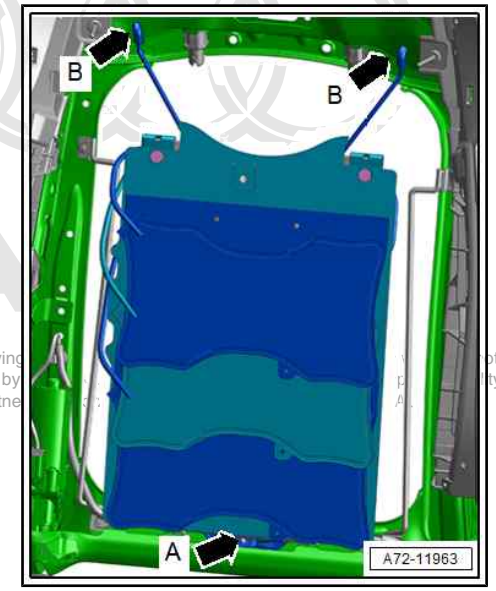
– Move remaining pneumatic lines clear and move valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment to one side with pneumatic lines attached.



– Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ page 529 .

– Remove bolt -arrow A-.

– Swivel lumbar support out of outer backrest frame at bottom (towards front), disengage from top of outer backrest frame -arrows B- and detach.



Installing

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

– Cut off pneumatic lines of new air cushion using old air cushion as a guide.

– Connect pneumatic lines ⇒ page 507 .

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "4.2 Exploded view - pneumatic system", page 500

4.7 Removing and installing air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

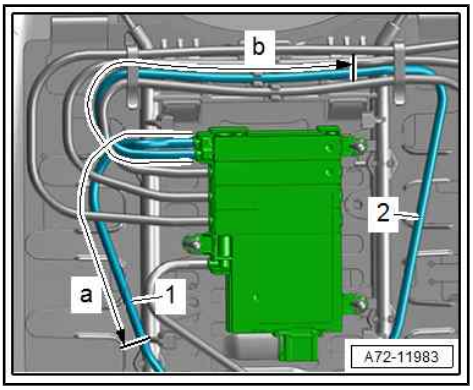
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

– Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ page 532 .

– Mark pneumatic lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen at cutting point for re-installation.

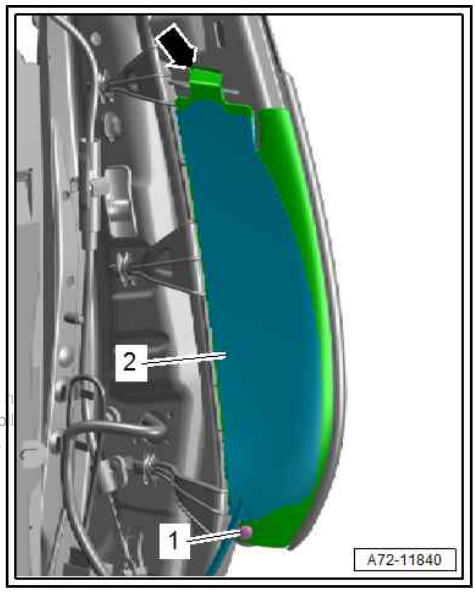
– Sever pneumatic lines -1 and 2- at the following locations ⇒ page 507 :

- -a- = 200 mm
- -b- = 200 mm



– Detach clip -1-.

– Swivel air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster -2- upwards and pull it out of connector -arrow-.



Installing

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .***

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

– Cut off pneumatic lines of new air cushion using old air cushion as a guide.

– Connect pneumatic lines ⇒ page 507 .

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - pneumatic system”, page 500

4.8 Removing and installing valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment - V378- / -V379-

Removing

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 422 .

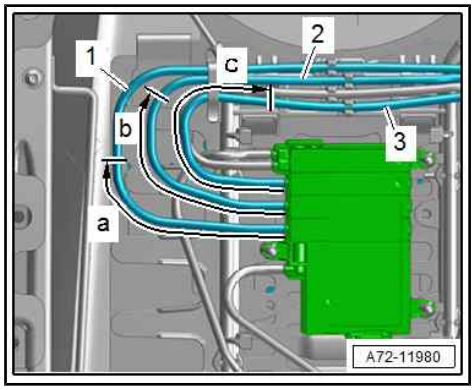
– Mark pneumatic lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen at cutting point for re-installation.

– Sever pneumatic lines -1, 2, 3- to air cushion of lumbar support at the following point ⇒ page 507 :

♦ -a- = 100 mm

♦ -b- = 100 mm

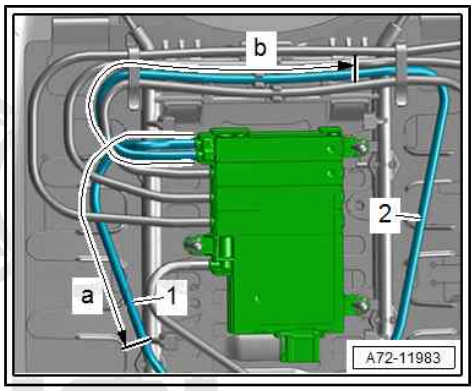
♦ -c- = 100 mm



– If fitted, sever pneumatic lines -1, 2- to air cushion of backrest bolster adjuster at the following point ⇒ page 507 :

♦ -a- = 200 mm

♦ -b- = 200 mm

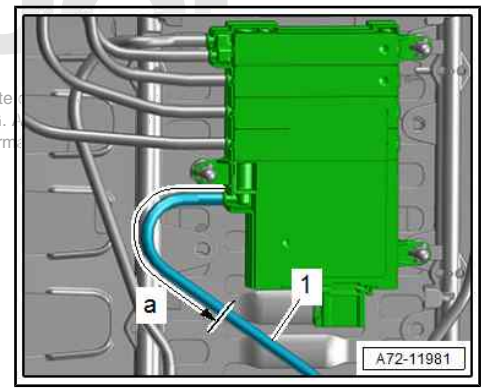


– Sever pneumatic line -1- to pump at the following point ⇒ page 507 :

♦ -a- = 80 mm

– Press release tab and unplug electrical connector.

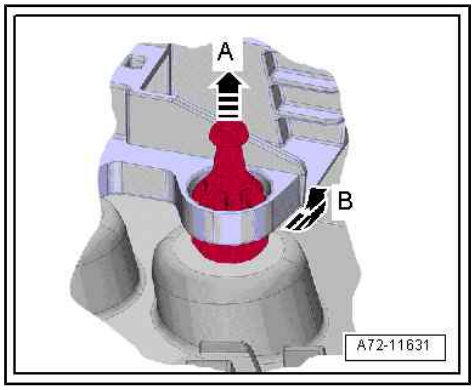
Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
the correctness of inform



– Remove valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment from rubber mounting.

– To do so, stretch rubber mounting -arrow A- and at the same time pull off valve block -arrow B-.

– Repeat procedure at other rubber mountings.



Installing

– Cut off pneumatic lines of new valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment using old valve block for seat and backrest bolster adjustment as a guide.

– Connect pneumatic lines ⇒ page 507 .

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "4.2 Exploded view - pneumatic system", page 500

4.9 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment pump -V152- / -V153-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

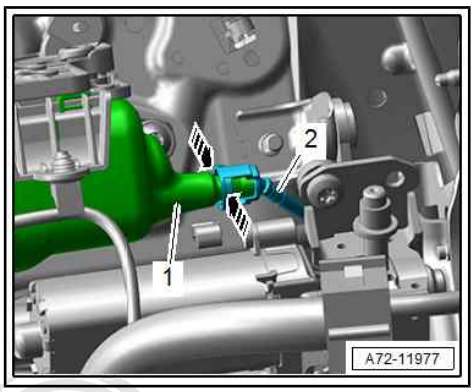
- Flat-nose pliers - VAS 5511- (not illustrated)

Removing

– Unbolt front seat and tilt it towards rear with electrical connectors attached ⇒ page 399 .

– Depending on equipment version: Remove bracket for fire extinguisher ⇒ page 443 .

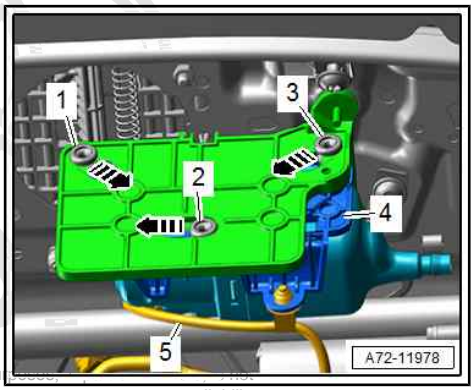
– Press release ring -arrows- and disconnect pneumatic line -2- from pump -1-.



– Disengage rubber mountings -1, 2, 3- from bracket -arrows- using flat-nose pliers.

– Detach pneumatic system pump together with bracket -4-.

– Release retainer catch, unplug connector for electrical wire -5- and move connector clear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release fastener -arrow- and slide pneumatic system pump -1- to the side off bracket -2-.



Installing

Note

Check O-ring for pneumatic lines and renew if damaged.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - pneumatic system”, page 500

74 – Seat - padding, covers

1 Covers and padding on front seats

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding”, page 514

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding”, page 518

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - seat heating elements”, page 520

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding”, page 522

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding”, page 529

⇒ “1.6 Separating seat pan cover and padding”, page 534

⇒ “1.7 Separating backrest cover and padding”, page 535

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing seat heating elements”, page 536

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing backrest heating element”, page 538

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

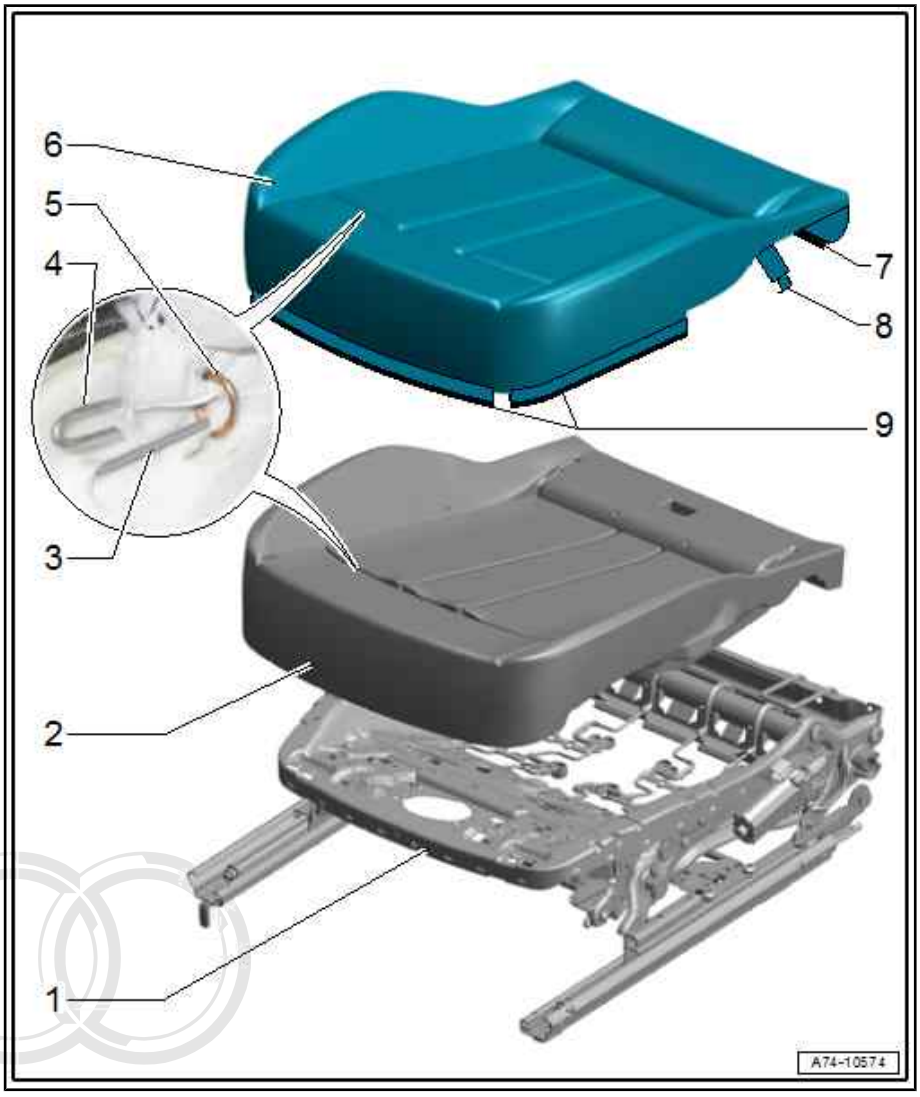
1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding

⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat”, page 514

⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat”, page 516

⇒ “1.1.3 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, super sports seat”, page 517

1.1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, standard seat



1 - Seat pan

2 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 522
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 534
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 536

3 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding

4 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted into pouch on seat cover

5 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

6 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 522
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 534

7 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at seat pan

8 - Coupling hook

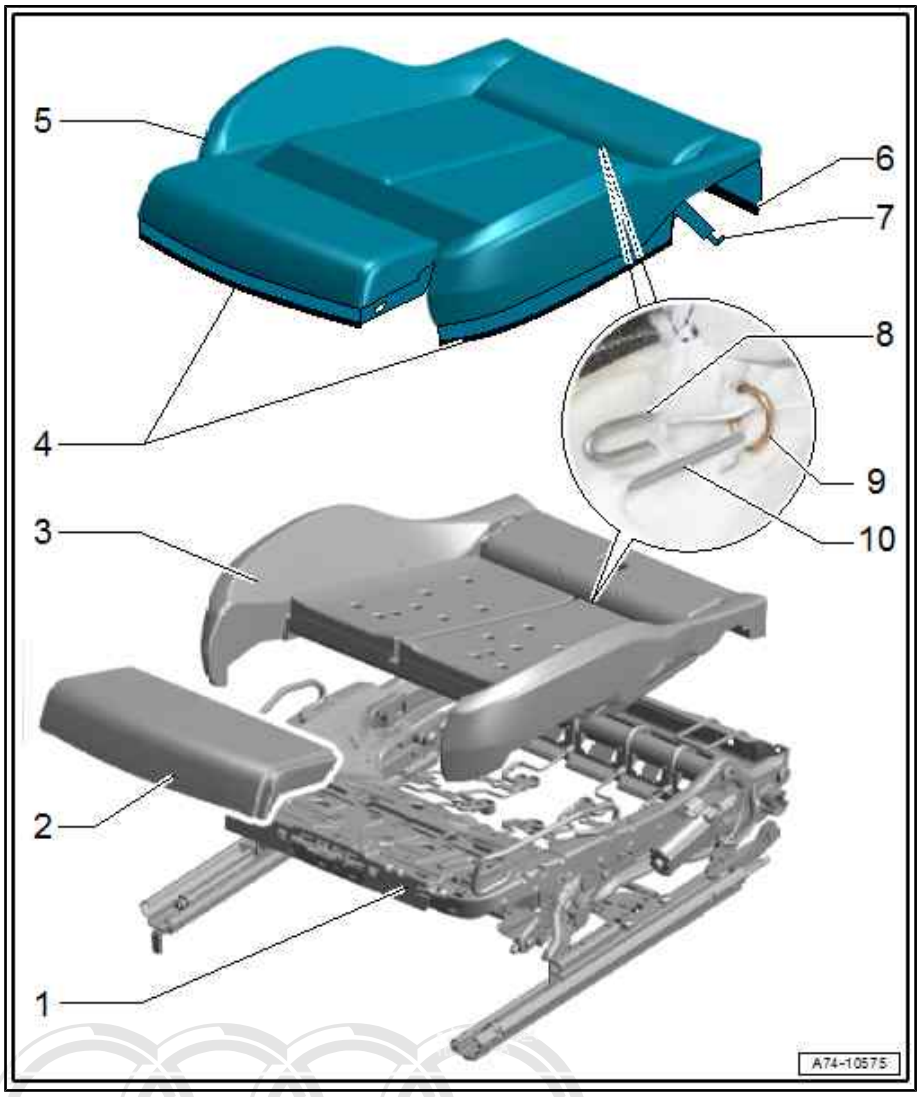
- ❑ For engaging cover at seat pan

9 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at seat pan

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat



1 - Seat pan

- ❑ With seat depth adjustment

2 - Padding for seat depth adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 524
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 537

3 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 522
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 534
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 536

4 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at seat pan
- ❑ Make sure that it is correctly seated

5 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 522
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 534
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

6 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at seat pan
- ❑ Make sure that it is correctly seated

7 - Coupling hook

- ❑ For engaging cover at seat pan

8 - Contour wire

- ❑ Inserted into pouch on seat cover
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding

9 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

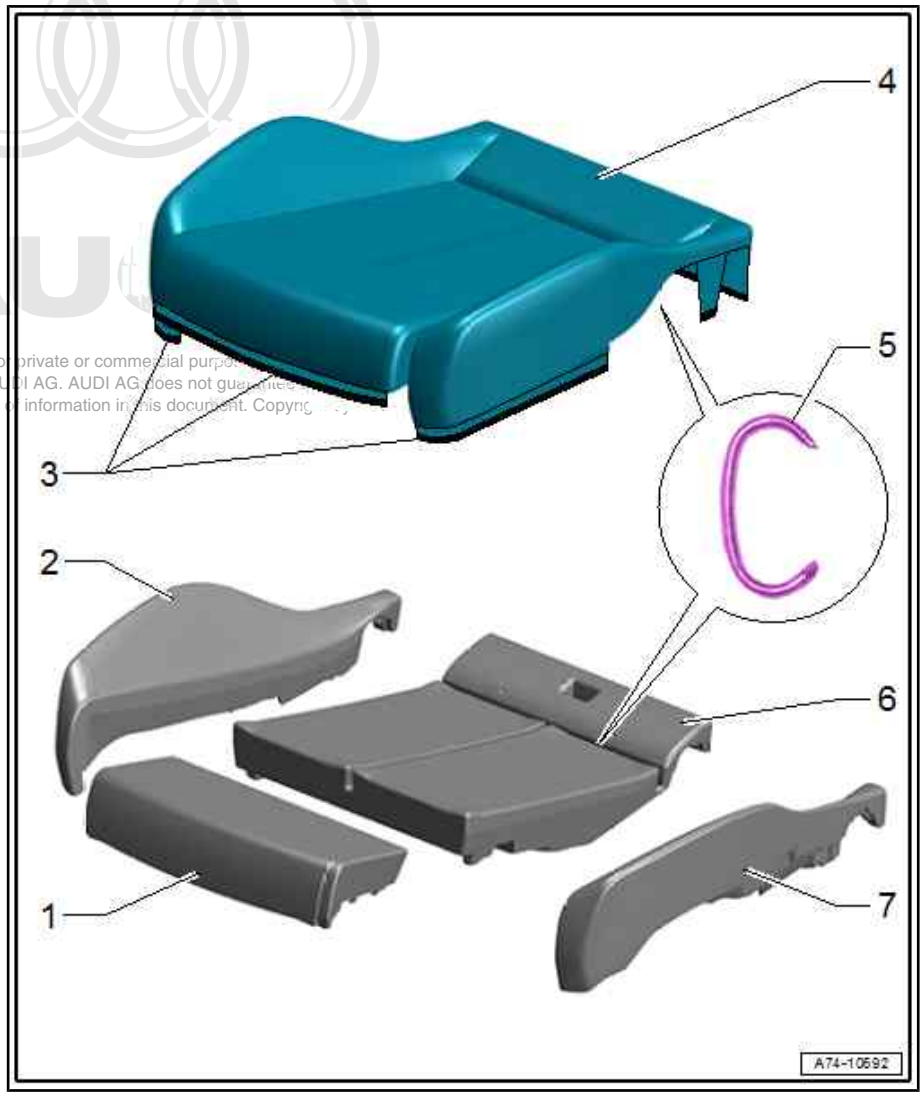
10 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

❑ For attaching cover to padding

1.1.3 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, super sports seat



1 - Seat padding

- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 524
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 537

2 - Seat bolster padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 526
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 537

3 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at upper seat pan frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

4 - Seat cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 528
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 534
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

5 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

6 - Seat padding

- ❑ Removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 528
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 534
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 536

7 - Seat bolster padding

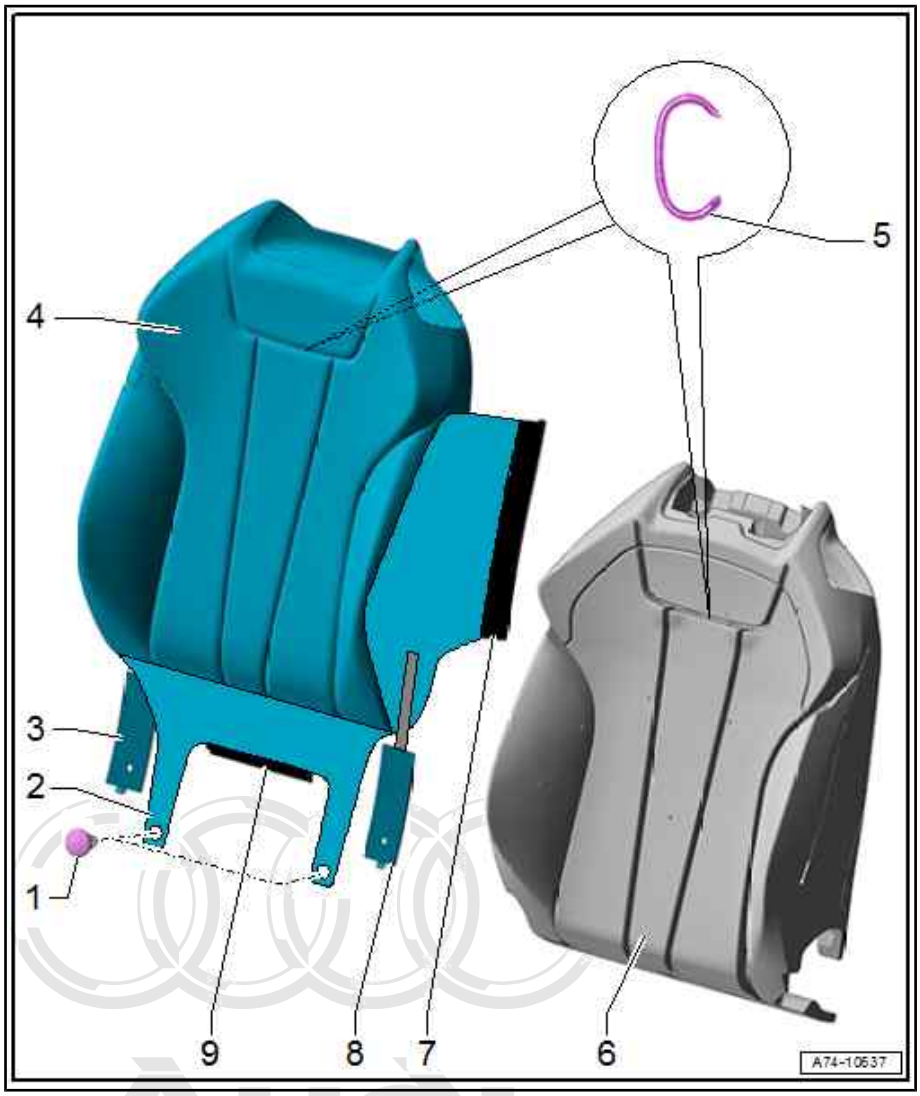
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 526
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 537

1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding

⇒ "1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, standard/ sports seat", page 518

⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat", page 519

1.2.1 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, standard/sports seat



1 - Clip

- ❑ 2x

2 - Cover tab

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For tensioning cover (secured to outer backrest frame)

3 - Cover

- ❑ For backrest fitting
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging at outer backrest frame

4 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 529
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 535
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

5 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

6 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 529
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 535
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 538

7 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in outer backrest frame
- ❑ Make sure that it is correctly seated

8 - Cover

- ❑ For backrest fitting
- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging at outer backrest frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in outer backrest frame
- ❑ Make sure that it is correctly seated

1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat

1 - Cover

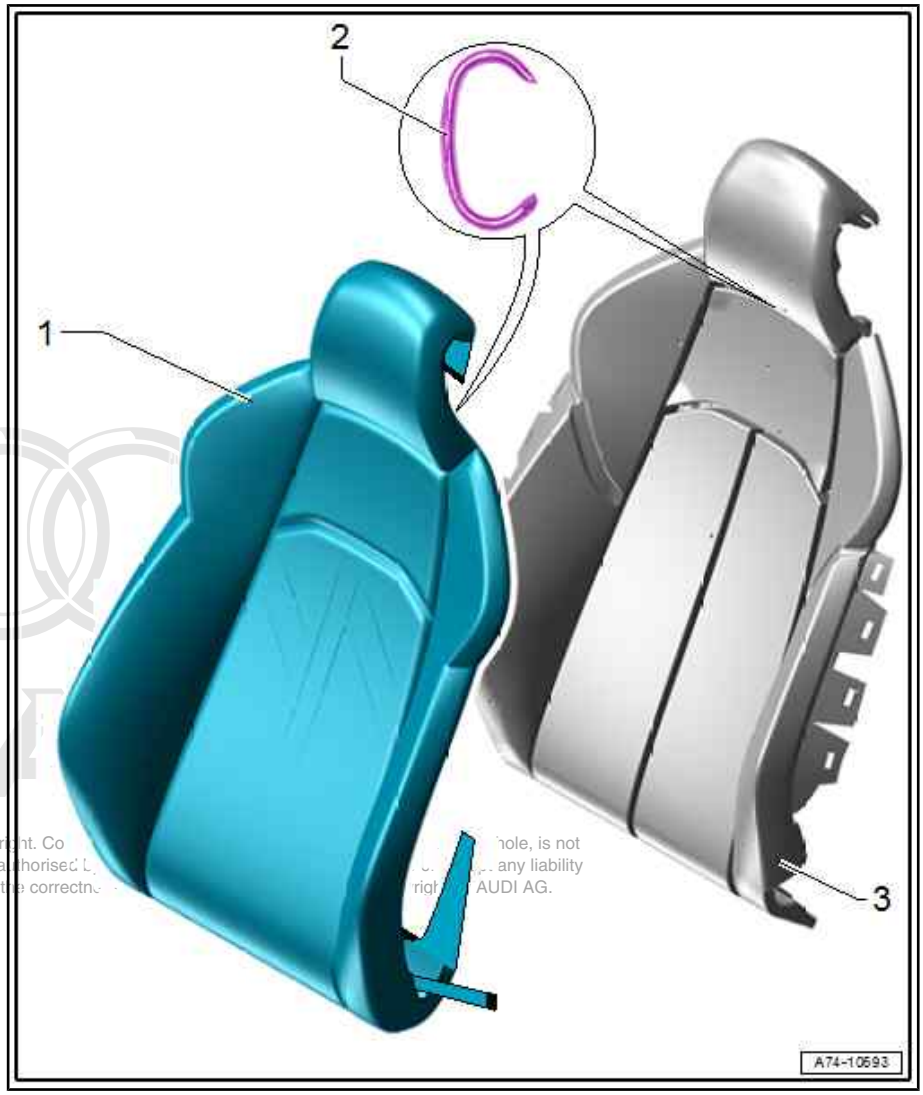
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 532
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 535
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

2 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

3 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 532
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 535
- ❑ Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 538



Protected by copyright. Co... hole, is not permitted unless a... any liability with respect to the correctn... AUDI AG.

1.3 Exploded view - seat heating elements

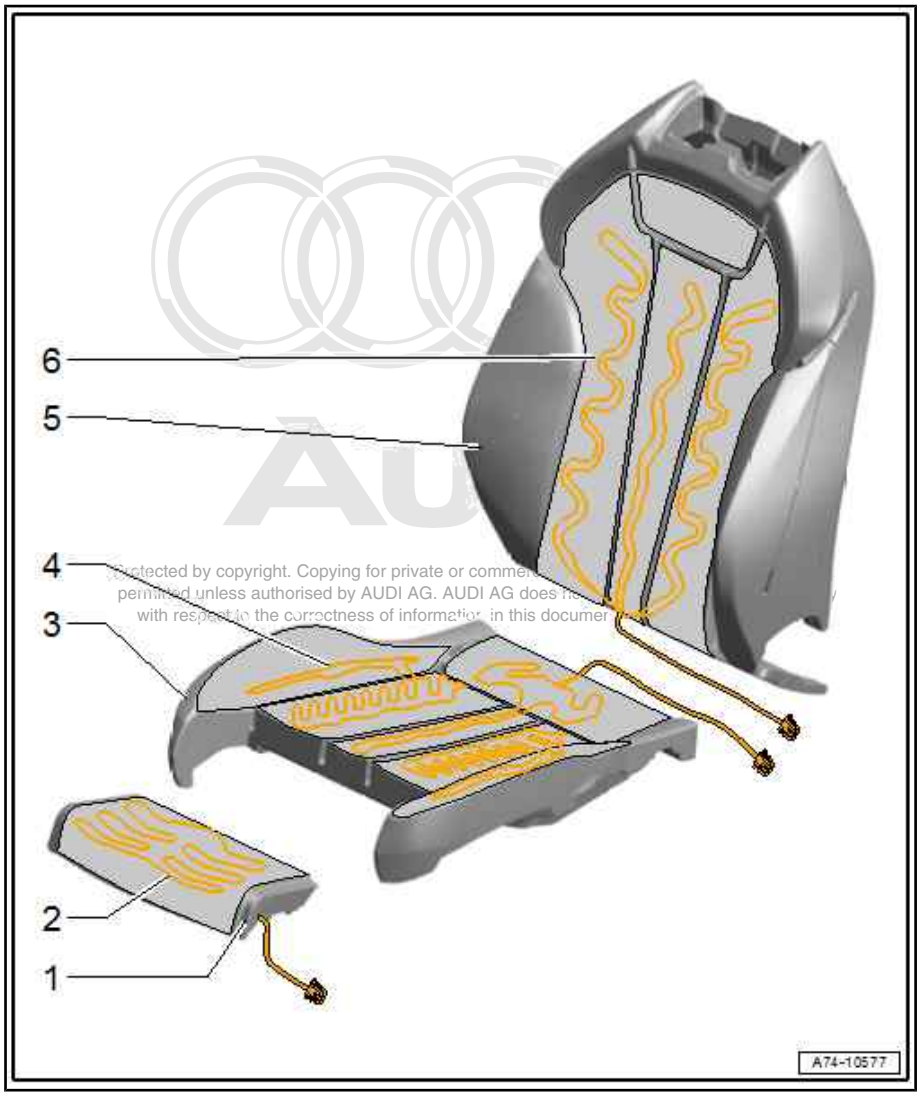
⇒ “1.3.1 Exploded view - seat heating elements, standard/sports seat”, page 520

⇒ “1.3.2 Exploded view - seat heating elements, super sports seat”, page 521

1.3.1 Exploded view - seat heating elements, standard/sports seat

Note

The illustration shows the sports seat with seat depth adjustment as an example.



1 - Padding

- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 537

2 - Seat extension heating element

- ♦ Heater element for front left seat extension - Z168-
- ♦ Heater element for front right seat extension - Z169-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 537

3 - Seat padding

- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 536

4 - Seat heating element

- ♦ Heated seat cushion for front left seat - Z45-
- ♦ Heated seat cushion for front right seat - Z46-
  - ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 536

5 - Backrest padding

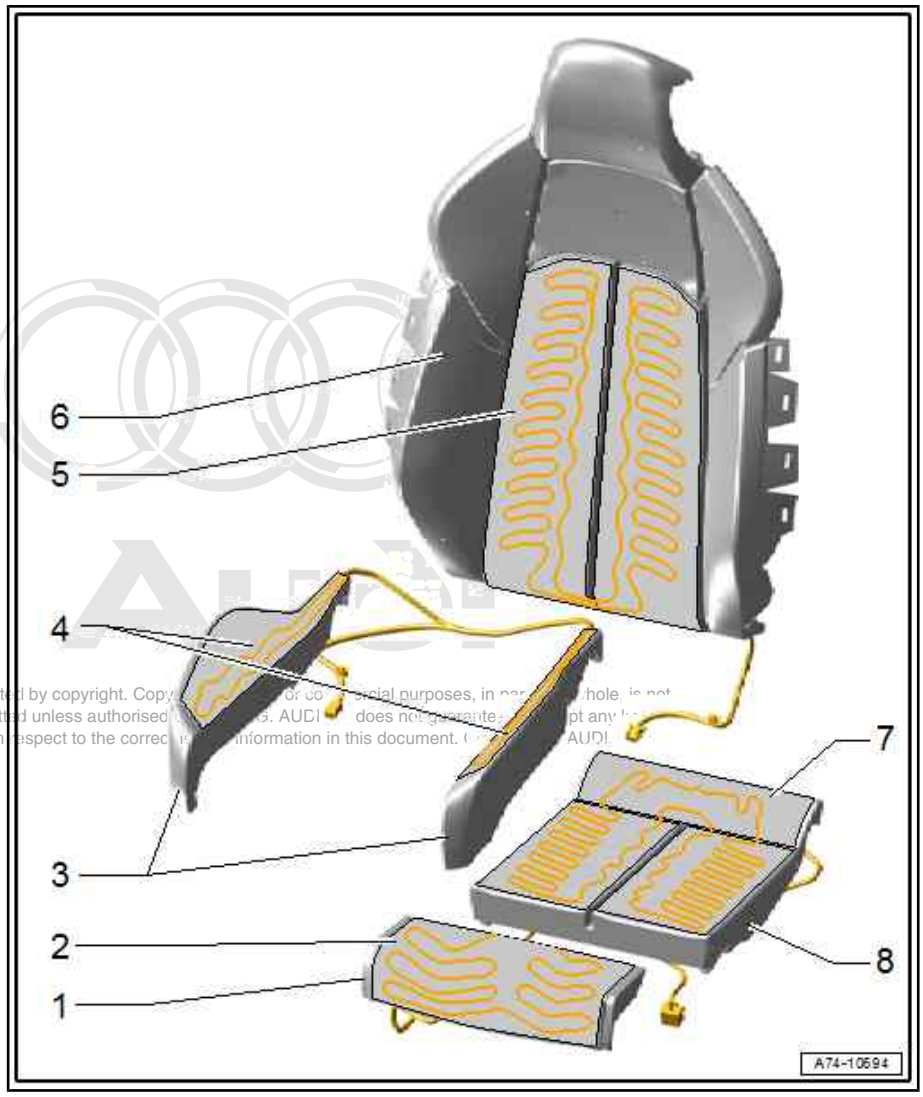
- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 538

6 - Backrest heating element

- ♦ Heated backrest for front left seat - Z116-
- ♦ Heated backrest for front right seat - Z117-
  - ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 538

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.3.2 Exploded view - seat heating elements, super sports seat



1 - Padding

- ❑ For seat depth adjuster
- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 537

2 - Seat extension heating element

- ♦ Heater element for front left seat extension - Z168-
- ♦ Heater element for front right seat extension - Z169-
  - ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 537

3 - Seat bolster padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 526

4 - Seat bolster heating element

- ❑ Driver seat:
- ♦ Left bolster heater for front left seat - Z151-
- ♦ Right bolster heater for front left seat - Z152-
  - ❑ Front passenger seat:
- ♦ Left bolster heater for front right seat - Z153-
- ♦ Right bolster heater for front right seat - Z154-
  - ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 537

5 - Backrest heating element

- ♦ Heated backrest for front left seat - Z116-
- ♦ Heated backrest for front right seat - Z117-
  - ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 538

6 - Backrest padding

- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 538

7 - Seat heating element

- ♦ Heated seat cushion for front left seat - Z45-
- ♦ Heated seat cushion for front right seat - Z46-
  - ❑ Renewing ⇒ page 536

8 - Seat padding

- ❑ When renewing, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 536

Protected by copyright. Copy... permitted unless authorised ... with respect to the correc... information in this document. ... AUDI

1.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding

⇒ “1.4.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - standard/sports seat”, page 522

⇒ “1.4.2 Removing and installing seat padding for seat depth adjuster”, page 524

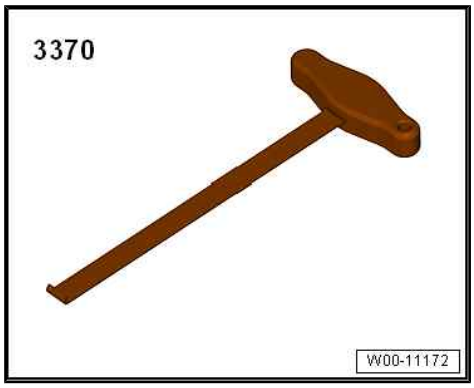
⇒ “1.4.3 Removing and installing seat bolster padding on seat pan - super sports seat”, page 526

⇒ “1.4.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - super sports seat”, page 528

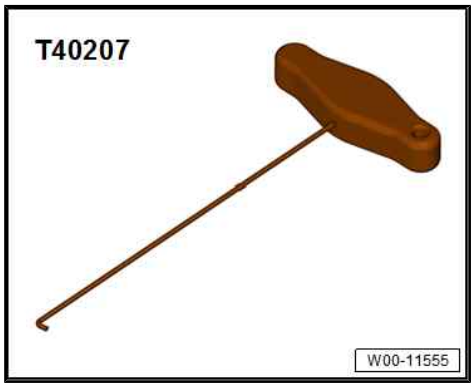
1.4.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - standard/sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front-end hook - 3370-



- Hook - T40207-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

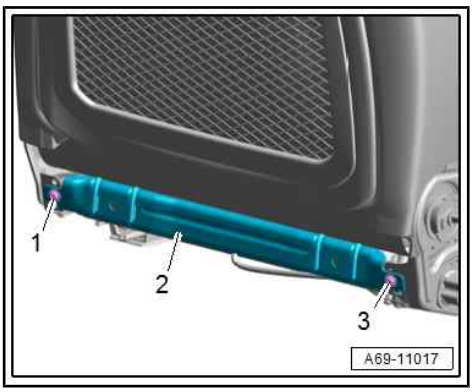
Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

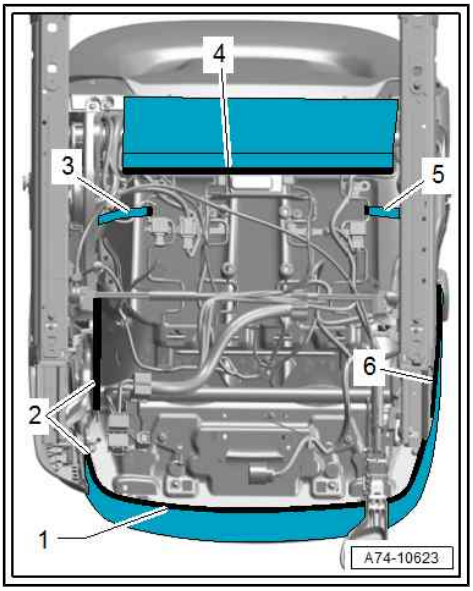
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 441 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) and bracket ⇒ page 439 .
– Depending on equipment version: Remove bracket for fire extinguisher ⇒ page 443 .
– Equipment version with seat occupied recognition system: Refer to corresponding notes ⇒ page 196 .
– Unplug and move clear electrical connectors. If necessary, disconnect modular wiring ⇒ page 407 .
– Disengage covers for backrest fitting at outer backrest frame.
– If fitted, unscrew bolts -1, 3- and detach cross-piece/child seat anchor -2- from front seat.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



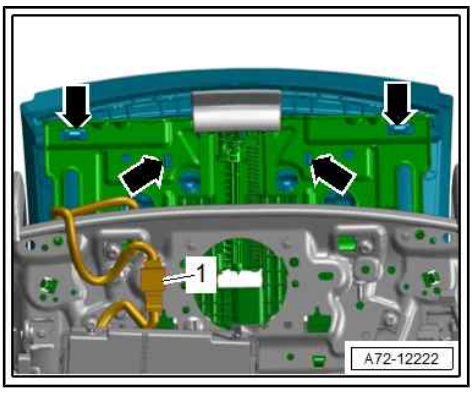
Standard seat:

– Disengage piping -1- of cover using front-end hook - 3370- .
– Disengage piping -2, 4, 6- of cover using front-end hook - 3370- (front and side sections).
– Disengage coupling hooks -3, 5- on both sides.
– Release padding with cover from seat pan and pull it out carefully towards front under backrest; depending on equipment version, guide out wiring harness for seat heating.

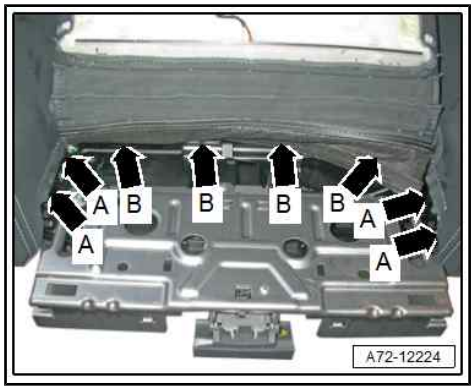


Sports seat:

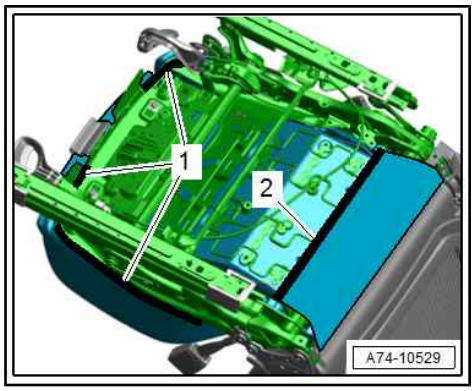
– Equipment version with seat cushion fan: Remove seat cushion fan ⇒ page 458 .
– Remove seat trim (front) ⇒ page 441 .
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Release retaining hooks -arrows- and fold retaining plate with padding and cover towards rear.



– Disengage contour wire from hooks -arrows A- on both sides.
– Disengage fastening strip of cover from hooks -arrows B- using hook - T40207- .

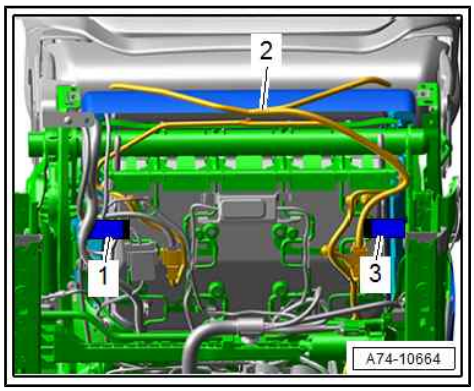


– Disengage piping -1- of cover (front and side sections) using front-end hook - 3370- .
– Disengage piping -2- of cover (rear section) using front-end hook - 3370- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage tabs -1, 3- at bottom of seat pan.
– Release padding with cover from seat pan and pull it out carefully towards front under backrest; depending on equipment version, guide out wiring harness for seat heating.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

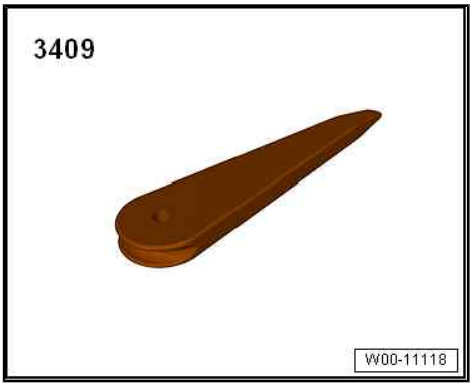
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding”, page 514

1.4.2 Removing and installing seat padding for seat depth adjuster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

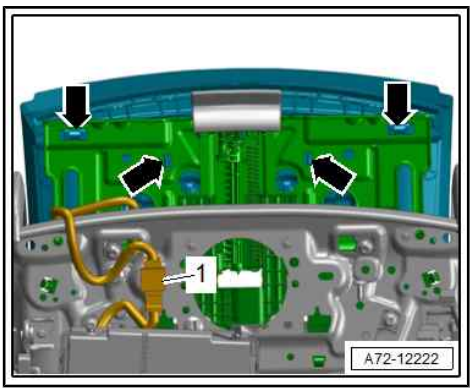


Removing

– Remove seat trim (front) ⇒ page 441 .

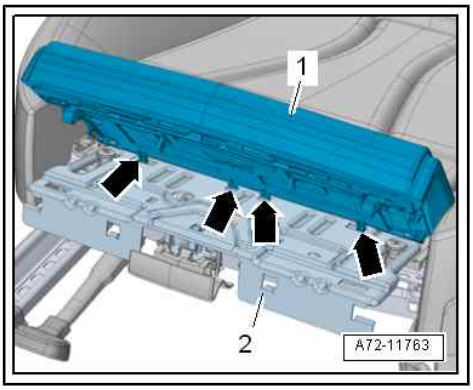
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Release retaining hooks -arrows- and fold retaining plate with padding and cover towards rear.



– Disengage lugs -arrows- at seat depth adjuster -2- and fold up mounting bracket with padding and cover.

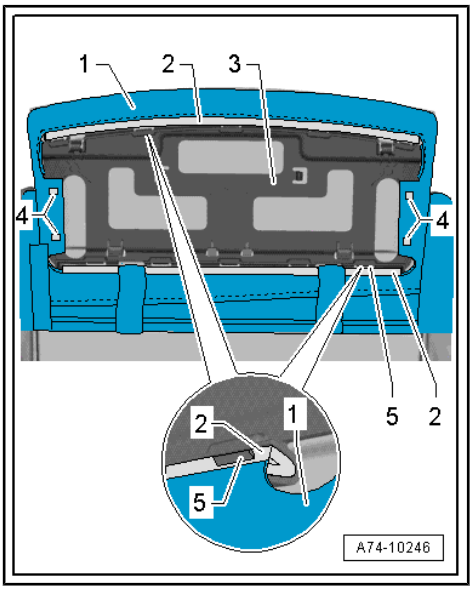
– Pull off mounting bracket -1- with padding and cover for seat depth adjuster at an angle (upwards and towards front).



– Unclip fastening strips -2- from fasteners -5-.

– Disengage cover from lugs -4- on both sides.

– Pull padding -3- for seat depth adjuster off cover -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing padding, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 537 .

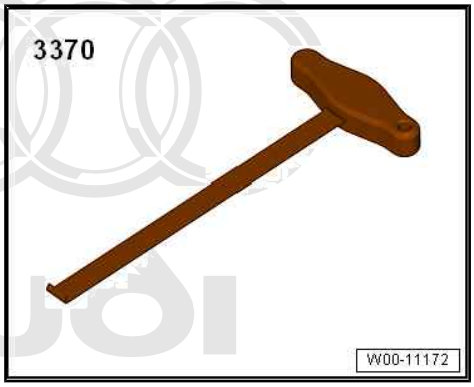
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat", page 516

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.3 Removing and installing seat bolster padding on seat pan - super sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front-end hook - 3370-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright AUDI AG.

- Hook - T40207-



Removing

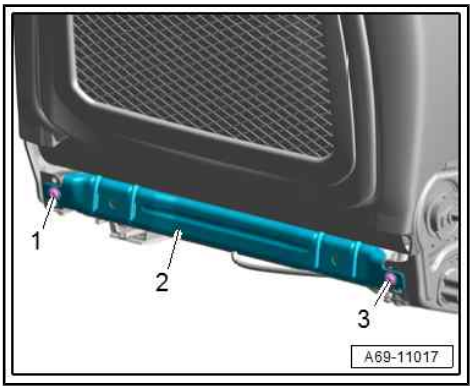
WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

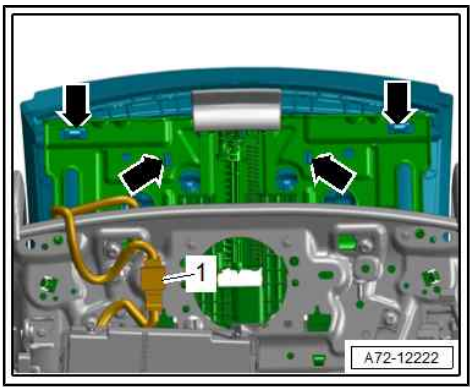
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 441 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) and bracket ⇒ page 439 .
– Depending on equipment version: Remove bracket for fire extinguisher ⇒ page 443 .

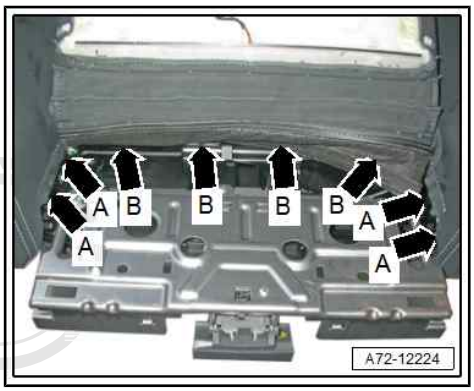
– Disengage covers for backrest fitting at outer backrest frame.
– If fitted, unscrew bolts -1, 3- and detach cross-piece/child seat anchor -2- from front seat.



– Remove seat trim (front) ⇒ page 441 .
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Release retaining hooks -arrows- and fold retaining plate with padding and cover towards rear.

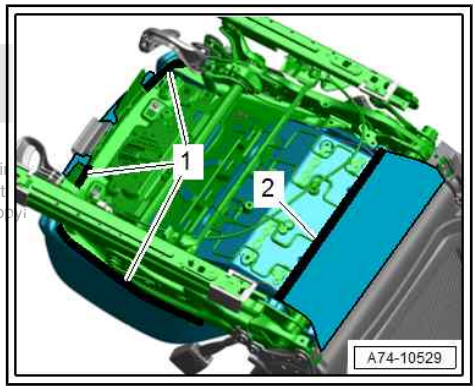


– Disengage contour wire from hooks -arrows A- on both sides.
– Disengage fastening strip of cover from hooks -arrows B- using hook - T40207- .



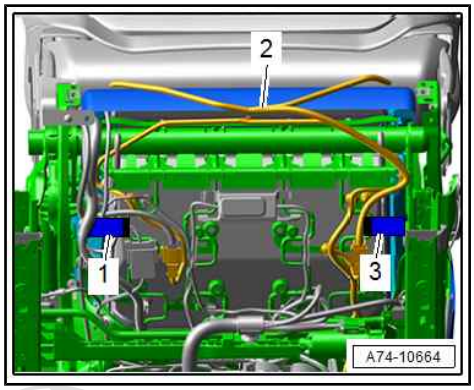
– Disengage piping -1- of cover (front and side sections) using front-end hook - 3370- .
– Disengage piping -2- of cover (rear section) using front-end hook - 3370- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, i
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyi



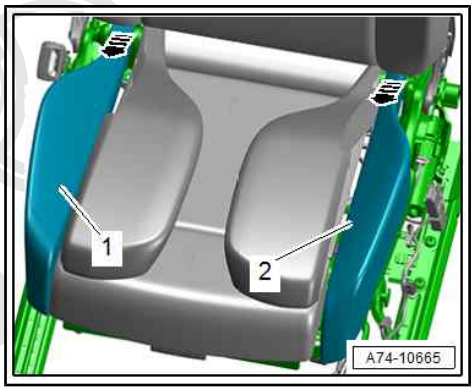
– Disengage tabs -1, 3- at bottom of seat pan.

– Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for bolster heater and move wire -2- clear.



– Detach seat cover from padding in area of seat bolster padding.

– Release seat bolster padding -1, 2- from seat pan and pull it out carefully towards front under backrest -arrows-; depending on equipment version, guide out wiring harness for bolster heater.



Installing

WARNING

Danger of incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when connecting the battery.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing padding, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 537 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.3 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, super sports seat", page 517

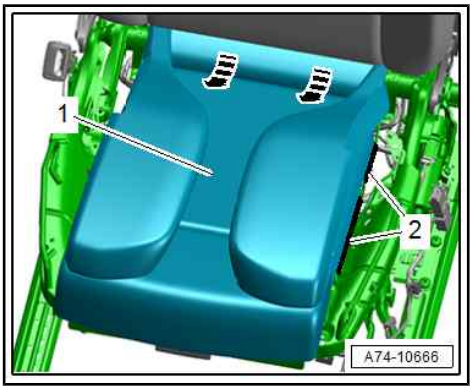
1.4.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding - super sports seat

Removing

– Remove seat bolster padding on seat pan ⇒ page 526 .

– Equipment version with seat occupied recognition system: Refer to corresponding notes ⇒ page 196 .

– Depending on equipment version: Disconnect wiring harness for seat heating at seat pan and move it clear. To do so, disconnect modular wiring ⇒ page 407 .
– Disengage piping -2- (side, bottom) at bracket on seat pan.
– Repeat procedure on opposite side.
– Unfasten padding with cover -1- from seat pan and carefully pull it out under backrest towards front -arrows-.
– Detach cover and padding from seat pan, at the same time guiding out seat heating wiring harness (depending on equipment version).



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing padding, bond on new heating element ⇒ page 537 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.1.3 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding, super sports seat", page 517

1.5 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

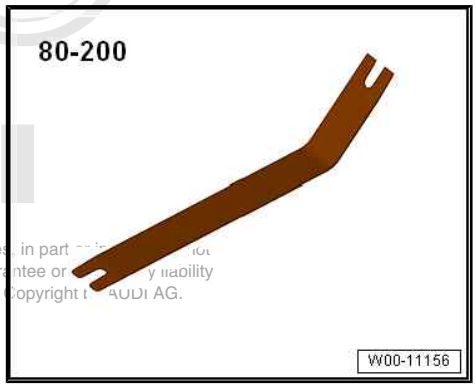
⇒ "1.5.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - standard/sports seat", page 529

⇒ "1.5.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat", page 532

1.5.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - standard/sports seat

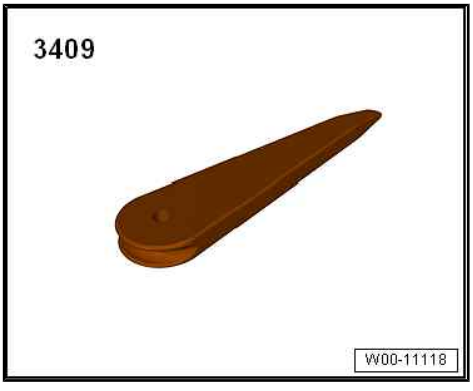
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part ... not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ... liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. ... Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .

– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 423 .

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 432 .

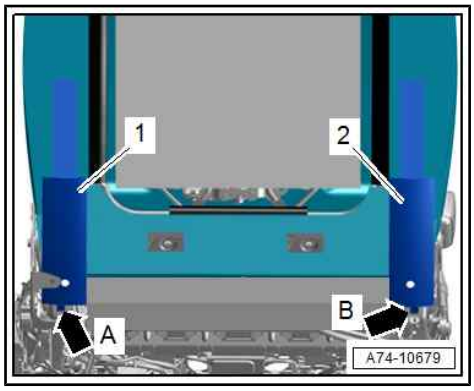
– Disconnect wiring harness for backrest heating at seat pan and move it clear.

– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 441 .

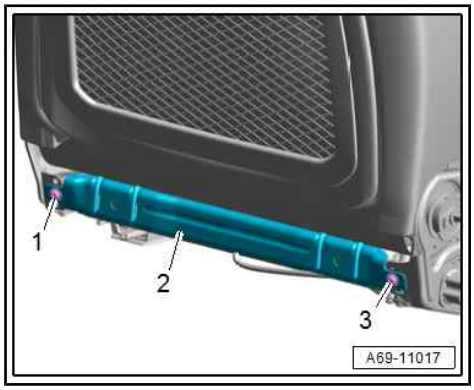
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) and bracket ⇒ page 439 .

– A5 Coupé/Cabriolet: Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ page 445 .

– Disengage covers -1, 2- for backrest fitting at outer backrest frame -arrows A, B-.

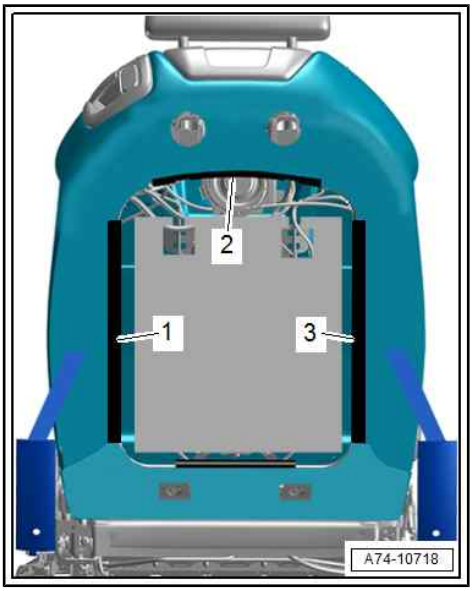


– If fitted, unscrew bolts -1, 3- and detach cross-piece/child seat anchor -2- from front seat.

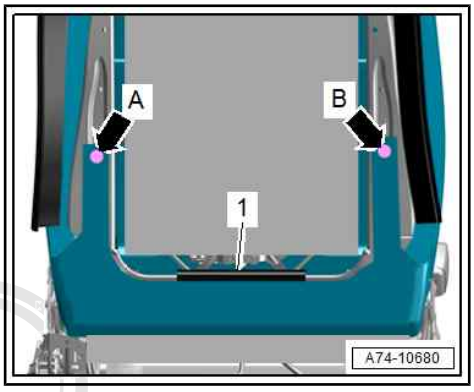


Audi
Copyright: Reproduction for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

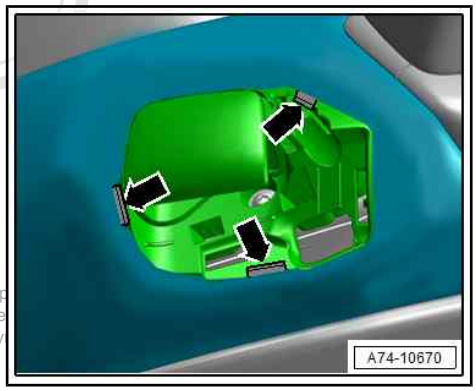
– Disengage piping -1, 3- on sides of outer backrest frame.
– Disengage piping -2- at top centre of outer backrest frame.



– Remove clips -arrows A, B- at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Disengage piping -1- at bottom centre of outer backrest frame.
– Detach cover and padding slightly from outer backrest frame.
– Remove side airbag (front) ⇒ page 150 .
– Unfasten cover and padding from outer backrest frame and carefully pull it out towards front.



– A5 Coupé/Cabriolet: Disengage hooks -arrows- of cover at backrest release mechanism.
– Pull padding upwards off outer backrest frame and detach.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- ***Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***
- ***Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

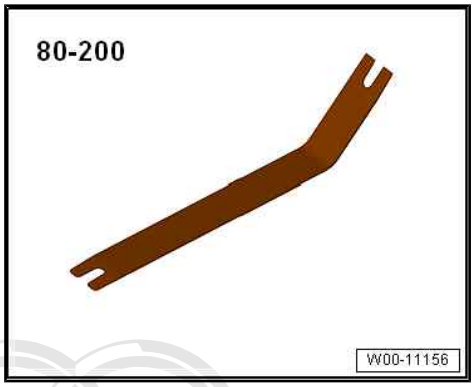
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding", page 518

1.5.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever - 80-200-



- Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

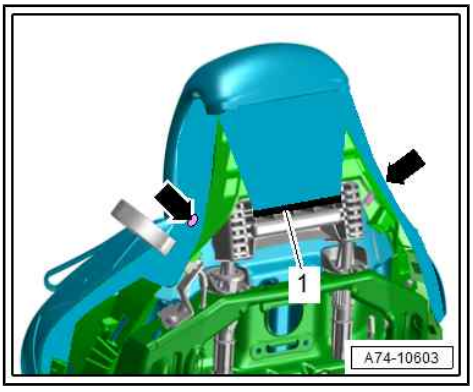
- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 399 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand - VAS 6136- ⇒ page 370 .
– Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 441 .
– Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ page 439 .
– Remove backrest cover panel and side trim ⇒ page 425 .
– Remove side airbag (front) ⇒ page 154 .
– Disengage anti-squeak pad at outer backrest frame.

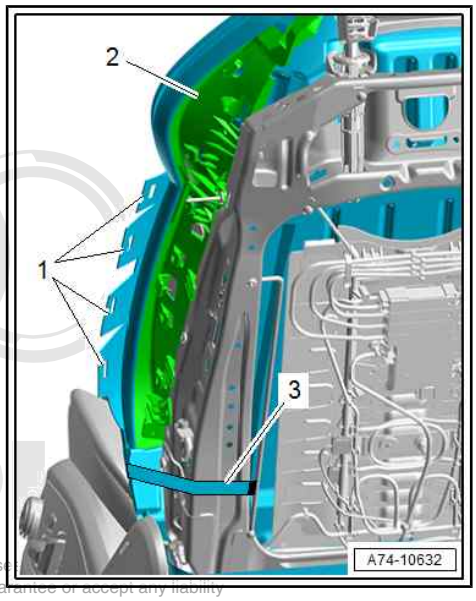
– Remove clips -arrows- at outer backrest frame using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Disengage piping -1- at bottom of outer backrest frame.
– Disengage piping -2- at bracket on outer backrest frame.



– Remove clips -arrows- from side bolster using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Disengage fastening strip -1- for cover from head restraint.

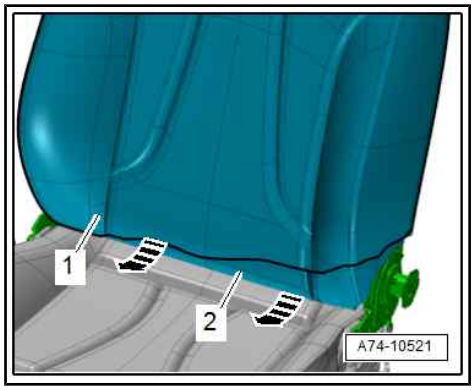


– Disengage lugs -1- on padding and cover from retaining hooks on side bolster -2- (both sides).
– Disengage coupling hooks -3- for cover from outer backrest frame (both sides).
– Depending on equipment version: Disconnect wiring harness for backrest heating at seat pan and move it clear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unfasten cover -1- with padding -2- from outer backrest frame and carefully pull it out under backrest towards front -arrows-.
– Take padding and cover upwards off outer backrest frame, and depending on version, guide out wiring harness for backrest heating.



Installing

WARNING

Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.

- *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 399 .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.2.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat", page 519

1.6 Separating seat pan cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Removing

– Remove seat cover and padding ⇒ page 522 .
– Detach cover -2- from padding -1- and cut through upholstery clips -arrows- with pliers.
– Cut through remaining upholstery clips.



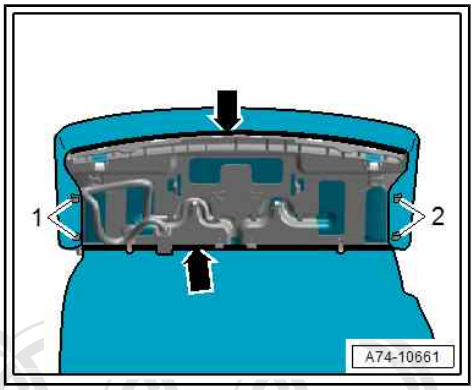
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Equipment version with seat depth adjustment:

– Disengage cover from hooks -1, 2- for seat depth adjuster.

– Release and disengage piping -arrows-.

– Remove padding for seat depth adjuster from cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing padding, bond on new seat heating element ⇒ page 537 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - seat pan cover and padding”, page 514

1.7 Separating backrest cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



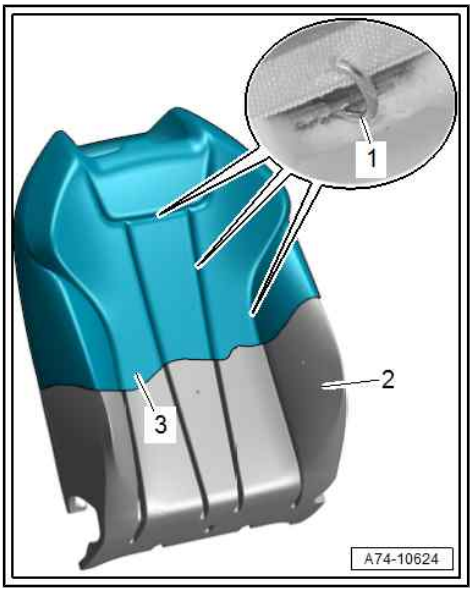
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove seat cover and padding ⇒ page 529 .

– Detach cover -3- as far as possible from padding -2- and cut through upholstery clips -1- using pliers.

– Cut through remaining upholstery clips and detach cover from padding.



Note

The illustration shows the sports seat as an example.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing padding, bond on new backrest heating element ⇒ page 537 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - backrest cover and padding”, page 518

1.8 Removing and installing seat heating elements

⇒ “1.8.1 Removing and installing seat heating element - seat padding”, page 536

⇒ “1.8.2 Removing and installing seat heating element - seat depth adjustment”, page 537

⇒ “1.8.3 Removing and installing seat heating element - seat bolsters”, page 537

1.8.1 Removing and installing seat heating element - seat padding

Note

Old heating elements remain on padding; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

Procedure

- Cover and padding separated ⇒ page 534

– Cut off electrical wiring directly at old heating elements.

Standard/sports seat:

– Align new heating elements -arrow- on padding.

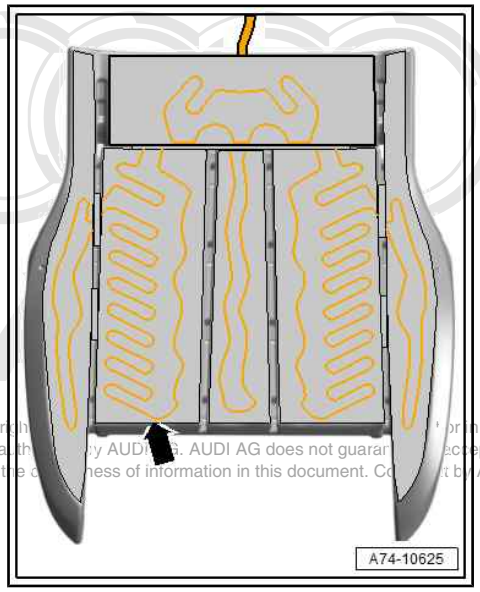
– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

Note

The illustration shows the sports seat as an example.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

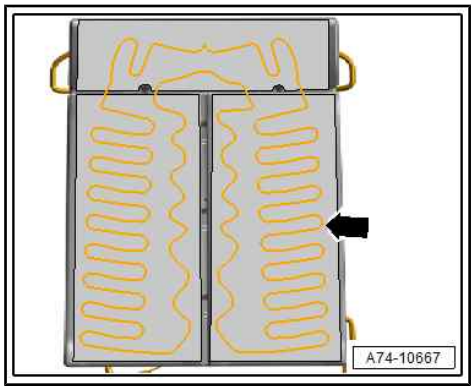
Super sports seat:

– Align new heating elements -arrow- on padding.

– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.



The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - seat heating elements”, page 520

1.8.2 Removing and installing seat heating element - seat depth adjustment

Note

Old heating element remains on padding; new heating element is bonded over old element.

Procedure

- Cover and padding separated ⇒ page 524

– Cut off electrical wire directly at old heating element.

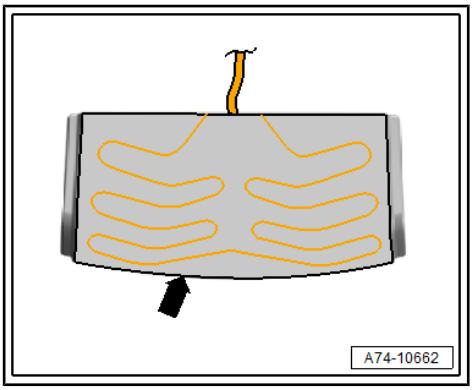
– Align new heating element -arrow- on padding.

– Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating element exactly onto old heating element without any creases.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - seat heating elements", page 520



1.8.3 Removing and installing seat heating element - seat bolsters

Note

Old heating element remains on padding; new heating element is bonded over old element.

Procedure

- Seat bolster padding on seat pan removed ⇒ page 526

– Cut off electrical wire directly at old heating element.

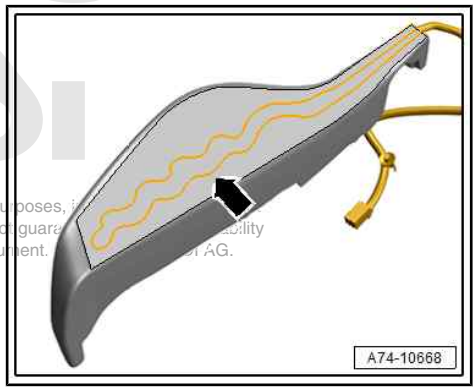
– Align new heating element -arrow- on padding.

– Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating element exactly onto old heating element without any creases.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "1.3.2 Exploded view - seat heating elements, super sports seat", page 521



Copyright by AUDI AG. Distribution to third parties, commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee ... with respect to the correctness of information in this document. ... AUDI AG.

1.9 Removing and installing backrest heating element

Note

Old heating element remains on padding; new heating element is bonded over old element.

Procedure

- Cover and padding separated ⇒ page 535

– Cut off electrical wire directly at old heating element.

Standard/sports seat:

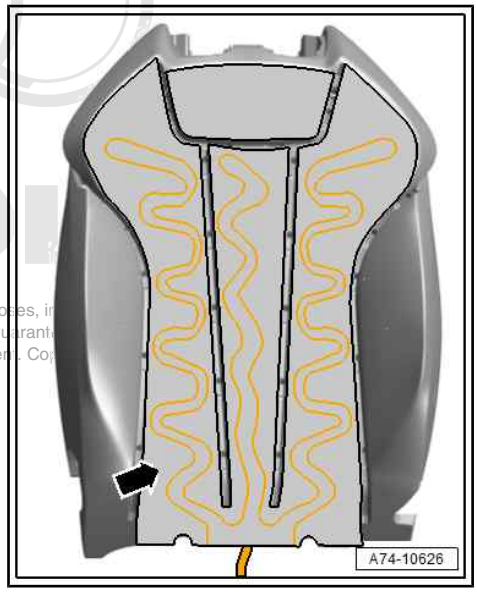
– Align new heating element -arrow- on padding.

– Peel protective films off heating element one after the other, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating element exactly onto old heating element without any creases.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume



Note

The illustration shows the sports seat as an example.

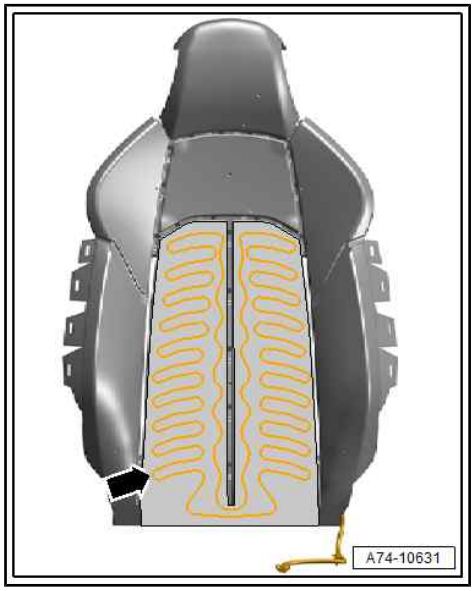
Super sports seat:

– Align new heating element -arrow- on padding.

– Peel protective films off heating element one after the other, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating element exactly onto old heating element without any creases.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.



The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "1.3 Exploded view - seat heating elements", page 520

2 Covers and padding on rear seats

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding”, page 539

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - seat heating elements”, page 544

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing cover and padding”, page 545

⇒ “2.4 Detaching cover from padding”, page 550

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing side padding”, page 552

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing seat heating elements”, page 553

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing backrest heating element”, page 554

2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 539

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding, A5 Cabriolet”, page 541

⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest cover and padding, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 542

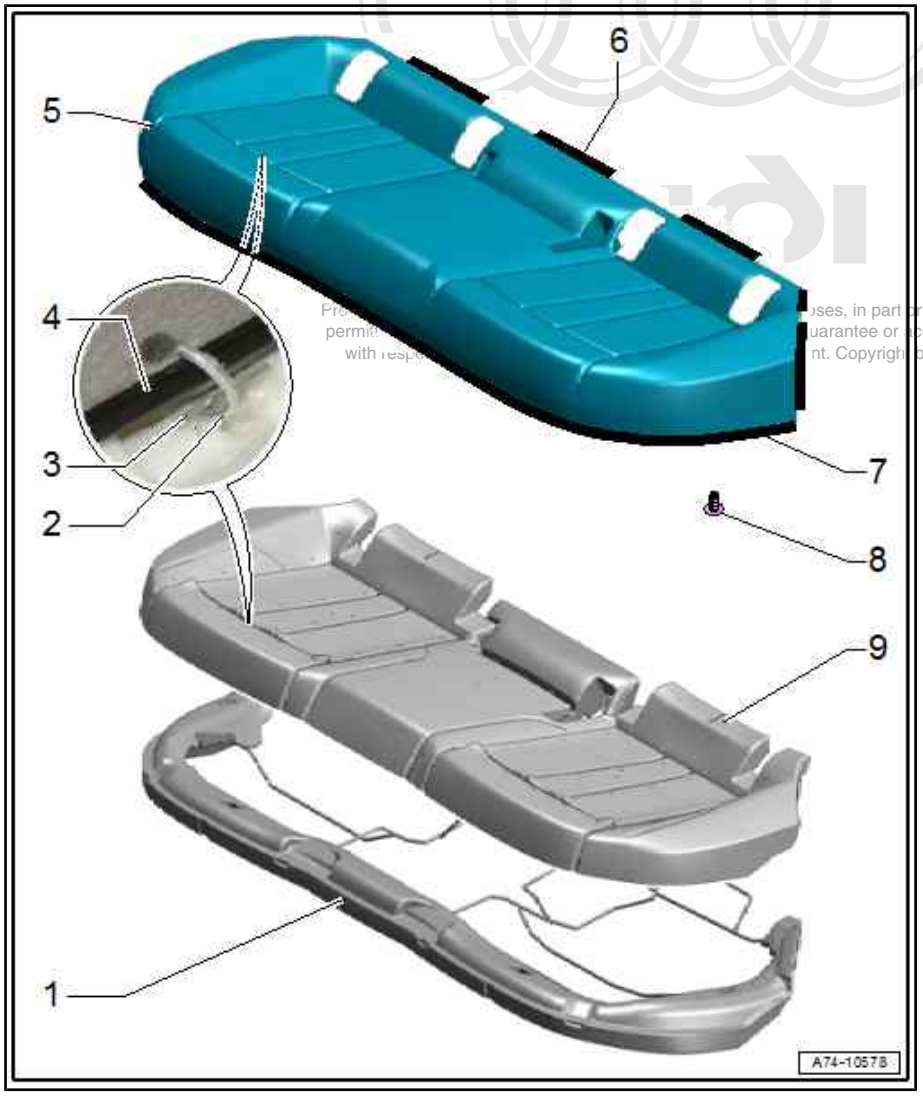
⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest cover and padding, A5 Cabriolet”, page 543

2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding, A5 Coupé/Sportback

Note

The illustration shows the seat bench without tray as an example.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Seat frame

- ❑ With moulded section

2 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

3 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding

4 - Contour wire

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding

5 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 545
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 550
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

6 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in seat frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat frame

7 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For attaching cover to seat frame
- ❑ Fold over inwards by 180° and engage in groove in moulded section ⇒ page 547

8 - Clip

9 - Padding

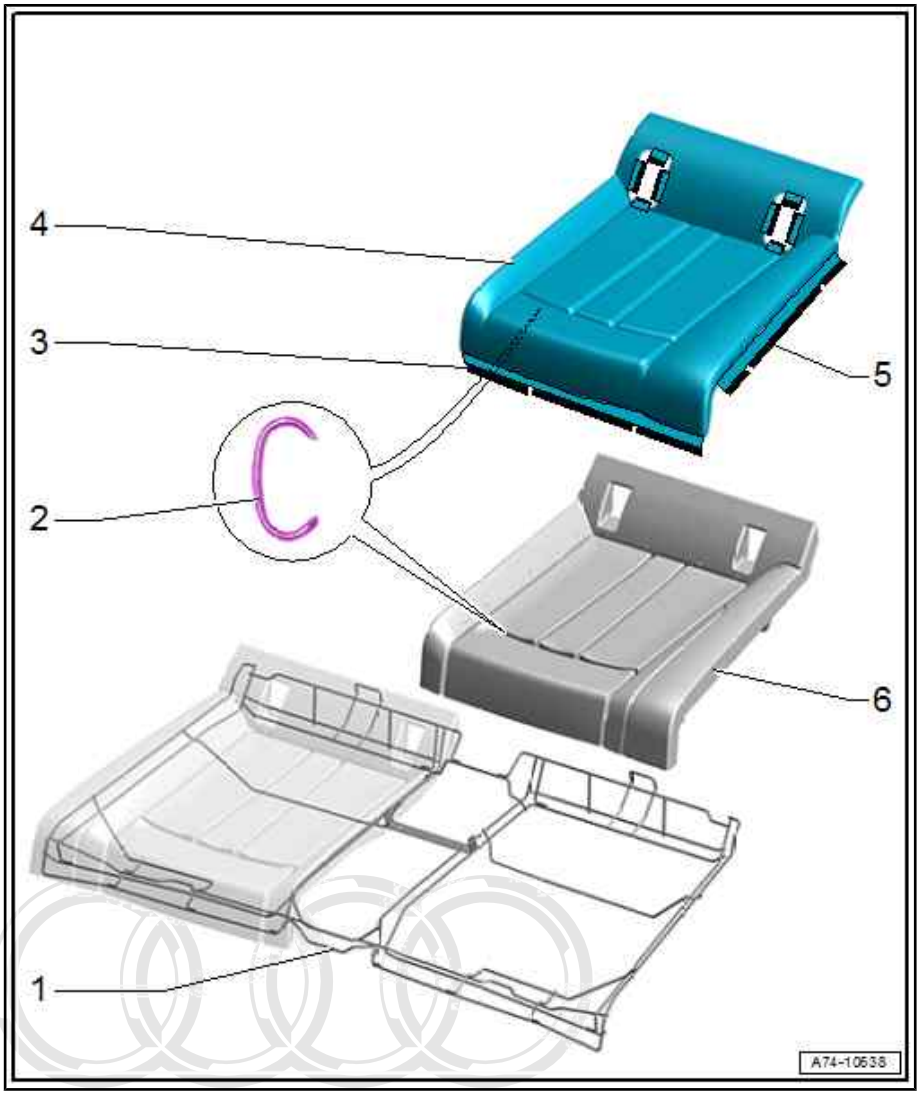
- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 545
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 550

Pr… permit… with resp… …oses, in part or in whole, is not …uarantee or accept any liability …nt. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.2 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding, A5 Cabriolet

Note

The illustration shows the seat bench with tray as an example.



1 - Seat frame

2 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

3 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in seat frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat frame

4 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 547
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 550
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

5 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in seat frame
- ❑ Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat frame

6 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 547
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 550

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest cover and padding, A5 Coupé/Sportback

1 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 548
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 551

2 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding

3 - Contour wire

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding

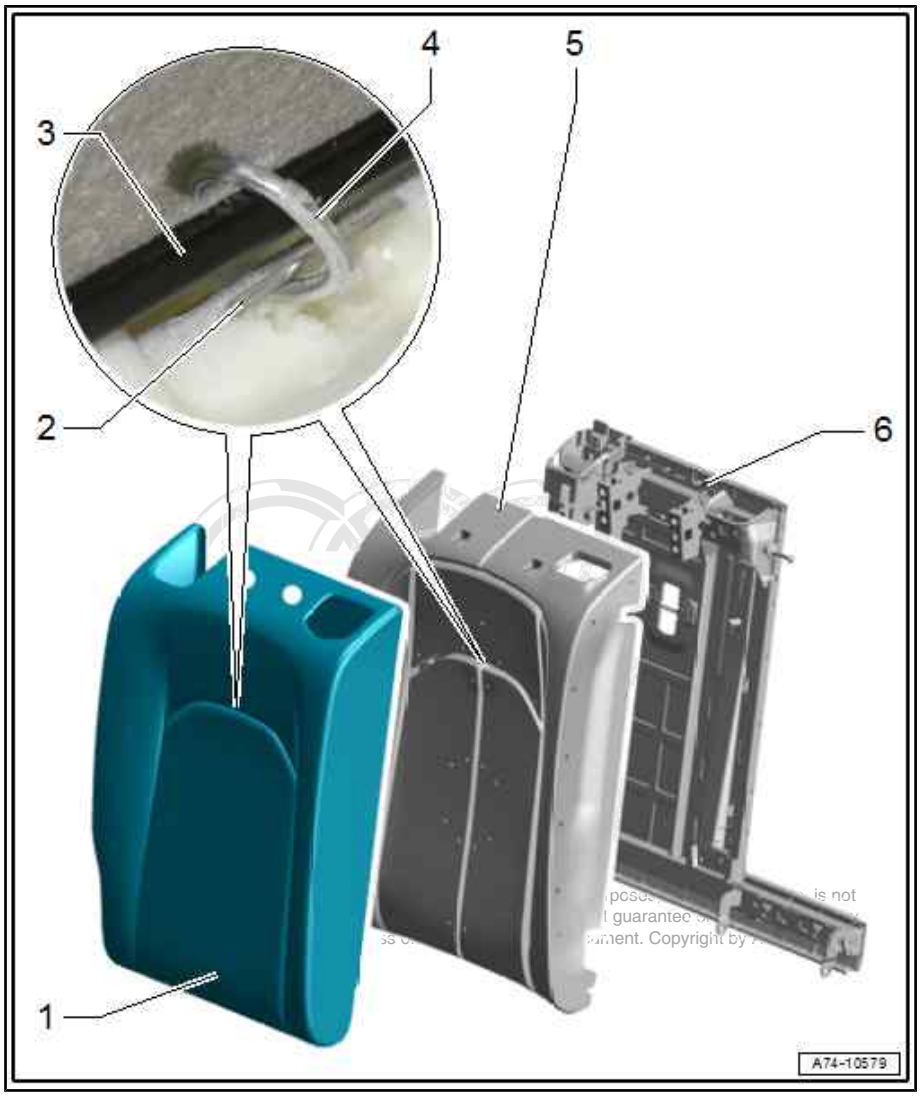
4 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

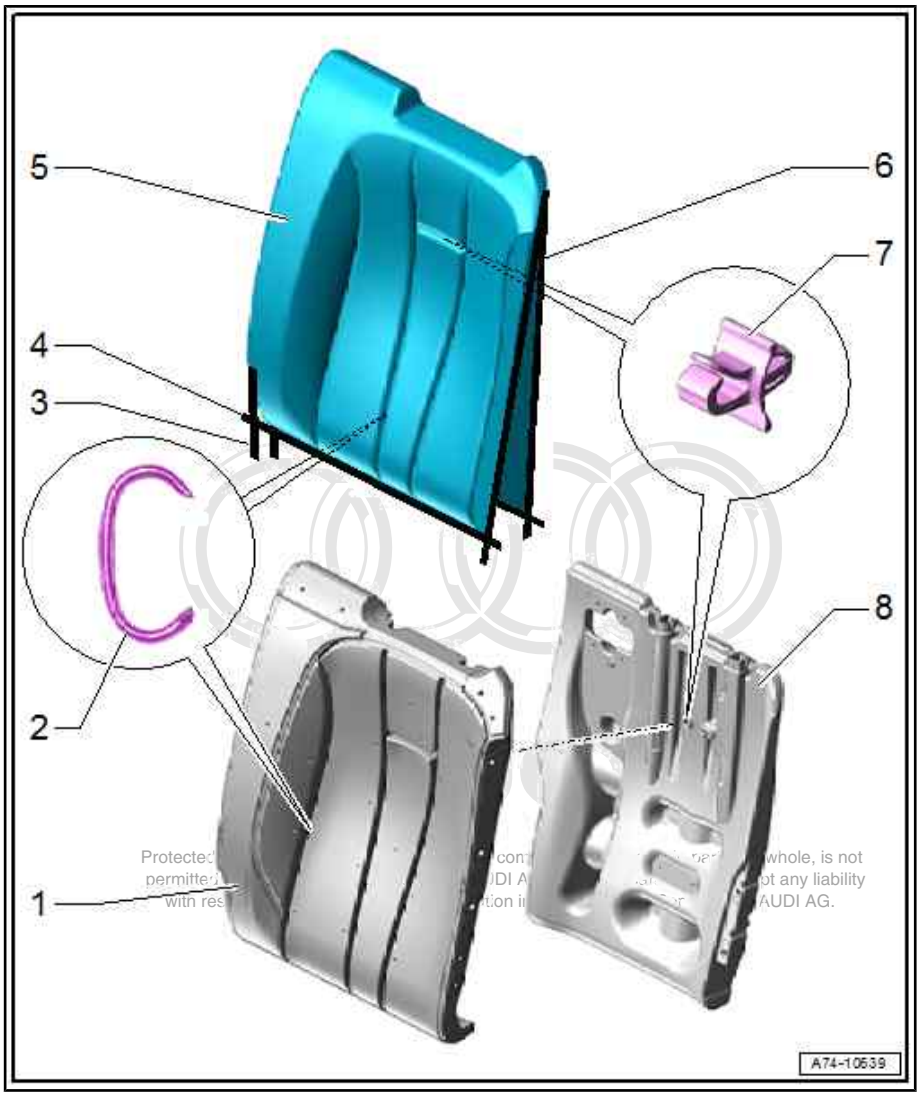
5 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 548
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 551

6 - Rear seat backrest (right-side)



2.1.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest cover and padding, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 549
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 551

2 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634- when installing

3 - Zip

- ❑ Stitched to cover

4 - Zip

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ Close using locking pliers -VAS 6138-

5 - Backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ page 549
- ❑ Separating cover and padding ⇒ page 551
- ❑ After installing, make sure there are no creases

6 - Zip

- ❑ Stitched to cover

7 - Clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For attaching cover to backrest pan

8 - Backrest pan

2.2 Exploded view - seat heating elements

⇒ “2.2.1 Exploded view - seat heating elements, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 544

⇒ “2.2.2 Exploded view - seat heating elements, A5 Cabriolet”, page 545

2.2.1 Exploded view - seat heating elements, A5 Coupé/Sportback

1 - Seat bench heating element

- Heated bench seat cushion for rear left seat - Z10-
- Heated bench seat cushion for rear right seat - Z12-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 553

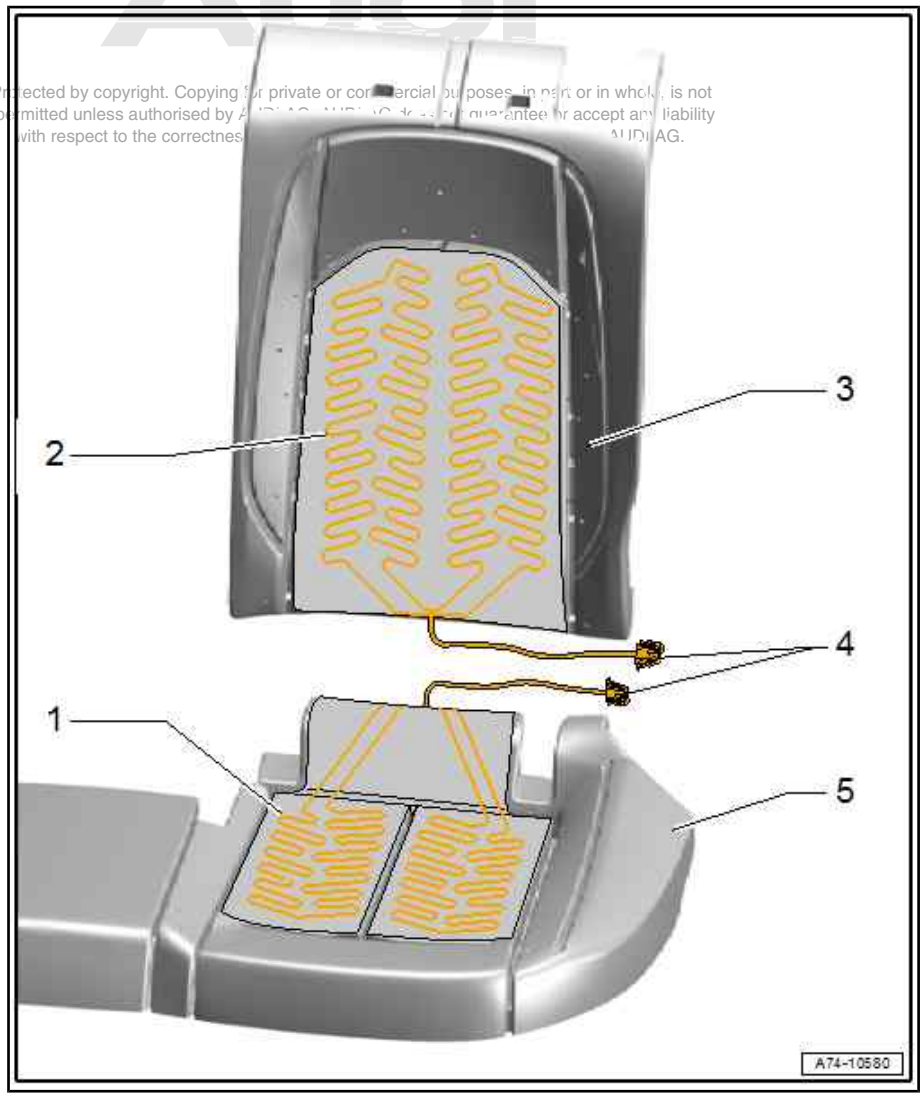
2 - Rear seat backrest heating element

- Heated backrest for rear left seat - Z11-
- Heated backrest for rear right seat - Z13-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 554

3 - Backrest padding

4 - Electrical wiring

5 - Seat padding



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness

2.2.2 Exploded view - seat heating elements, A5 Cabriolet

1 - Seat bench heating element

- Heated bench seat cushion for rear left seat - Z10-
- Heated bench seat cushion for rear right seat - Z12-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 553

2 - Rear seat backrest heating element

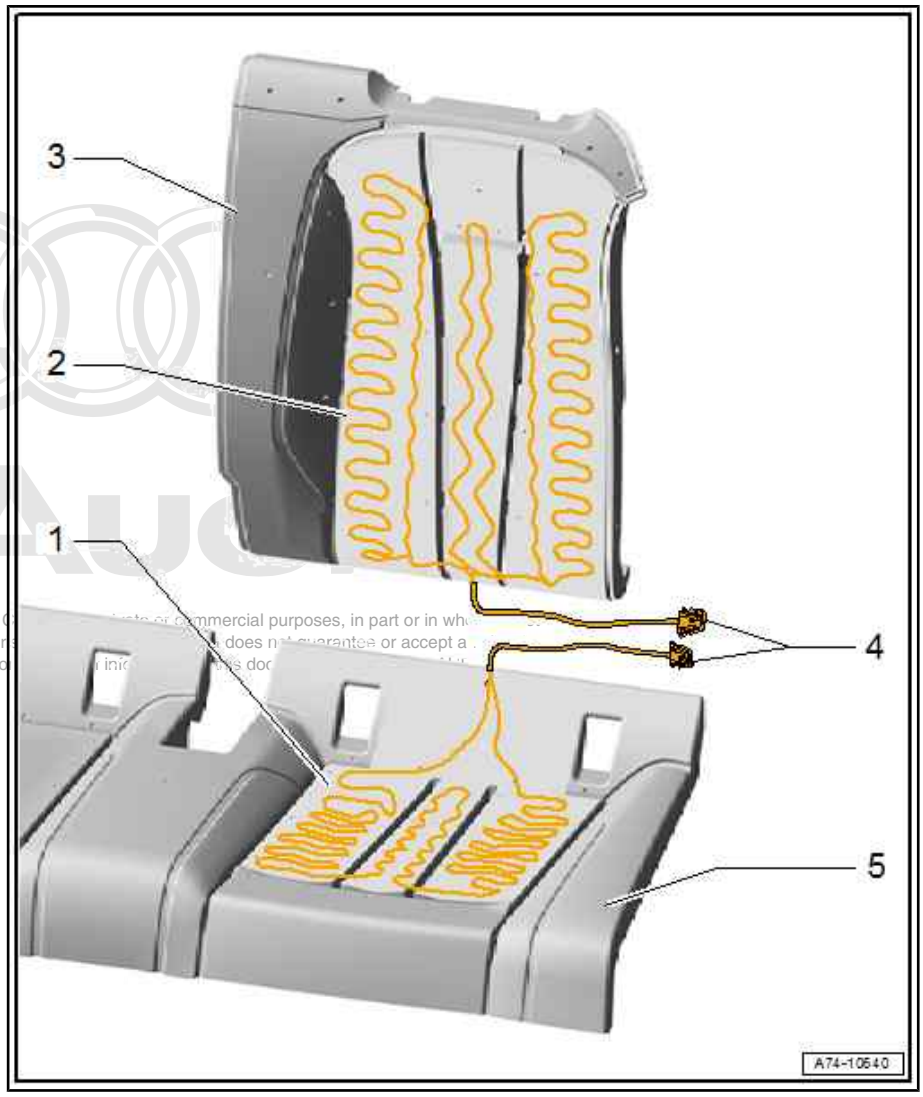
- Heated backrest for rear left seat - Z11-
- Heated backrest for rear right seat - Z13-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 554

3 - Backrest padding

4 - Electrical wiring

5 - Seat padding

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



2.3 Removing and installing cover and padding

⇒ "2.3.1 Removing and installing seat bench cover and padding - A5 Coupé/Sportback", page 545

⇒ "2.3.2 Removing and installing seat bench cover and padding - A5 Cabriolet", page 547

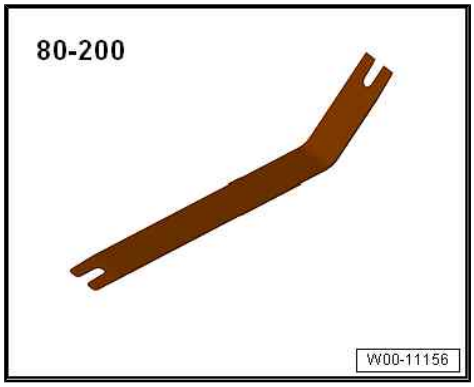
⇒ "2.3.3 Removing and installing rear seat backrest cover and padding - A5 Coupé/Sportback", page 548

⇒ "2.3.4 Removing and installing rear seat backrest cover and padding - A5 Cabriolet", page 549

2.3.1 Removing and installing seat bench cover and padding - A5 Coupé/Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

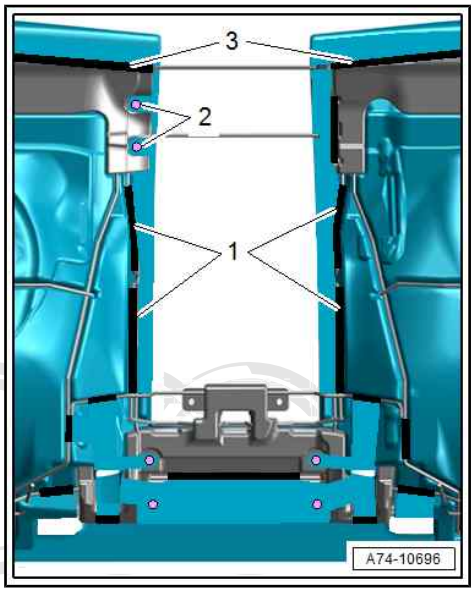
Equipment version with tray:

– Remove tray ⇒ page 475 .

– Detach clips -2- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Using a screwdriver, prise fastening strip -3- of cover off moulded section all along seat frame.

– Disengage piping -1- of cover (centre section) from seat frame.

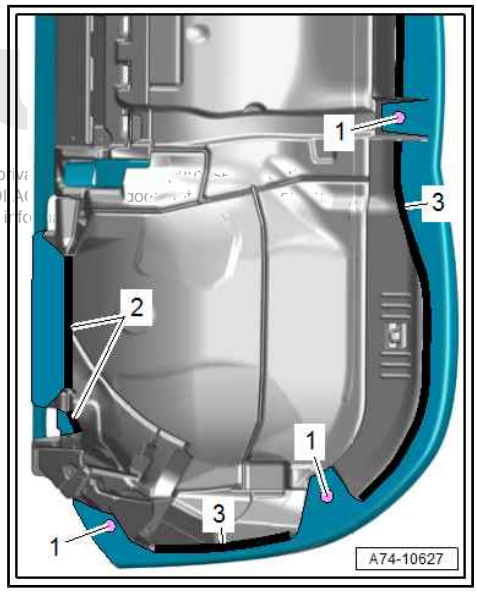


All seat versions (continued):

– Detach clips -1- using removal lever - 80-200- .

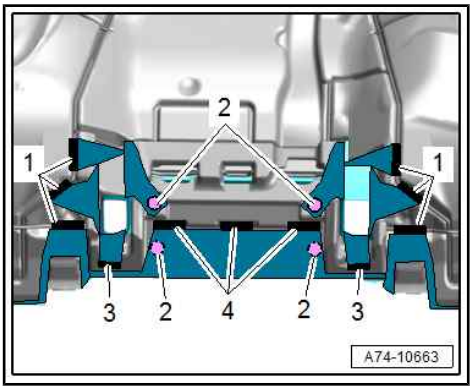
– Using a screwdriver, prise fastening strip -3- of cover off moulded section all along seat frame.

– Disengage piping -2- of cover (rear section) from seat frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for priv
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of in

– Disengage piping -1- on seat frame.
– Use screwdriver to lever fastening strip -4- out of moulded section.
– Detach clips -2- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Unfasten velcro strips -3-.
– Remove cover and padding from seat frame.

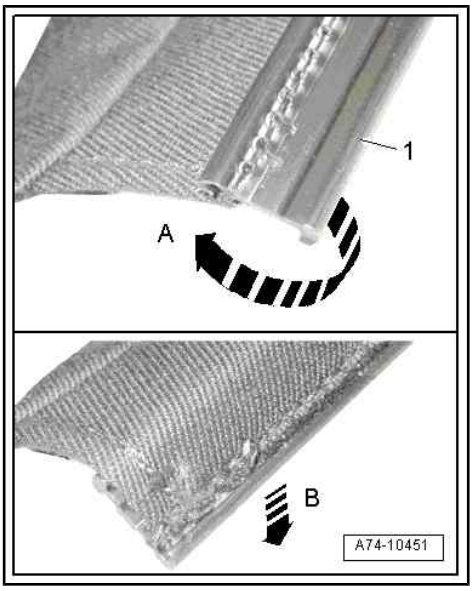


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– First engage piping at rear of seat frame, and then pull cover so it is taut.
– Fold fastening strip -1- around inwards -arrow A- by 180°.
– Engage fastening strip in groove in moulded section -arrow B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding, A5 Coupé/Sportback”, page 539



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

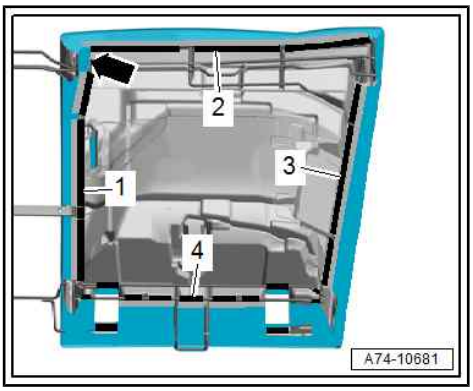
2.3.2 Removing and installing seat bench cover and padding - A5 Cabriolet

Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

Equipment version with tray:

– Remove tray ⇒ page 475 .
– Disengage piping -1, 2, 3, 4- of cover all around seat frame.
– Cut through upholstery clip -arrow- with pliers.
– Remove cover with padding from seat frame.



Equipment version without tray:

– Disengage piping -1, 2, 3, 4- of cover all around seat frame.

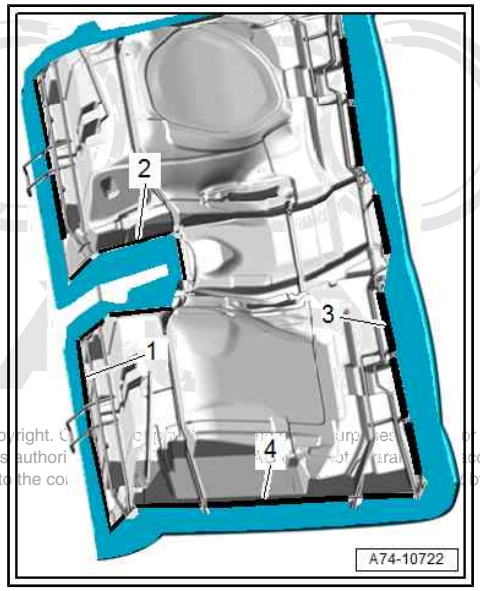
– Remove cover and padding from seat frame.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.

⇒ "2.1.2 Exploded view - seat bench cover and padding, A5 Cabriolet", page 541



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

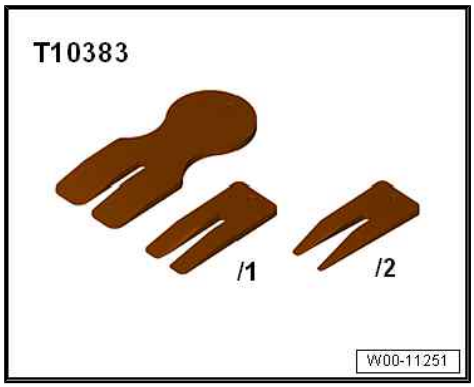
2.3.3 Removing and installing rear seat backrest cover and padding - A5 Coupé/ Sportback

Note

The procedure for the rear seat backrest (left-side) is described as an example.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



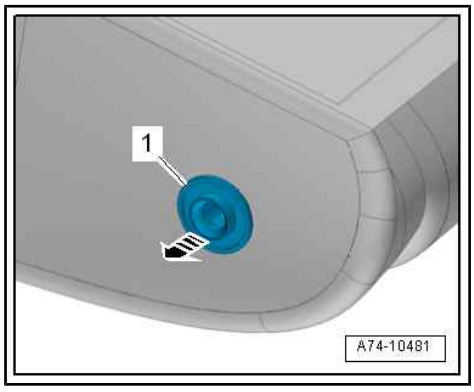
Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 480 .

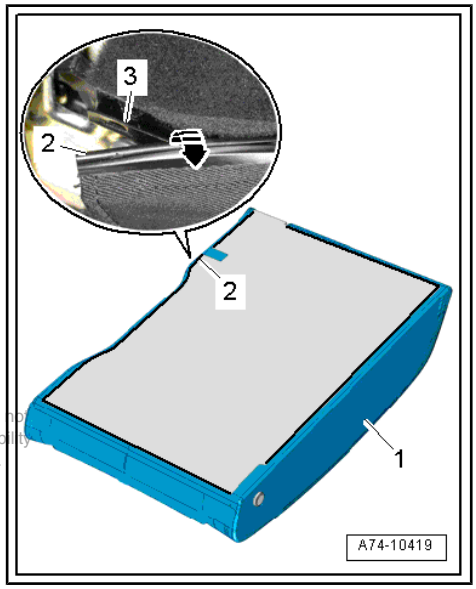
– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 475 .

– Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ page 484 .

– Unclip outer bearing sleeve -1- from rear seat backrest using wedge -T10383/1- -arrow-.



– Starting at locking mechanism, prise fastening strip -2- for backrest cover off outer backrest frame -3- all around -arrow- using a screwdriver.
– Remove head restraint guides (rear) ⇒ page 476 .
– Detach backrest cover -1- with backrest padding from outer backrest frame.



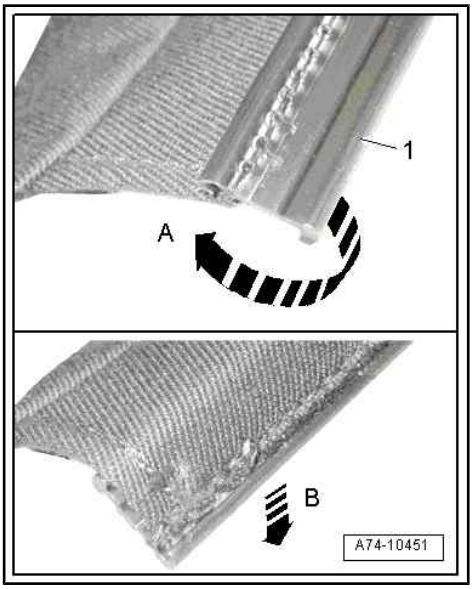
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fold fastening strip -1- around inwards -arrow A- by 180°.
– Engage fastening strip in groove in outer backrest frame -arrow B-.

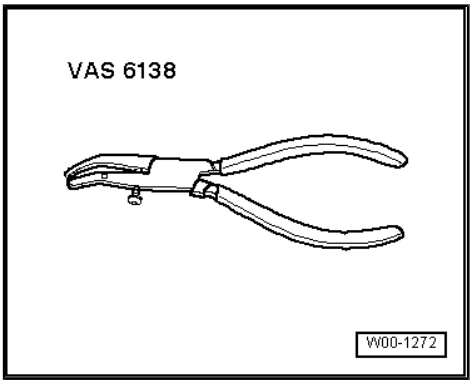
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.1.3 Exploded view - rear seat backrest cover and padding, A5 Coupé/Sportback", page 542



2.3.4 Removing and installing rear seat backrest cover and padding - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Locking pliers for Audi A4 Cabriolet 2003> - VAS 6138-



Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 482 .

– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 475 .
– Remove cover for child seat anchor ⇒ page 124 .
– Remove trim for retaining clip ⇒ page 485 .
– Open seat cover zip -1- on both sides.
– Open seat cover zip (bottom) -2-.
– Fold cover upwards at rear and unfasten clips -arrows- for cover from backrest pan.
– Carefully disengage cover and padding at head restraint guides and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Close zip (bottom) with locking pliers - VAS 6138- .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "2.1.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest cover and padding, A5 Cabriolet", page 543

2.4 Detaching cover from padding

⇒ "2.4.1 Detaching seat bench cover from padding", page 550

⇒ "2.4.2 Detaching rear seat backrest cover from padding", page 551

2.4.1 Detaching seat bench cover from padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



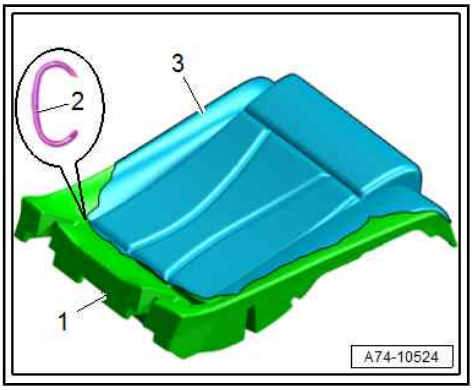
Removing

– Remove seat cover and padding ⇒ page 545 .

– Detach cover -3- as far as possible from padding -1- and cut through upholstery clips -2- using pliers.

– Cut through remaining upholstery clips.

– Detach cover from padding.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing padding, bond on new seat heating element ⇒ page 553 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding", page 539

2.4.2 Detaching rear seat backrest cover from padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

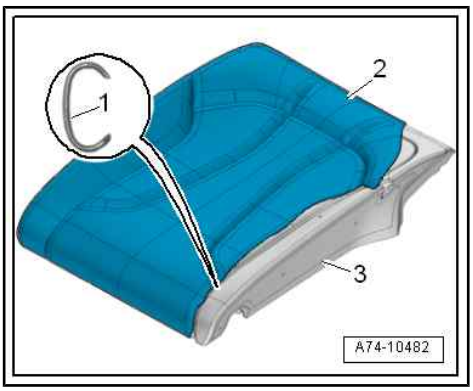
Removing

– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 480 .

– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 545 .

– Detach cover -2- as far as possible from padding -3- and cut through upholstery clips -1- using pliers.

– Cut through remaining upholstery clips and detach cover from padding.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Equipment version with seat heating: When renewing padding, bond on new backrest heating element ⇒ page 554 .

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - covers and padding", page 539

2.5 Removing and installing side padding

⇒ “2.5.1 Removing and installing side padding - A5 Sportback without side airbag”, page 552

⇒ “2.5.2 Removing and installing side padding - A5 Sportback with side airbag”, page 552

⇒ “2.5.3 Removing and installing side padding - A5 Cabriolet”, page 553

2.5.1 Removing and installing side padding - A5 Sportback without side airbag

Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 473 .

– Unscrew nut -1-.

– Hold belt to one side and pull side padding -2- off studs.

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Pull side padding downwards -arrow-, swivel forwards slightly and disengage from mounting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ “3.3.2 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, rear seat with 3 seats”, page 467

2.5.2 Removing and installing side padding - A5 Sportback with side airbag

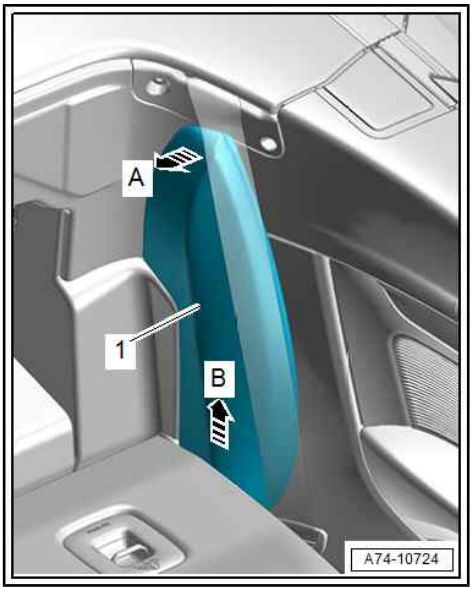
Note

The side padding with side airbag has “Airbag” written on the cover.

The procedure is described under: Removing side airbag (rear)
⇒ page 157 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.3 Removing and installing side padding - A5 Cabriolet



Removing

– Fold down rear seat backrest.

– Pull seat padding -1- slightly inwards at top -arrow A- and at the same time pull it upwards out of mounting -arrow B-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

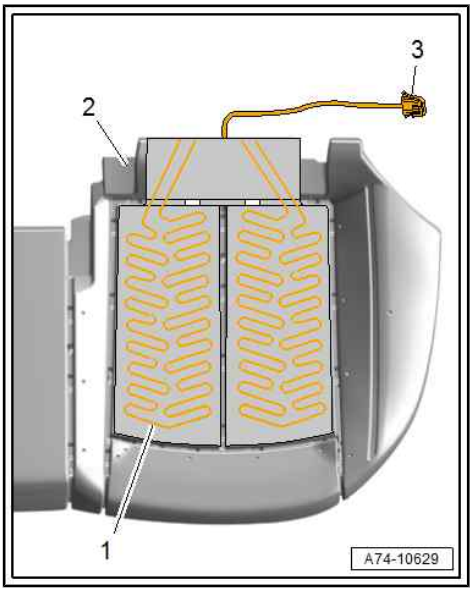
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc.
⇒ "3.3.4 Exploded view - rear seat backrest, A5 Cabriolet", page 469

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6 Removing and installing seat heating elements

Note

Old heating elements remain on padding; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.



Procedure

• Cover and padding separated ⇒ page 550

A5 Coupé/Sportback:

– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element.

– Align new heating elements -1- on padding -2-.

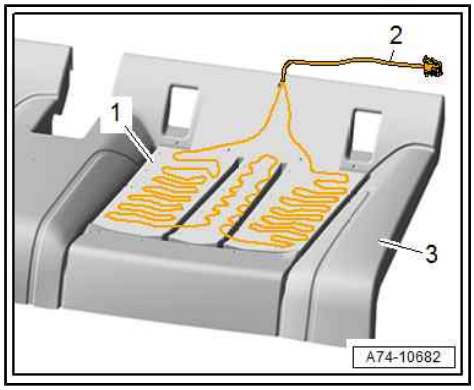
– Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.

– Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.

– Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.

A5 Cabriolet:

- Cut off electrical wire -2- directly at old heating element.
- Align new heating elements -1- on padding -3-.
- Peel protective film off heating elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heating elements.
- Bond heating elements exactly onto old heating elements without any creases.
- Route connection wires to individual heating elements in bottom of openings.



The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - seat heating elements", page 544

2.7 Removing and installing backrest heating element

Note

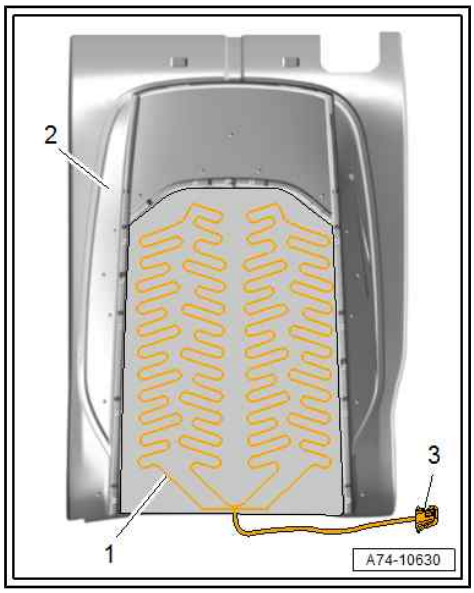
Old heating elements remain on padding; new heating elements are bonded over old elements.

Procedure

- Cover and padding separated ⇒ page 551

A5 Coupé/Sportback:

- Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old heating element.
- Align new heating element -1- on padding -2-.
- Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.
- Bond heating element exactly onto old heating element without any creases.



Audi
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A5 Cabriolet:

– Cut off electrical wire -1- directly at old heating element.

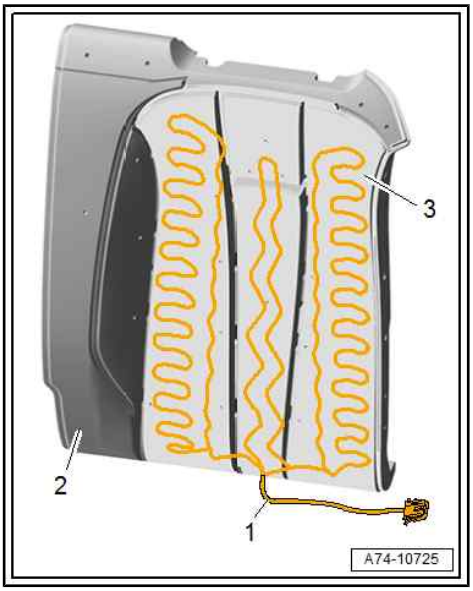
– Align new heating element -3- on padding -2-.

– Peel protective film off heating element, taking care not to damage heating element.

– Bond heating element exactly onto old heating element without any creases.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - seat heating elements”, page 544



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.